DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 378 400 CE 068 069

| | |
|---|---|
| AUTHOR | Salazar, LeRoy; And Others |
| TITLE | Irrigation Training Manual. Planning, Design, Operation, and Management of Small-Scale Irrigation Systems [and] Irrigation Reference Manual. A Technical Reference to Be Used with the Peace Corps Irrigation Training Manual T0076 in the Selection, Planning, Design, Operation, and Management of Small-Scale Irrigation Systems. |
| INSTITUTION | Peace Corps, Washington, DC. Information Collection and Exchange Div. |
| REPORT NO | T0076; T0077 |
| PUB DATE | Sep 94 |
| NOTE | 683p.; Prepared by Agro Engineering, Inc. |
| PUB TYPE | Guides - Classroom Use - Teaching Guides (For Teacher) (052) -- Reference Materials - Bibliographies (131) |
| EDRS PRICE | MF04/PC28 Plus Postage. |
| DESCRIPTORS | Adult Education; *Agricultural Education; Agricultural Engineering; Agriculture; Agronomy; Developing Nations; Foreign Countries; Instructional Materials; Learning Activities; Lesson Plans; Teaching Guides; Volunteer Training; *Water Resources |
| IDENTIFIERS | *Irrigation; Peace Corps |

ABSTRACT

This resource for trainers involved in irrigated agriculture training for Peace Corps volunteers consists of two parts: irrigation training manual and irrigation reference manual. The complete course should fully prepare volunteers serving as irrigation, specialists to plan, implement, evaluate and manage small-scale irrigation projects in arid, semi-arid, or sub-humid tropical and sub-tropical climates. The training manual consists of 40 session plans that provide a comprehensive background in irrigation principles and practices. Each session plan includes the goals and objectives, an overview of the purpose, a description of activities, a list of tools and materials required, and location of additional technical information in the irrigation reference manual. The session plans are grouped into nine topic areas: introduction to irrigation principles and practices; community organization and mobilization; inventorying the physical and biological resource base; developing water sources; assessing irrigation water requirements; farm water delivery systems; farm water management; waterlogging and salinity; and project planning and development. Introductory materials to the training manual include information on the following: experiential learning approach; the trainer's role; timing, location, and trainee preparedness; and implementation. The irrigation reference manual provides detailed technical information to support the topics covered in the training sessions. Some materials are suitable for reproduction. The reference manual appendixes contain the following: math skills and tool use; review of community organization and development; summary of International Irrigation Center training modules; case studies; 59-item annotated bibliography; and glossary. (YLB)

ED 378 400

# Irrigation Training Manual
# Planning, Design, Operation, and Management of Small-Scale Irrigation Systems

# Irrigation Reference Manual
# A Technical Reference to Be Used with the Peace Corps Irrigation Training Manual T0076 in the Selection, Planning, Design, Operation, and Management of Small-Scale Irrigation Systems

Peace Corps

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

☒ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.

☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

- Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy.

CE068069

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

# Irrigation Training Manual

## Planning, Design, Operation, and Management of Small-Scale Irrigation Systems

**Peace Corps**
Information Collection & Exchange
T0076

# INFORMATION COLLECTION & EXCHANGE

Peace Corps' Information Collection & Exchange (ICE) was established so that the strategies and technologies developed by Peace Corps Volunteers, their co-workers and their counterparts could be made available to the wide range of development organizations and individual workers who might find them useful. Training guides, curricula, lesson plans, project reports, manuals and other Peace Corps-generated materials developed in the field are collected and reviewed. Some are reprinted "as is"; others provide a source of field based information for the production of manuals or for research in particular program areas. Materials that you submit to ICE thus become part of the Peace Corps' larger contribution to development.

Information about ICE publications and services is available through:

Peace Corps
Information Collection & Exchange
1990 K Street, NW - 8th Floor
Washington, DC 20526

Add your experience to the ICE Resource Center. Send materials that you have prepared so that we can share them with others working in the development field. Your technical insights serve as the basis for the generation of ICE manuals, reprints, and resource packets, and also ensure that ICE is providing the most up-to-date, innovative problem-solving techniques and information available to you and your fellow development workers.

recycled paper

# IRRIGATION TRAINING MANUAL

## Planning, Design, Operation, and Management of Small-Scale Irrigation Systems

Prepared for the Peace Corps

by

Agro Engineering, Inc.
0210 Road 2 South
Alamosa, Colorado 81101

Authors:

| | |
|---|---|
| LeRoy Salazar | Jim Tolisano |
| Keith Crane | David Radtke |
| Maya ter Kuile | Lee Wheeler |

Peace Corps
Information Collection and Exchange
Training Manual T0076
September 1994

# PREFACE AND ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

In 1988 Agro Engineering conducted the small-scale irrigation training for both pre-service and in-service Volunteers working in irrigation development in Honduras. One of the major problems encountered during the training was the lack of appropriate reference materials applicable to small-scale irrigation development. There are numerous references available for irrigation, but most have been designed for developed country conditions or specific irrigation problems in developing countries. Thus the idea of producing a good training manual with an accompanying reference manual was born.

The content and scope of the project were discussed with Mr. Jaime Henriquez of OTAPS and Mr. Alfonso Barahona, the APCD who directed the irrigation training programs in Honduras. The outline and scope of work were reviewed and modified a number of times, and in September of 1991 Agro Engineering was asked to produce the manual.

Agro Engineering assembled a team of professionals with over 40 years combined experience in irrigation to write the manual. The authors have worked in over 20 countries in Asia, Africa, and Latin America with Peace Corps, CARE, USAID, universities, and several grassroots organizations. Together with Peace Corps personnel from OTAPS they further refined and amplified the outline.

The focus of the training manual was to be on Volunteers who do not have formal training in irrigation but who do have some math skills and knowledge of agriculture. Thus the Volunteers would be agronomists, agriculturalists, engineers, and even business majors. The individuals who design and manage irrigation projects should all be able to use basic scientific calculators to add, subtract, multiply, divide, find square roots and averages. All of the authors have worked on projects where pipelines have failed, structures have been undersized and washed out, or other problems have developed because of a lack of basic irrigation knowledge on the part of the irrigationists. Thus the manual was developed to serve the needs of the agricultural Volunteers working with irrigation.

A word about the authors:

LeRoy Salazar is an agricultural engineer specializing in irrigation and drainage. He has lived and worked throughout Latin America and Asia and has almost twenty years of experience in his field. He has designed and implemented numerous irrigation training programs for the International Irrigation Center, USAID, Peace Corps, Utah State University, Colorado State University, Ohio State University, and various other private and public entities. He has written a number of training publications, including Water Management on Small Farms: A Training Manual for Farmers in Hill Areas and

Irrigation Scheduling: A Training Manual for the International Irrigation Center.

Jim Tolisano is a watershed resource specialist with extensive experience in training with Peace Corps, CARE, USAID, and various other entities. He has developed a number of training publications.

Keith Crane is an agricultural engineer specializing in irrigation. He spent three years as a Peace Corps Volunteer working with irrigation in Honduras, then served an additional year in Bolivia. He designed and conducted the Hillside Agriculture course for Peace Corps in Honduras in 1991 and assisted in the training of irrigation Volunteers in 1988.

Lee Wheeler is an agricultural engineer. He has served in the West Indies in Peace Corps working with both irrigation and conservation. He was an irrigation engineer with the Soil Conservation Service. His 14 years of experience in irrigation also include irrigation development work in Guatemala and Honduras. He has designed and conducted a number of irrigation training programs for such entities as the International Irrigation Center and the Peace Corps.

David Radtke is an agronomist who worked as a Peace Corps Volunteer in Guatemala for five years. During this time he designed several small-scale irrigation systems. He has 8 years experience as an irrigation agronomist.

Maya ter Kuile is an agronomist who has worked and lived in several Latin American countries including Guatemala, El Salvador, Costa Rica, Honduras, The Dominican Republic, and Mexico. She has conducted a number of training programs with the International Irrigation Center. She trained Peace Corps Volunteers in irrigation agronomy during 1988.

Other Acknowledgments:

The authors wish to thank a number of other people who provided valuable input to the manual:

- -Special thanks go to Mr. Gaylord Skogerboe, Director of the International Irrigation Center who provided valuable assistance on the content and format for the manual.
- -Ms. Amy Benner, another Returned Peace Corps agricultural Volunteer working with Agro Engineering. Her input and assistance in bringing the manual to its final form is greatly appreciated.
- -Mr. Scott Nelson, agronomist; Mr. Audie Cox, irrigation technician; and Ms. Nancy Berryman, secretary; who spent numerous hours on the various drafts of the manual.
- -Mr. Jaime Henriquez, who saw the value of the project and was able to prioritize the work before he left Peace Corps.
- -Mr. Alfonso Barahona, APCD, whose tireless example and dedication resulted in a very successful irrigation program in Honduras.
- -Numerous reviewers, professors, and consultants who provided valuable constructive comments and materials.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION TO THE IRRIGATION TRAINING MANUAL 1

- Purpose of the Manual 2
- The Training Sessions 2
- The Irrigation Reference Manual 6
- Overview of the Training Sessions 6
- Irrigation Principles and Practices 6
- The Experiential Learning Approach 7
- The Trainer's Role in Experiential Learning 9
- Timing, Location, and Trainee Preparedness 10
- Implementing the Irrigation Training Sessions 11

TRAINING SESSIONS

- Section 1 Introduction to Irrigation Principles and Practices 17
- Section 2 Community Organization and Mobilization 31
- Section 3 Inventorying the Physical and Biological Resource Base 51
- Section 4 Developing Water Sources 67
- Section 5 Assessing Irrigation Water Requirements 85
- Section 6 Farm Water Delivery Systems 95
- Section 7 Farm Water Management 121
- Section 8 Waterlogging and Salinity 133
- Section 9 Project Planning and Development 143

# INTRODUCTION TO THE IRRIGATION MANUAL

## PURPOSE OF THIS MANUAL

The Irrigation Manual is designed to serve as a reference resource for trainers involved in irrigated agriculture training for Peace Corps. The Irrigation Manual consists of two parts: (1) the Irrigation Training Manual, and (2) the Irrigation Reference Manual. Individual sections of the manual can be used to supplement a wide variety of technical training programs, or the entire manual can be implemented as a specific irrigation training course. The complete training course should fully prepare Volunteers who will serve as irrigation specialists to plan, implement, evaluate, and manage small-scale irrigation projects in arid, semi-arid, or sub-humid tropical and sub-tropical climates. The manual is also designed to serve as a technical reference for trainers, Volunteers, or other professionals who may be seeking solutions to specific irrigation questions or problems.

The manual is designed to support trainers carrying out pre-service or in-service training courses for Peace Corps Volunteers who will apply irrigation practices in some part of their work service. The manual is also designed to provide continued support to Volunteers during the course of their service through the technical reference sections. The technical reference will replace several manuals that Volunteers who work in irrigation commonly use. In addition, the technical reference sections focus on small-scale projects, in contrast to most other irrigation references that are available. The manual is structured to cover the following materials:

## THE TRAINING SESSIONS

Session plans are included to provide a comprehensive background in irrigation principles and practices. Each session plan includes the goals and objectives for the session, an overview of the purpose of the session, a description of activities which can be performed to fulfill the objectives, a list of tools and materials required, and location of additional technical information in the Irrigation Reference Manual. The session plans are grouped in the manual according to topic areas. The session groupings do not necessarily reflect the order in which the sessions should be presented in a training. It is assumed that the training staff will prepare a session schedule that is unique to each training and that reflects collaboration with other Peace Corps training needs, such as language and availability of work sites.

**Section 1** Introduction to Irrigation Principles and Practices

The Role and Purpose of Irrigation
Assessing Trainee Math Skills
Tool Use and Safety

These introductory sessions are intended to enable Trainees to understand the need for irrigation in tropical dry and sub-humid ecosystems and to define their own objectives for the training and beyond.

**Section 2** Community Organization and Mobilization

Conducting a Community Needs Assessment
Community Organization and Mobilization
Communication Techniques
Problem Solving
Working with a Community Water Users Association
Construction of Projects in a Community

These sessions provide Trainees with opportunities to develop and test skills in working with small groups in rural communities to define problems, identify solutions, and develop and implement projects.

**Section 3** Inventorying the Physical and Biological Resource Base

Watershed Hydrology
Water Flow Measurements
Surveying and Field Measurements
Soil-Plant-Water Relationships
Conducting Environmental Assessments

Trainees must acquire skills enabling them to evaluate and monitor soil, water, and ecological attributes of the areas in which irrigation projects will be developed. These sessions provide learning exercises enabling Trainees to identify and quantify water sources, conduct measurements of field and watershed conditions, analyze physical and chemical soil properties, and identify environmental concerns to make certain that irrigation projects are carried out in a manner that sustains ecological processes.

**Section 4** Developing Water Sources

Diversion Dams
Designing Spring Boxes
Selecting Pumps
Design and Use of Pumps
Installing, Operating and Developing Maintenance Plans for Pumps
Wells: Hand Dug and Drilled
Storage Pond Design, Construction, and Management

Trainees learn hands on techniques that will enable them to capture and divert water from springs, seeps, or streams; dig, drill or rehabilitate shallow wells; use and repair hand and power-driven pumps; and build and maintain small ponds for storing water supplies.

**Section 5** Assessing Irrigation Water Requirements

Estimating Net Crop Water Needs
Estimating the Efficiency of Irrigation Systems
Estimating Gross Daily Irrigation Requirements and Design Capacity

These sessions provide Trainees with opportunities to estimate the amount of water available and required to sustain an irrigation system. Trainees will also acquire managerial skills enabling them to evaluate the most efficient irrigation designs that can make the best use of available soil and water resources.

**Section 6** Farm Water Delivery Systems

Components of Farm Irrigation Systems
Canal Design, Construction, and Maintenance
Control Structures: Checks, Diversions, and Drops
Pipe System Design, Construction, and Maintenance
Land Leveling or Smoothing
Surface Irrigation Systems
Sprinkler Systems
Trickle or Drip Systems

In these sessions Trainees learn the basic skills necessary to design and construct small irrigation systems using gravity, sprinklers, or drip methods to deliver water. Sessions also require Trainees to work in the field constructing and rehabilitating actual operating systems.

**Section 7** Farm Water Management

Basic Concepts in Farm Water Management
Basic Soil and Water Conservation Practices
Developing Irrigation Schedules
Evaluation, Operation, and Maintenance

Sustainable use of irrigation systems requires precise management of soil and water resources. Trainees will construct soil conservation measures to minimize soil loss and promote high nutrient content in soils. They will also conduct evaluations and prepare water application schedules and operation and maintenance plans for existing irrigation systems.

**Section 8** Waterlogging and Salinity

Basic Concepts of Waterlogging and Salinity
Control of Drainage and Salinity Problems

Trainees will work in the field constructing measures to minimize or avoid problems with waterlogging or high salt content in soils. Sessions will also provide the conceptual background to enable Trainees to anticipate problems and solutions in a variety of physical and social settings.

**Section 9** Project Planning and Development

Conducting Economic Analyses
Proposal Writing

Trainees will acquire the technical skills to determine if projects are financially or economically feasible, learn how to develop project budgets and procurement plans, and write proposals to solicit financial support.

The amount of actual technical training time required to complete all 40 training sessions is estimated to be between 147-172 hours. The discrepancy in estimated time requirements is due to the fact that some training sites may have immediate access to field practice sites while others must factor in travel time. Also, the skill levels of Trainees will influence the amount of time needed to complete each session.

Time requirements by training topic section are estimated as follows:

| **Section** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1** | Introduction to Irrigation Principles and Practices | 3 Hours |
| **2** | Community Organization and Mobilization | 12 Hours |
| **3** | Inventorying the Physical and Biological Resource Base | 12 Hours |
| **4** | Developing Water Sources | 32-37 Hours |
| **5** | Assessing Irrigation Water Requirements | 5 Hours |
| **6** | Farm Water Delivery Systems | 54-74 Hours |
| **7** | Farm Water Management | 13 Hours |
| **8** | Waterlogging and Salinity | 10 Hours |
| **9** | Project Planning and Development | 6 Hours |
| | TOTAL | 147-172 Hours |

Assuming that a minimum of six hours per day can be dedicated to technical training activities, and that training can proceed for a minimum of 5.5 days per week, then approximately five weeks will be required to complete the training.

In-service trainings will likely be constrained by time limitations, which will require trainers to pick and choose among specific topic areas and field activities that will meet Volunteer defined needs.

## THE IRRIGATION REFERENCE MANUAL

This companion manual to the Irrigation Training Manual provides detailed technical information to support the topics covered in the training sessions. This technical reference material is intended to provide trainers with sufficient background information to prepare for each training session. In some cases, the reference sections include prepared materials that trainers can simply photocopy and distribute to complete some sessions. The environmental assessment exercise is an example of these prepared materials. In addition to providing a comprehensive background in the basic technical skills necessary to plan, prepare, construct, manage, and evaluate irrigation systems, the manual also emphasizes skills to ensure that irrigation practices will respect broader ecological and social concerns.

The technical reference materials should be distributed or photocopied and distributed to Trainees for use during their Volunteer service. The collected materials in the reference section can adequately serve as a comprehensive technical manual on irrigation practices and water resource management covering most problems that Volunteers are likely to encounter.

The reference section concludes with an annotated bibliography of related texts and publications that trainers and Volunteers may also want to reference for technical support.

## OVERVIEW OF THE TRAINING SESSIONS

While short-term, intensive training in irrigation principles and practices cannot be expected to produce professional irrigation specialists, it can provide Volunteers with sufficient background and confidence to serve well as irrigation technicians. After completing the activities included in the training sessions, Volunteers should be capable of confronting and successfully solving a wide variety of problems related to the application of irrigation practices. They should also be fully aware of the complexity of applying and managing irrigation systems and be prepared to continue their learning efforts throughout their Peace Corps service.

## IRRIGATION PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICES

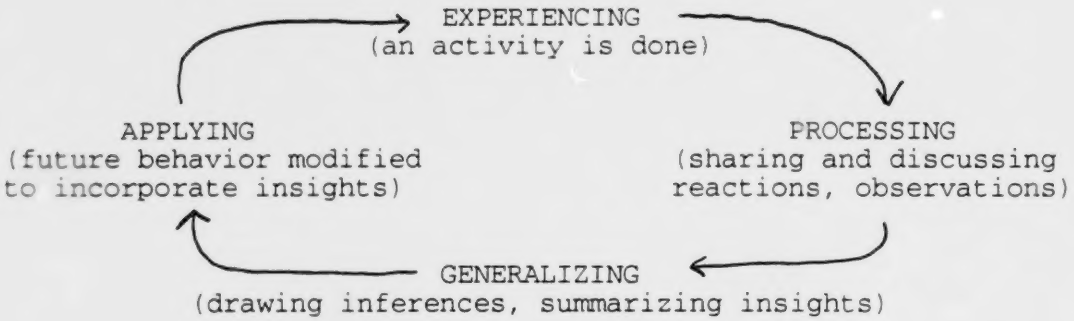
Irrigation systems are primarily used to supplement the water requirements of growing plants, which sounds like a simple enough task on first consideration. Accomplishing this task in a manner that is socially and environmentally sound, however, requires skills that bring together information and experience from a wide variety of technical fields, including hydrology, soil science, hydraulics, agronomy, plant science, watershed management, engineering, and economicss.

Peace Corps Volunteers working with irrigation practices as part of their service may encounter many diverse problems and situations that will require them to apply techniques or concepts that cut across these various technical disciplines. This training manual is designed to provide these Volunteers with enough interdisciplinary skills to address diverse problems and situations. Volunteers who complete the training may not know precise answers to all the irrigation problems they will encounter. They should know enough, however, to identify the information they need to solve a problem and where or how to find it.

## THE EXPERIENTIAL LEARNING APPROACH

Irrigation is a very practical art and science. It requires skills that are grounded in field experience. As a result, the training sessions in this manual largely emphasize exercises that require Trainees to participate in hands-on work assignments. The overall curriculum consists of approximately 70 percent field sessions and 30 percent classroom sessions. Even in the classroom sessions, however, Trainees are expected to play a strong participatory role and complete assignments that require self-motivation, communication skills, and cooperative problem solving. Each Trainee will have a participatory, leadership, or independent role to fulfill in designing, constructing, or rehabilitating various components of an actual irrigation system in the field. This physical work forms the foundation of the experiential learning methodology emphasized throughout the training sessions.

Experiential learning is exactly what the name implies - people learning by doing. Experiential learning occurs when a person engages in an activity, reviews this activity critically, identifies useful information from this analysis, and then applies the results of the process in subsequent practical situations. The experiential process follows the following theoretical circle:



Experiencing: Each training session should include one or more activities that the Trainees will *do*. Requiring Trainees to *experience* the content of sessions will increase their opportunity for becoming aware of how they currently handle related situations and skill areas that they need to develop or strengthen. Trainers must be careful to avoid putting Trainees in situations in which the skills being tested cannot be accomplished given the entry skill level of the group. Experiences can be developed in classroom settings, using role plays, games, small group discussions, case studies, videos or slides, sharing of personal experiences, or training of Trainees by one another.

Processing: The Trainees must follow each activity by immediately analyzing the experience. It is very helpful for the trainer to provide some guidance questions for Trainees to answer, such as: "How did time management become a problem in completing the pump repair?" "What went wrong in this role play?" "What else could you have done?" With carefully worded questions such as these, Trainees can do an effective analysis with minimal interference from the trainers.

During this processing phase, individuals share with others the specific experiences they had during the activity. This can be done through group discussions, written reports, generating and analyzing data, one on one dialogues, or interviews. Individuals share both their cognitive and emotional reactions to the activities in which they were engaged and then try to link these thoughts and feelings together to derive some meaning from the experience. Putting their responses into language is the critical link in enabling Trainees to develop generalizations that they can then apply to new situations in the future.

Generalizing: As a conclusion to this analysis process, Trainees need to individually or collectively draw generalizations or inferences. A generalization is a rule or concept, based on facts, that a person can accept and act on. An inference is a generalization that a person can accept tentatively but which needs to be tested before the person is willing to incorporate it into his or her behavior. An example might be the following:

> In conducting interviews of government officials, the Trainee group may draw as a generalization or inference that better information can be obtained when open-ended questions are asked rather than when leading questions are asked.

Activities that can facilitate this generalizing process include:

- summarizing the generalizations or inferences into concise statements or concepts,
- establishing agreement on definitions, concepts, key terms, and statements, and
- relating the activity and generalizations or inferences to past experiences, thoughts or feelings.

These activities can be done individually or in a group setting.

Applying: After generalizations or inferences have been drawn, Trainees need opportunities to practice using these generalizations or to further test their inferences. These practice or trial efforts should be directly related to the work the Trainees will be doing after they complete the training. For example, if Trainees have acquired basic generalizations or inferences about how to plan small surface irrigation systems, they now need an opportunity to work with a small system. Useful techniques and activities to facilitate this process include having Trainees develop plans of action, personal goals, and strategies for modifying personal behavior.

## THE TRAINER'S ROLE IN EXPERIENTIAL LEARNING

The primary responsibility of the trainer is to provide the Trainees with an effective and appropriate learning environment and to facilitate an active process by which Trainees determine and act on their individual learning needs. This can be best accomplished by trainers who:

- encourage the active involvement of all Trainees,
- promote an atmosphere of cooperation and open dialogue,
- enable Trainees to work at a pace and skill development level most appropriate to their own capabilities and ambitions,
- assist Trainees in identifying the linkages between each training session,
- provide Trainees with opportunities and incentives to constantly relate training experiences to "real life" situations,

- guide Trainees toward materials and people that may expand their learning experiences, and
- make themselves available to serve as resources without establishing themselves as all-knowing experts who merely dispense answers.

## TIMING, LOCATION, AND TRAINEE PREPAREDNESS

The training sessions have been designed to support Trainees who have already had some training in language and cross-cultural skills. It is assumed that the Trainees will have already completed a basic Peace Corps Pre-Service Training (PST) *before* beginning the Irrigation Principles and Practices skills training.

Developing irrigation skills to apply as a Peace Corps Volunteer in developing country situations is not strictly a technical exercise. The "irrigation" that Volunteers will practice is a very obvious blend of cross-cultural communication skills and technical concepts involving water, soils, and plant science. The session plans in this training manual reflect this fact. The training sessions have been designed so that technical concepts are presented and acquired through cross-cultural experience. The benefits and skills development that Trainees will experience from the irrigation training will be dramatically enhanced if they have had, at a minimum, sufficient language training to allow them to take on very basic communication tasks with farmers and in a market.

If Trainees have not participated in a PST or had some language skills development, then it is recommended that the training be done in a stateside (U.S.) location where Trainees will have access to rural or cross-cultural experiences. In-country training locations should include access to farm and market conditions typical of most Volunteer assignments. Trainers should review the list of work sites required to fulfill the training sessions, and then identify a suitable training location that will provide reasonably quick access to a host of sites that meet these needs. Reducing the travel time from the classroom to potential work sites provides the Trainees with more opportunity to complete their tasks without panic. Given the tremendous time constraint that is already built into the training, this quick field access becomes very important.

Trainees should be prepared to work long hours with minimal supervision. While irrigation field work can require a great deal of physical exertion, any reasonably healthy person can perform the tasks required. Irrigation training should be accessible to any man or woman who can wield a shovel or connect a pipe. It is recommended, however, that potential Trainees be screened to indicate any previous experience or capabilities working with basic math. Irrigation system designs or repairs frequently involve the use of skills in algebra, geometry, trigonometry, and statistics. Trainees who have not had some exposure to these concepts in the past, or who do not feel they will be capable of bringing these skills up to speed quickly, may find the training a bit overwhelming at times.

## IMPLEMENTING THE IRRIGATION TRAINING SESSIONS

Conducting a pre-service or in-service training in irrigation principles and practices will involve the following steps:

1. Establish host country and Peace Corps program goals and objectives.
2. Conduct a staff development workshop that enables staff to define roles and responsibilities.
3. Prepare a schedule of training sessions and activities.
4. Identify suitable work sites for conducting all field activities.
5. Assemble written materials, visual aids, and supplies.
6. Prepare the work sites.

### Establish Program Goals and Objectives:

The training staff need to work with the in-country Peace Corps program officers to define the entry level skills that are expected of irrigation Volunteers. These skill levels will greatly influence the level of detail and material content in many training sessions.

Trainers also need basic information about country agricultural and irrigation practices. This will enable the training sessions to be modified so that the information is site specific and not generic. Specific information that should be obtained includes:

- climatic data,
- typical crops cultivated and total crop acreage,
- typical farm sizes and approximate yields by crop for various farm size classes,
- crop planting seasons,
- types of irrigation systems in use and acreage irrigated,
- types of farm equipment typically used by small or medium sized farms (e.g., pumps, generators, tractors),
- soil conservation practices in accepted use by farmers, and
- components of in-country extension systems.

Ideally, the technical trainers will have time to meet with government or private sector officials working with small and medium-scale irrigation programs in country and to visit actual irrigation systems and interview farmers. Trainers should allocate at least one week, depending upon the size of the country, diversity of systems in use, and ease of travel, to interview officials and farmers and visit as many different farms as possible.

If interviews and field trips will not be possible, then the trainers should have the Associate Peace Corps Director (APCD) bring together current or recent in-country irrigation Volunteers for a group meeting. These Volunteers, along with the APCD, can help orient the trainers as quickly as possible. Trainers must remember, however, that the experiences and skill levels of these Volunteers may be limited and may not provide the trainers with all the background information they may want.

### Conduct a Staff Development Workshop:

The work load during the training will, at times, seem to be increasing exponentially on a daily basis. The best way for the training staff to maintain some sense of efficiency through all of this is for the staff members to mutually define each person's role and responsibilities. Some people will have limited training experience and will benefit from some introductory training-of-trainers sessions. The APCD facilitating the trainer should work with the Training Director to prepare a minimum of a three-day Staff Development Workshop. This workshop should include sessions that:

- allow the trainers to learn about each other's backgrounds, strengths, weaknesses, and specific areas of interest;
- develop experiential learning skills and get trainers to build experiential learning practices into the sessions they will be conducting;
- build communication skills and result in some agreed upon mechanisms for working out problems, disagreements, or misunderstandings that may arise among the staff during the training;
- enable the staff to plan a daily schedule for the entire training and define the roles that each member of the training will fulfill every day in the schedule; and
- enable the staff to prepare materials and organize for the training. Technical staff will be able to use this time to modify and assemble materials for each lesson plan and make the necessary contacts for work sites to be used by Trainees.

If language training will be incorporated into the technical training, then the technical trainers should work with the language trainers to enable them to build technical terms and concepts into their language lesson plans.

### Prepare a Schedule of Sessions and Activities:

The design of the training should always be location specific and influenced by the types of Peace Corps programs being implemented, host country program objectives, and actual site conditions. These factors will determine the sequence of training sessions, priority of session topics to be covered, level of detail needed in each session, and entry level skills that should result from the training. A schedule of sessions and activities for a training should be an output of the Staff Development Workshop. In developing this schedule, the staff should consider the following:

- host country program goals, farming practices, typical skill levels for sites in which Volunteers will be working;
- number of Trainees and trainers involved;
- physical, ecological, and social conditions in the countries for which training is being carried out;
- apparent skill levels of the Trainees (if known);
- total number of hours available for each training component: technical, cross-cultural, generic Peace Corps program sessions, and language (remember, too, to factor in "slack time" to account for breaks between sessions and travel time to and from work sites, for example);
- length of training and its relationship to the tasks that will be attempted in Trainee field projects;
- training site conditions; and
- topics and level of detail covered in other Peace Corps trainings in which Trainees may also participate.

With this information in mind, the staff can proceed through the following steps:

1. Prioritize the skills that must be emphasized in the training and define the level of detail required for each.

2. Draw up a list of sessions to be carried out along with their approximate time requirements. Aim for a training schedule that will have about 65-75% in-the-field activities and 25-35% classroom sessions. Be critical about what *must* be included in the training and what is optional. Overloading Trainees with information will not yield good results. Determine with some level of precision how much time will be required for Trainees to complete field projects, including after-session repair and maintenance work.

3. Map out a list of sessions to be covered during each week of the training. The daily schedule can be built from this initial rough outline. In mapping each week, consider (a) the field tasks that must be done first and which can be plugged into the training on an as-fits basis, (b) the total amount of time and probable training periods that will need to be devoted to field project maintenance and repair, (c) weekly themes to be emphasized, (d) ways to link classroom activities directly to field work so that they reinforce one another, and (e) a pace that can be upheld by both the training staff and the Trainees. Training staff should also be prepared to limit the amount of material covered in the first few days, since Trainees

will need this period to orient themselves and develop necessary work attitudes.

Identify Suitable Work Sites:

An irrigation training will require a great deal of practical, hands-on field experience, mostly to give Trainees an opportunity to learn directly their own skill levels. The field activities that are likely to be carried out in a typical irrigation training would include the following:

- Collecting baseline data about a representative community's needs and problems related to irrigation and water resources.
- Meeting with representatives from a community water users association.
- Delineating a small watershed and assessing watershed conditions in terms of soil and water resources.
- Measuring flow rates in small channels.
- Calculating the slope and total area from a water source to a potential irrigated field site.
- Evaluating the movement of water and plant growth characteristics in several different soil types.
- Constructing earthen or rock dams to divert water from small channels.
- Developing the flow from a spring as a water supply and evaluating completed spring boxes.
- Rehabilitating an existing well and evaluating work in progress on a hand dug and drilled well.
- Evaluating a variety of pumps used to lift water and repairing a simple pump.
- Constructing a small pond to store water for field irrigation.
- Evaluating the soils and irrigation practices being used on a farm to grow crops.
- Constructing irrigation canals to transport water to a field.
- Installing pipeworks to convey water from a source to a field.
- Smoothing the ground surface in a small field.
- Installing sprinklers to apply water in a field.
- Installing perforated pipe to apply water through a drip fashion in a field.
- Constructing a terrace, planning a contour row of crops, and constructing check dams in a gully.
- Evaluating soils that have been subject to waterlogging or high salt content and applying amendments or procedures to reduce the damage to these soils.

Trainers need to have identified suitable sites to complete all of these activities. Contact should have been made with local farmers to inform them of the purpose and duration of the training and solicit their participation and support. Again, it is most advisable to locate a physical training site that provides close access to field conditions that will fulfill all of these training needs.

Assemble Materials, Aids, and Supplies:

Trainers should have all handouts, visual aids, and other teaching tools completed and organized before the training begins. The session plans include reference to materials in the appendices or other texts that can be photocopied directly or modified and typed to serve as handouts, tests, or exercises for the Trainees. Each session plan includes a list of materials that will be needed to complete the activities included. The session plans also describe video support that can supplement each topic.

It will be essential for the trainers to build a strong reference library available to the Trainees throughout the training. The bibliography in the technical reference component of this manual includes an annotated list of books and documents many of which should be available at any training site. Most of these materials should be available through the Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange (ICE) service.

Trainers must also assemble a complete set of tools to enable Trainees to complete their field projects. Every Trainee must be provided with tools that they are to keep throughout their service. Tools and equipment (indicated in Appendix A of the Irrigation Reference Manual) must be at the training site and made available on a loan basis to Trainees throughout the duration of the training.

# SECTION 1

## INTRODUCTION TO IRRIGATION PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICES

- **The Role and Purpose of Irrigation**
- **Assessing Trainee Math Skills**
- **Tool Use and Safety**

- **Exam: Section 1 (Math Skills Assessment)**

## INTRODUCTION TO IRRIGATION PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICES

**Session Topic:** The Role and Purpose of Irrigation

**Session Goal:** To enable Trainees to identify the need for irrigation and to describe their own training goals and expectations.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to define irrigation and describe the benefits of irrigation in the production of food and fiber.

(2) Trainees will be able to describe how irrigation is practiced in varying topographic, climatic, or social conditions.

(3) Trainees will identify their own expectations, goals, and objectives for the training.

**Overview:** This session should serve as the introduction to the training. Volunteers are provided with an overview of the purpose and means for applying irrigation practices in a variety of conditions. This session should be used by trainers to describe and show visually what irrigation is, what its benefits are, and the basic concepts that must be understood in order to do an irrigation project correctly. Trainees should also write down some of their own expectations, goals, and objectives for their service.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer has each person in the room select a partner. The partners pair off and obtain some basic background information about each other. Specifically, each person should take turns asking their partner:

- area they are from in the U.S.,
- general work experience, educational training, and personal interests that might relate to the work they anticipate doing as a Peace Corps Volunteer,
- background experience they may have in agriculture or irrigation,
- motivation for joining Peace Corps, and
- goals and expectations they have for the training.

20 Min. The group will reconvene as a whole. Each person introduces his or her partner to the group and provides a brief summary of the partner's background

and training goals and expectations. Trainer records goals and objectives on a flip chart, without reference to the individual person who has voiced them.

10 Min. Trainer presents a simple and concise description of the role and purpose of small-scale irrigation in tropical agriculture. Trainer can show video from International Irrigation Center Module No. 1, which presents these concepts graphically.

15 Min. Trainer concludes session by going over the training schedule in detail, referring back to the Trainees stated goals and objectives frequently and showing how the training sessions will attempt to meet them.

**Trainer Notes:** Time allotments for this session will depend upon the number of Trainees in the group.

**Materials Required:**

- flip chart
- notebooks for Trainees
- video cassette player

**Selected References:**

Chapter 1, Irrigation Reference Manual
International Irrigation Center Module #1

## INTRODUCTION TO IRRIGATION PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICES

**Session Topic:** Assessing Trainee Math Skills

**Session Goal:** To determine the specific mathematical skills that Trainees will need to acquire or improve to work in irrigation.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will complete a self-directed test of mathematical skills.
(2) Trainees will prepare a list of mathematical skills they intend to develop more fully or improve during the training program.

**Overview:** Volunteers who will be working with irrigation principles and practices must have the capacity to work confidently with basic algebra, geometry, and trigonometry. Many Trainees will have had limited mathematical training or will not have used math formulas for many years. This session, preferably presented at the beginning of the training, offers trainers and Trainees an opportunity to identify specific mathematical skills that Trainees will want to strengthen in order to increase their comprehension throughout the training.

**Session Activities:**

Time

10 Min. The trainer should distribute prepared handouts that include a comprehensive set of mathematical problems to be solved. The problem set should include numerous examples of the kinds of problems Volunteers can be expected to encounter in the field, and the problems should reflect appropriate characteristics of local conditions. The trainer will review the test questions with Trainees as a group and make conversion tables, calculators, and area/volume table available.

30 Min. Trainees will work independently to answer each question on the handout.

20 Min. The trainer will go through the problem set with the entire group, having the Trainees indicate the method(s) used to solve each problem. Trainees should self-correct their own problem set. Conclude the session by having each Trainee prepare a list of mathematical skills they will obtain or improve during the course of the training program.

**Trainer Notes:** It will be important to emphasize to Trainees that this is not a pass/fail test but rather an indicator for each Trainee to identify personal needs to improve basic math skills. If Trainees are unable to solve even a single problem they are still fully entitled to participate in the training. They will want to allocate some personal time, however, to rapidly bring their math skills up to a level where they can accomplish many of the more demanding technical designs and computations required in upcoming sessions.

**Materials Required:**

* photocopied conversion tables
* photocopied problem sets
* scientific calculators (one per Trainee)

**Selected References:**

Appendix A, Irrigation Reference Manual: Conversion Factors; Trigonometric Table

## INTRODUCTION TO IRRIGATION PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICES

**Session Topic:** Tool Use and Safety

**Session Goal:** For Trainees to identify techniques for using typical tools and machinery properly and safely.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) To have Trainees identify and describe the proper function of the tools commonly used in irrigation projects.
(2) To list ways to care for and protect tools.
(3) To list safety tips for working with tools at construction sites.

**Overview:** Volunteers must assume some level of responsibility for their own safety and the safety of others with whom they will work in implementing construction projects. Developing and demonstrating the proper use of common tools is an essential component of this work.

**Session Activities:**

Time

10 Min. Begin session outside in a place where tool use can be easily demonstrated. Introduce objectives of session and ask Trainees to list common tools used for irrigation projects. Flush out list to include tools and equipment missed by Trainees and tell Trainees that list will be typed and distributed to them to include in their reference notebooks.

20 Min. Trainer brings out tools for Trainees to inspect. A Trainee familiar with each tool is asked to demonstrate how the tool is properly used and safely cared for.

20 Min. Trainees generate list of tool safety tips:

- Don't leave tools scattered around work site.
- Ensure personal protection (hands, face).
- Check equipment before use to see if it has adequate strength and durability. (This is especially important when working with ropes, buckets, baskets, or lifting materials.)

Trainees identify ways to care for tools:

- practice proper storage,
- define person responsible for tools,
- clean tools after use,
- replace or repair defective parts,

- and learn how to use local materials where possible.

Trainees list site safety tips:

- know what other people around you are doing,
- notice where tools are,
- notice pits, holes, sharp edges, etc.,
- be aware of the power of tropical heat, and
- know how to lift heavy objects.

10 Min. Trainer concludes by reminding Trainees that they will be accountable for tool use and maintenance throughout the training. All lost tools must be replaced at Trainees expense.

**Trainer Notes:** Trainers should refer to the List of Common Tools in Appendix A and identify those tools that are most appropriate for in-country conditions. These tools should be on hand at the training site and brought to this session.

**Materials Required:**

* flip chart
* handout of common tool list
* tools selected from tool list in Appendix A

**Selected References:**

Appendix A, Irrigation Reference Manual: List of Common Tools

## EXAM: SECTION 1
## MATH SKILLS ASSESSMENT

The following questions can assist Trainees to identify math skills that they might want to acquire or strengthen in order to work confidently with technical problem solving at their sites. The questions are intended to increase in complexity as one proceeds through the self-examination. In presenting the skills assessment to Trainees, it is important to emphasize that this is not a pass-fail test but rather an opportunity for them to conduct a self-assessment of their own skill levels.

1. A storage tank holds 1.5 cubic meters of water.

    - How many gallons is this?
    - How many liters?

2. 3 cubic meters of gravel + 2 cubic meters of sand + 1 cubic meter of cement = 3 cubic meters of concrete. You will pour a concrete slab that measures 3 meters by 5 meters by 10 centimeters.

    - Approximately how many cubic feet of concrete will you need?
    - How much gravel, sand, and cement (in meters) will you need?

3. You are planning to construct a concrete water storage tank. Each wall measures 2 meters high by 3 meters wide. You will need to purchase reinforcing bar to reinforce the walls. The bars are to be spaced 20 centimeters apart both horizontally and vertically.

    - How many 2 meter lengths are needed? How many 3 meter lengths? (for 4 walls)
    - If reinforcing bar can only be purchased in 6 meter lengths, how many bars will you need to purchase?

4. A hollow block measures 20 centimeters high and 40 centimeters wide. You want to build a retaining wall 2 meters high by 4 meters wide. Approximately how many blocks will you need, assuming none break in transport?

5. A truck carries 4 cubic meters of sand/gravel. You estimate that you will need 30 cubic feet of gravel and 100 cubic feet of sand. Can it bring you the sand and gravel in one trip?

6. 16 gallon wire sells by the kilo (one kilogram = 54 meters). A kilo sells for 20 pesos. You estimate that you will need 200 meters of wire. How much will it cost?

7. The flow from a spring is 8 liters per minute (Lpm). Assuming a constant rate, how many liters per hour and cubic meters per hour is this? How many gallons per hour?

8. Find the volume of this tank in cubic meters: inside depth = 5 m, outside walls = 6 m, wall thickness = 0.25 m.

   How many liters of water will it hold?

9. The flow rate in a stream is estimated to be approximately 50 L/sec. or 180 $m^3$/hr. You want to divert the stream to irrigate 1 hectare (10,000 $m^2$) of pasture. The hay requires 10 cm (0.1 m) of water to be applied in an irrigation. How long will you need to maintain the diversion to fulfill these water requirements?

Bonus Question

10. After surveying, you find that the difference in elevation between a water source and an irrigation distribution canal is 30 meters. The horizontal distance from the water source to the canal is 120 meters. Approximately how long a length of pipe will be needed to run from the source to the canal, assuming the slope of the hill is constant?

## EXAM: SECTION 1
## MATH SKILLS ASSESSMENT

### Sample Completed Test

1. A storage tank holds 1.5 cubic meters of water.

   - How many liters is this?

   Answer: $1.5\ m^3 \times 1000\ liters/m^3 = 1500$ liters

   - How many gallons is this?

   Answer: 1500 liters/3.8 = 395 gallons

2. 3 cubic meters of gravel + 2 cubic meters of sand + 1 cubic meter of cement = 3 cubic meters of concrete. You will pour a concrete slab that measures 3 meters by 5 meters by 10 centimeters.

   - Approximately how many cubic meters of concrete will you need?

   Answer: 1.5 cubic meters $\times (3.28\ ft/1\ m)^3 = 52.9\ ft^3$

   - How much gravel, sand, and cement (in cubic meters) will you need (using the given ratio of 3:2:1)?

   Answer: $1.5\ m^3$ gravel, $1\ m^3$ sand, $0.5\ m^3$ cement

3. You are planning to construct a concrete water storage tank. Each wall measures 2 meters high by 3 meters wide. You will need to purchase reinforcing bar to reinforce the walls. The bars are to be spaced 20 centimeters apart both horizontally and vertically.

   - How many 2 meter lengths are needed? How many 3 meter lengths? (for 4 walls)

   Answer: 60 and 40 respectively

   - If reinforcing bar can only be purchased in 6 meter lengths, how many bars will you need to purchase?

   Answer: 40

4. A hollow block measures 20 centimeters high and 40 centimeters wide. You want to build a retaining wall 2 meters high by 4 meters wide. Approximately how many blocks will you need, assuming none break in transport?

Answer: Number of blocks = $\frac{\text{area of wall}}{\text{area of individual blocks}}$
= (2 m x 4 m)/(0.2 m x 0.4 m)
= 100 blocks
* Note: This assumes the mortar joints take up no space

5. A truck carries 4 cubic meters of sand/gravel. You estimate that you will need 30 cubic feet of gravel and 100 cubic feet of sand. Can it bring you the sand and gravel in one trip?

Answer: Volume of sand and gravel = 30 cubic feet + 100 cubic feet

130 cubic feet/35 cubic feet per cubic meter = 3.7 $m^3$; thus, yes.

6. 16 gauge wire sells by the kilo (one kilogram = 54 meters). A kilo sells for 20 pesos. You estimate that you will need 200 meters of wire. How much will it cost?

Answer: 200 m/54 m = 3.7 kg x 20 = 74 pesos

7. The flow from a spring is 8 liters per minute (Lpm). Assuming a constant rate, how many liters per hour and cubic meters per hour is this? How many gallons per hour?

Answer: 8 x 60 = 480, 480 liters/hr = 0.48 $m^3$/hr
480/3.8 = 126 gallons/hr

8. Find the volume of a tank in cubic meters if the inside depth is 5 meters and the lengths of the outside walls are 6 meters. Wall thickness is 0.25 meters.

- How many liters of water will it hold?

Answer: 5.5 x 5.5 x 5 = 151.25 $m^3$ = 151,250 liters

9. The flow rate in a stream is estimated to be approximately 50 L/sec. or 180 $m^3$/hr. You want to divert the stream to irrigate 1 hectare (10,000 $m^2$) of pasture. The pasture requires 10 cm (0.1 m) of water to be applied in an irrigation. How long will you need to maintain the diversion to fulfill these water requirements?

Answer: Area x depth = flow rate x time

Time = (area x depth)/flow rate

Time = $(10{,}000\ m^2 \times 0.1\ m)/(180\ m^3/hr)$

= 5.6 hrs

Bonus Question

10. After surveying, you find that the difference in elevation between a water source and an irrigation distribution canal is 30 meters. The horizontal distance from the water source to the canal is 120 meters.

Approximately how long a length of pipe will be needed to run from the source to the canal, assuming the slope of the hill is constant?

Answer: $(30)^2 + (120)^2 = x^2$

$x^2 = 900 + 14{,}400$

$x^2 = 15{,}300$

$x = 123.7$ meters

# SECTION 2

# COMMUNITY ORGANIZATION AND MOBILIZATION

- Conducting a Community Needs Assessment
- Community Organization and Mobilization
- Communication Techniques
- Problem Solving
- Working with a Community Water Users Association
- Construction Projects in a Community

- Exam: Section 2 (Community Participation)

## COMMUNITY ORGANIZATION AND MOBILIZATION

**Session Topic:** Conducting a Community Needs Assessment

**Session Goal:** For Trainees to identify important attributes and resources within their communities that will support irrigation or other project developments.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) For Trainees to describe how they will use community assessments at their work sites.
(2) For Trainees to list the information needed to assess the resources in a community.
(3) For Trainees to identify various ways that this information can be gathered without disrupting or raising unnecessary suspicions in a community.
(4) For Trainees to identify pitfalls and problems they are likely to encounter doing community assessments.
(5) For Trainees to prepare a community survey form that they can use during their Volunteer service.
(6) For Trainees to gain field experience conducting rapid needs assessments in a rural community.

**Overview:** An initial task for Volunteers will be identifying human and physical resources available to support project efforts. Volunteers need to assess administrative, managerial, and technical skills that are present in their communities and document equipment, tools, and other physical resources that can be reliably applied to project needs. During the training it is expected that Trainees will work with small projects in local communities. This session will give Trainees an opportunity to begin interacting with this participating community and organize information that will help their training field projects.

**Session Activities:**

Time

15 Min. Have Trainees brainstorm the process involved in developing a total project or program plan. Example:

Problem Identification and Analysis

Needs and Resource Assessment

Project Plan and Design

Implementation Administration Evaluation

Operations and Maintenance

The discussion should include a description of ways of viewing "needs" before going out to collect data. "Needs" can be defined to include:

- **felt needs** - a wish list, unrestrained by cost, reality and priorities;
- **expressed needs** - needs expressed by people's actions;
- **normative needs** - needs seen from the perspective of experts in the field or public officials; and
- **comparative needs** - needs resulting from inequalities in abilities, services, or resource availability.

10 Min. Have Trainees select a facilitator to record ideas. The trainers should move to the back of the room and let the Trainees run the session from here on out. Trainees can brainstorm specific topics that should be included in conducting an analysis of the resources available and needs that must be met to support projects in a community. The resource topics should include physical and human resources, and the needs assessment should identify community concerns and problems (e.g., health, skills, materials, and finances). Trainees should compile a comprehensive list of topics on a flip chart and then organize the topics by category, recognizing that not all of this information may be needed for every project. Data requirements are project specific, and there is no need to collect data just for the sake of having data. The Trainees should then describe unobtrusive methods that they can apply to collect this information. Examples include:

- reading and observing,
- interviews with local officials,
- informal interviews and conversations with local people,
- public meetings, and
- participation of villagers in your work activities.

Trainer should remind Trainees that this data collection must be done in a manner that does not arouse suspicions about a Volunteer's motives and Trainees should identify measures for ensuring that the community is supportive of the data collection (for example, have someone from the community do the information collection). Trainer should pull group back together with a discussion of situation analysis and needs assessment processes. This discussion should include:

1. One shot "complete" assessments versus a continuous process that recognizes that as people get more experience and exposure the inventory process improves.
2. The evolutionary nature of needs. At first, people only assess immediate needs. As these initial needs are met, people move on to new needs and long range plans. Also, people's perceptions of needs and problems typically expands with time and participation. Project planning requires a flexible process that can accommodate this evolutionary nature of needs.
3. Need and resource assessment must be a participatory process, and not a blueprint approach done by "experts". Again, the Volunteer's role is to facilitate, motivate, and guide.
4. The importance of communication skills, especially active listening and the use of open-ended questions.
5. The influence of cultural factors and sensitivities (politeness, protocol) on obtaining misleading information.
6. Visible versus invisible needs or resources. Actual relationships, indebtedness, and transaction processes in the community may be very different than what initially appears on the surface.

20 Min. Trainer should explain to Trainees that they will now divide into groups of three and go into a nearby community to collect information that would support a small-scale irrigation project plan. Trainer should provide a brief background on the social and environmental conditions in the community and draw a simple community map to help Trainees avoid getting lost. This task is best accomplished by having the trainer assign each group specific topics to research and by having the groups dispersed in more than one community. The groups should decide on their own how they will organize their effort, delegate responsibilities, and consolidate the data.

180 Min. Trainees are transported and left in a central point in each community. A specific time and place for retrieving the Trainees will be determined, and at the conclusion of the field data collection, the Trainees are transported back to the site.

40 Min. Trainer asks each group to prepare a brief presentation describing the following:

- In general, what happened during your survey?
- What information did you obtain?

- What problems or pitfalls did you encounter?
- What might you have done differently, and how otherwise would you have done it?
- How do you feel you will apply these skills in your work at your site?

10 Min. Trainer summarizes session by discussing the relationship between accurately assessing community resources and needs and mobilizing and organizing communities.

**Trainer Notes:** This session requires a great deal of preparation. Communities must be identified and prepared to receive Trainees. Trainers should be prepared to transport Trainees to perhaps several remote locations. In some in-country situations, language skills may be a constraint and may prevent Trainees from working in the field. In these instances, the field session can be eliminated, and this session can be done in the classroom as a role play. Divide the Trainees in half and have one group represent the community members while the other half conducts a needs assessment. Doing the session in the classroom should reduce the total time required by a factor of three.

**Materials Required:**

* clipboards, pens or pencils
* vehicle transport
* patience

**Selected References:**

Appendix B, Irrigation Reference Manual: Community Situation Analysis/Needs Assessment

## COMMUNITY ORGANIZATION AND MOBILIZATION

**Session Topic:** Community Organization and Mobilization

**Session Goal:** For Trainees to identify and describe techniques they can use to mobilize community participation in projects.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) For Trainees to describe techniques or strategies that can help mobilize a community for a development project.
(2) For Trainees to practice group decision making and identify important decision-making skills.
(3) For Trainees to practice organizing community support and participation in their field projects.

**Overview:** This session should be done prior to initiating any field work projects. It combines basic theoretical concepts of community development with an opportunity for Trainees to plan how they will involve community members in their field work.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer should present visually and descriptively one or two case examples of community involvement in small-scale irrigation systems. For each case, have the Trainees list the important steps to follow in organizing and mobilizing communities. For example,

1. Visiting community, both formally and informally.
2. Identifying community leaders and determining community roles and responsibilities.
3. Conducting a meeting in the community to identify problems and explore issues around irrigation projects.
4. Working with community members to conduct a baseline community needs and resources assessment.
5. Facilitating the development of a water users association (if not already in place).
6. Facilitating water users association design and implementation of project activities:
   a. meetings with community organization leaders,
   b. contacts with owners of commercial establishments, farmers, and financially important community members,
   c. meetings with other organized community groups,

   d. meetings with school teachers, and
   e. development of support groups.
7. Implementing project:
   a. defining community contribution to the project (labor, money, materials),
   b. preparing agreements and contracts,
   c. defining roles and responsibilities, and
   d. establishing administrative structure.

120 Min. Trainers transport Trainees to their proposed work sites for field projects. The Trainees should have already made arrangements with people from the community to have a community meeting (this can be done through the trainers, if necessary). The Trainees should have informed people in the community that the objective of this meeting is to present ideas about the field projects the Trainees want to do and identify ways in which the community members might want to get involved. It is best to have divided the Trainees into groups of four or less and have each group work with different organizations or activities in the community. The Trainees should be prepared to lead a meeting, present diagrams and descriptions of their project ideas, answer questions, generate enthusiasm for the activity, and organize a work schedule. The actual project to be undertaken should be small and simple enough to be accomplished in a very limited time frame and be only a very minor demand on community members' time.

30 Min. Return to the training site. Trainers should facilitate an open discussion of the Trainees' experiences. The discussion should identify both successful and ineffective techniques and strategies used to motivate and expedite community participation in the proposed project. Conclude session by having Trainees state what measures they will use to ensure that the community will continue to be integrated into the planning and completion of the field work.

**Trainer Notes:** This session requires some prep work for the trainers. Community members need to be very clear as to the purpose of the field work and of the Trainees request for help. Trainers should also be prepared to respond to frustrated Trainees, who may quickly discover how little extra time and energy is available in many rural communities. If the field project activities are not being done in active community settings, then this session can be done in the classroom as a role play. Divide the Trainees in half and have one group represent the community members while the other half attempts to mobilize them. Doing the session in the classroom should reduce the total time required by a factor of three.

**Materials Required:**

- transport
- visual aids, presentation materials (Trainees need these for their community meeting)

**References:**

Appendix B, Irrigation Reference Manual: Water Users Associations
Appendix D, Irrigation Reference Manual: Case Studies

Bunch, R. 1982. Two Ears of Corn: A Guide to People-Centered Agricultural Improvement. World Neighbors, Oklahoma City, Oklahoma. pp. 18-36 and 57-70.

## COMMUNITY ORGANIZATION AND MOBILIZATION

**Session Topic:** Communication Techniques

**Session Goal:** For Trainees to participate in exercises that will enable them to test and strengthen their ability to communicate ideas, feelings, and symbols.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) For Trainees to identify skills that facilitate effective communication.
(2) For Trainees to apply these communication skills in both formal and informal settings.
(3) For Trainees to identify communication skills they intend to improve during the course of the training.

**Overview:** Much of the Volunteers' effectiveness on the job and personal satisfaction living in a rural community will depend on their skills in communicating with people of another culture. Successful Volunteer projects require a sense of trust and goodwill to be developed, and this, in turn, will be determined by the Volunteer's ability to communicate ideas and feelings clearly and confidently. During their service Volunteers may find themselves conducting training workshops for rural community members, organizing and facilitating group meetings, participating in detailed planning and decision-making sessions, meeting with government officials, or simply stopping to chat with people in the street. In all of these settings, the success of their relations will depend upon the strength of their communication skills. This session provides Trainees with opportunities to identify basic skills that can make any communication effort successful. Trainees then participate in exercises to test their abilities to apply these skills.

**Session Activities:**

Time

15 Min. Trainer introduces session by facilitating brief definition of communication and description of what is involved in the communication process. Trainer should emphasize that communication is the process by which two individuals attempt to exchange a set of ideas, feelings, symbols, and meanings. Communication occurs both with and without language. We communicate with our facial expressions and other body language and often through some other visual form (e.g., pictures, symbols). Trainer should ask Trainees to identify the causes of misunderstanding and misinterpreted messages. What are the factors that tend to promote communication versus those that seem to prevent us from conveying an idea or feeling? In what ways does

"culture" influence this communication process? Trainees should then list factors they feel are intrinsic to promoting communication between peoples of different cultures.

20 Min. Trainees each select a partner, grab a piece of paper and a color pen. One person will act as the "sender" and the other person will be the "receiver." While sitting back to back, the sender will draw a picture, and then describe his or her drawing in such a way that the receiver can replicate it on his or her own paper. During this process, the receiver cannot communicate in any manner other than to listen carefully and try to draw what the sender is describing. After 10 minutes, the exercise is stopped and the two drawings are compared. Trainer should bring the group together again and have each pair discuss their experience. Notice which details are left out and how details were altered. Discuss factors that influence our "filtering" of information as we receive and process it.

15 Min. Trainer should select four partners from the Trainee pairings and ask each pair to describe how they might improve the four basic skills essential to any communication exchange: 1) active listening, 2) asking questions, 3) feedback, and 4) non-verbal cues. If there are language instructors or others from the host country available, they can apply the Trainee descriptions of these skills to their own culture through example.

10 Min. Trainer concludes with discussion of the impossibility of "pure" communication and the influence of our own perceptions and filtration devices. Each person has her or his own construction of "reality," and this is very much influenced by the social conditions in which we have been raised and now live. By recognizing and working with these four basic communication skills we can find that the messages we send through language, drawings, or simple body language can be more effectively received. As Volunteers, the use of communication skills will be applied daily in doing extension work, conducting workshops, identifying problems, planning projects, and just everyday social interactions. Strengthening communication skills is perhaps the Volunteer's biggest and most important challenge. Other opportunities will occur throughout the training for Trainees to work with these skills. (If time and interest permits, the drawing exercise can be repeated, with the sender becoming the receiver and the receiver the sender.)

**Trainer Notes:** If language instructors are part of the training, it may be useful and interesting to have them participate as one part of the drawing team. This adds a valuable cross-cultural dimension to the exercise, which may not come across if it is merely Trainees working among themselves.

**Materials Required:**

- * drawing paper, colored pens or pencils
- * flip chart or other visual aids to describe four basic communication skills

**Selected References:**

Appendix B, Irrigation Reference Manual: Communication Techniques

## COMMUNITY ORGANIZATION AND MOBILIZATION

**Session Topic:** Problem Solving

**Session Goal:** For Trainees to develop skills that will enable them to anticipate typical problem situations and develop effective solutions.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) For Trainees to identify cultural factors that define and influence how we define and respond to problems.
(2) For Trainees to list a series of steps that can be taken to solve any problem they might encounter, technical or personal.
(3) For Trainees to identify possible problems they anticipate after arriving at their site and to select solutions to these problems that should work for them.

**Overview:** The personal techniques we use to solve problems, and the degree to which we are successful in solving them, essentially determines how well things work out in our lives. Volunteers will encounter a succession of personal and professional problems throughout their period of service. Their ability to create positive solutions to these problems will determine the degree of fulfillment they feel personally and which their community will experience as a result of their Volunteer efforts. In this session Trainees identify the cultural and personal factors that cause us to identify a situation as a "problem" in the first place. A role-play exercise is used to enable Trainees to map out steps that can be applied to any problem situation. Trainees then spend time individually anticipating the kinds of problems they are likely to encounter after completing the training and the kinds of responses they know will work to solve these problems.

**Session Activities:**

Time

10 Min. Trainer begins by stating that "problems" are really just "opportunities" - it all depends on how you look at things and how flexible you are in figuring out solutions. Trainer can provide the following examples:

Given the Roman Numeral IX, use one line to make this "nine" into a "six" answer. Solution: S + IX = SIX. (No one said the answer had to be a Roman Numeral! Listening skills again ....)

Given . . .

. . .

. . .

Use 4 lines to connect all of the dots. (No one said you had to stay within the boundaries of the lines! Listening skills again ....)

25 Min. Trainees participate in a role play in which one Trainee feels that everything in his or her life is going wrong. No one at the site will talk to them, there is way too much work, and it is ridiculous anyway to assume that an untrained person could ever develop an irrigation system that would really work. The Volunteer is considering giving up and just going back home. The other Trainee, after listening carefully, begins to ask questions that lead to the true cause of the "problem": the frustrated Volunteer is simply lonely and is masking that loneliness by working on building a project day and night, with little break in effort. The friend asks the frustrated Trainee if he or she has felt this before and then asks what kinds of things have worked in the past to deal with feeling lonely or out of place. The friend asks the frustrated Trainee to be honest about which solutions he or she is most likely actually to pursue and to describe why. Once the friend feels some sense of commitment from the frustrated Trainee about the preferred solutions, then the frustrated Trainee is asked what he or she will do to get out of this rut and when he or she will start to take action. The guiding friend asks the troubled friend to send a postcard in a few weeks to say how it is all going.

25 Min. Trainer leads Trainees through discussion in which they list the steps taken by the "guiding friend" to help the troubled friend solve the problem. These steps should depict problem solving as:

1. setting a positive environment that feels supportive, and in which solutions seem possible;
2. defining the problem as precisely as possible;
3. discussing possible solutions;
4. identifying the pros and cons of each solution;
5. selecting a solution;
6. developing an action plan; and
7. after initiating action, taking time to reflect and evaluate your results. If the solution

needs modification, just build it into the effort.

Trainer emphasizes that these steps are applicable to any problems, be they technical concerns about irrigation or personal concerns. Trainees list concepts or language that can get in the way of constructive problem solving:

- replaying the past in your mind,
- having vague goals,
- making judgments about others and allowing these judgments to influence your problem definition and possible solutions,
- using the words never, impossible, can't, try, limitation, if only, but, difficult, ought to, should, and, doubt, and
- using any words that tend to measure, judge, or condemn you or someone else.

Trainer describes the value of creative, positive visualization as a problem-solving tool. Try to see what the "problem" looks like when it is "solved" or what life looks like without the "problem." Develop a very clear picture of this in your mind. Then allow yourself to visualize steps that occurred to create this positive vision. Trainer concludes by having Trainees describe other such techniques that work for them to fulfill the 7-step problem solving procedure.

**Trainer Notes:** Case studies can be used as examples of problems to be solved, although the emphasis must be placed on the *process* used to solve the problem and not necessarily the solution.

**Materials Required:** None

**Selected References:**

Appendix B, Irrigation Reference Manual: Problem Solving
Appendix D, Irrigationf Reference Manual: Case Studies

## COMMUNITY ORGANIZATION AND MOBILIZATION

**Session Topic:** Working With A Community Water Association

**Session Goal:** Trainees will describe the role, function, and structure of a typical water users association and describe the role of a Peace Corps Volunteer in working with these associations.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will describe the functions and structure of a water users association.
(2) Trainees will participate in a role play to identify typical problems and constraints in maintaining associations.

**Overview:** Well organized and administered water users associations can ensure effective operation and maintenance of irrigation systems. In this session Trainees work with skills developed in the Communication Skills, Community Needs Assessment, and Community Organization and Mobilization sessions to identify needs and problems in working with associations.

**Session Activities:**

Time

15 Min. Trainer will present a brief overview of the structure and functions of a hypothetical water users association and describe the role that this association is playing in operating and maintaining a local irrigation system. This overview sets the stage for the subsequent role play but should also serve as a concise but comprehensive overview of organizational and administrative needs in forming and sustaining water user groups.

30 Min. Trainees divide into two groups. One group, comprised of two Trainees, represents recently arrived extension workers who are trying to become familiar with local irrigation practices. A second group with 3-4 Trainees will represent members of the water users association. The extension workers have arrived to interview the water users association to learn the following:

- What are the typical crops being planted and how are local people managing the cropping pattern in the valley?
- What kinds of operation and maintenance practices are the association using to manage water?

- What kinds of problems are the farmers finding, and how is the association helping local farmers work with their problems?
- How often does the association meet, and can the extension workers attend the next meeting?

The trainer should coach the Trainees acting as the association members before the role play. Give the Trainees suggestions for a few personal problems within the association in an effort to make this exercise at least a bit realistic.

15 Min. Trainees assess the role play and identify important considerations that must be resolved in establishing or working with a water users association. Trainees develop a list of procedures that can be used to resolve disputes in groups. Trainer provides a brief overview of several local water user associations and discusses some of their strengths, weaknesses, problems, and accomplishments.

60 Min. Trainees visit representatives of a local water users association and interview them about organizational structure, administrative procedures, member responsibilities, and overall objectives.

**Trainer Notes:** It is important to make the role play realistic and not just a funny dialogue. Trainers should coach the Trainees acting as association representatives, and give them some basic information about the hypothetical group they represent. Trainer should visit with a local water users group and provide them with some background on the training objectives and Trainees skill levels.

**Materials Required:**

* transport

**Selected References:**

Appendix B, Irrigation Reference Manual: Water Users Associations

## COMMUNITY ORGANIZATION AND MOBILIZATION

**Session Topic:** Construction Projects in a Community

**Session Goal:** For Trainees to identify technical and cross-cultural skills they want to further develop to facilitate their community projects.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) For Trainees to examine and evaluate the construction of projects in a community as a cross-cultural experience.
(2) For Trainees to describe the relationship between their community construction projects and the work they anticipate doing as Volunteers.
(3) For trainers to provide feedback on Trainee construction projects.

**Overview:** This session, best done at a mid-point in the training, provides trainers and Trainees an opportunity to review field work to date and identify the cross-cultural, as well as technical, learnings that result from the field work. This session should be done as an informal dialogue between the trainer(s) and Trainees, without any structured activities.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer should assemble the following questions on a flip chart, and then ask the Trainees to discuss as a group their responses to each question. Trainer should reveal only one question at a time to avoid having Trainees responding to all questions at once.

- What have been your major problems or frustrations in the field project work? What personal changes did you need to make in order to adjust to these problems?

- What do you perceive to be the community's view of Peace Corps and of you as Volunteers? In what ways do you feel you influenced that perception?

- What did you observe to be the strong social institutions in the community? In what ways did you feel a part of them or separate from them?

- What technical knowledge related to the field work did community members demonstrate? How did you work with their skills and incorporate them into the effort?

- What impact did the physical work environment have on your field work? How did you adjust to the environment?

- What were the main positive aspects of working in the community?

Trainer should summarize key points and concepts being made by the group on a flip chart and then conclude by linking this information to material covered in the sessions on Conducting a Community Needs Assessment and Community Organization and Mobilization.

## EXAM: SECTION 2
## COMMUNITY PARTICIPATION

1. Describe the typical structure of a water users association. What are typical problems and pitfalls that can occur in organizing and maintaining such an association?

2. Describe five functions of a community water users association.

3. Describe five typical indicators that reflect strong community interest in a project.

4. Identify and describe two methods to assess community resources. Describe which method is more appropriate in your opinion and why.

5. A community has invited you to come and explain what is required to put together a basic irrigation system. Unfortunately, this community speaks an unusual tribal dialect, and you know only a few words in their language. Still, there you are, and the villagers are awaiting your explanation. Convey the information as best you can without using language.

6. You and your neighbor have built a very small irrigation system on your own, without consulting other people in the village. You had decided that this was okay, since the system was intended to water only your and your neighbor's gardens, and no one else seemed to express any interest in connecting into the system. Unfortunately, the canal to your neighbor's property overflowed during a recent flood and completely washed out *his* neighbor's garden, who also happens to be an important village leader. Not surprisingly, the flood also wiped out many other people's fields. The village leader, however, is irate, and blames you and your neighbor for the loss of crops. Your neighbor is hopelessly depressed and rarely comes out of his house. The village leader is telling others that they should be very careful about seeking your advice, since your canals obviously don't work. You decide that you clearly have a problem here, and you had better deal with it quickly. Describe the steps you would take to organize a solution to this problem.

7. Describe three techniques you would use to stimulate community interest in a project.

# SECTION 3

# INVENTORYING THE PHYSICAL AND BIOLOGICAL RESOURCE BASE

* Watershed Hydrology
* Water Flow Measurements
* Surveying and Field Measurements
* Soil-Plant-Water Relationships
* Conducting Environmental Assessments

* Exam: Section 3 (Field Measurements)

## INVENTORYING THE PHYSICAL AND BIOLOGICAL RESOURCE BASE

**Session Topic:** Watershed Hydrology

**Session Goal:** To enable Trainees to identify potential water supplies for irrigation projects and to manage soil and water resources sustainably within an irrigation project area.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to demonstrate graphically the basic concepts of the hydrologic cycle and describe important physical factors influencing availability of surface and ground water supplies.
(2) Trainees will be able to delineate watersheds using topographic maps and field observations.
(3) Trainees will be able to identify potential sources of water using available maps and field observations.

**Overview:** One of the first tasks facing irrigation Volunteers will be to identify water sources that can be managed to supply an irrigation project over a long term period. To do this work, they will need to understand basic hydrologic concepts and soil and water conservation principles.

**Session Activities:**

Time

75 Min. Trainer displays a large picture with all of the key components of the hydrologic cycle but without any flow connections. Include in the picture a diversion dam and canal running to an agricultural field. Also include a diversion running to a storage pond and several wells. Ask for a Trainee to use the drawing to show the movement of water in the hydrologic cycle, including the influence of such engineered actions as stream diversions and wells. Encourage other Trainees to help if this Trainee has any problems. Trainer then delivers a brief lecture describing each process of the cycle, including typical procedures and units for measuring each factor. Have Trainees identify all potential sources of water in the hydrologic cycle and describe techniques that can be used to tap these sources. Trainer should then expand on this information, describing surface water and ground water hydrology. Include in this discussion information on the formation of rivers, streams, and springs, and some basic information on water quality. Trainees need to understand that water quality is a relative term that describes a set of conditions we want to maintain. Good water quality for irrigation will

differ from the water quality needed for potable systems. Trainer should discuss some of the parameters important for irrigation projects and indicate how these parameters are measured. The trainer should conclude by facilitating a description of all of the factors involved in assessing the "condition" of a watershed, describing the tools commonly used for conducting such an analysis, and having the Trainees outline a process or set of procedures they would follow to do a watershed assessment. The trainer should be certain to demonstrate graphically factors that can be used to identify a watershed in a declining or healthy condition. The group should now take a short break before reconvening outside.

60 Min. Trainer should bring Trainees to an outdoor location where they can investigate hydrology in the field. Trainees are provided with a topographic map and instructed to delineate a specific sub-watershed and map all of the drainages, ponds, or lakes in this sub-watershed. They should then walk the watershed and prepare a written description of watershed conditions, determining the sensitivity and resilience of the basin.

15 Min. Trainer should conclude session by indicating the role of watershed management and soil and water conservation in small-scale irrigation systems and by encouraging Trainees to think of the watershed as the boundary in which they should plan all of their irrigation projects.

**Trainer Notes:** If the Trainees have a confident understanding of the process and procedures involved in assessing watershed conditions, then this situation flows more quickly.

**Materials Required:**

- compass
- topographic maps
- visual aids depicting hydrologic processes

**References:**

Chapter 2, Irrigation Reference Manual: Watersheds

## INVENTORYING THE PHYSICAL AND BIOLOGICAL RESOURCE BASE

**Session Topic:** Water Flow Measurements

**Session Goal:** To enable Trainees to measure and calculate water flow in small streams, canals, and springs.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to determine the most appropriate method for measuring flow rates in the field.
(2) Trainees will be able to site, construct, and install simple streamflow measuring devices.
(3) Trainees will obtain field experience in measuring the flow rates of small streams, canals, or springs using several different methods.

**Overview:** It is essential for irrigation Volunteers to determine accurately and consistently the volume and rate of water available to supply irrigation systems. This session builds on work in previous sessions in basic hydrology, watershed management, and basic hydraulics. Having learned how weather, landforms, and physical constraints affect the movement of water in nature, Trainees now obtain some hands-on experience estimating flow rates in streams and canals using very simple measurement techniques.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 min. Trainer will introduce section by presenting a lecture on streamflow measurement units and standard flow measurement devices. Lecture will relate back to basic hydrologic principles, indicating seasonal variations in flow rates and the influence of watershed conditions on flow characteristics. The use of topographic maps will be emphasized in selection of sites for field measurements. Trainer will demonstrate simple measurement practices in the classroom using a "bucket" method, a "float" method, and the use of constructed weirs. Throughout the lecture the trainer will emphasize the need to rely on locally available materials and the importance of ensuring accuracy in measurement tests. Trainer will demonstrate basic calculations and use of simple tables and graphs to facilitate measurement practices. At the end of the lecture, the trainer will divide the Trainees into groups of three and distribute materials for field work.

90 min. Trainer will lead Trainees into the field where they will work in teams of three experimenting with flow

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

measurement strategies at a small stream, canal, or spring site. Each team of Trainees will select a site in which to conduct sample flow measurements. The team will then use locally available materials to conduct or construct, as necessary, the appropriate measurement technique. Trainees will use the "bucket," "float," and weir methods to measure flow. Estimated flow rates for each method will be recorded by the Trainee teams.

30 min. Trainer will lead groups back into the classroom and the teams will compare measurement results. The trainer will facilitate a discussion of probable reasons for any variations in flow estimates, typical problems that may arise to influence the accuracy of measurement readings, and areas in which Trainees feel they will need further work.

**Trainer Notes:** Few Trainees will have had field experience in measuring and recording natural flow rates from streams, canals, or springs. Initial efforts by Trainees are likely to yield a few significant inaccuracies in estimating flow rates, and this can result in serious problems when judging the capabilities of a water source to meet proposed irrigation system requirements. It will be very important for the trainer to take the lead in instructing and guiding Trainees to apply the basic measurement concepts. The trainer should be prepared to present a concise lecture on flow measurement techniques and respond to field measurement questions concerning the use of tables to estimate water flow rates over a constructed weir and preferred site locations for taking measurements.

**Materials Required:**

* 100-foot tape measure
* carpenter's level, hammer, hand saw, shovels
* one to four 5 gallon buckets
* plywood sheets or other scrap wood boards
* PVC pipe of various lengths and diameters (diameter size will be dependent on flow rates)
* scrap pieces of sheet metal
* stopwatches
* string and flotation object
* stakes

**Selected References:**

Chapter 2, Irrigation Reference Manual: Water Measurement
International Irrigation Center Module #32

Jordan, T. D. 1984. A Handbook of Gravity-Flow Water Systems, Intermediate Technology Publications, pp. 8-12. Technology Publications, pp. 128-30.

## INVENTORYING THE PHYSICAL AND BIOLOGICAL RESOURCE BASE

**Session Topic:** Surveying and Field Measurements

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to perform surveying techniques to map a field as part of planning irrigation systems.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will construct and calibrate an A-frame level.
(2) Trainees will perform a mapping exercise in which they will determine the area and major slopes of a field, and sketch in the different types of vegetative cover and natural waterways of a field.
(3) Trainees will determine the elevational difference between two points using several alternative surveying techniques: hand and Abney level, carpenter's level, and line and water level.
(4) Trainees will lay out a field in a grid pattern, determine the elevational differences at each point, and sketch a topographical map of the area.

**Overview:** Surveying practices to determine land topography are an essential component in the planning of an irrigation system. Surveying skills are essential in order to allow Trainees to confidently design systems, and assess water supply and erosion conditions. This session provides Trainees with opportunities to work with several surveying techniques, enabling them to accomplish survey needs where tools and equipment may be limited.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer presents a drawing of a field and asks Trainees how they will determine the topography and area of this field. Trainer records suggested techniques on a flip chart. Trainer then presents brief lecturette on four surveying techniques which can be performed with minimal equipment: A-frame; carpenter's level; hand or Abney level; or other appropriate level. Trainer should have an example of the materials used for each technique in the room, and demonstrate their use for the Trainees. Discussion includes methods for determining the number of points required in completing a survey, and proper techniques for recording data. Trainer facilitates Trainees to describe how these data can then be used to construct a topographical representation of the field in the drawing with which the session began.

30 Min. Trainees break into groups of three and are given instructions to construct a simple A-frame level. Trainer allows them to work independently, but moves about answering questions. After completing their A-frame, the session moves to the field.

60 Min. Trainers lead Trainees to a field, and the Trainees remain in their groups of three. Each group will be asked to mark out a contour line using the A-frame level. Then each group will be told to determine the area of the field, and the results of each group will be compared at the conclusion of the session. A first priority will be for Trainees to measure their "pace," or the length of one step. (A "pace" can also be measured as the length of two steps, whereby every two steps equals one pace.) Trainees will then use an Abney level to determine slope percentage in the field. They should also experiment with other levels for estimating slope percentage and compare the results. After completing this task, Trainees should use the compass/string method to determine the area of the field.

60 Min. Trainees experiment with the use of the hand or Abney level, carpenter's level, and other levels for measuring elevational differences. After the Trainees feel confident in the use of these techniques, the trainer assigns each group one of the methods and has the groups work sequentially to determine the elevation difference between two points in the field. After completing the exercise and recording the data, the groups compare their results and discuss advantages and disadvantages of each method.

30 Min. Trainees mark the area of the field in a grid (squares) with stakes. Each group of Trainees selects a preferred method for measuring elevational differences and takes elevation differences off a benchmark, carefully recording the data. Trainer should try to make sure that several methods are applied. Trainees use the data to sketch a topographical map on graph paper. Trainer asks Trainees to describe all the information they can obtain from a topographic map and makes certain they feel confident making one. Trainer concludes session by asking Trainees to describe all the applications they can see for these surveying skills covered in the session.

**Trainer Notes:** It is important to select a field with some gradient to it, if possible. Trainers should also be certain that all equipment is functioning properly before beginning the session.

**Materials Required:**

- carpenter's level, hand or Abney level
- compass
- graph paper
- stakes (can be made by Trainees)
- string
- two stadia rods, 1/2" transparent tubing (for water line level)
- tape measure

**References:**

Chapter 2, Irrigation Reference Manual: Surveying; Profiling; Steps in Making a Topographic Map; Abney Level Surveying; Simple Levels for Use in Surveying Contour Lines; Compass Use
Appendix A, Irrigation Reference Manual: Conversion Factors and Common Formulas

## INVENTORYING THE PHYSICAL AND BIOLOGICAL RESOURCE BASE

**Session Topic:** Soil-Plant-Water Relationships

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to demonstrate and apply basic concepts relating to physical characteristicsof soil, and describe the relationship to irrigation design, operation, and maintenance.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to identify different soil textures using the "feel" method.
(2) Trainees will be able to describe the relationship between soil texture, structure, and plant rooting to the size of the soil water reservoir available to the plant.
(3) Trainees will perform an infiltration test, assess the intake characteristics of the soil, and describe the factors that affect infiltration.

**Overview:** Certain basic relationships between soils, plants, and water must be understood before Trainees can do irrigation system designs or develop operation and maintenance plans.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer presents brief lecture on soil texture, structure, and the relationship of these factors to aeration, permeability, waterholding capacity, and drainage. Trainer then brings out several bags of soil of varying soil texture. Trainees individually practice estimating soil texture using the "feel" method. Trainer should show Trainees how to form a ribbon between their fingers and encourage Trainees to make personal notes as to what factors are most important for them in getting an intuitive sense for this process. Trainer then brings out 2-3 soil samples in jars. Trainees are instructed to add water and a little bit of soap to the jars and then shake them up very vigorously for a minute or two. The jars are then placed on a level surface and left until the end of the session.

60 Min. Trainer graphically presents a brief overview of the basic concepts of the movement and storage of water in soil, indicating how texture, structure, and plant rooting depths influence the availability of water to plants. Trainer takes Trainees out to a field and instructs them to work in pairs. Each pair should carefully dig holes to 1 meter in at least  locations, examining the soil texture and structure and following

plant roots in the soil. One hole (pit) may be made with a shovel, and another should be constructed with a soil auger. It is advisable to have Trainees work with some wet soils and some dry and to identify the characteristics that may be affecting the varying soil moisture in each location.

95 Min. Trainer now instructs each pair to conduct an infiltration test. Trainees should build a 1 meter square basin in a level area with walls 25-30 centimeters in height. The wells should be well compacted. A thin piece of plastic should be placed on the bottom of the basin. The soil used to build the sides of the basins must come from outside the basin, since the soil surface inside the basin should not be disturbed in any manner. Trainees should have a ruler available to measure the water level and a watch to record time. One Trainee should work with the ruler and the other record data and keep track of time. Water can first be added to a small circle of land on the perimeter of the basin to avoid subsequent lateral migration of water from the area inside the basin. Water should then be poured into the basin to a starting depth of 15-20 centimeters. The water levels are then measured at intervals of 1, 2, 5, 10, 15, 30, 45, and 60 minutes. If the water depth reaches 10 centimeters before 60 minutes have passed, then additional water should be added and factored into the total amount applied. Trainees should be recording infiltration rates throughout this process. In between the water measurements, the trainer(s) can discuss the effect of soil texture, structure, compaction, and cultivation methods on infiltration processes, as well as the ways in which infiltration rates influence irrigation method selection and system design. Trainer(s) should also point out to Trainees how infiltration rates change with time and discuss some of the physical reasons that cause this. At the completion of the test, Trainees will use graph paper to plot time versus cumulative infiltration in centimeters.

5 Min. Trainees can return to inspect the soil samples in their jars and compare the different methods for approximating soil texture.

**Materials Required:**

- empty jars and containers full of water
- shovels
- varying soil samples in bags
- plastic sheets (2 m x 2 m)
- rulers, stopwatch, graph paper
- soil auger

**Selected References:**

Chapter 2, Irrigation Reference Manual: Soil-Plant-Water Relationships
International Irrigation Center Modules #2, #3, #4, and #20

## INVENTORYING THE PHYSICAL AND BIOLOGICAL RESOURCE BASE

**Session Topic:** Conducting Environmental Assessments

**Session Goal:** To have Trainees identify all of the factors that need to be considered to conduct simple evaluations of the potential adverse and positive environmental impacts of proposed projects and to apply this information to do an environmental assessment of their own field project.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) For Trainees to identify the potential environmental problems and benefits that can result from small-scale irrigation projects.
(2) For Trainees to list the environmental parameters that must be assessed in doing simple environmental assessments.
(3) For Trainees to prepare an initial environmental exam form that they can use to assess projects.
(4) For Trainees to conduct a simple initial environmental exam of one of their field projects.

**Overview:** Irrigation projects have been criticized for creating numerous adverse environmental problems, ranging from disrupting wetland habitats to overloading soils with salts. Most of the environmental problems that result from irrigation developments are the consequence of poor planning or project management. Identifying potential environmental problems *before* initiating any project activities and putting in place measures that will avoid or mitigate these problems is the only way to guarantee that a proposed project will be socially and ecologically successful. During this session the Trainees will explore the ecological concerns that all irrigation projects should consider and will prepare a form that they can use to quickly and properly evaluate potential impacts.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer presents a diagram of a drainage basin with a small-scale irrigation project as one of many activities occurring in this basin. Trainer then asks Trainees to describe all of the ways in which this irrigation project affects the physical, biological, and social environment in which the project will occur. Trainees should first try to define what they feel is the area being affected by the irrigation project. They should then describe the nature of the impacts that might occur. The trainer should be certain to remind Trainees that impacts can be both positive and negative, if they don't note this themselves. As Trainees describe potential impacts,

trainer should record them on a flip chart under category headings of physical, biological, or social.

15 Min. Trainer presents a brief lecture on the use of environmental assessments to identify potential impacts from projects and incorporate measures that will avoid or mitigate these potential impacts. If available, trainer can review a sample assessment done for an in-country irrigation project with the group, describing the components of the assessment, level of detail used, and applications. Trainer should emphasize that environmental assessments are intended to be part of a project design and thus represent important design information that is to be *applied* and not simply recorded.

30 Min. Trainees select someone to facilitate the session, and they are given the task of developing a simple form that they can use to do initial environmental reviews in the field. The form should respect their own skill levels and not necessarily try to mimic the complexity of a full scale environmental assessment. It should, however, include field observations of conditions; professional judgments or calculations, where appropriate; and clear descriptions of measures that will be done to minimize or avoid negative impacts. Trainer can then offer to have their form typed and copied. Trainees are then given a homework assignment to prepare a completed initial environmental review of their field project(s). In completing this assignment, the Trainees should assign specific topic areas to one or two Trainees and then appoint someone to pull all of the diverse information into one report. The final report should be the concensus of the entire group of Trainees.

**Trainer Notes:** If possible, obtain several completed environmental assessments of small or medium-scale irrigation projects for Trainees to review. This session is best done just prior to the point when Trainees will begin their field work.

**Materials Required:**

* sample environmental assessments

**Selected References:**

Chapter 2, Irrigation Reference Manual: Conducting Initial Environmental Evaluations of Irrigation Projects; Illustrative Environmental Review Form

## EXAM: SECTION 3
## FIELD MEASUREMENTS

1. Draw the hydrologic cycle and explain its importance.

2. In doing a watershed inventory, what physical characteristics should be analyzed?

   Answer: soils
   hydrology
   topography
   vegetation
   land use

3. List 3 methods used to measure water flow in a small stream, and describe their installation.

   Answer: bucket/stopwatch method
   float/area method
   weir method

4. What is the flow rate in cubic feet per second (cfs) of a 6 L/sec flow rate?

   Answer: 6 liters per sec. x .0353 cfs/liter per second = .21 cfs

5. On a slope of 1.5%, what is the elevational rise in a horizontal distance of 150 m?

   Answer: 1.5/100 = x/150
   x = 2.25 m

6. Why is slope such an important concept in irrigation practices and agriculture in general?

7. Using the hand-feel method, determine the texture of the soil sample supplied.

8. How much water might you expect a sandy loam soil to hold between field capacity and wilting point in a one-meter depth?

Answer: ≈ 100-130 mm/m

9. Define: (1) saturation, (2) field capacity, and (3) wilting point.

Answers: Saturation - occurs when all the pore space in a soil is filled with water.

Field capacity - the moisture status of the soil after drainage due to gravity ceases, and the soil retains its maximum amount of water against the force of gravity. This generally occurs 1 to 4 days after saturation.

Wilting point - the point at which water becomes unavailable to the plant; the soil holds on to water tightly.

10. How deep would you normally expect corn roots to go in a soil without hard layers or other obstacles to root penetration? How deep in a soil with a hardpan (hard clay layer) at 30 cm?

Answer: without obstacles, = 1 meter
with hard pan, = 30 cm

# SECTION 4

# DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

- Diversion Dams
- Designing Spring Boxes
- Selecting Pumps
- Design and Use of Pumps
- Installing, Operating, and Developing Maintenance Plans for Pumps
- Wells: Hand Dug and Drilled
- Storage Pond Design, Construction, and Management

- Exam: Section 4 (Water Supply Estimates and Designs)

## DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

**Session Topic:** Diversion Dams

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to design and construct small diversion structures.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to select appropriate sites for diversion structures in small stream beds.
(2) Trainees will be able to design small diversion dams using locally available materials.
(3) Trainees will construct a small diversion dam.

**Overview:** In this session, Trainees will design and construct small diversion dams. All of the building materials will be obtained locally, and the construction will be done in a small stream bed. The purpose of the dam is to raise the water level or create a small reservoir for irrigation. This session should follow introductory sessions on hydrology and tool use.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer asks Trainees to describe factors that need to be considered in designing and constructing dams to divert water for irrigation projects. Discussion should cover types of diversion structures that can be built, dam stability and minimum side slopes, spillway features, sediment control, and appropriate materials that can be used in construction. Trainer informs Trainees that they will now go to the field and construct a diversion. They should identify the tools and materials they will need to complete this job and then assess if these materials are available in the tool supply area. If any tools or materials are lacking, Trainees should get resourceful and determine what local materials can serve as a substitute.

180 Min. Trainer leads Trainees to the field adjacent to a very small stream. Trainer has Trainees define the criteria they would use to select a site for a diversion structure and then use these criteria for selecting a site in the nearby stream. Trainees divide into groups of four; each group selects a site, assigns work roles, and proceeds to construct a diversion dam in the stream. Trainer concludes session by asking Trainees what could have improved the design or final product. Trainer also asks Trainees how they might have done things differently

(or not) if the diversion had been for a larger stream.

**Trainer Notes:** Ideally, the diversion dam(s) constructed will be able to serve some practical purpose for a local community. If not, then the dam(s) should be removed immediately after the completion of the session.

**Materials Required:**

- digging bar, hoes, picks, and shovels
- sheets of plastic
- swim suits

**References:**

Chapter 3, Irrigation Reference Manual
International Irrigation Center Module #21

## DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

**Session Topic:** Designing Spring Boxes

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to describe the hydrologic processes that result in springs and design a structure to capture the flow at a spring site.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to describe the tasks involved in spring development.
(2) Trainees will prepare an illustrative spring box design.

**Overview:** Springs can often represent an important water supply source for irrigation projects. In this session Trainees will learn methods to develop springs, and practice these methods in the field. They will visit completed spring boxes and observe spring hydrology in the field. This session should refer back to basic concepts covered in the watershed hydrology session.

**Session Activities:**

Time

60 Min. Trainer brings Trainees to two spring sites in the field: the first should be an undeveloped spring that is flowing; the second should be a developed spring with completed, functioning spring box. At the undeveloped spring site, trainer should have Trainees describe the basic ground water hydrology that resulted in this spring source. Trainees should perform a simple flow measurement of the spring and identify any difficulties in determining the total flow, especially if the spring does not flow uniformly from a single outlet point. Trainees should describe the process they would follow to develop this source.

45 Min. Trainer then leads group to developed spring site and has Trainees determine what steps were apparently followed in completing the spring development. Trainees should compare the process followed at the developed site with the process they described at the undeveloped site. Trainer distributes copies of diagrams that demonstrate procedures for constructing spring boxes, and Trainees compare diagrams with actual construction at the developed site.

45 Min. Trainees return to undeveloped spring site and are instructed to collect data necessary to prepare a complete spring box design at the site. (If the distance between the undeveloped and developed site is

great, then this data collection exercise should be done prior to leaving the undeveloped site.) Trainer divides the Trainees into groups of three and instructs each group to complete a spring box design as a homework assignment with 4-day due date. The design should include a complete materials list for the type and quantity of materials to be used in building the spring box. Trainee groups should work independently on this exercise.

30 Min. After Trainee groups turn in their spring box designs, trainer facilitates session in which they compare the designs produced and resolve any outstanding questions or concerns about completing the actual construction of the design in the field.

**Trainer Notes:** If time permits, it is recommended that Trainees actually proceed to build their spring box. Building a spring box, however, is a time consuming effort, which unfortunately could detract from other essential sessions in the irrigation training. It may be necessary to limit the effort to this simple theoretical exercise.

**Materials Required:**

* bucket, cup, funnel
* tape measure
* stopwatch
* spring box design procedures handouts

**References:**

Chapter 3, Irrigation Reference Manual: Structures for Springs and Seeps

## DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

**Session Topic:** Selecting Pumps

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to describe different kinds of pumps available and the factors that influence pump selection.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to describe the different types of pumps available - human, animal, mechanical - and their applicability.
(2) The Trainees will demonstrate an understanding of basic hydraulics that affect the selection and design of pumps.
(3) Trainees will identify the types of pumps suitable for local conditions.

**Overview:** A familiarity with pumps and their applicability is required for the Volunteer to design systems that lift or pressurize water. This session will strengthen some of the material covered briefly in the session on wells and will supplement material to be presented in sessions on farm water delivery systems.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 45 Min. | Trainer will present and describe various types of pumps that are used locally or regionally in well development or irrigation projects. Include in this discussion a description of the concepts of pressure, lift, flow rate, pumping conditions encountered (rivers, wells, reservoirs, canals), typical purchase costs, and how these factors influence decisions about pump selection. If time permits, trainer can have Trainees disassemble and reassemble one or more of the pumps, making certain that they record the procedures that they followed. |
| 30 Min. | Trainees will list criteria that must be considered for pump selection, and trainer will provide basic data to enable Trainees to calculate total dynamic head and flow rates and perform pump selections. Trainees will identify factors that could constrain a quantitative selection of pumps. Trainees will determine those pumps that are most appropriate for local conditions. |
| 45 Min. | Trainees will visit pumping plants in the field and describe the components in detail. |

**Trainer Notes:** Trainees should have an opportunity to identify and work with a variety of pumping plants in the field. Providing Trainees with an opportunity to inspect or actually disassemble a pump would add a great deal to the value of this session. If time does permit disassembly and reassembly of a pump, it is recommended that trainers limit the number of tools available to do this job in order to simulate typical site conditions.

**Materials Required:**

* centrifugal pump, hand pump, suction pump
* tools for disassembly
* transport to field

**References:**

Chapter 3, Irrigation Reference Manual: Pumps and Water Lifting Devices

## DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

**Session Topic:** Design and Use of Pumps

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to develop the specifications for small irrigation pumps required by the pump supplier and installer.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) The Trainees will be able to develop the specifications for a mechanically driven centrifugal pump - total dynamic head, flow rate, horsepower requirements, transmission devices, prime movers (electric or internal combustion), and intake structures.

**Overview:** Pumps powered by small engines or electric motors are commonly used by small-scale farmers to obtain water from streams and wells. The irrigation technician, pump supplier, and installer must be familiar with the concepts of pump design and use if the correct pump specifications are to be developed. This session is intended to follow an earlier session on pump selection.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 45 Min. | Trainer will briefly review the material discussed in the Pump Selection section and then ask Trainees to identify factors that specify the characteristics of a pumping station, e.g., flow rate, horsepower, pressure, lift, total dynamic head, and cavitation. Trainer will then work out a sample problem to demonstrate to Trainees how these factors are calculated and accounted for. Trainer provides sample problems for the Trainees to solve. |
| 90 Min. | Trainees will interview a local pump supplier to determine the types of pumps available and the technical information that exists or is lacking to support pump design and selection procedures. |
| 45 Min. | Trainees will travel to the field where they will collect the data necessary to determine the appropriate pump for a specific location. They will then use these data to design the specifications for a pump station. |
| 90 Min. | Trainees will then travel to another nearby field site where a pump is to be installed. They should apply the basic skills learned to determine whether the location, intake structures, and general conditions |

are appropriate for the pump selected. If possible, Trainees should participate in or conduct the pump installation.

**Trainer Notes:** Trainer should locate an installed pump that can be visually observed during operation by the Trainees, a pump supplier representative of typical Volunteer site accessibility, and a site where a pump is planned for installation.

**Materials Required:**

* Abney level
* pressure gauge
* surveying rod
* tape measure

**References:**

Chapter 3, Irrigation Reference Manual: Pumps and Water Lifting Devices; Wells

## DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

**Session Topic:** Installing, Operating, and Developing Maintenance Plans for Pumps

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to properly install, operate, and perform maintenance procedures on a pumping plant.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) The Trainees will participate in exercises that enable them to evaluate the installation, operation, and maintenance of a pumping plant.

**Overview:** Proper installation, operation, and maintenance procedures are essential to ensure that a pump maintains its capacity to perform efficiently over time. This session should immediately follow the two previous sessions in pump selection and design.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 45 Min. | Trainees are divided into three groups. One group is assigned the task of describing the procedures necessary to correctly install a pump, a second group describes the procedures to operate pumps, and the third group describes pump maintenance. Groups reconvene after 10-15 minutes and make a presentation of their ideas to the full group. Trainer works with this information to instruct Trainees in common techniques for evaluating pump performance (pressure and flow rate). Trainees describe how this information can be integrated with the information from the previous pumping sessions and applied in a comprehensive process as part of an overall irrigation system design. |
| 75 Min. | Trainees travel to the field where they evaluate a pump for flow rate, pressure, general condition, transmission devices, and motors or engines. As a group, Trainees develop recommendations on how to improve operation and maintenance for this pumping plant. |

**Trainer Notes:** Pumps often do not perform as they should due to poor selection, installation, or maintenance. Thus, it is important for Trainees to evaluate a pumping plant that is not necessarily perfect and in which recommendations for improvement will be valid.

**Materials Required:**

- flow measuring device
- pressure gauge and fittings to install on pump discharge
- tape measure

**References:**

Chapter 3, Irrigation Reference Manual: Pumps and Water Lifting Devices; Wells

## DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

**Session Topic:** Wells: Hand Dug and Drilled

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to select a suitable well site, rehabilitate a well, and facilitate well development.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will identify factors that determine a suitable well site according to the type of well being considered.
(2) Trainees will describe the construction steps necessary for a shallow hand dug well and a drilled well.
(3) Trainees will describe practices used to protect wells.
(4) Trainees will rehabilitate a well in the field.

**Overview:** Wells can represent an important water supply source for irrigation. As Volunteers, Trainees may have access to both drilling facilities or labor to dig shallow wells. This session provides Trainees with sufficient background information to plan and guide well development. This session should be done after Trainees have had some exposure to basic hydrology concepts.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 90 Min. | Trainer presents a diagram of the hydrologic cycle, with some delineation of geologic formations. Trainees are asked to indicate suitable locations for wells that could tap the water stored in these formations. Trainer should use this exercise to explain the types of wells available and the general steps followed in constructing a simple hand dug well and a drilled rotary well. It will be important to use many graphical depictions of the steps followed in well development. Trainees are asked to list the kinds of problems they might anticipate in digging or drilling a well and maintaining the well after it is in operation. Trainer concludes with a description of the procedures used to disinfect wells and protect wells from contamination if they are for household use as well as irrigation purposes. |
| 90 Min. | Trainees travel to the site of a well that is no longer in use or simply in need of repair. Trainees will interview owner(s) of the well and learn the history of the well's development and maintenance. Trainees describe the steps that were apparently followed to design and construct the well and indicate measures that might have improved the process. Trainees will inspect the well and determine the need |

for well rehabilitation: improved well protection, well disinfection, pump repair, or repair of lining.

2-4 Hr. Trainees rehabilitate the well, completing all of the tasks they identified as necessary in their well inspection.

45 Min. Trainees meet with well owner(s) and provide them with information to guide their future use and management of the well.

3-4 Hrs. Trainees visit the site of a drilled well in the drilling stage. Trainees observe the drilling process, describe the steps that were apparently followed in developing the well, and interview the drillers.

**Trainer Notes:** It is advisable to select a well for rehabilitation that does not require a great deal of effort. Simple hand pump repair and disinfection of the well may be enough to fill out this exercise. If pump repair will be a part of the session activities, then this session should follow the sessions on pumps in the Developing Water Sources section of this manual. While it would be ideal for Trainees to actually construct their own hand dug well, this would consume from 3-5 days in the training and may demand too much time. Trainers need to identify some well projects under construction for the Trainees to visit during this session.

**Materials Required:**

* chlorine
* rope
* transport
* wrenches, pliers, vice grips, and screwdrivers

**References:**

Chapter 3, Irrigation Reference Manual: Pumps and Water Lifting Devices; Wells

Brush, R.E. 1982. Wells Construction: Hand Dug and Hand Drilled. Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange Manual M-9. 282p.

Peace Corps. 1984. Rural Water/Sanitation Projects: Water for the World. Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange. pp. 107-142.

## DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

**Session Topic:** Storage Pond Design, Construction, and Management

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to list site criteria for pond construction and design and construct a small storage pond.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will identify the appropriate type of storage pond for specific water sources and topographical conditions.
(2) Trainees will conduct a rapid site survey to determine basic pond construction requirements.
(3) Trainees will design earth embankments.
(4) Trainees will construct a small storage pond appropriate to the site conditions.

**Overview:** Storage ponds are becoming more important in agriculture as competition for use of water sources increases, watershed conditions decline, and seasonal variability of supplies increases. Well designed ponds can supplement plant water needs during periods of low water flow or sporadic rainfall, and they can stabilize or regulate flows. This session provides Trainees with adequate skills to design and construct a small pond.

**Session Activities:**

Time

60 Min. Trainer introduces session with brief lecture on the role of ponds in irrigation systems, the types of ponds that can be used (on or off-stream), and the criteria used to select a pond site and estimate pond size. Trainer then presents a graphic example of how earth embankment design is done to stabilize ponds. Trainees are asked as a group how they would organize all of this information to enable them to conduct a rapid field inventory of potential pond sites.

75 Min. Trainees are divided into groups of three and instructed to go into the field to conduct a rapid survey to locate potential pond sites. After identifying the sites, Trainees should come back together as a group and mutually select the most preferred pond site location. The group process that occurs in this endeavor can be as valuable as the pond construction, and the Trainees should be encouraged to describe the reasoning behind their selection.

6-8 Hr. Trainees should work as a team to design and construct a small pond. After completing the pond, Trainees should divert water from the stream source and fill the pond. Filling the pond will take some time, and the Trainees can assign a small group to supervise this process. After 1-3 days, the Trainees should return to determine how well the pond is holding up and how much water is being lost through seepage.

**Trainer Notes:** It is advisable to plan this endeavor with a local community so that they can use the pond after it is completed.

**Materials Required:**

- hand or Abney level
- large sacks for hauling soil
- manual tampers
- PVC tube (diameter depends on source flow rate)
- sheets of plastic (if soil is very permeable)
- shovels, picks, and hoes
- stakes
- stopwatch
- surveying rod
- tape measure
- wheelbarrow
- 5-gallon bucket

**References:**
Chapter 3, Irrigation Reference Manual: Ponds for Irrigation Water Storage

## EXAM: SECTION 4
## DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

1. List different types of material that can be used to construct a diversion.

   Answer:
   earth
   rocks
   logs
   sand bags
   gabions
   concrete

2. Describe what a gabion is and explain how it can be used in diversion dams.

   Answer: A gabion is a basket made of heavy-duty wire mesh, placed in the stream bed, and filled with rock. It is used as a building block in construction of diversions.

3. Describe the sequential steps in developing a spring source.

   Answer:
   1. Locate the origin of the flow.
   2. Dig large hole.
   3. Measure the flow from the spring.
   4. Fill in the hole with gravel or rocks to protect spring.
   5. Dig diversion ditch above spring.

4. Explain the situations in which you would consider a hand-dug well for irrigation; a commercially drilled well.

   Answer: Hand-dug - Shallow water table, low flow rate required, labor is cheap and available.

   Drilled - Deep water tables, hard formations such as rock, larger flow rates required, availability of equipment or commercial well drillers.

5. A farmer comes to you and asks for advice on a second-hand, 5 HP, centrifugal pump that he has just bought. He wants to sprinkler irrigate a 0.5 hectare plot but knows nothing about the pump capacity. What factors must be taken into consideration?

   Answers:
   1. What flow rate is required?
   2. What head is required?
   3. Does the pump have adequate flow and head capacity?

6. Describe the equation needed to calculate total dynamic head in a pumping system. (Assume velocity head is negligible.)

Answer: $tdh = h_z + h_p + h_f$

$h_z$ = elevation head (vertical distance pump must raise water)

$h_p$ = pressure head (pressure required to operate the sprinkler system, drip system, etc.)

$h_f$ = friction head (pressure losses due to flow through pipe)

7. List the general specifications that you should provide a pump supplier when selecting a pump.

amount of water to be pumped
pumping head
horsepower requirements
operating efficiency
type of prime mover and transmission device

8. In a communal system, a farmer is given water 6 hrs/day at a flow rate of 100 L/min. a) If the farmer irrigates every 3 days, how large of a storage pond must he construct to store the water? b) If, at peak use, his crops need 5 cm of water per week, which he will apply through a sprinkler system, how much land can he irrigate with the pond? (No water on Saturdays.)

Answer:

a) Volume = Q x T = 100 L/min x 6 hrs/day x 3 days x 1 $m^3$/1000 L x 60 min/hr = 108 $m^3$. The pond can have an average surface area of 100 m and be 1.1 m in depth. However, a freeboard is generally needed. Thus, add 0.3 meters of required freeboard. Pond should be 10 m x 10 m x 1.4 m.

b) He will apply 2.5 cm, or 0.025 m twice a week.

Area = volume/depth = 108 $m^3$/.025 m = 4320 $m^2$

# SECTION 5

# ASSESSING IRRIGATION WATER REQUIREMENTS

- Estimating Net Crop Water Needs
- Estimating the Efficiency of Irrigation Systems
- Estimating Gross Daily Irrigation Requirements and Design Capacity

- Exam: Section 5 (Calculating Water Requirements)

87

## ASSESSING IRRIGATION WATER REQUIREMENTS

**Session Topic:** Estimating Net Crop Water Needs

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to estimate net crop water requirements using local crop data.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to define crop water use and the factors that determine the crop water deficits that are compensater for through irrigation.
(2) Trainees will be able to estimate net irrigation requirements using local crop and climate data.

**Overview:** Estimating net irrigation requirements is an essential prerequisite for the design and management of farm irrigation systems. Trainees will now apply skills learned in estimating water supplies and evaluating soil conditions to determine how much water must be made available to support specific crops.

**Session Activities:**

Time

60 Min. Trainer will begin session by describing several crops and then ask Trainees to describe the factors that determine how much water is needed to support these crops. Trainer should list these factors on a flip chart and then begin a brief lecture that links the factors identified by the Trainees to the concepts of evapotranspiration, reference crop evapotranspiration, crop coefficients, dependable and effective rainfall, ground water contribution, and soil water storage. Trainer should be able to describe each of these concepts graphically, assigning mathematical symbols for each concept.

60 Min. Trainer then uses one or two basic examples to demonstrate the use of equations and simple techniques for quantifying evapotranspiration, effective rainfall, and net irrigation requirements. Next, trainer pins up local crop, temperature, and rainfall data, and assigns each Trainee two or three specific crops. Trainees are to use the local data to estimate the net irrigation requirements for each crop. Trainees compare results at the conclusion of the exercise, and trainer describes the role of estimating net crop water needs in planning an irrigation system design.

**Trainer Notes:** Trainers need to obtain local data before the session. Climatic data should be available from government or university sources. Crop data may be scarce, and it may be necessary for the trainers to assemble this information from their own field observations and professional experience.

**Materials Required:**

- calculator
- local data on crop types, length of growing season, crop development stages
- local data on maximum and minimum temperatures, monthly rainfall

**Selected References:**

Chapter 4, Irrigation Reference Manual: Estimating Irrigation Requirements
International Irrigation Center Modules #7, #8, and #9

## ASSESSING IRRIGATION WATER REQUIREMENTS

**Session Topic:** Estimating the Efficiency of Irrigation Systems

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to estimate how efficiently water is being conveyed and applied to fields.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to define application and conveyance efficiencies and list the factors that determine the efficiency of an irrigation system.
(2) Trainees will be able to estimate the expected irrigation efficiency as a function of irrigation method used.
(3) Trainees will be able to estimate conveyance efficiencies as a function of soil type and canal conditions.

**Overview:** Irrigation efficiencies must be estimated correctly if crop water needs are to be met by the irrigation system. Thus it is important that Trainees be able to estimate efficiency with some accuracy. This session represents a good linkage with the session on estimating crop water requirements to begin to show how to estimate total project water needs.

**Session Activities:**

Time

45 Min. Trainer begins session with a profile drawing of an irrigation canal and irrigated field and an inflow of water on one end. Be certain to include some plants and debris in the drawing alongside the canal. Trainer asks Trainees to describe all of the ways water moves through this profile, adding to the drawing the concepts of infiltration, soil water movement, and evapotranspiration. Trainer describes the goal of irrigation as supplying limited water supplies to the greatest possible area for crop cultivation. Trainees then list all of the factors that must be taken into account to determine how efficiently water is being moved through conveyance channels and onto fields. Trainer then links this description of factors to concepts in simple equations that can be used to estimate canal and field efficiencies. Trainer uses one or two simple examples to show how these efficiencies are calculated.

75 Min. Trainer leads Trainees into the field and instructs groups of three to record visual observations of soils, irrigation method, and canal conditions. Each

group should then estimate canal and field application efficiencies.

**Trainer Notes:** Trainer may want to have Trainees measure inflow and outflows from a canal if time permits and if Trainees have already had sessions enabling them to do this calculation. Measuring flows will give them practice in measuring conveyance efficiencies.

**Materials Required:**

- calculator
- flow measurement equipment if efficiencies are to be measured
- note pad
- transport

**Selected References:**

Chapter 4, Irrigation Reference Manual: Estimating Irrigation Requirements
International Irrigation Center Modules #29, #30, and #31

## ASSESSING IRRIGATION WATER REQUIREMENTS

**Session Topic:** Estimating Gross Daily Irrigation Requirements and Design Capacity

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to estimate daily irrigation requirements as a depth of water to be applied and use this information to determine the amount of water required to support an irrigation system.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to calculate the gross daily irrigation requirements for a system as a depth of water to be applied and as a flow rate required.

**Overview:** The gross water requirements of an irrigation system must be known before we can determine whether the available water supply is sufficient to meet the crop needs. This information is necessary to estimate canal and pipeline design capacities and effectively manage an overall irrigation system. This session builds on the experiences Trainees have had in the previous sessions on estimating net crop water requirements and estimating canal and field efficiencies.

**Session Activities:**

Time

45 Min. Trainer provides some basic data about a proposed irrigation system: flow rate from an available stream, estimated crop water requirements, dimensions and materials for conveyance channels, and annual monthly rainfall. Trainer asks Trainees if they feel they have enough information here to design and manage the system. If not, Trainees should identify additional information they feel is necessary to facilitate a system design. Trainer records this information and uses it to derive equations that can be used to estimate gross water requirements, emphasizing estimates of both water depth and flow rates to meet the system needs. Trainees use the same data as were distributed in the sessions on estimating net crop water requirements and estimating canal and field efficiencies to calculate the gross depth of water required to satisfy a given local crop and the design flow rate required on a per area basis.

**Trainer Notes:** This session should immediately follow and build on the previous session plans in this section so that the concepts tie together easily.

**Materials Required:**

- calculator
- local climatic and crop data
- results from previous sessions

**References:**

Chapter 4, Irrigation Reference Manual: Estimating Irrigation Requirements
International Irrigation Center Modules #38, #39, and #40

## EXAM: SECTION 5
## CALCULATING WATER REQUIREMENTS

1. List 5 factors that you must quantify in order to determine the design capacity of an irrigation system.

   Answer: Crop water use
   Effective rainfall
   Irrigation efficiencies
   Hours per day of operation
   Area to be irrigated

2. In February, at a station with a latitude of 14°N, daily maximum average temperatures are 28°C and average daily minimum temperatures are at 15°C. What ETo might you expect?

   Answer:

   Ra = 13.6 mm/day (from Table 4.1, Irrigation Reference Manual), $Td = 28 - 15 = 13°C$
   $T°C = 1/2(28 + 15) = 21.5$
   $ETo = 0.0023 \times Ra \times Td^{1/2} \times (T°C + 17.8) = 0.0023 \times 13.6 \times 13^{1/2} \times (21.5 + 17.8) = 4.43$ mm/day

3. With low wind and high humidity conditions, what maximum Kc might you expect for a lettuce crop at mid-season?

   Answer: Kc is approximately that of cabbage and equals 0.95 for low advective conditions (from Table 4.3, Irrigation Reference Manual).

4. What ETc might you expect at mid-season for the conditions of Problems 2 and 3?

   Answer: $ETc = Kc \times ETo = 0.95 \times 4.43 = 4.2$

5. What ETc might you expect initially in the season for the lettuce crop if ETo is 5 mm per day?

   Answer: $ETc = 0.4 \times 5.0 = 2.0$ mm/day

6. If your mean rainfall is 50 mm for February and is 80% effective, what is the average monthly effective rainfall (Pe) in mm/month? mm/day?

Answer:

Pe = Pmean x effectiveness = 50 mm x 0.8 = 40 mm/month
= 40/28 = 1.4 mm/day

7. What is the net daily water requirement (Irn) with the ETc of Problem 4 and the Pe of Problem 6? Assume Wb and Gw = 0.

Answer: Irn = ETc - Pe = 4.2 - 1.4 = 2.8 mm/day

8. What is the gross daily irrigation requirement (Irg) for the example of Problem 7 if the efficiency of application is 70% and the conveyance efficiency is 80%?

Answer: $\mathrm{Irg} = \dfrac{\mathrm{Irn}}{\mathrm{Ea \times Ec}} = \dfrac{2.8}{0.7 \times 0.8} = 5.0$ mm/day

9. What is the design capacity, using Irg of Problem 8, of a system that will operate 12 hours per day every day on a 2-hectare plot?

Answer: $Q = \dfrac{2.8 \times A \times \mathrm{Irg}}{t} = \dfrac{2.8 \times 2 \times 5.0}{12} = 2.3$ L/sec

# SECTION 6

# FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

* Components of Farm Irrigation Systems
* Canal Design, Construction, and Maintenance
* Control Structures: Checks, Diversions, and Drops
* Pipe System Design, Construction, and Maintenance
* Land Leveling or Smoothing
* Surface Irrigation Systems
* Surface Irrigation Systems: Border Systems
* Surface Irrigation Systems: Furrow Systems
* Sprinkler Systems
* Localized Systems

* Exam: Section 6 (Designing System Requirements)

## FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Components of Farm Irrigation Systems

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to describe the components of an irrigation system and explain their function.

**Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will visit several different irrigation projects and identify the components that make up an irrigation system.
(2) Trainees will describe the function of the components in an irrigation system and describe how this information is important in planning projects.

**Overview:** To familiarize Trainees in cultural practices of irrigation, they should see the components to understand fully how and why the system operates. Trainees should visit several different types of irrigation projects and discuss how each component is an integral part of the system.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 2-3 Hr. | Trainer leads Trainees on walking tour of irrigation projects in the training area. Trainees are told to describe and record the various components of the irrigation systems they are observing (e.g., water supply source, water conveyance methods used, quality of water in the conveyances, farm water application practices, crops being grown, field drainage practices) and to try to develop some assumptions about the reasons for the system designs. Trainees should begin their system review at the water source and end at a farm drainage canal. |
| 60 Min. | Trainees gather at a convenient point and use their observations to label specific components of farm water systems and establish clear descriptions of the features and factors included in each component. |

**Materials:**

* transport

## References

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Components of Farm Irrigation Systems
International Irrigation Center Modules #21, #22, #23, #24, #25, #26, and #27

# FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Canal Design, Construction, and Maintenance

**Session Goal**: Trainees will be able to design and construct simple distribution canals and perform general canal maintenance practices.

**Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will demonstrate the ability to complete canal design requirements.
(2) Trainees will be able to use the Manning equation to properly design trapezoidal canals and use nomographs to assist in the calculations.
(3) Trainees will design and construct a small canal for a water distribution system.
(4) Trainees will tour an existing water distribution system and identify practices necessary to maintain an efficient system.
(5) Trainees will perform maintenance practices in a canal.

**Overview**: Canal conveyance systems are a main component in getting water from the source to the field. Trainees will be taught how to properly size a canal to carry a given flow rate and learn construction techniques. This session also enables Trainees to apply many of the concepts they learned in the earlier hydrology and developing water resources session.

**Session Activities:**

Time

90 Min. Trainer presents a profile drawing of an irrigation canal. Trainer asks Trainees to identify the factors that must be taken into account when designing this canal. Trainer uses Trainee information to present brief lecture on canal design criteria and requirements. Included in the lecture should be an explanation of the Manning equation, using diagrams to describe the origin of each factor in the equation. Lecture should also include sample problems showing how the Manning equation is used and how to use nomographs. Present and discuss the continuity equation and its use in canal design.

30 Min. Trainer provides Trainees with some hypothetical data and instructs them to perform independently the calculations necessary to size a canal.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

90 Min. Trainer leads Trainees to the field, where they are instructed to collect the data necessary to design and construct a small canal. Trainer indicates approximate location of canal and requests to review the completed canal design with 90 Min. Trainees are left on their own to determine roles and responsibilities.

2-5 Hr. Trainees clear brush, stake out route at desired slope, dig the canal, and install a sediment trap. Again, Trainees are left on their own to determine roles and responsibilities in completing this construction work.

45 Min. Trainees divert and run water into the canal, checking the side slope stability and water velocity. Trainer reviews Trainee work and facilitates discussion of problems and important learning that occurred.

2-4 Hr. Trainer leads Trainees to tour an existing canal distribution system and asks them to comment on condition of the canal and recommend necessary maintenance practices. Trainees should measure the flow rate in the canal and then perform the necessary tasks to complete a canal maintenance exercise. After completing the canal maintenance, Trainees should again measure the flow rate and evaluate improvements made by canal maintenance.

**Materials**

* bucket
* calculators
* hoes, rakes, shovels, picks, machetes
* leveling device
* measuring tape
* stakes
* stopwatch
* surveying rod

**References:**

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Control Structures

Section Six

## FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Control Structures, Checks, Diversions, and Drops

**Session Goal:** Trainees will identify the factors involved in selecting and applying the use of control structures in a canal system, design simple checks, diversions, and drops, and be able to construct and install them.

**Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will list different types of control structures and describe their function in a canal system.
(2) Trainees will be able to design, construct, and install simple control structures in a canal system.
(3) Trainees will be able to demonstrate the use of a canvas and pole as a check structure in a canal.

**Overview:** Often earthen canal systems are inefficient because water is not controlled properly in the canal. This results in erosion and washouts. Control structures limit flow velocities to permissible rates so that this does not occur. This session builds on canal design and construction and will give Trainees more flexibility in routing canals through irregular and sloped topography and make water distribution easier and more efficient from the conveyance canal to the field.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 60 Min. | Trainer asks Trainees to describe simple structures they can build to control flow in a canal. Trainer uses this list to diagram types of structures available and their functions. Diagrams should indicate design criteria. |
| 90 Min. | Trainees go to the field where they collect the necessary data and prepare to construct a wooden or concrete control structure in a canal. Preparation should include gathering materials and bringing them to the construction site. |
| 2-3 Hr. | Wooden or concrete control structure should be constructed and installed. Trainer will critique the installation. |
| 60 Min. | After several days, Trainees should return and remove the forms for the structure, and send water through the canal. The operation of all control structures should be checked to determine if there are any washouts or rocks at the downstream side of the drop |

(energy dissipaters). The water velocities in the canal should be measured. Trainer can conclude exercise with discussion of the importance and applications of control structures.

60 Min. Have Trainees construct a canvas check dam and install it in a farm irrigation ditch to adjust the water in the canal to a level that will permit distribution onto a field.

**Materials:**

- 1.5 m poles
- buckets
- canvas or sheets of plastic
- cement
- gravel
- hammers, saws
- hoes, machetes, picks, shovels
- rails
- sacks (haul gravel/sand)
- sand
- stopwatch
- tape measure
- wood planks/lumber

**References:**

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Control Structures
International Irrigation Center Module #21

# FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Pipe System Design, Construction, and Maintenance

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to size tubing correctly for pressurized systems, describe basic hydraulic phenomena that commonly occur in pipelines, and list the criteria for pipeline installation.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to describe the term "pressure head" in units commonly used in irrigation, e.g., psi, $kg/cm^2$, feet, and meters.
(2) Trainees will be able to calculate frictional losses in a pressurized pipeline and determine proper pipe sizing for a given pressure head.
(3) Trainees will be able to describe certain hydraulic principles in pressurized pipe systems (i.e. water hammer, air relief, pressure relief) and ways in which they can be controlled or reduced.
(4) Trainees will be able to list different types of piping material and describe their use and specifications.
(5) Trainees will be able to describe pipeline installation criteria.

**Overview:** This session is the basis for the design of pressurized irrigation systems. Proper main line design and installation will assure an adequate operating pressure at the sprinkler nozzles or drippers. Trainees will learn methods to calculate frictional loss in pipelines and installation practices to assure adequate and trouble-free operation.

**Session Activities:**

Time

90 Min. Trainer demonstrates concept of pressure head by elevating a five-gallon bucket filled with water to a height of two meters, and siphoning from the bucket. Check the head in the tube at lengths of 5 and 10 meters and the outflow from the hose. Now elevate the bucket to a height of five meters and do the same thing. Trainer uses this demonstration to lead into lecture on basic principles of hydraulics, emphasizing the concepts of pressure head, friction, and energy.

60 Min. Trainer presents brief overview of equations used to calculate friction losses in pipes and the cost per unit length of various sizes and types of pipe, demonstrating how this information is used to select pipe sizes. Trainees are provided with sample data

and instructed to select proper pipe sizes for a hypothetical system. The design should emphasize selection of pipeline components and materials to avoid unacceptable pressure losses and ensure adequate flow while accounting for economic considerations. Trainer concludes exercise with overview of the concept of water hammer and techniques for identifying potential water hammer problems in the field.

60 Min. Trainer reviews techniques used to control pipe pressures and describes mechanisms for siting relief valves. Trainer brings out sample pipe materials to describe the varieties of pipe types and pressure ranges available and to demonstrate installation procedures and criteria.

**Trainer Notes:** This session can appear to be very complicated to Trainees with limited or no background in hydraulics. Trainers should be prepared to use diagrams and drawings wherever possible to relate the concepts to real situations and to use pipe materials to show how these concepts are applied.

**Materials Required:**

* 2 1/2" diameter tees
* 5-gallon bucket
* bucket
* rope
* 30 meters of 1/2" diameter polyethylene tube (one 20- meter length and two 5-meter lengths)
* calculator
* stopwatch

**References:**

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Pipeline Hydraulics and Design

## FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Land Leveling or Smoothing

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to identify and analyze land leveling needs and perform a land smoothing exercise with a low-input implement to move soil.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to identify land leveling needs.
(2) Trainees will be able to describe construction criteria and constraints in land leveling.
(3) Trainees will describe low-input implements used in land smoothing.
(4) Trainees will perform a land survey and smoothing exercise.
(5) Trainees will construct a land smoothing implement (wooden buck scraper).

**Overview:** Land leveling is an important practice to establish a level land grade so that surface water advances and is distributed uniformly. Often this is not practical in small-scale operations because of the large investment to move soil. Therefore, land smoothing is preferable for small farmers. This session builds on previous sessions on surveying and soils and will allow Trainees the opportunity to work with implements powered by animal traction. This session will also be useful in the following session on border irrigation practice.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 60 Min. | Trainer shows Trainees drawings or slides of fields that have not been well leveled and asks Trainees to identify techniques that can be used to improve water distribution in the field. Trainer uses this information to define the concept of land leveling and its application in surface irrigation. Descriptions of land leveling limitations and practical techniques are included. |
| 120 Min. | Trainees use trainer diagram to construct a land smoothing implement (buck scraper is recommended). Trainees should be allowed to determine work roles and responsibilities in completing this task. |
| 60 Min. | Trainees should observe the spread of water over a field and determine the variation in depth of water due to unevenness of the field. This exercise will help them see the extent of leveling required. A plow and buck scraper can be used to move soil from high to |

low areas when the field dries out, thus making the soil surface more even.

60 Min. If time permits, Trainees may construct a graded border with no cross slope as follows. Trainees complete a survey of a field and lay out the contour lines at a very slight slope (0.5-1 percent). The spacing of the contour lines will depend on the depth of soil and the desired width of the border. Generally, border width will vary from 3 meters to 10 meters, depending on the convenience of operating machinery in the border and avoiding excessive topsoil removal.

120 Min. Trainees should plow between their guide markers and then use their land smoothing implement to smooth and level between contour lines.

30 Min. Trainer can conclude by asking Trainees to describe time management skills they will need to develop in order to factor in all of the varied activities necessary in developing a farm irrigation system.

**Trainer Notes:** If Trainees have very little experience in working with farm animals, it may be advisable to have a local farmer help them with this exercise.

**Materials Required:**

* leveling device (e.g. water level)
* lumber
* nails
* nuts and bolts
* plow implement
* saws, hammers
* shovels, hoes
* stakes
* steel chain
* team of oxen

**References:**

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Land Leveling

## FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Surface Irrigation Systems

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be familiar with the different types of surface irrigation methods and be able to describe basic criteria for their selection and design.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to list the different types of irrigation methods and give a brief explanation of each.
(2) Trainees will be able to describe the appropriateness and adaptability of each irrigation method in relation to specific land and crop conditions.
(3) Trainees will be able to list the advantages and disadvantages of each method in relation to local conditions.
(4) Trainees will be able to describe basic design criteria for surface systems.

**Overview:** This session is used to introduce and discuss different types of surface irrigation and their adaptability to agricultural conditions. Specific terms will be defined and basic design criteria for systems should be presented.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 45 Min. | Trainer asks Trainees to describe the types of methods that can be used to divert water from a canal and irrigate a field. Trainer should use this information to establish different surface practices (e.g. flood, furrow). Trainees are asked to describe the advantages and disadvantages of each system and identify criteria that must be used in designing each system. |
| 30 Min. | Trainees are divided into groups of three with each group assigned a particular surface irrigation method. Trainer provides each group with basic data and the group is instructed to complete a simple system design. |

**Trainer Notes:** This session can be supplemented through use of slides or videos.

**Materials Required:** none

**References:**

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Surface Irrigation Systems
International Irrigation Center Modules #22, #23, #24, and #27

## FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Surface Irrigation Systems: Border Systems

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to design, install, and operate a border irrigation system.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will demonstrate skills to design a small border irrigation system.
(2) Trainees will demonstrate skills to lay out and construct a border irrigation system.
(3) Trainees will demonstrate skills to operate border irrigation system.

**Overview:** In this session, Trainees will develop a border irrigation system from design to operation. It will give them confidence to complete future projects. The session builds on canal design, conveyance systems, and land leveling sessions. It is recommended that the field for the irrigation system be the same field where the land leveling session took place.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 60 Min. | Trainer reviews data requirements, design criteria, and construction techniques for a border irrigation system. Trainees are instructed to collect the necessary data and construct a border system in a designated field. |
| 90 Min. | Trainees collect necessary data on topography, soils, and crops, and complete system design. |
| 4-6 Hr. | Trainees construct a conveyance system to bring water to the field, lay out and construct the borders, and construct the tail water ditch. |
| 2-3 Hr. | Trainees will plant crops in the borders, irrigate the field, and check the borders for stability. |

**Trainer Notes:** This exercise can be done with a local farmer to make the end result very practical.

**Materials Required:**

* crop ready to be planted
* leveling device, survey rod, stakes
* sheet of plastic
* shovels, picks, hoes
* soil auger

- tape measure
- two poles 1.5 m

**References:**
Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Surface Irrigation Systems
International Irrigation Center Module #24

## FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Surface Irrigation Systems: Furrow Systems

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to design, install, and operate a furrow irrigation system.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will demonstrate skills to design a furrow irrigation system.
(2) Trainees will demonstrate skills to lay out and install a furrow irrigation system.
(3) Trainees will demonstrate skills to operate and manage a furrow irrigation system.

**Overview:** In this session, Trainees will develop a furrow irrigation system from design to operation. It will give them confidence to complete and be involved in future projects. This session builds upon canal design and conveyance systems and if possible, these prior sessions should be incorporated into this larger irrigation project.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 60 Min. | Trainer reviews data requirements, design criteria and construction techniques for furrow irrigation systems (level, contour, graded, corrugated). Trainees are instructed to collect the necessary data and construct a contour furrow system in a designated field. |
| 90 Min. | Trainees collect necessary data on topography, soils, and crops, and complete system design. |
| 4-6 Hr. | Trainees construct a conveyance system to bring water to the field, lay out and construct the furrows, and construct the tail water drain. |
| 2-3 Hr. | Trainees perform an advance/recession test for a given flow, check water distribution with a soil auger (depth and lateral movement), and check for erosion problems. If necessary, the trainer may need to demonstrate the use of a siphon in order to complete this exercise. |

**Trainer Notes:** This exercise can be done with a local farmer to make the end result very practical.

**Materials Required:**

- * leveling device
- * measuring tape
- * polyurethane or polyvinyl chloride siphons (1" or 1 1/2")
- * sheet of plastic
- * shovels, hoes, picks
- * soil auger
- * stakes
- * two poles 1.5 m

**References:**

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Surface Irrigation Systems
International Irrigation Center Module #23

## FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Sprinkler Systems

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to design, install, operate, and manage a small-scale sprinkler irrigation system.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will collect the field data necessary to design a sprinkler irrigation system.
(2) Trainees will design a small-scale irrigation system that includes at least three to four sprinklers.
(3) Trainees will install a sprinkler irrigation system and prepare a simple operation and maintenance program for the system.

**Overview:** In this session Trainees develop a small-scale sprinkler irrigation system from the design to operational stage. This completed project can give Trainees confidence in future projects and should provide them with sufficient information to work with sprinklers on a limited scale. This session draws upon the experience obtained in the pipeline design session.

**Session Activities:**

Time

120 Min. Trainer introduces session by asking Trainees to list reasons why they might choose a sprinkler system in an irrigation design. Trainer indicates if sprinkler usage is or isn't common in-country but points out that either way, understanding the mechanics of these systems is necessary. Trainees brainstorm the data requirements and design criteria for sprinkler systems. Data requirements should include:

- shape and area of the field,
- topography (in reference to water source to field),
- soil characteristics (infiltration rate, water-holding capacity),
- crop characteristics (water requirements at peak use, rooting depth), and
- wind conditions.

Design criteria should consider:

- water flow rate (required or available),
- pressure required or available (for pumping station need pump capacity; for gravity flow

need elevational difference from water source to field),

- distance from water source to field (to determine main pipeline length),
- diameter and length of conveyance pipe and fitting (frictional loss; pipe diameter - availability and cost),
- sprinkler type and nozzle size (flow and wetted diameter at operating pressure; water application rate to match soil intake rate),
- sprinkler availability: types, sizes, and pressure required, and
- sprinkler spacing (to achieve adequate uniformity).

Trainer uses actual sprinklers to demonstrate what all of these concepts mean in terms of metal and moving parts. Trainer then informs Trainees they will now be designing and constructing a very simple irrigation system. Trainees should appoint a facilitator and then work as a group to prepare a material list for this system and establish management criteria. Management criteria should include water application requirements and rates, estimated time to irrigate, schedules, and schematics. Trainer should allow Trainees to complete this activity on their own but should review the final product and offer advice on additional information that should be considered if the Trainees have left gaps in their lists. Trainees are given field data and instructed to prepare a complete design for a system that will include three to four sprinklers. The pipeline length should be kept relatively short, if possible, as this will reduce the amount of field time required. Trainer informs Trainees they will need to make their own materials purchases and that they should appoint a small group to do this task. Allocate one to two hours of training free time for this Trainee group to complete this exercise.

3-5 Hrs. Trainees travel to proposed work site. As initial task, the group that purchased sprinkler supplies should describe their experience completing this task. Trainer should facilitate a review of the procedures to be followed in constructing a sprinkler system. Trainees then proceed to carry out the installation of their system design.

60 Min. Trainer reviews Trainees' experience completing the system construction work. Trainer provides brief explanation of system evaluation procedures. Trainer informs Trainees they will need to conduct an evaluation of the system they constructed, and that

they should gather materials and plan to complete this exercise.

1-5 Hr. Trainees work as a group in the field to complete an evaluation of their sprinkler system. This will not be a continuous activity, as there will be considerable lag time while the Trainees wait for water to be applied. This component of the session can be done while Trainees are performing other activities nearby. In conducting the evaluation Trainees should (a) evaluate water application distribution, (b) check pressure at several points along the main line and lateral lines, and (c) check flow rate at sprinkler.

45 Min. After Trainees have obtained all of their data they can return to the classroom and complete the evaluation using the distribution uniformity coefficients graph. Trainer should lead discussion to determine how Trainees might change any aspect of the process they used.

**Trainer Notes:** This session involves quite a lot of classroom time, and it may be advisable to break this up over several days in order to maintain Trainee attention spans.

**Materials Required:**

* bucket
* hoes, machetes, shovels
* leveling device
* plastic cups
* pressure gauge with fittings to insert in line
* screw driver, pliers
* stakes (can be made by Trainees)
* stop watch
* string, measuring tape, plastic or Teflon tape
* sprinkler heads, pipelines, fittings, pressure sources (pump or elevated intake)

**References:**

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Pipeline Hydraulics and Design; Sprinkler Irrigation Systems
International Irrigation Center Module #25

## FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

**Session Topic:** Localized Systems

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to design, install, and operate a low-cost, appropriate technology localized irrigation system.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will describe the basic components that are included in developing a localized irrigation system.
(2) Trainees will design a low-cost localized system.
(3) Trainees will install and operate a localized system.

**Overview:** This session will introduce localized irrigation to the Trainees. They will be able to design very simple systems, install, and operate them. This session builds on previous sessions that covered pressurized pipeline design and sprinkler irrigation systems.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 60 Min. | Trainer asks Trainees to describe criteria that would warrant the use of a localized irrigation system (e.g., limited available water supplies, emphasis on permanent crops in cropping pattern). Trainer brings out materials used in building a localized system and reviews the functions of each component and considerations that should be considered in planning such a system: types of crops being grown, low system pressure, availability of materials, and costs. Trainer demonstrates how components are assembled and diagrams the process of preparing and completing a simple system design for irrigating a tree crop. |
| 30 Min. | Trainees are divided into two groups and assigned the task of preparing a very simple localized system design, using prepared data obtained from one of the work site areas. Design must include a materials list and budget. |
| 60 Min. | Each Trainee group completes purchasing trip to buy locally available materials for use in their localized system construction. |
| 90 Min. | Trainee groups use the materials purchased to construct their system. After completing the system, each group prepares an operation and maintenance plan and demonstrates their system in operation, discussing problems and possible solutions. |

**Trainer Notes:** If the training group is small (ten or less Trainees), then it may not be necessary or advisable to do this session as two groups. The component activities of this session can be split up and done over several days, if this is more conducive to the overall training design.

**Materials Required:** Leave this up to the Trainees to decide.

**References:**

Chapter 5, Irrigation Reference Manual: Localized Irrigation Systems
International Irrigation Center Module #26

## EXAM: SECTION 6
## DESIGNING SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

1. What are five factors that you should consider in the selection and design of an irrigation system?

Answer:
- slope
- soil type and depth
- flow rate
- field geometry
- crop
- erosion

2. You need to construct a channel to convey irrigation water from a stream diversion to a field. You install a 90° V-notch weir in the stream and measure a head of 11 cm. a) What is the flow rate? You decide that a triangular-shaped canal will be the easiest construction for you and the farmer. With your Abney level, you measure a slope of 1.4% for the canal. b) What will the depth of water be for the triangular channel that will convey the measured flow downstream of the weir once uniform flow has been established? Use a rock-lined canal with a side slope of 1:1 (z = 1); c) What is the velocity of the water?

Answer:

a. $Q = 0.014\ H^{5/2} = 0.014\ (11)^{5/2} = 5.6$ liters/sec = $0.0056\ m^3/sec$

b. $n = 0.032 \quad s = 0.014 \quad z = 1$

$Q = AR^{2/3}\ S^{1/2}/n$ (metric)
For a triangular canal,
$A = zd^2 \quad R = A/wp = zd^2/2d(1 + z^2)^{1/2}$
For a triangular canal with z = 1,
$d = 0.114$ m = 11.4 cm

c. Q = velocity x area, or V = Q/area = 0.43 m/sec

3. A field has a slope of 5%. (a) If the channel is to be built in the same direction as the slope, the channel bottom is to have a 1% slope, and drops are 0.5 meters each, how many drop structures per 100 meters of channel would you need? (b) What type of drop structure would you use?

Answer: The drops will have to compensate for 4% of slope, or 4 m/100 m. Thus, the number of drops is 4 meters/0.5 m = 8 drops per 100 meters.

4. A farmer knows that the water source is above her field, and she wants to irrigate the land. She goes to the market and buys 4 rolls (100 m/roll) of 1/2" Ø (diameter) polyethylene tubing. She installs the main line and, to

her surprise, only a trickle of water comes out of the end of the tube. She calls you and asks for advice. What would you tell her, and how would you explain the problem?

Answer: friction loss in tube
sizing of tube
elevational difference between water source and field

5. In land leveling, what is the main physical factor that determines if the practice can be done effectively? Explain your answer.

Answer: topsoil depth
plant growth in minimum depth of 30 cm

6. What recommended flow rate would cover a 10 m x 10 m basin with sandy loam soil?

Answer: ≈ 5 L/sec (see Table 5.6, Irrigation Reference Manual)

7. What are the steps in constructing a contour furrow irrigation system?

Answer:
1. survey field
2. lay out guide furrows
3. make furrows between guide furrows

8. For furrows (a) What typical flow rate and length of furrow might you expect on a medium textured soil, down a 2% slope, and with 100 mm of water application? (b) If the furrow were half the typical length, what flow rate might you recommend?

Answer: a) length = 120 m, Q = 20 L/sec
b) length = 60 m, Q = 10 L/sec

9. Which system generally requires a higher flow rate, borders or furrows?

Answer: borders

10. There is a 30 m elevational drop between the water source and a field that is to be sprinkler irrigated by gravity pressure. A 100 m distance separates them. A farmer wants to irrigate the field, and it will require a flow of 120 L/min. If the minimum operating pressure for the sprinkler system is 30 psi, what size PVC main line would you recommend to the farmer, 1", 1 1/2", or 2"?

Answer: For the system to work, the elevation head must be greater than the pressure head plus friction losses. For 2" pipe, friction head =

2 m/100 m (Table 5.3, Irrigation Reference Manual), and the operating pressure of 30 psi = 21 m. Thus, elevation head (30 m) > 21 m + 2 m. The 2" size would allow for up to 7 meters of additional friction losses in fittings, etc., and for slightly higher operating pressure.

11. A farmer comes to you and asks how he can eliminate air from the pressurized pipeline in his gravity flow sprinkler system. You accompany him, inspect the main line, and find all the unions to be watertight. Upon arriving at the stream and finding the farmer has placed the inlet of the main line in a fast-flowing, turbulent section of the stream, what is your recommendation?

    Answer: Construct a small diversion.

    Put 50 cm head of water over tube inlet in non-turbulent ponded water.

12. Why do you need debris-free water when operating a localized irrigation system?

    Answer: to prevent clogging of emitters

13. Name an appropriate technology localized irrigation system.

    Answer: perforated polyethylene tubing, with appropriate sized holes, discharging into small basins around trees

# SECTION 7

# FARM WATER MANAGEMENT

- Basic Concepts in Farm Water Management
- Basic Soil and Water Conservation Practices
- Developing Irrigation Schedules
- Evaluation, Operation, and Maintenance

- Exam: Section 7 (Developing Farm Management Plans)

# FARM WATER MANAGEMENT

**Session Topic:** Basic Concepts in Farm Water Management

**Session Goal:** Trainees will identify the constraints faced by farmers and the factors that irrigators can apply to achieve optimum results from irrigation.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will identify the benefits that result from good farm water management.
(2) Trainees will list the constraints typically encountered by farmers in improving management practices.
(3) Trainees will identify practices that a farmer can use to improve results from irrigation.

**Overview:** This session encourages Trainees to begin thinking of irrigation in the context of complete farm systems, from water source to crop yield. Trainees will identify benefits, constraints, and management possibilities important in developing appropriate management practices.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 30 Min. | Trainees will list the benefits of proper irrigation system management and identify problems that can arise from poor management practices. |
| 30 Min. | Trainer facilitates a role play in which three to four Trainees represent local farmers, and one to two Trainees represent irrigation Volunteers offering extension advice. The "farmers" should describe some of the constraints they face in just getting out a crop or two. The "extension workers" should try to work within these constraints to come up with an agreeable strategy for incorporating better management practices into the farmers' routines, without putting an excess stress into the farmers' lives. |
| 120 Min. | Trainer leads Trainees into the field and informs them that they will conduct a farm reconnaissance to (a) interview the farmer and identify the basic practices being used on the farm, (b) establish the physical makeup of the farmer's irrigation system, and (c) complete an analysis of the farm, complete with recommendations for ways to improve farm water management. Trainer divides the group in half, and each group works with a separate farm to complete the assigned tasks. |

45 Min. Trainees reconvene and present their findings. The groups provide feedback to each other, and the trainer advises Trainees that they will repeat this exercise in the training, although next time they will have to present their findings directly to the farmer.

**Trainer Notes:** Trainer should locate potential farm evaluation sites that reflect both good and poor management practices. Trainer(s) should meet with farmers before the session and make certain they will be comfortable working with the Trainees in this exercise.

**Materials Required:**

* any tools the Trainees feel they need
* notebook

**References:**

Chapter 6, Irrigation Reference Manual: On-Farm Water Management
International Irrigation Center Module #40

## FARM WATER MANAGEMENT

**Session Topic:** Basic Soil and Water Conservation Practices

**Session Goal:** For Trainees to describe the criteria used when applying a variety of techniques that can promote soil and water conservation.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) For Trainees to determine when erosion controls are needed.
(2) For Trainees to describe criteria for evaluating and selecting the most appropriate erosion control measures for a given site.
(3) For Trainees to design and construct a bench terrace and a gabion.

**Overview:** Controlling erosion is a major concern for all agriculture Volunteers. Sediment loads can clog ponds, reservoirs, and canals. Soil loss can limit the productivity of agricultural fields. This session provides Trainees with an opportunity to apply some of the basic concepts covered in the session on watershed hydrology.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 45 Min. | Session can begin in the field with trainer reviewing some of the concepts covered in the watershed hydrology sessions. Trainer should walk with Trainees through a hilly, but cultivated area of a watershed to point out evidence of different erosion processes and describe the erosion processes occurring. Trainees are asked to list factors influencing soil loss. |
| 60 Min. | Trainees are divided into groups of three. One group constructs a runoff plot with pin and washer and demonstrates its use for estimating soil loss. Other groups should practice building small check dams using brush materials and demonstrate dams' use for slowing runoff and encouraging infiltration and vegetative recovery of the gully. |
| 20 Min. | Trainees remain in groups of three and use their A-frame level to delineate two contours along the hillside spaced approximately 15 meters apart |
| 2-3 Hr. | Trainees reconvene and review the principles for constructing a bench terrace. Trainees now divide into two groups. Each group selects one of the contour lines and constructs approximately 2-3 |

horizontal meters of a bench terrace with a 2-3 meter base.

25 Min. Trainee groups present their completed terrace section and describe the experience. Trainees discuss the advantages and disadvantages of terracing and other soil conservation measures and indicate the concerns that farmers are likely to have about incorporating these measures into their daily agricultural practices. Trainees identify strategies they might use to increase farmer incentives to apply soil conservation techniques.

**Trainer Notes:** Doing this session in the field should make the concepts of erosion and soil conservation much easier for Trainees to grasp. The actual soil conservation techniques covered should be largely dictated by in-country conditions and common practices.

**Materials Required:**

* A-frame
* axe, machete, shovels, picks, rake, tamper
* hand or Abney level
* large pins or stakes, washers
* stakes, string
* twine or rope

**References:**

Chapter 2, Irrigation Reference Manual: Soil and Water Conservation Practices
International Irrigation Center Module #19

Crozier, C. 1986. Soil Conservation Techniques for Hillside Farms. Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange. Reprint Series No. R-62. 96 p.

Gil, N. 1985. Watershed Development with Special Reference to Soil and Water Conservation. FAO Soils Bulletin 44. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome. 243 p.

Weidelt, H.J. (ed). 1984. Manual of Reforestation and Erosion Control for the Philippines. German Agency for Technical Cooperation. Reprinted by Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange, Washington, D.C. pp.393-491.

## FARM WATER MANAGEMENT

**Session Topic:** Developing Irrigation Schedules

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to evaluate the factors that define a farmer's irrigation schedule and will obtain experience in developing simple schedules.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will identify the factors that determine when and how much water to apply before, during, and after the crop season.
(2) Trainees will define the concepts of net irrigation need, allowable moisture depletion, irrigation interval, net depth of application, gross depth of application, and irrigation duration.
(3) Trainees will determine appropriate allowable soil moisture depletion, irrigation intervals, net application depths, gross application depths, and irrigation duration for local crops, soils, and conditions
(4) Trainees will identify the soil moisture levels in a soil and define the time to irrigate using the "feel" method in the field.

**Overview:** The Trainee must be able to determine appropriate irrigation intervals and amounts, evaluate soil moisture deficits in the field, and determine the time to irrigate in order to improve the efficiency and productivity of irrigated fields. This session builds on information developed during the Assessing Irrigation Water Requirements training sessions and forms a foundation of effective farm management.

**Session Activities:**

Time

75 Min. Trainees will describe and summarize the factors that affect when and how much water a farmer will apply. They will base this analysis on their recent work in the sessions on Assessing Irrigation Water Requirements and Farm Water Delivery Systems. The trainer should help them refer back to these sessions often if they are not making the link on their own. The trainer will then present the terms: net irrigation need, allowable moisture depletion, irrigation interval, net application depth, gross application depth, and irrigation duration. Trainees will develop definitions for these concepts and attempt to explain them graphically. Trainer will then work through a simple example of how to apply these concepts. Trainer will provide local data, and the Trainees will individually complete the

calculations necessary to develop a simple irrigation schedule.

45 Min. Trainer will take Trainees to the field where they will use the "feel" method to practice evaluating soil moisture and estimating the time to irrigate. By the end of this exercise, the Trainees will be able to estimate soil moisture conditions confidently and apply this information to the preparation of irrigation schedules.

**Trainer Notes:** For the field exercise, the trainers should select irrigated farms with different soil textures and management practices.

**Materials Required:**

- local crop and climate information
- soil auger and shovel
- soil moisture "feel" chart
- calculators

**References:**

Chapter 6, Irrigation Reference Manual: Farm Irrigation Scheduling
International Irrigation Center Modules #2, #3, #8- #11, and #39

# FARM WATER MANAGEMENT

**Session Topic:** Evaluation, Operation, and Maintenance

**Session Goal:** Trainees will conduct a rapid appraisal of farm irrigation systems, including canals and conveyance structures, and make recommendations for improvement.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will evaluate a farm irrigation system to determine whether the farmer is applying water at the correct intervals and application depths, with adequate uniformity and without excessive runoff or erosion concerns.
(2) Trainees will evaluate the conditions of the farmer's canals, structures, and irrigation systems, and make suggestions for improvements.

**Overview:** Dramatic improvements in yields and water savings often result from slight improvements in management. Simple evaluations of the physical system and its operation are the key to improving the on-farm performance. This session enables Trainees to consolidate and apply concepts developed in several earlier sessions in the sections on Assessing Irrigation Water Requirements and Farm Water Delivery Systems. Trainees will be able to determine how all of the different practices link together to guide comprehensive on-farm water management.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer will lead Trainees into the field where they will define the methods that can be used for rapid appraisal and evaluation of irrigation systems and the types of changes that farmers can apply.

60 Min. Trainer has Trainees observe, evaluate, and develop recommendations for improving the operation and maintenance procedures being used by the farmer. This will include measuring flow rates and studying soil conditions.

60 Min. After the Trainees have confidently determined their recommendations for improvement, they will select one or two representatives from their group to meet with the farmer and communicate their recommendations. These representatives should record the farmer's responses and describe their experience to the full group.

**Trainer Notes:** While it is certainly preferable for all of the Trainees to gain the experience of communicating their findings to the farmer, it would be overwhelming for a farmer to have to meet with an entire group. The Trainees should carefully select their representative(s), and be certain that concensus has been reached in the operation and maintenance improvements they will be recommending. For their part, the Trainees' representative(s) should be careful to identify the constraints, operating criteria, and options under which the farmer operates.

**Materials Required:**

- 30 meter tape
- flow measuring device
- stopwatch
- soil auger, shovel

**References:**

Chapter 6, Irrigation Reference Manual: Evaluation of Existing Irrigation Systems; Training Small-Scale Farmers in Irrigation Management
International Irrigation Center Modules #33-#37, and #40

## EXAM: SECTION 7
## FARM WATER MANAGEMENT

1. Define: (1) irrigation interval, (2) management allowed deficit, and (3) irrigation duration.

   Answer: Irrigation interval is the spacing between irrigations (days).

   Management allowed deficit (MAD) is the allowed soil moisture depletion between irrigations.

   Irrigation duration is the time required to irrigate a field.

2. What percent of the available water in the root zone (FC - WP) can be extracted from a soil without stressing a lettuce or carrot crop during mid-season? A corn crop? A cotton crop?

   Answer: Lettuce - a sensitive crop - use 30% to 40%
   Corn - semi-tolerant - use 50% to 60%
   Cotton - tolerant - use 60% to 70%

3. Given a field with a loamy sand soil with AW = 100 mm/m, root depth = 60 cm, and an allowable deficit of 50%, how much water can be depleted below field capacity before irrigation (i.e., what is the management allowed deficit)?

   Answer: $MAD = p' \times Aw \times D = 0.50 \times 100 \text{ mm/m} \times 0.60 \text{ m} = 30 \text{ mm}$

4. What is the required irrigation interval if the soil profile is filled with each irrigation, and daily crop water use ETc is 5 mm/day? (Assume rainfall and groundwater contributions are negligible.)

   Answer: $I = \frac{MAD}{ETc} + Ts = \frac{30 \text{ mm}}{5 \text{ mm/day}} + 1 = 7 \text{ days}$

5. If a farmer irrigates every 7 days while crop water use is 5 mm/day with no precipitation, and overall efficiencies are 50%, what net and gross depth of application will be required?

   Answer: $dn = I \times ETc = 7 \times 5 = 35 \text{ mm}$
   $dg = dn/Ea = 35/0.5 = 70 \text{ mm}$

6. A farmer waters a 1-hectare field with 10 liters/sec in 24 hours of operation. What is his gross application depth?
Answer:

Using the Continuity Equation, $QT = dA \quad d = \frac{QT}{A}$

$Q = 10\ L/sec = .01\ m^3/sec = 36\ m^3/hr$
$T = 24\ hours$
$A = 1\ ha = 10{,}000\ m^2$
$d = \frac{36\ m^3/hr \times 24\ hours}{10{,}000\ m^2} = .086\ m = 8.6\ cm$

7. Describe 5 characteristics of a good irrigation.

Answer: A good irrigation
1) is uniform
2) is adequate
3) does not have excessive runoff
4) is not errosive
5) is on time
6) minimizes runoff
7) minimizes deep percolation

8. Name 5 factors which the farmer can control to improve his irrigation.

Answer:
1) flow rate
2) irrigation interval
3) duration
4) irrigation method
5) slope

# SECTION 8

# WATERLOGGING AND SALINITY

- Basic Concepts of Waterlogging and Salinity
- Control of Drainage and Salinity Problems

- Exam: Section 8 (Assessing Field Problems and Solutions)

## WATERLOGGING AND SALINITY

**Session Topic:** Basic Concepts of Waterlogging and Salinity

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to describe the causes and problems associated with waterlogging and salinity.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will identify waterlogged or salt-affected soils in the field and the probable causes of the problem and will explain difficulties that these conditions will cause for crop production.
(2) Trainees will describe field methods used to identify problems with salinity and alkalinity in soils.
(3) Trainees will learn to use tables to evaluate the effect of soil and water salinity and sodic levels for various crops.

**Overview:** Waterlogging and salinity can be a serious problem in many irrigated areas. Trainees need to understand how to identify the severity of these problems in the field and work with practices that can improve soil conditions. This session introduces basic concepts and prepares Trainees to work with field practices in waterlogging and salinity control.

**Session Activities:**

| Time | |
|---|---|
| 45 Min. | Trainer will introduce basic concepts of waterlogging, salinity and alkalinity, and use slides or videos to review typical conditions, tolerant crops, effects on susceptible crops, field identification practices, and analysis procedures that are typically applied. (If video equipment is not available, trainer can use graphics to cover topics.) |
| 60 Min. | Trainer leads Trainees into the field and has them dig shallow holes in waterlogged areas and in well-drained areas. Trainees should compare the soil conditions and the apparent effects on plants in the field. The trainer should discuss with the Trainees probable causes of, and potential solutions to, the problems. |
| 60 Min. | Trainees move to a field site with salinity problems. Observations of effects on plant growth are recorded, and methods for identifying salinity problems in the field are defined. Trainees meet with a local farmer and discuss the farmer's experiences in trying to work with or improve salinity problems. |

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

60 Min. Trainees visit a sodium affected field and identify areas within the field that demonstrate dispersed soil that has lost its structure. Impacts on crop growth and irrigation water infiltration rates are observed and recorded. Trainees will discuss with the trainer the probable causes of the problem and potential solutions. Again, Trainees meet with a local farmer to discuss the farmer's concerns and experience.

60 Min. Trainees move to a field where they can conduct some simple experiments. Trainer instructs Trainees to build three small basins. Trainees should prepare three solutions, as follows: (a) plain water, (b) water with a mixture of approximately 0.25 kilogram salt per every four liters of water, (c) water with a mixture of approximately 0.25 kilogram of any chemical fertilizer per every four liters of water. Each basin should be filled with one of these solutions, and allowed to drain. After the solution has completely drained, add a second, and then a third mix to the basin. Trainees should observe and discuss the differences in terms of water penetration and resulting soil structure and color in each basin. Trainees should discuss the long term effects of these conditions on crop growth.

60 Min. In many countries laboratory facilities are available and tests for salinity and sodium problems can be performed. Trainees need to learn basic skills to enable them to collect samples and interpret lab results. Trainer should obtain soil or water lab results from in-country and use the data to prepare simple problems for the Trainees to analyze. Problems should require the Trainees to consult the following tables: (a) Crop Salt Tolerance Levels for Different Crops as Influenced by Irrigation Water or Soil Salinity, and (b) Effect of Irrigation Water Quality on Soil Salinity, Permeability, and Toxicity (see Chapter 7 of Irrigation Reference Manual). Trainees should classify the soils or water samples in terms of the degree of salinity or sodicity problems evident.

**Trainer Notes:** This is an important session for Trainees who will be working in arid and semi-arid areas with high water tables and poor drainage conditions. Waterlogging and salinity usually become a problem when water tables are 1 meter or less below the soil surface. Trainers should locate several potential field sites for Trainees to visit and inform farmers of the intent of the visit.

**Materials Required:**

- 3 buckets
- copies of tables 7.2 and 7.4 from Chapter 7 of Irrigation Reference Manual
- salt, fertilizer
- soil or water lab analysis results
- shovel, hoe

**References:**

Chapter 7, Irrigation Reference Manual: Waterlogging and Salinity Problems
International Irrigation Center Modules #14 - #17

## WATERLOGGING AND SALINITY

**Session Topic:** Control of Drainage and Salinity Problems

**Session Goal:** Trainees will identify control measures that can be used to eliminate or minimize problems with waterlogging and salinity.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will identify the various soil amendments that can be used to neutralize the effects of sodium salts.
(2) Trainees will determine the timing and amount of leaching required to remove salts from the soil profile.
(3) Trainees will describe the use of artificial drainage to eliminate waterlogging and salinity problems.
(4) Trainees will describe the types of drains required to lower the water table to acceptable levels, including surface drains for evacuation of excess irrigation and rainwater.
(5) Trainees will identify cultural practices that can be used to minimize the effects of salts and waterlogging on yields.

**Overview:** Drainage design and construction can be a very complex endeavor. Trainees, however, should at least be familiar with the procedures used in this task. The use of soil amendments, leaching, and cultural practices is definitely within the realm of most Volunteers' work responsibilities, and Trainees will be provided with an opportunity to develop these skills in the field. This session expands on basic concepts developed in the earlier session in Waterlogging and Salinity.

**Session Activities:**

Time

45 Min. Trainer leads Trainees to the field and has Trainees demonstrate their ability to distinguish waterlogging, salinity, and sodicity problems. Trainer introduces simple techniques that can be used to begin to control these problems, including the use of soil amendments, leaching, surface and subsurface draining, and cultural practices.

90 Min. Trainees are divided into groups of three and assigned the task of estimating and applying the correct amount of soil amendments and quantifying the amount of leaching required to improve conditions in the field they are visiting. Trainee groups describe and document cultural practices that can be employed to improve soil and water conditions. Groups reconvene and compare results and experiences.

60 Min. Trainer brings Trainees to inspect a farm drainage system. Trainees, continuing to work in their groups of three, graphically delineate the system design, and identify the steps that were apparently followed in developing this drainage system.

45 Min. Trainees interview a farmer working with the problems of high water table and salinity and conduct a quick visual review of the farmer's situation. Trainees offer general recommendations for the farmer on practices that can reduce or eliminate the problems, being certain to frame recommendations within the limitations of options available to the farmer.

**Trainer Notes:** Trainers will need to locate areas with waterlogging and salinity problems and identify one or more farmers willing to allow Trainees to visit and study their farms. Trainer should be certain to interview local farmers before this session to learn how they are typically dealing with these problems. The design of subsurface drains is beyond the scope of this training. Surface drains for the removal of excess irrigation and rainwater, however, should be discussed.

**Materials Required:**

* local information on soils
* soil auger
* transport
* shovel

**References:**

Chapter 7, Irrigation Reference Manual: Waterlogging and Salinity Problems
International Irrigation Center Modules #14, #15, #16, and #17

Ayers, R. S., and Westcot, D.W. 1985. Water Quality for Agriculture. FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper No. 29. Rev. 1. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome. 161 p.

## EXAM - SECTION 8
## ASSESSING FIELD PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

1. Describe the soil characteristics of a saline soil that can be seen in the field.

   Answer: White crusts on soil surface.
   Plants stunted, appearing to be drought stressed even though soil is moist.
   Uneven plant height and soil moisture in the field.

2. Define: (1) EC, (2) amendment, and (3) leaching.

   Answer: See Glossary

3. Results of a soil sample analysis come back with an ECe of 2.2 and an ESP of 8. (1) How would this soil be classified? (2) What problems would a farmer expect to encounter when irrigating this soil?

   Answers: (1) Saline-sodic
   (2) Drainage and infiltration problems; run-off with heavy irrigations; uneven crops; problems with salt-sensitive crops

4. Using Table 7.2 on crop salt tolerance levels, what yields would you expect for beans? for barley? for carrots?

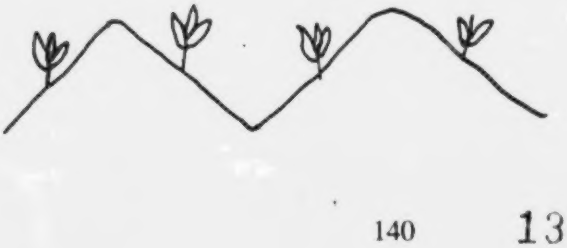
   Answer: Beans - About 75% of normal harvest
   Barley - Normal harvest
   Carrots - 75% of normal harvestd

5. How would you identify a waterlogged soil in the field?

   Answer: Gray soils with black or red mottles
   Water-saturated soil, standing water in holes 30- 80 cm deep

6. Draw bed shapes and plant locations that would control salinity problems with furrow irrigation.

   Answer:



7. If a farmer wanted to apply 1 ton/ha of pure gypsum to reclaim soils with sodium problems, and only lime sulfur was available, how much lime sulfur would he or she have to apply? How much sulfur would he or she apply in the process?

Answer: Given:

| | Equivalent | |
|---|---|---|
| | 1 Ton of Pure Gypsum | 1 Ton of Sulfur |
| Lime Sulfur | 0.78 | 4.17 |

a. 78% x 1 ton gypsum = 1 ton lime sulfur
   1 ton gypsum = 1.28 tons lime sulfur

b. Applying 1.28 tons lime sulfur x 4.17 = 5.35 tons sulfur

# SECTION 9

# PROJECT PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT

- Conducting Economic Analyses
- Proposal Writing

## PROJECT PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT

**Session Topic:** Conducting Economic Analyses

**Session Goal:** Trainees will be able to select the appropriate economic analysis method and apply it to analyze the feasibility of a project.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) Trainees will be able to describe methods of economic analysis used to evaluate a project.
(2) Trainees will be able to analyze the economics of alternative technologies in a project.
(3) Trainees will be able to demonstrate the use of an amortization table.

**Overview:** Trainees will need to calculate and analyze the economic feasibility of projects and look at how different options within a project greatly influence its success. They will also need to confidently prepare risk and return factor analyses as part of an overall economic analysis. This session should be presented in tandem with the project planning and proposal writing session.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer asks Trainees to describe the need for economic analysis in a project. What are the common sense economic factors that must be taken into account in conducting a project analysis? Trainer provides a simple example to demonstrate the concepts of: break even point, net present value, partial budgeting, pay back period, and rate of return.

30 Min. Trainer selects two Volunteers for a role play exercise. One Volunteer will be a small-scale farmer and the other will be an irrigation extension worker. The objective of the extension work will be to convince the farmer that it is worth the risk of investing some present time to construct an irrigation system. Unfortunately, it is now very close to planting time, and the farmer is concerned about the danger of getting crops in late or not at all. Dialogue should bring out the concerns and innate wisdom of both individuals.

30 Min. Trainer then facilitates a discussion of the following: what is more important to a farmer -> the economic risk taken in a project or the economic

return expected from a project? How might a farmer prioritize these concerns and on what basis?

60 Min. Trainees are divided into two groups, A and B. The groups are instructed to conduct an analysis of a development project. Group A uses the following methods (Risk Analysis): (1) rate of return, (2) break-even point, and (3) pay back period. Group B uses the following methods (Return Analysis): (4) rate of return and (5) partial budgeting. Groups are given basic project data and determine the economic feasibility using each method. Each group presents findings to entire group. Merits of each method are discussed by the Trainees as a full group.

60 Min. Trainees remain in the same groups. Trainer provides data on the following:

- prices of pipe: PVC and polyethylene
- expected life of piping material
- interest rate
- project life

Group A analyses the economic feasibility of using polyethylene while Group B analyses the economic feasibility of using PVC. Each group presents their findings, and discusses the factors that would influence their final decision. Trainer concludes session by asking Trainees to describe how they would communicate these concepts to small-scale farmers in a rural setting.

**Trainer Notes:**

**Materials Required:**

- data on expected life of tube materials
- handouts with examples of computed economic feasibility analyses.
- pricing information for local materials

**References:**

Appendix B, Irrigation Reference Manual: Economic Analysis
Appendix D, Irrigation Reference Manual: Case Studies

## PROJECT PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT

**Session Topic:** Proposal Writing

**Session Goal:** For Trainees to identify and apply practices necessary to prepare project proposals and plan simple irrigation projects.

**Session Objectives:**

(1) For Trainees to identify factors that influence the initiation, design, management, maintenance, and documentation of projects.
(2) For Trainees to identify and describe practices and procedures that can assist in time management on a project.

**Overview:** In the course of their service Volunteers will very likely take on the task of planning a small project and writing a proposal to leverage funds for the project. In this session trainers guide Trainees to identify the key factors involved in preparing a project plan and writing a project proposal. Trainees also are provided with an opportunity to test their skills in planning a hypothetical project.

**Session Activities:**

Time

30 Min. Trainer asks Trainees to define "project." Example: Any specific activity carried out for a definite purpose or goal, within a defined time frame, and with defined resources. Trainer asks Trainees to define "program." Example: An integrated group of continuing activities directed at implementing many projects. Have Trainees describe the kinds of projects and programs they see themselves being involved in. Trainer discusses three basic components of effective project planning and management: 1) clear, precise, plans for a finite project (has a beginning and an end), 2) based on appropriate information and resource assessment, and 3) involves the appropriate people from within and outside the community. Trainer then divides Trainees into three groups and assigns each group a topic from these three components. Trainee groups are given 10 minutes to list the factors and strategies that are necessary to accomplish successfully these three components. Example:

A. Plans
- clear, concise, realistic goals and objectives,
- alternative strategies to achieve goals and objectives,
- comprehensive task list,
- schedule/timeline for tasks,
- organizational development and administrative procedures in place,
- community involvement in designing plans,
- on-going evaluation mechanisms, and
- maintenance measures.

B. Resource and Information Gathering
- appropriate data about cultural and physical conditions, and
- accurate interpretation of community needs and ambitions.

C. Involvement of Appropriate People
- identify community leaders,
- work with a motivated community, and
- working with motivated agencies.

30 Min. Trainer presents brief lecture on project planning and proposal writing, using case examples where possible, and plenty of visual aids to demonstrate how these concepts are applied to small-scale irrigation projects. Discussion should include advantages and disadvantages of proactive versus practive planning. For example:

A. Reactive Planning
- passive acceptance of events,
- response to immediate problems,
- short-time crisis management, and
- lack of overall coherent plan.

Advantages

- limited responsibilities required, and
- very little time or financial investment. required

Disadvantages

- are always working at a crisis pace,
- are not looking ahead to future needs,
- often lose sight of original goals, and
- find successful conclusions are rare; more often move from one crisis to next.

B. Proactive Planning

- active on-going management of project tasks,
- advance planning and setting of goals,
- contingency planning to overcome obstacles, and
- evaluation and continual improvement of project.

Advantages

- anticipate and respond to actual needs,
- organize of resources available,
- garner enthusiasm and participation of community,
- maintain track to goal completion, and
- frequently have successful conclusions.

Disadvantages

- requires time, skills, and considerable effort,
- requires organization, participation, and lots of people, and
- requires a considerable amount of management responsibility and decision making.

Trainer moves on to outline a step-by-step approach to project planning. This can appear something like the following:

| Technical | Social | Financial |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Feasibility study (preliminary) | 1. Project initiation by community | 1. Water Association formed |
| 2. Social/technical survey | 2. Design consultation with community | 2. Membership/ responsibilities assigned |
| 3. System design | 3. Organizing tasks, training | 3. research funding options, organizations |
| 4. Proposal preparation | 4. Community mobilization | 4. Proposal presented to funding source |
| 5. Construction | 5. Evaluations | 5. Funds and materials |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6. Operation and maintenance | 6. Organizational functions, meetings | 6. Disbursement of funds, finance management |
| 7. Project documentation | 7. Next community: priorities/projects | |

30 Min. Trainer has Trainees describe the components of a complete project proposal. Trainees should describe the content and format of a proposal and the level of detail that is necessary to make a proposal understandable and appealing to a reader. Trainer walks Trainees through a sample proposal that was successfully financed to do an in-country project. Trainees critique the proposal, then modify their own description of an effective proposal. Trainer briefly reviews a list of potential funding sources that can be leveraged by Volunteers. This list should be country-specific and appropriate to host country conditions.

45 Min. Trainer gives Trainees the following assignment to be done independently by each person: Identify or imagine one project that you can see yourself working with at your site within your first year. Prepare an outline of the procedures and tasks that you anticipate doing as a part of this entire project process. Then put together a rough outline for a project proposal that you will help draft to solicit funds for this project.

15 Min. Have Trainees reunite and share what they came up with. Identify problems or uncertainties, and indicate areas in which more skill development will be necessary.

**Trainer Notes:** The discussion of proposal writing can be best facilitated by having a current or recent Volunteer who successfully financed a project with a written proposal come in and share her or his experiences. Have this Volunteer describe the entire process she or he went through from developing the initial project idea to writing the proposal to managing the money once it arrived. Be certain to work with a Volunteer that did not do everything alone in a vacuum but acted as a participant in a community proposal development process.

**Materials Required:**

- list of potential donors with addresses and contacts
- sample project proposals from in-country projects

**Selected References:**

Appendix B, Irrigation Reference Manual: Proposal Writing

# Irrigation Reference Manual

A technical reference to be used with the Peace Corps Irrigation Training Manual T0076 in the selection, planning, design, operation, and management of small-scale irrigation systems.

**Peace Corps**
Information Collection & Exchange
T0077

# INFORMATION COLLECTION & EXCHANGE

Peace Corps' Information Collection & Exchange (ICE) was established so that the strategies and technologies developed by Peace Corps Volunteers, their co-workers and their counterparts could be made available to the wide range of development organizations and individual workers who might find them useful. Training guides, curricula, lesson plans, project reports, manuals and other Peace Corps-generated materials developed in the field are collected and reviewed. Some are reprinted "as is"; others provide a source of field based information for the production of manuals or for research in particular program areas. Materials that you submit to ICE thus become part of the Peace Corps' larger contribution to development.

Information about ICE publications and services is available through:

Peace Corps
Information Collection & Exchange
1990 K Street, NW - 8th Floor
Washington, DC 20526

Add your experience to the ICE Resource Center. Send materials that you have prepared so that we can share them with others working in the development field. Your technical insights serve as the basis for the generation of ICE manuals, reprints, and resource packets, and also ensure that ICE is providing the most up-to-date, innovative problem-solving techniques and information available to you and your fellow development workers.

recycled paper

# IRRIGATION REFERENCE MANUAL

A technical reference to be used
with the Peace Corps Irrigation
Training Manual in the selection,
planning, design, operation,
and management of small-scale
irrigation systems.

Prepared for the Peace Corps

by

Agro Engineering, Inc.
0210 Road 2 South
Alamosa, Colorado 81101

Authors:

LeRoy Salazar
Keith Crane
Maya ter Kuile
Jim Tolisano
Lee Wheeler
David Radtke

Peace Corps
Information Collection and Exchange
Training Manual T0077
September 1994

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**List of Figures** vi

**List of Tables** xi

**Chapter 1 - Introduction** 1

1.1 The Role and Purpose of Irrigation 3
1.2 Introduction to the Irrigation Reference Manual 5

**Chapter 2 - Physical and Biological Resource Base** 9

2.1 Watersheds 11
  2.1.1 Watershed Hydrology 11
  2.1.2 Hydrologic Processes 13
  2.1.3 Assessing Watershed Conditions 17
  2.1.4 Soil and Water Conservation Practices 19

2.2 Water Flow Measurement 35
  2.2.1 Units of Measurement 35
  2.2.2 Measuring Devices in Open Channels 35
  2.2.3 Float Method 36
  2.2.4 Weirs 37
  2.2.5 Siphon Tubes 42
  2.2.6 Bucket and Stopwatch Method 43
  2.2.7 Orifices 43

2.3 Surveying 47
  2.3.1. Profiling 47
  2.3.2 Steps in Making a Topographic Map 52
  2.3.3 Abney Level Surveying 55
  2.3.4 Simple Levels for Use in Surveying Contour Lines 59
  2.3.5 Compass Use 67

2.4 Soil-Plant-Water Relationships 69
  2.4.1 Soil Moisture Storage and Availability 69
  2.4.2 Estimating Soil Water Characteristics on Site 73
  2.4.3 Development of the Soil Water Reservoir 76
  2.4.4 Soil Water Availability and Crop Use Patterns 77
  2.4.5 Soil Intake Characteristics 79
  2.4.6 Soil Chemistry and Fertility 80

2.5 Conducting Initial Environmental Evaluations of Irrigation Projects 83
  2.5.1 The Role of Environmental Assessment 84
  2.5.2 Illustrative Environmental Review Form for Irrigation or Water Resource Development Projects 86

**Chapter 3 - Developing Water Sources** 93

3.1 Diversions 95
  3.1.1 Types 95
  3.1.2 Types of Construction Materials 95
  3.1.3 Construction and Maintenance Factors 95

3.2 Concrete 97
  3.2.1 Hand Mixing 97

3.3 Designing Structures for Springs and Seeps 99
  3.3.1 Spring Box Designs 99

3.4 Ponds for Irrigation Water Storage 107
  3.4.1 Location of the Pond 107
  3.4.2 Availability of Water 107
  3.4.3 Soils 107
  3.4.4 Topography 108
  3.4.5 Design and Construction 108

3.5 Pumps and Water Lifting Devices 111
  3.5.1 Types of Pumps 111
  3.5.2 Pumps Powered by Humans and Animals 112
  3.5.3 Animal-Powered Pumps 112
  3.5.4 Mechanically Driven Pumps 112
  3.5.5 Centrifugal Pumps 124
  3.5.6 Propeller or Axial Flow Pumps 125
  3.5.7 Mixed Flow Pumps 125
  3.5.8 Turbine Pumps 125
  3.5.9 Sources of Power 126
  3.5.10 Selection of Pumps and Power Units 129
  3.5.11 Amount of Water to Be Pumped 130
  3.5.12 The Pumping Lift or Head 131
  3.5.13 Horsepower and Efficiency 133
  3.5.14 Pump Characteristic Curves 134
  3.5.15 Power Source and Power Costs 135
  3.5.16 Pump Location 137
  3.5.17 Pump Installation 139
  3.5.18 Turbine and Propeller Pumps 144
  3.5.19 Intake Structures 144
  3.5.20 Minimum Water Level 146
  3.5.21 Typical Pump Design 146
  3.5.22 Size of Pumps 148
  3.5.23 Costs 149
  3.5.24 Evaluation of Pumping Plants 149
  3.5.25 Rower Pump 150
  3.5.26 Hydraulic Ram 150

3.6 Wells 153
  3.6.1 Methods of Drilling: Percussion Drilling 153
  3.6.2 Methods of Drilling: Hand Auger Rig 162
  3.6.3 Other Drilling Equipment 164
  3.6.4 Hand Dug Wells 166

**Chapter 4 - Estimating Irrigation Requirements** 169

4.1 Introduction 171
4.2 Reference Crop Evapotranspiration (ETo) 173
4.3 FAO Crop Coefficients 177
4.4 Dependable Precipitation 181
4.5 Effective Precipitation 183
4.6 Ground water Contributions to Crop Requirements 185
4.7 Gross Irrigation Requirements 187

**Chapter 5 - Farm Water Delivery Systems** 191

5.1 Control of Irrigation Water 193
  5.1.1 Components of Farm Irrigation Systems 193
  5.1.2 Open Channel Systems 193
  5.1.3 Control Structures 202

5.2 Pipeline Hydraulics and Design 213
  5.2.1 Continuity Equation 213
  5.2.2 Pressure, Head, and Friction Losses 214
  5.2.3 Factors Influencing Head Loss 216
  5.2.4 Pipe Design 216
  5.2.5 The Hydraulic Gradient Line 217
  5.2.6 Pipeline Design Sample Problems 218
  5.2.7 Pipes and Pipeworking 221
  5.2.8 Working with Pipes 222
  5.2.9 Water Hammer 228
  5.2.10 Air Relief, Vacuum Relief, and Pressure Relief 229
  5.2.11 Other Pipeline Structures and Accessories 231
  5.2.12 Pipeline Materials 232

5.3 Land Leveling 233

5.4 Irrigation Methods 237
  5.4.1 Characteristics of Irrigation Systems 237

5.5 Surface Irrigation Systems 243
  5.5.1 Criteria for Design and Operation 243
  5.5.2 Description of Different Surface Irrigation Methods 244
  5.5.3 Contour Ditch 246
  5.5.4 Contour Levee 247
  5.5.5 Furrow Irrigation 247
  5.5.6 Corrugation Irrigation 249
  5.5.7 Operation and Maintenance of Farm Irrigation Systems 250

5.6 Sprinkler Irrigation Systems 251
5.6.1 Principal Components 251
5.6.2 Pipe Specifications 252
5.6.3 Sprinkler Heads and Nozzles 253
5.6.4 Sprinkler System Design 256
5.6.5 Lateral Design 258
5.6.6 Sprinkler System Installation 259
5.6.7 System Operation and Maintenance 262

5.7 Localized Irrigation; Systems 265
5.7.1 Characteristics 267
5.7.2 Operation and Maintenance 269

**Chapter 6 - Farm Water Management** 271

6.1 Farm Water Management 273
6.1.1 General Concepts 273

6.2 Farm Irrigation Scheduling 279
6.2.1 Factors Affecting Irrigation Scheduling 279
6.2.2 The Practice of Irrigation Scheduling 281
6.2.3 Techniques for Preparing Irrigation Schedules 281
6.2.4 Useful Relationships in Irrigation Scheduling 282
6.2.5 The Soil Water Budget Approach 285
6.2.6 The Feel and Appearance Method 286
6.2.7 Summary of Scheduling Techniques 287
6.2.8 A Comparison of Scheduling Criteria for Surface, Sprinkler and Drip Irrigation 289
6.2.9 Rice Irrigation Scheduling 291
6.2.10 Scheduling and Management Strategies for Limited Water Supplies 292
6.2.11 Delivery System Schedules 294
6.2.12 Project Scheduling: A Summary 297

6.3 Evaluation of Existing Irrigation Systems 299
6.3.1 Strategies for Farm Management 299
6.3.2 Rapid On-Site Evaluations 302
6.3.3 Evaluation of Multiple Farm Irrigation Systems 304

6.4 Training Small-scale Farmers in Irrigation Management 307

**Chapter 7 - Waterlogging and Salinity** 365

7.1 Basic Concepts in Waterlogging and Salinity 367
  7.1.1 Waterlogging and High Ground water Tables 367
  7.1.2 Soil and Water Salinity 368
  7.1.3 Classification of Salt Affected Soils 371
  7.1.4 Evaluating Waterlogging and Salinity Problems 372

7.2 Control of Waterlogging and Salinity Problems 375
  7.2.1 Surface and Subsurface Drains 375
  7.2.2 Reclamation of Salt Affected Soils 376
  7.2.3 Correcting Sodium Problems With Amendments 377
  7.2.4 Management of Saline and Alkali Soils 379

7.3 Irrigation Water Quality 385

**Appendix A - Math Skills and Tool Use** 387
A.1 Conversion Factors 389
A.2 Common Formulas 392
A.3 Trigonometric Table 393
A.4 List of Common Tools 394

**Appendix B - Community Organization and Development** 395
B.1 Community Situation Analysis/Needs Assessment 397
B.2 Rapid Rural Appraisal 399
B.3 Water Users Associations 406
B.4 Formal and Non-Formal Communication Techniques 411
B.5 Problem Solving 415
B.6 Project Planning and Proposal Writing 417
B.7 Economic Analysis 425
B.8 Financial Analysis 432

**Appendix C - Summary of International Irrigation Center (IIC) Training Modules** 439

**Appendix D - Case Studies** 447

**Appendix E - Annotated Bibliography** 457

**Appendix F - Glossary of Terms** 471

**Index** 483

## LIST OF FIGURES

2.1 Watershed Boundaries on Contour Map

2.2 The Hydrologic Cycle

2.3 Types of Aquifers and Location of Water Source

2.4 Plugging of Smaller Gullies

2.5 Construction of a Rock Check Dam

2.6 Brushwood Check Dam

2.7 Pole or Log Check Dam

2.8 A Woven Wire Check Dam

2.9 Sod Strip Checks in a Small Gully

2.10 Water Drainageway Protected Against Erosion by Rock Lining

2.11 Retention Well as a Site for Diverting Runoff Water

2.12 Discontinuous Narrow Terrace (Orchard Terrace)

2.13 Discontinuous Narrow Terrace (cross section)

2.14 Contour Planting Beds

2.15 Contour Infiltration Ditch

2.16 Bench Terrace Construction Sequence "A"

2.17 Bench Terrace Construction Sequence "B"

2.18 Estimating Flow Rate by Float Method

2.19 Ditch Cross Sections for Example

2.20 Rectangular Weir Used as Measuring Device and Drop

2.21 Ninety Degree V-Notch Weir

2.22 Summary of Weir Formulas

2.23 Siphon Tubes: Head Measurement and Discharge

2.24 Definition Sketch and Formulas for Orifice

2.25 Profiling: Example

2.26 Typical Profile

2.27 Survey Sketch and Notations

2.28 Trigometric Surveying with an Abney Level

2.29 Example: Field Book Notes

2.30 A-Frame Level for Surveying Contour Lines

2.31 Simple Line Level for Surveying Contour Lines

2.32 Use of a Hose Level

2.33 Soil Water and its Availability

2.34 Typical Relationship Between Soil Moisture Characteristics and Texture

2.35 Demonstrating the Particulate Make-Up of Soils

2.36 Typical Crop Water Extraction Patterns

2.37 Infiltration Curve Spring Box Design

3.2 Spring Box with Open Sides

3.3 Spring Box with Open Bottom

3.4 Forms for Spring Box with Open Side

3.5 Forms for Spring Box with Open Bottom

3.6 Excavating Spring Site

3.7 Placement of Rebar in Concrete Slab

3.8 Forms for Spring Box Cover

3.9 Brick Spring Box

3.10 Calculating Quantities Needed for Concrete

3.11 Outlet Works for Small Irrigation Pond

3.12 Lining and Compaction of Irrigation Pond

3.13 Archimedean Screw

3.14 Hand (Piston) Pumps

3.15 Swing Baskets

3.16 Water Scoop

3.17 Suspended Scoops

3.18 Noria: (a) With Fixed Buckets, Driven by Currents (b) With Larger Paddles (c) With Moveable Buckets

3.19 Modified Persian Wheel or Zawafa

3.20 Picottah, Using Man as Moveable Counterweight

3.21 Picottah Style Doon with Flap Valve

3.22 Gutters: (a) Single with Handle, (b) "See-Saw," (c) Modified to Increase Capacity

3.23 Modifications of the Doon

3.24 Self-Emptying Mot with Inclined Tow Path

3.25 Rower Pump

3.26 Components of a Centrifugal Pump

3.27 Pump Types and Configurations

3.28 Diagram of a Centrifugal Pump Installation Showing Head and Lift Concepts

3.29 Pump Curve

3.30 Graphic Solution of NPSH

3.31 Recommended Pump Installation - Side View

3.32 Recommended Pump Installation - Top View

3.33 Recommended Pump Installation (Turbine)

3.34 Recommended Sump Design for Installation of One or More Pumps

3.35 Designs of Centrifugal Pump Installations

3.36 Pump and Driver Mounted on Pontoon in Water Supply

3.37 Hydraulic Ram

3.38 Methods for Driving Well Points

3.39 Heavy Duty Sliding Hammer and Drive Stem Assemblies

3.40 Hand Auger Drilling

3.41 Typical Hand Augers and Equipment

3.42 Rod or Auger Fork Locally Fabricated From 1/4" (6 mm) Steel Plate

3.43 Manual Jetting Equipment

3.44 Hydra-Drill

3.45 Drilling Equipment

3.46 Hydraulic Rotary Rig Mounted on a 1-Ton Pickup Truck

3.47 Hand Dug Well

5.1 A Farm Irrigation System

5.2 Manning Equation Solution for Determining Canal Design

5.3 Earth Irrigation Ditch Sizes for Different Slopes, Roughness, and Discharges

5.4 Suggested Procedure for Mechanical Reconstruction of Earthen Channels with a Tractor-Drawn Scraper, Ditcher, and Compactor

5.5 Examples of Small Drop Structures

5.6 Sloping Rock Drop Structure

5.7 Drop Structure with Gravel/Rock Stilling Basin

5.8 Wooden Ditch Checks with Different Openings

5.9 Small Concrete Ditch Check

5.10 Wood, Single Well Check with Turnout

5.11 Turnout Structures

5.12 Flow Dividers

5.13 Example of Static Head

5.14 Head on System with No Flow

5.15 Hydraulic Gradient Line With and Without Flow

5.16 Hydraulic Gradient Line With Uniform Pipe Size

5.17 Hydraulic Gradient Line With Change in Pipe Diameter

5.18 Example: Sketch for Pipeline 1

5.19 Example: Sketch for Pipeline 2

5.20 Air Vent for Low Pressure Pipelines

5.21 Land Smoother and Buckscraper

5.22 Surface Irrigation Methods 1

5.23 Surface Irrigation Methods 2

5.24 Typical Sprinkler Irrigation System Components

5.25 Example 1 of Sprinkler Characteristics

5.26 Example 2 of Sprinkler Characteristics

5.27 Basic Components of a Localized Irrigation System

5.28 Typical Pattern of Soil Wetting Under Trickle Irrigation;

7.1 Normal and Sodium Affected Clay Particles

7.2 Salt Accumulation Patterns

7.3 Bed Shapes and Salinity Effects

7.4 Bed Shapes and Salinity Effects

## LIST OF TABLES

2.1 Bench Terrace Construction Guide

2.2 Spacing of Contour Hillside Ditches

2.3 Survey Notation for Figure 2.25

2.4 Available Water-Holding Capacities for General Soil Types

2.5 Textural Properties of Mineral Soils

2.6 Rooting Depths of Various Crops

2.7 Crop Groups According to Soil Water Depletion

2.8 Practical Depletion Values not Resulting in Significant Water Stress

3.1 Concrete Ratios by Volume

3.2 Sample Materials List

3.3 A Summary of the Type of Pump Needed to Meet Various Pumping Conditions

3.4 Comparative Costs to Pump 1,000 Cubic Meters of Water to a Height of 2 Meters

3.5 Performance Standards for Engines

4.1 Extraterrestrial Radiation (Ra) Expressed in Equivalent Evaporation in mm/day

4.2 Reference Crop Evapotranspiration for Various Agroclimatic Zones

4.3 Crop Coefficients (Kc)

4.4 Seasonal ET Requirements for Maximum Yields of Crops

4.5 Irrigation System Efficiency

5.1 Values of Manning Roughness Coefficient, n, for Earthen and Lined Channels

5.2 Suggested Maximum Flow Velocities and Side Slopes for Lined and Unlined Channels

5.3 Rigid PVC Frictional Head Loss Factors

5.4 GI Frictional Head Loss Factors

5.5 Characteristics of Different Pipe Materials

5.6 Suitable Areas for Basins

5.7 Suitable Dimensions for Border Strips

5.8 Suggested Maximum Furrow Lengths

5.9 Soil Infiltration Rates and Suitable Furrow Inflows per 100 Meters of Furrow Length

5.10 Length and Spacing of Corrugation

5.11 Available Water-Holding Capacities for Various Soil Textures

5.12 Infiltration Rates and Associated Soil Textures

5.13 C Values for Given Pipe Materials

5.14 Friction Factor (F) for Multiple Outlets (Approximate)

6.1 Guide for Judging How Much Moisture is Available to Crops

7.1 Tolerance Levels of Crops to High Ground Water Tables and Waterlogging

7.2 Crop Salt Tolerance Levels for Different Crops as Influenced by Irrigation Water or Soil Salinity

7.3 Commonly Used Amendment Materials and Their Equivalent Amendment Values

7.4 Effect of Irrigation Water Quality on Soil Salinity Permeability, amd Toxicity

B.1 Cost and Return Form

B.2 Amortization (Capital Recovery) Factors

B.3 Annual Fuel Consumption

B.4 Annual Oil Consumption

B.5 Annual Cost of Repair and Maintenance

# CHAPTER 1

# INTRODUCTION

1.1 The Role and Purpose of Irrigation
1.2 Introduction to the Irrigation Reference Manual

## 1.1 THE ROLE AND PURPOSE OF IRRIGATION

Irrigation is defined as the artificial application of water onto cropland for the purpose of satisfying the water requirements necessary for growing crops. Irrigation plays a key role in stabilizing food production in a number of countries by either supplementing or replacing the need for natural precipitation for the purpose of food production.

Irrigation is a key to the ability of many farmers, and even nations, to feed themselves and provide an adequate standard of living. Irrigation not only protects against drought but brings with it numerous other benefits as well as occasional problems.

Irrigation has been credited with being a primary factor in the rise and fall of civilizations. For example, in the region of Mesopotamia about 4,000 years ago, a thriving civilization depended on a highly developed irrigation system. Waterlogging and salinization, as well as the erosion and sedimentation resulting from irrigation, were instrumental in bringing about the collapse of that empire. To this day, much of the land remains saline and has not been recovered for crop production.

Currently, about one-fourth of the cultivated land in the world is irrigated. In the United States, the 10% of cultivated land that is irrigated provides some 25% of the value of agricultural production.

Irrigation can result in a number of benefits for the farmer and his or her community. Irrigation stabilizes farm production by protecting against drought and by increasing crop yields and quality when rainfall is insufficient. It permits farmers to grow moisture-sensitive, high-value crops and crops that will improve their diet. In some areas with proper climates, irrigation allows farmers to raise two or three good crops in a year. It allows them to plant on time, thus optimizing market conditions. In some areas, irrigation systems are used for frost protection. There are numerous problems, however that can be caused by poor design, construction, and management of irrigation systems. Salinization and waterlogging are other results. Poor design and management of systems often result in irrigation of only one-half or one-third of the potential area. Thus, costs per unit area may be very high, and the benefits of irrigation may extend to only a portion of the farmers who could use the water.

Irrigation is only one of many inputs to a farmer's sustainable agricultural system. Cultural practices, farmer resources, farmer preferences, and other factors will affect the selection, design, construction, and operation of an irrigation system. Therefore, it is very important that those who work in irrigated agriculture understand clearly not only the benefits and consequences of irrigation but also what it takes to maximize or optimize the benefits.

This manual was written in response to the need for providing technical information to those who work with small-scale farmers in areas where rainfall is deficient and where irrigation water is available or can be developed from existing water sources.

## 1.2 INTRODUCTION TO THE IRRIGATION REFERENCE MANUAL

The Irrigation Reference Manual is designed to complement and support the materials covered in the Irrigation Training Manual. These reference materials should provide sufficient background information to allow trainers, trainees or Volunteers complete basic tasks in organizing and mobilizing communities, assessing and developing water sources, and designing and managing irrigation projects. The material is not intended to be all-inclusive but rather to provide enough technical coverage to allow basic concepts to be understood and basic construction or application procedures to be applied. The Irrigation Reference Manual also includes an annotated bibliography to point trainers or other users towards other references if more detailed descriptions of any topics are needed.

The Manual has been designed to correlate information directly with the format of the Irrigation Training Manual. All of the training section headings are represented in this reference manual. Trainers or other users should be able to immediately access technical descriptive or illustrative materials that will support a specific training topic. In addition, the Reference Manual concludes with an index to assist in locating materials pertaining to any particular topic area.

The Reference Manual is organized to discuss the following:

Chapter 2 - Physical and Biological Resource Base

Trainers or other users are provided with sufficient background to interpret basic hydrologic processes, measure the supply of water available to support projects, survey an area of land, describe the relationship between soils, water, and plant development, and prepare a simple assessment of potential project environmental impacts. This information represents the foundation on which any irrigation project will be designed, constructed, or managed. A variety of techniques are included for each topic area and all of the methodologies are appropriate to the typical working conditions experienced by Peace Corps Volunteers.

Chapter 3 - Developing Water Sources

This material allows users of the manual to begin working with simple construction practices necessary to capture, convey, store, and lift water supplies. Basic principles in the use of concrete are described. Illustrations and descriptions of pumping devices typically available to Volunteers are also included.

Chapter 4 - Estimating Irrigation Requirements

This material provides representative formulas, charts, and case examples that enable users to estimate the amount of water necessary to sustain a crop. Information allowing the users to calculate water use for more than 25 different crops is included.

Chapter 5 - Farm Water Delivery Systems

Detailed discussions of the concepts and applications of hydraulic principals are included in this chapter. Students typically benefit from access to careful and thorough explanation of these concepts, and the text has been developed to make these principals as practical as possible. The chapter also includes sufficient conceptual and illustrative information to allow trainers to communicate the factors involved in designing and implementing irrigation systems using surface, sprinkler, or drip application methods.

Chapter 6 - Farm Water Management

The Manual provides a thorough description of the principals and procedures followed in preparing a schedule of water use on farms and methodologies that can be used to evaluate how effectively water and land is being used by the farmer. The chapter concludes with a comprehensive set of illustrations that communicate the techniques of irrigation scheduling in a non-verbal manner.

Chapter 7 - Waterlogging and Salinity

Technical information is presented to enable trainers to describe and demonstrate techniques for assessing the degree of waterlogging and salinity problems that may be occurring and to apply chemical amendments or cultural practices that can minimize or avoid such problems. The chapter also includes a concise description of water quality as it affects irrigation projects.

Appendix A - Math Skills and Tool Use

Common formulas, conversion charts, and algebraic and trigonometric values are included to enable trainers or other users to easily apply mathematical formulas. A list of tools commonly available to Peace Corps Irrigation Volunteers is also included.

Appendix B - Community Organization and Development

A concise review of basic concepts important in working with people-centered agricultural projects is presented. The discussion emphasizes basic techniques that can assist a Volunteer's efforts to enter, interact, and participate in community project efforts. The level of detail in this appendix is limited because it is anticipated that Volunteers will be supplied with more comprehensive community organization literature. In particular, it is anticipated that trainers will attempt to provide each Volunteer with a copy of Two Ears of Corn, an excellent reference book to guide any community-based agricultural involvement.

Appendix C - Summary of International Irrigation Center (IIC) Training Modules

The IIC has prepared a collection of 40 video modules that present basic irrigation principals and practices. These modules were specifically developed for conditions in Ecuador, but many have universal applications. A description of the length, content, and applicability of each module to Peace Corps training sessions is included for those trainers who may have access to video equipment and the actual video cassettes.

Appendix D - Case Studies

Trainers can review these examples of different problems and strategies used to develop small-scale irrigation systems worldwide to support the material content in the technical training sessions. The case studies are intended to be representative of typical conditions that may be experienced by a Peace Corps Volunteer working with irrigation issues.

Appendix E - Annotated Bibliography

The Irrigation Reference Manual is intended to serve as a primary source for basic information needed to design, implement, and manage small or medium-scale irrigation projects. It is not, however, the only reference that a practitioner would want to use. The extensive bibliography includes a concise description of the specific values of each text that can be consulted for further information by trainers or Volunteers.

## Appendix F - Glossary of Terms

Concepts and principals can be most easily grasped when they are presented in simple, concise descriptions. The glossary should assist trainers in preparing descriptions that will enable trainees to comprehend terms quickly and accurately. It is anticipated that the Irrigation Reference Manual will be made available to Trainees, Volunteers, and other irrigation practitioners on an as-needed basis. The material included in the Manual would be appropriate to support a Peace Corps Volunteer's efforts in the field throughout his or her term of service, and trainers may wish to request additional copies to distribute to Trainees during the training. Alternatively, sections of the Manual can be photocopied and distributed to support specific training sessions.

# CHAPTER 2

# PHYSICAL AND BIOLOGICAL RESOURCE BASE

2.1 Watersheds
2.2 Water Measurement
2.3 Surveying;
2.4 Soil-Plant-Water Relationships
2.5 Conducting Initial Environmental Evaluations of Irrigation Projects

References - Primary: (2), (9), (14), (18), (20-21), (27-28), (39), (44), (56-59)
Other: (16), (24)

## 2.1 WATERSHEDS

A watershed is the area representing all the land draining moisture from the highest elevations, usually referred to as the headwaters, to a specified outlet point. A single watershed can include all of the lands draining into a main channel, often a river, including the tributary channels of the entire river basin. For example, the Senegal River basin in West Africa with its tributaries covers several hundred thousand hectares of land. A watershed can also be subdivided to include only those lands draining a single tributary, which may include only a few hundred hectares.

Watersheds are typically delineated using topographic maps. By following the contour lines on the map, the dividing points between drainage basins can be determined and the directions for flows identified (Figure 2.1). Once the watershed is delineated, soil, water, and ecological resources within the basin can be identified, and measures to protect these resources can be developed.

Irrigation specialists are concerned with protecting and developing the soil and water resources within watersheds and ensuring that irrigation projects do not result in any disruptions to balanced ecological processes. Specifically, it is important for an irrigation specialist to protect the quantity and quality of water obtainable from a water source, avoid conditions that promote flooding or extreme fluctuations in water availability, and ensure that erosion does not result in a loss of agricultural land or clogged canals and ponds.

Assessing and developing water resources requires an understanding of the hydrologic processes influencing the movement and storage of water within watersheds. Protecting the soil and water resource base requires a knowledge of watershed conditions and implementation of conservation measures that promote reliable water supplies of acceptable quality and minimal soil loss.

### 2.1.1 Watershed Hydrology

The hydrologic cycle (Figure 2.2) is easily understood: water evaporates from the earth's oceans and other water bodies, is carried by air currents, condenses due to temperature changes, falls to earth again as precipitation, and finally flows back to water bodies to begin the cycle over again.

Within this cycle there are several processes that affect the timing and quantity of water moving through each phase. For example, as precipitation falls some of it will be intercepted by vegetation before reaching the ground. Some of

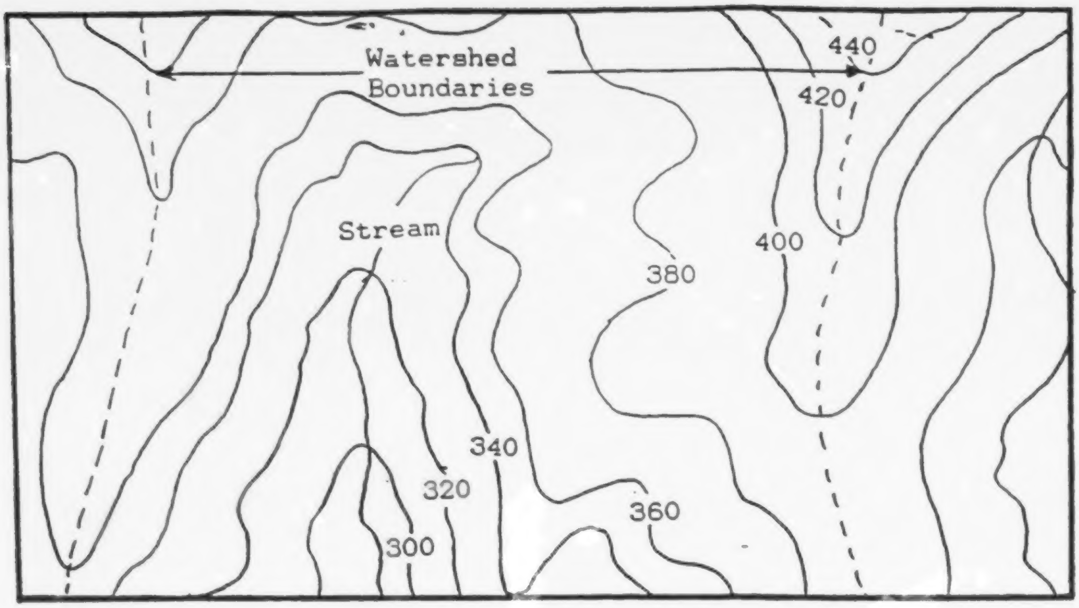

Watershed
Boundaries
Stream
440
420
400
380
360
340
320
300

Figure 2.1 Watershed Boundaries on Contour Map

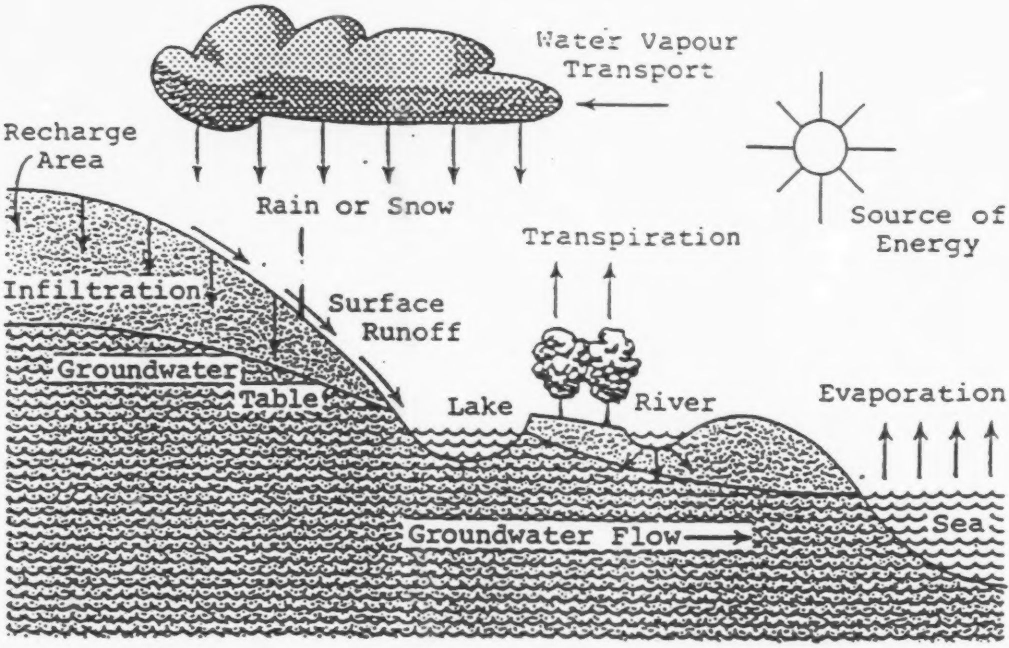

Water Vapour
Transport
Recharge
Area
Rain or Snow
Source of
Energy
Transpiration
Infiltration
Surface
Runoff
Groundwater
Table
Lake
River
Evaporation
Sea
Groundwater Flow

Figure 2.2 The Hydrologic Cycle (Ref. 21)

this intercepted moisture will evaporate from plant surfaces directly back to the atmosphere while the remainder will reachthe ground surface. Some water reaching the ground surface will evaporate, some will penetrate the soil surface, and some may run off as surface flow. The permeability of the soil surface will determine the rate and amount of water that seeps into the ground. Water infiltrating into the ground provides nutrients to plant roots to support their growth, recharges springs and aquifers, and moves slowly downslope through the soil pore spaces to recharge surface lakes and rivers.

Human resource management practices often greatly influence the hydrologic cycle processes. For example, the type of vegetation present will influence the amount of precipitation intercepted and the rate at which water can infiltrate into the ground. The area covered by vegetation also influences the amount of soil moisture that is recycled to the atmosphere through evaporation from exposed surfaces and plant transpiration. Land management decisions often directly influence the type and amount of vegetative cover present. Farming practices and other land use characteristics will influence soil characteristics and thus the amount and quality of water infiltrating into soils.

Water quality issues affect irrigation specialists primarily from the perspective of salinity and sedimentation. The problems of high salt content in water is discussed in detail in Chapter 7. Sedimentation is the result of poor land management that causes excessive soil loss. Eroded soils can clog canals and diversions, disrupt pipelines, fill in farm ponds or reservoirs, contaminate wells, or result in a loss of arable lands. Being able to measure hydrologic processes, and using this information to assess watershed conditions, is necessary in order for Volunteers to effectively control water quality concerns.

### 2.1.2 Hydrologic Processes

There are standard methods used for quantifying and describing hydrologic processes. Specifically, irrigation technicians should be familiar with the concepts of precipitation, infiltration, surface runoff, evapotranspiration, streamflow, and groundwater yields.

**Precipitation** is usually characterized in terms of intensity, storm duration, and area covered. Rainfall intensity refers to how much precipitation occurs within a given time period. It is typically expressed in millimeters per hour (or inches per hour) and usually measured by seeing how much rain fills a container of known volume in a specific period of time. The length of time, or **duration**, of rain fall is expressed in minutes or hours and is directly correlated with rainfall intensity. For example:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Depth in mm | 13.8 | 22.4 | 45 | 64 | 108 |
| Duration (Min) | 5 | 10 | 30 | 60 | 360 |
| Intensity, mm/hour | 166 | 134 | 90 | 64 | 18 |

**Infiltration** indicates how much water is absorbed into the ground during a specified period and is typically expressed as a rate (e.g. mm per hr or cm per hour). **Infiltration capacity** describes the maximum amount of water that will infiltrate into a particular soil within a specific time period. If the rainfall exceeds the infiltration capacity during the specified period, then the excess water begins moving over the soil surface as **runoff**. The infiltration capacity is determined by soil texture and structure. **Soil texture** indicates the relative amounts of sand, silt, and clay particles found within the soil. **Soil structure** indicates the way these particles are bound together by organic materials and other adhesive substances. Typical infiltration rates for different soil texture classes are as follows:

| Soil Texture Class | Infiltration capacity cm/hour |
|---|---|
| Loamy Sand | 2.5 - 5.0 |
| Loam | 1.25 - 2.5 |
| Silt Loam | 0.75 - 1.45 |
| Clay loam | 0.25 - 0.5 |

Many soils that are initially dry will absorb large amounts of water rapidly at first, but infiltration rates decline as the soil becomes wetter. Infiltration rates can provide an important clue as to the capacity of the soil to store moisture and the rate of runoff from a watershed.

**Evapotranspiration**, or **ET**, is the combination of evaporation and transpiration. ET is generally estimated using simple formulas described in Chapter 4. ET is typically expressed as a depth over a period of time, such as mm or inches per month.

**Surface Runoff** describes the process of water movement over the land surface that occurs when the precipitation rate exceeds the ability of the soil to absorb the rainfall. Surface runoff is usually measured as a depth or volume over time, such as mm or cm per hour or liters per second. A **hydrograph** is a graphic depiction of the rate of runoff plotted over a period of time for a particular watershed. Surface runoff supplies water to lakes, ponds, wetlands, rivers, and streams. In extreme amounts, it can result in flooding and severe erosion.

Volunteers should consult local hydrologists if they suspect that flow rates might be large enough to damage irrigation structures. Stream measurements conducted by governmental agencies such as ministries of water resources, irrigation, or agriculture are important sources of streamflow information.

agriculture are important sources of streamflow information. For small streams the information may not be available, and the Volunteer may have to measure streamflows at various times of the year (see Section 2.2 of this manual). Adjustments may need to be made to account for wet and dry years.

**Aquifers** or **ground water reservoirs** are soil, rock, or mixed materials that are totally saturated with water (Figure 2.3). The surface (top most area) of this saturated zone is called the **water table**. The level of the water table may vary seasonally as recharge fluctuates and people withdraw water through wells. Due to gravityground water flows from a location where the water table is higher to where it is lower.

The permeability of aquifers vary according to the aquifer material. Aquifer materials are typically a mix of consolidated and unconsolidated (or fractured) rocks. Consolidated rocks are porous materials held firmly together by compaction and cementation and are represented by sandstones, limestones, and conglomerates. Unconsolidated materials include a mix of boulders, gravel, sands, and clays.

Gravel aquifers are the most permeable and yield water easily from wells. Gravel aquifers are often sources for high capacity wells. Permeability usually relates to the coarseness of the aquifer material.

**Unconfined or water table aquifers** (Figure 2.3) have a free water surface. **Confined or Artesian aquifers** (Figure 2.3) are bounded by an impermeable or semi-impermeable layer that maintains the water in the aquifer under pressure. Wells in artesian aquifers may flow freely without the need for pumping.

One type of unconfined aquifer is known as a **perched aquifer**, where an impermeable layer of limited size stops the percolation of water to a deeper aquifer, thereby creating a small underground reservoir of limited volume (Figure 2.3).

Surface springs or seeps occur in places where an impermeable rock layer emerges at the ground surface. Ground water flows by gravity along this impermeable layer and exits the ground at the spring site.

Aquifers function much like a surface reservoir, except in the case of some artesian aquifers, pumps are required to extract the water from below ground. Ground water quality may also be a concern in some locations. If irrigation wells have

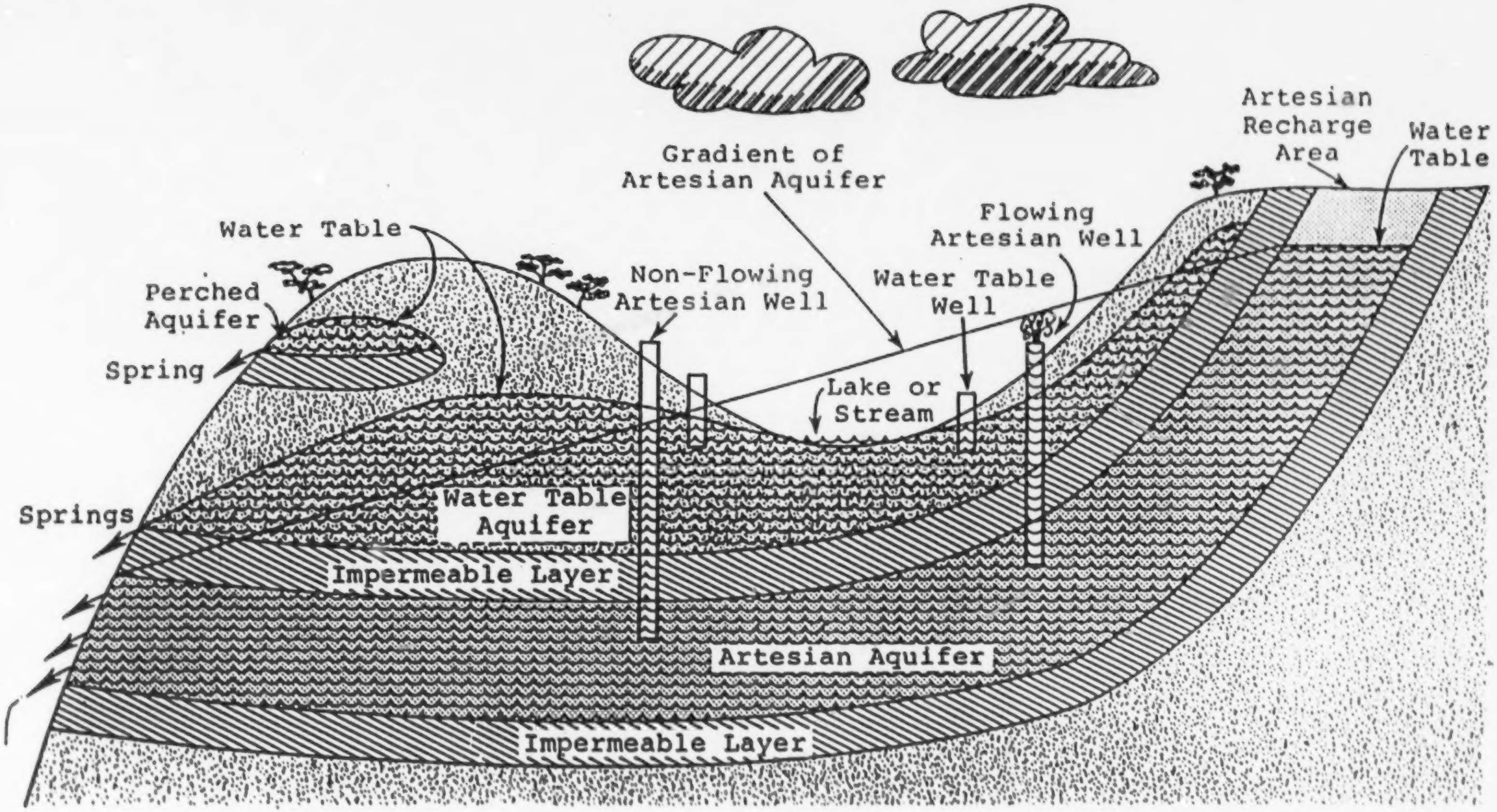

Artesian Recharge Area
Water Table
Gradient of Artesian Aquifer
Flowing Artesian Well
Water Table
Perched Aquifer
Non-Flowing Artesian Well
Water Table Well
Spring
Lake or Stream
Springs
Water Table Aquifer
Impermeable Layer
Artesian Aquifer
Impermeable Layer

Figure 2.3   Types of Aquifers and Location of Water Source (Ref. 21)

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

been operating without causing problems to crop growth, the water is probably of acceptable quality. In newly pumped areas, the water should be sampled and evaluated before use in irrigation (See Chapter 7).

### 2.1.3 Assessing Watershed Conditions

An assessment of watershed conditions should be an initial task in thedevelopment of any project. Volunteers should be prepared to spend time walking the watershed to observe and record information first-hand.

Technical aids useful in conducting an assessment of watershed conditions include maps, aerial photographs, and data forms that can be used to collect field information. Topographic maps at scales of 1:25,000 are valuable for studying specific sites within watersheds or small watersheds of less than 2 $km^2$. Larger watersheds may require map scales of 1:100,000. Maps that have been prepared to document characteristics of soils, vegetation, climate, geology, hydrology, or social conditions should also be obtained.

Aerial photographs at scales of 1:10,000 to 1:15,000 should be used wherever possible. If stereoscopic aerial photographs are available, it is important that the overlap over the area depicted is not less than 50 percent and not more than 55 percent along the flight line and 15 percent between flight lines. This makes it possible to use the photographs to create three-dimensional viewing of areas using a stereoscope.

Data forms should enable the collection of baseline technical information quickly and with sufficient depth to make professional judgments. Data forms should be prepared for information on soil characteristics, climate, water sources, vegetation, social conditions, and land use practices.

Useful tools that will facilitate field work include:

- a shovel and soil auger for investigating soil characteristics and bags to collect soil samples;
- an Abney level for measuring changes in elevations;
- maps, photographs, and colored grease pencils for marking photos;
- small, clean jars for collecting water samples; and
- clipboards and data forms.

The inventory of watershed conditions should focus on evaluating the following characteristics of the watershed:

A. **Soils**: list general types evident in the watershed; note areas with high potential for erosion; link soil types with natural vegetation; note soils with potential for crop productivity.

B. **Topography**: link steep slopes with erodible soils; note slope lengths,d particularly in areas of high erosion potential; describe slope aspects.

C. **Hydrology**: identify all potential water supply sources; note drainage patterns, floodplains, and areas of flood potential; interpret the amount of change occurring in the shapes, depths, or directional patterns of channels; identify factors that could affect water quality, including presence of grazing animals, areas of heavy sediment loading, or heavy agrochemical use; obtain streamflow data on a daily, monthly, or annual basis depending on the needs of your inventory.

D. **Vegetation**: classify general vegetation types in watershed and link with soils and climatic characteristics; estimate the amount of ground that is protected or covered by the natural or planted vegetation in each vegetation type.

E. **Land Use Practices**: map the ways all land is currently being used within the watershed, including grazing areas, crop production lands, harvested forests; identify areas prone to inappropriate land uses; also identify environmentally sensitive or unique areas, such as wetlands, important wildlife habitat, and archeological sites.

In evaluating watershed conditions the objective is to qualify or quantify the sensitivity and resilience of the watershed. **Watershed sensitivity** describes a watershed's ability to withstand stress and manipulation. **Watershed resilience** describes the ability of a watershed to recover from damage evident on land surfaces, in stream channels, or in water bodies. All watersheds can withstand some level of impact before the quality of the soils and water degrade to a level that no longer supports biological diversity and human goals.

Watersheds that are in a declining condition typically demonstrate the following cycle of symptoms:

- reduced ground cover or increased density of drainage channels,
- increased peak flows of streams and rivers,
- deepened or widened channels resulting from the erosive power of increased peak flows,
- lowered water tables under alluvial floodplains, resulting from deepened channels and more rapid runoff,
- changes in the amount and type of streamside and

floodplain vegetation, resulting from the lowered alluvial water tables,

- further channel degradation, and the development of many new side channels and gullies, resulting from changes in streamside and floodplain vegetation, and
- increased runoff rates leading to a decrease in available soil moisture, which further reduces ground cover and results in another cycle of decline in watershed condition.

Any land use or management practice that tends to speed up the delivery of precipitation to the stream channel(s) will tend to have a negative influence on watershed conditions.

### 2.1.4 Soil and Water Conservation Practices

A primary objective in watershed management is to ensure balanced soil and water systems. Protecting water quality and supply and preventing erosion are the major focus of this objective.

**Erosion** is the removal of soil through naturally occurring processes, including wind, falling raindrops, water flowing on the surface of the ground, and the force of gravity. The impact of falling rain or wind-borne soil particles can cause more soil particles to detach and move under the force of gravity, moving water, or wind. Any factor that lessend the impact of rain or strong winds reduce the amount of soil particles detached and eroded. Removal of ground cover and changes to the natural drainage patterns are two primary causes of accelerated erosion.

Vegetative cover intercepts much of the rainfall and reduces the velocity and intensity of rain drops. Plant roots also create openings in the soil and increase infiltration of rainwater into the soil. This reduces the amount of water flowing on the surface that might otherwise accelerate the downslope movement of detached soil particles. Undisturbed forests and pastures frequently have infiltration rates that exceed rainfall rates, thus eliminating or reducing the amount of erosion due to water.

Erosion is typically classified into four categories:

**Sheet Erosion** - A uniform depth of surface runoff moves detached soil particles to tiny channels (rills) that have formed.

**Rill Erosion** - The surface of the ground is cut and deepened enough to concentrate runoff and soil particle movement in a tiny channel or rill. Rills are generally less than 1 foot or 30 cm deep.

**Gully Erosion** - Rills over 30 cm (one foot) deep are usually referred to as gullies. As more and more flow concentrates in rills, they deepen, speed up runoff, and lower the water table of alluvial lands. As the number of channels increase, peak flows increase and productive lands are lost.

**Channel Erosion** - As peak flows increase, their erosive force cuts away the banks or beds of natural stream channels, changing drainage patterns and frequently further accelerating flow rates and flooding.

Eroded soil particles are carried by flowing water or wind currents until the flow no longer has sufficient energy to carry or move a given particle. The particles are then deposited. In the case of water erosion, sediment deposits can reduce water quality, destroy the spawning and rearing areas for fish, reduce the life of .i.ponds or channels by filling and clogging, and increase downstream flooding through loss of channel capacity.

There are two simple ways to determine if serious erosion is occurring in a watershed:

1. Collect water samples at an outlet point in a drainage basin and observe the amount of sediments in the water over time.

2. Build simple runoff plots at several points in the watershed. Runoff plots can be built using large stakes or pins driven into the ground (at least 25 cm long) with a large washer at ground level. Measure the distance between the head of the stake and the top of the washer after drilling the pin into the ground. Re-measure this distance on a monthly basis for a rough estimate of monthly soil loss rates.

   For example: over a one year period, the distance between the top of the pin and the top of the washer has increased by 10 centimeters (0.1 meter). Therefore, for every hectare (100 meters x 100 meters) on the slope you can estimate 100 x 100 x 0.1 = 1000 cubic meters of soil loss.

It is also possible simply to use visual observations of the increasing exposure of tree roots or raised soil pedestals to indicate soil loss.

Measures for erosion control are based on either reducing the energy that detaches soil particles or increasing particle resistance to movement. Where it is not possible to reduce erosive energy and/or increase resistance to particle movement, it may be necessary to use methods that trap eroded sediments before they leave the site or are delivered to channels.

Reducing erosive energy can be accomplished by:

- increasing infiltration, primarily through increasing plant cover,
- reducing the length of slopes, primarily through berms and dips,
- diverting runoff away from disturbed areas using berms and drains,
- reducing slope gradient with check dams and land shaping,
- increasing the surface roughness of the ground to slow runoff, primarily through revegetation, mulches, and planted buffer strips, and
- avoiding the creation of unmanaged channels.

Increasing particle resistance to movement can be accomplished by:

- increasing ground cover,
- improving soil aggregate structure, for example, by increasing soil organic matter,
- lining channels, and
- conveying runoff through pipes or other medium.

Eroded sediments can be trapped using check dams, brush cover on hillsides, and earth or brush berms.

Techniques that can be applied to conserve or restore soils in a watershed or within an irrigated field include the following:

a. Protecting native vegetation.

b. Re-establishing native vegetation.

c. Establishing perennial crops (pasture, fruit trees, agroforestry systems), especially on steep slopes.

d. Practicing minimum tillage or mulching in crop cultivation systems that emphasize annual crops.

e. Using a crop rotation sequence rather than continual successive plantings of the same crop.

f. Planting strips of vegetation along the contour that serve to anchor the soil in place with their roots and slow down the movement of water downslope.

g. Constructing ditches along the contour at a 1 percent slope to divert excess water into protected drainageways.

h. Constructing terraces to provide a level platform for planted crops in combination with contour ditches, thus reducing slope gradient, slope length, and runoff velocity. Terraces are flat earth ridges, perhaps 3 meters (10 feet) wide at the base, usually constructed along a contour line. They must have enough slope to drain water, but should be less than 2 percent slope to minimize erosion. Next to tree cover, terraces probably offer the best measures for conserving soil and water on steep slopes.

i. Diverting flows in gullies and constructing check dams to trap sediments and encourage revegetation within the gully bed. Gully erosion control is extremely difficult, and success is not common. Gullies are often referred to as a kind of "cancer" on the landscape. When trying to use check dams or brush to slow the velocity of flow and encourage infiltration in gullies, it is important to work from the bottom (mouth) of the gully uphill towards the head. Starting at the top of the gully and working downhill usually results in undercutting of the check dams, as the force of water at the top is frequently too strong.

j. Constructing brush "carpets" on steep slopes by using wooden stakes to pin down leafy brush, thus slowing the velocity of the runoff and encouraging it to infiltrate into the soil.

k. Building wire mesh boxes filled with stones (gabions) and placing them in a stream channel in a manner that protects the banks and bed from the erosive force of streamflows. Gabions are flexible, permeable, and generally very inexpensive to make. They can be stacked against the sides of gullies or streams to prevent bank erosion, or staggered up steep slopes to slow runoff.

l. Protecting or replanting streamside vegetation to slow and filter runoff reaching streams and strengthen the banks of channels.

m. Reducing or eliminating unmanaged fires that would otherwise rapidly eliminate vegetative cover and increase nitrate and other contaminants in runoff.

n. Reshaping natural drainageways or digging artificial drainageways of a low, broad shape that drain excess water away from fields and protecting these drainageways from erosion by lining with rocks, planting grass, or placing drop structures or check dams periodically.

o. Selecting and planting crops in a pattern that provides maximum ground cover, aerates the soil through deep rooting, and reduces the force of runoff.

Cuttings and seedlings should be planted along with any temporary erosion control structures to insure long-term erosion control when the brushwood or stakes have decayed. Examples of these conservation measures are illustrated in Figures 2.4 through 2.17 and Tables 2.1 and 2.2.

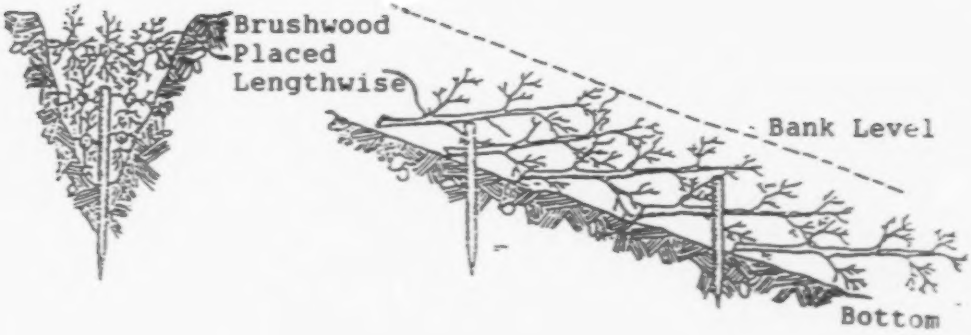

Brushwood
Placed
Lengthwise
Bank Level
Bottom

Figure 2.4 Plugging of Smaller Gullies (Ref. 56)

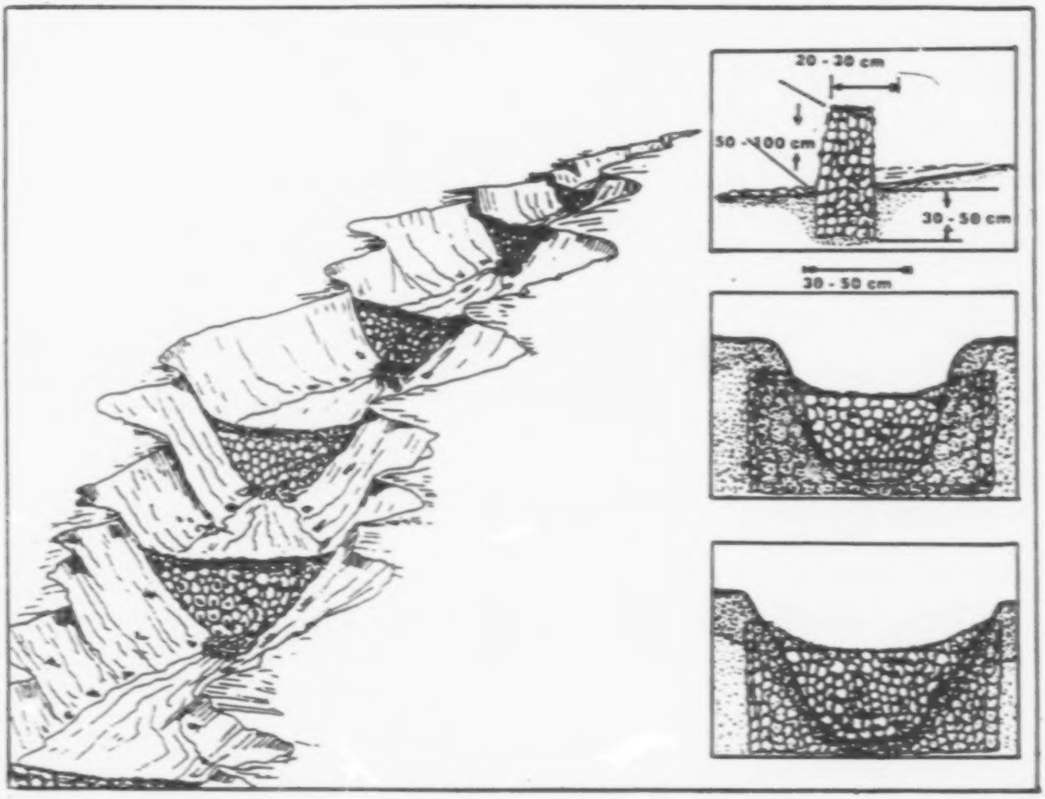

20 - 30 cm
50 - 100 cm
30 - 50 cm
30 - 50 cm

Figure 2.5 Construction of a Rock Check Dam

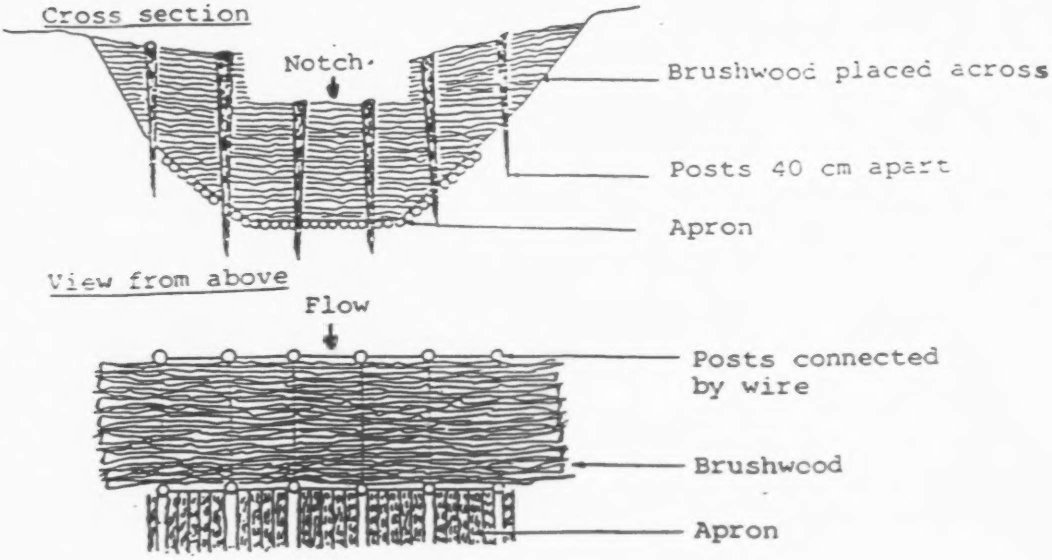

Cross section
Notch
Brushwood placed across
Posts 40 cm apart
Apron
View from above
Flow
Posts connected by wire
Brushwood
Apron

**Figure 2.6 Brushwood Check Dam (Ref. 56)**

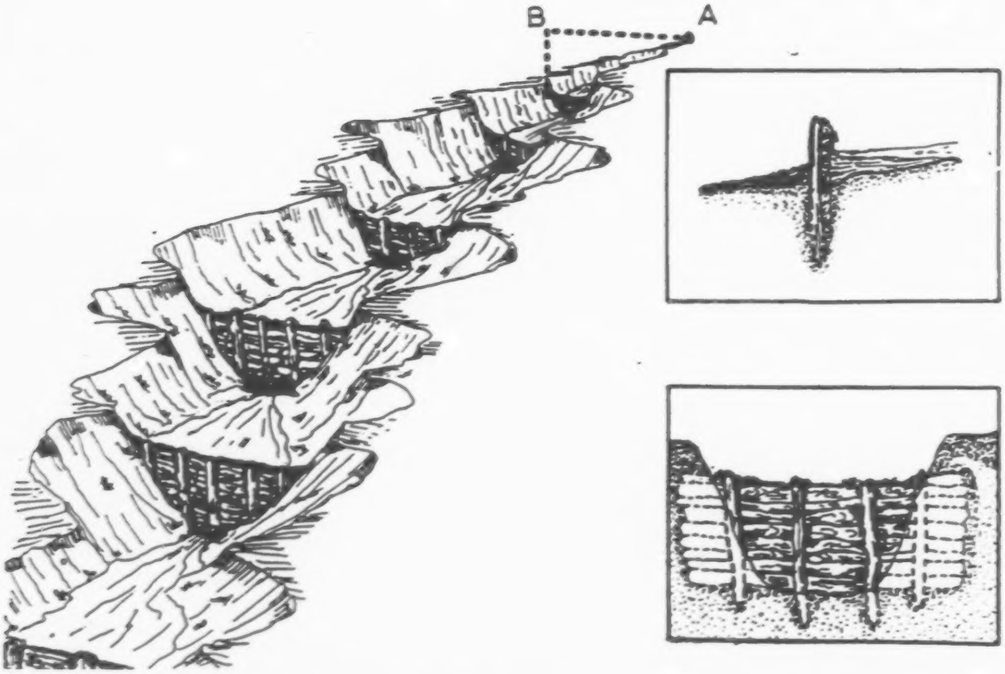


**Figure 2.7 Pole or Log Check Dam**

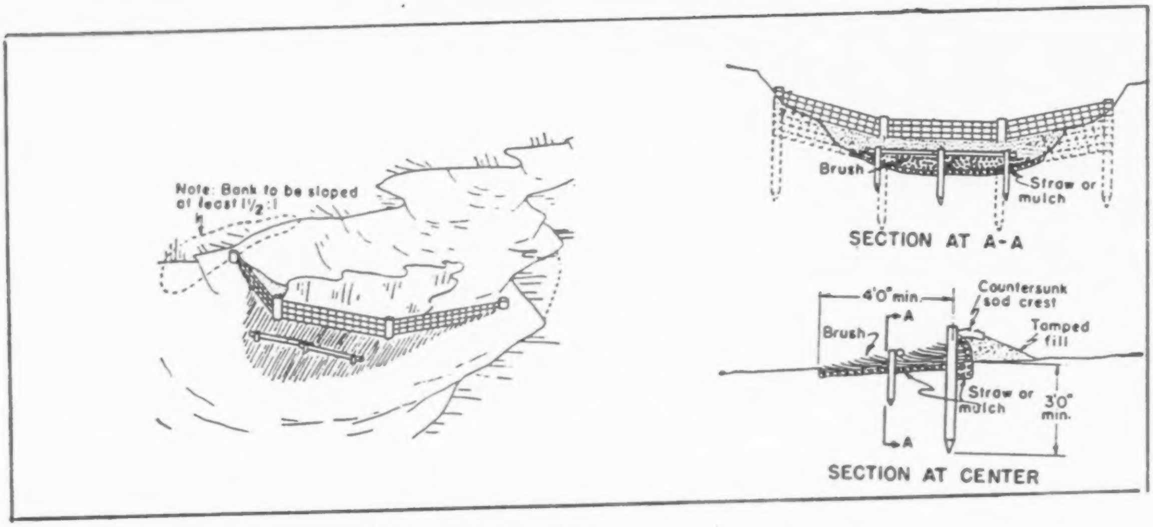

Note: Bank to be sloped at least 1½:1
Brush
Straw or mulch
SECTION AT A-A
4'0" min.
Countersunk sod crest
A
Brush
Tamped fill
Straw or mulch
3'0" min.
A
SECTION AT CENTER

**Figure 2.8 A Woven Wire Check Dam**

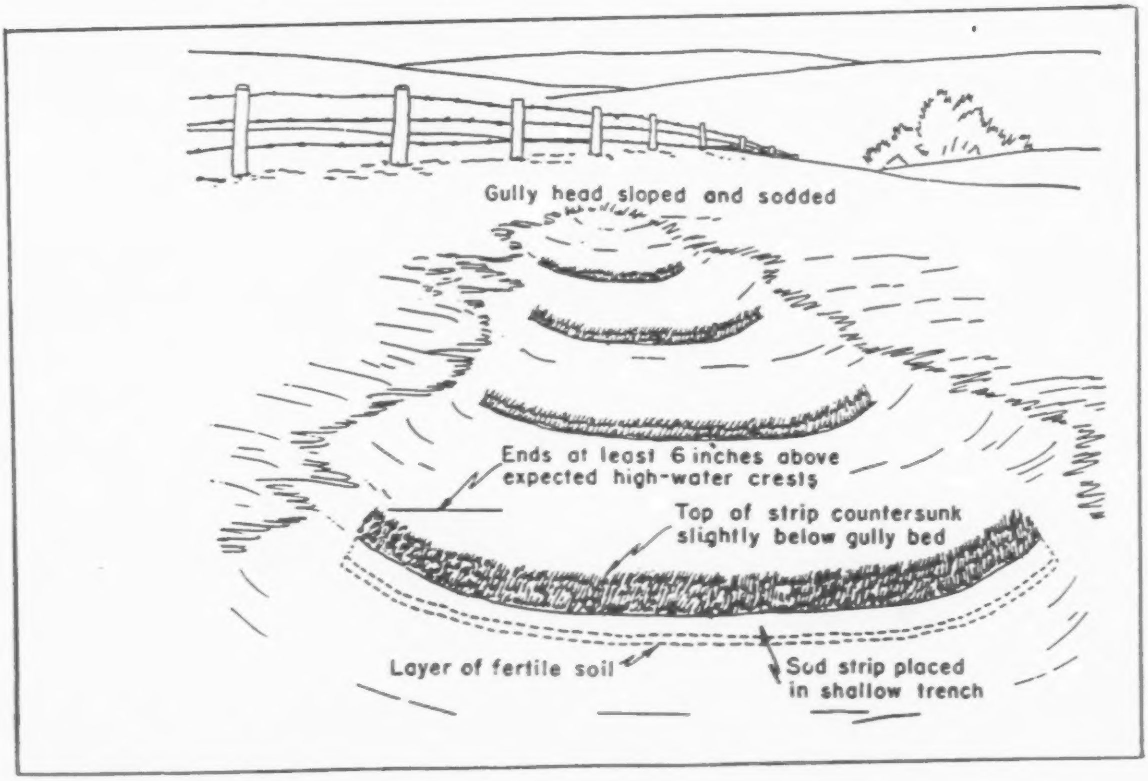

Gully head sloped and sodded
Ends at least 6 inches above expected high-water crests
Top of strip countersunk slightly below gully bed
Layer of fertile soil
Sod strip placed in shallow trench

**Figure 2.9 Sod Strip Checks on a Small Gully**

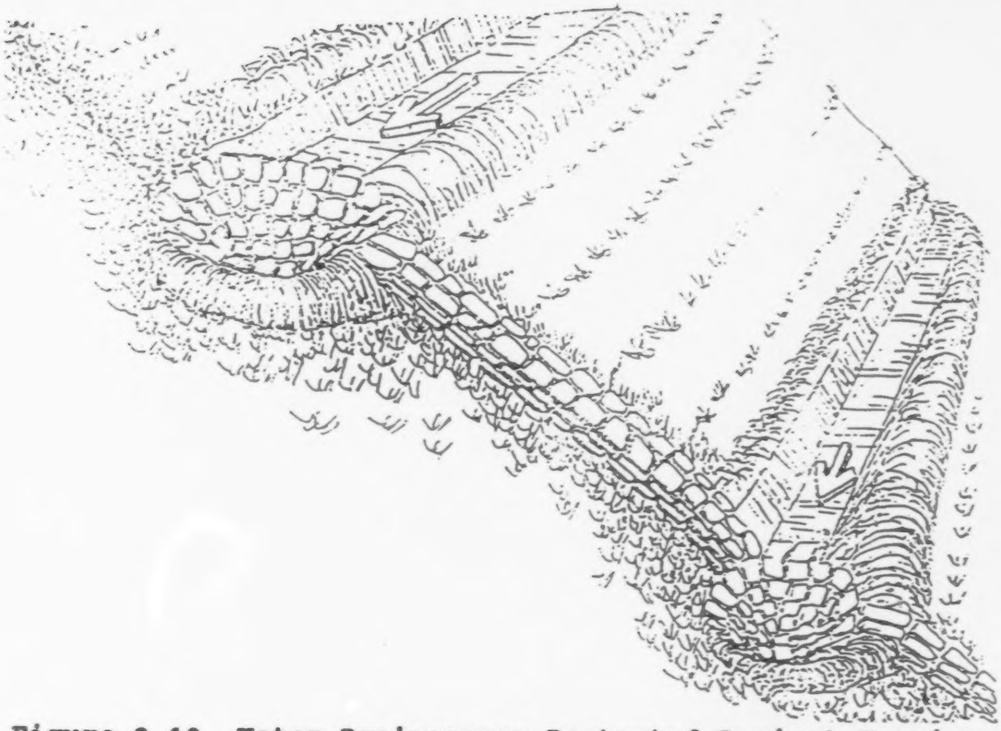


Figure 2.10 Water Drainageway Protected Against Erosion by Rock Lining (Ref. 9)

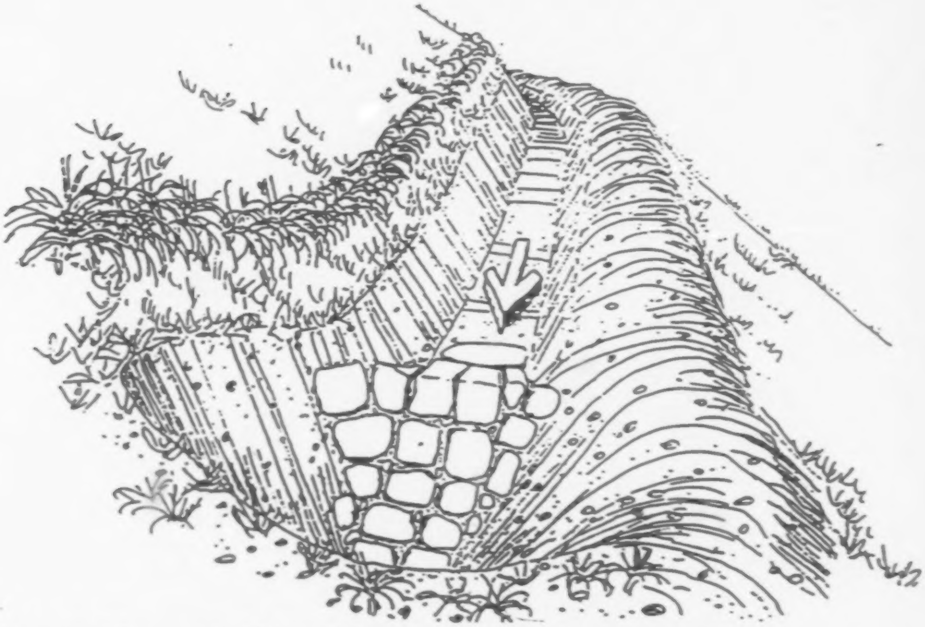


Figure 2.11 Retention Well as a Site for Diverting Runoff Water (Ref. 9)

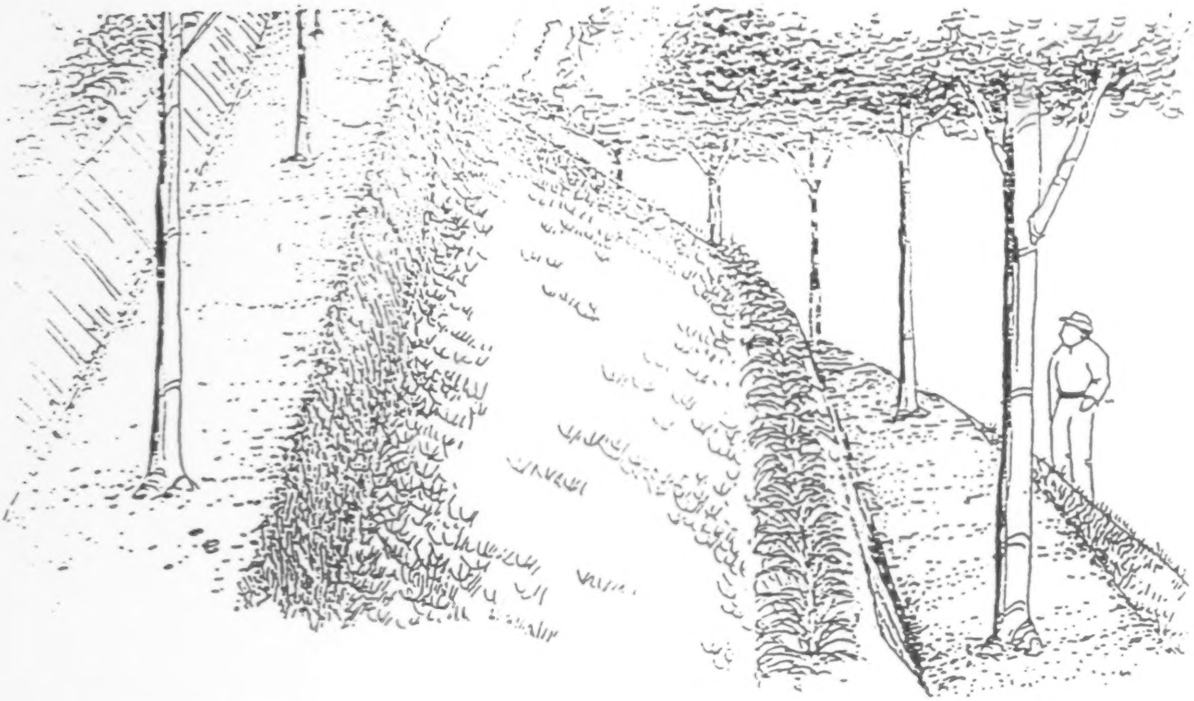
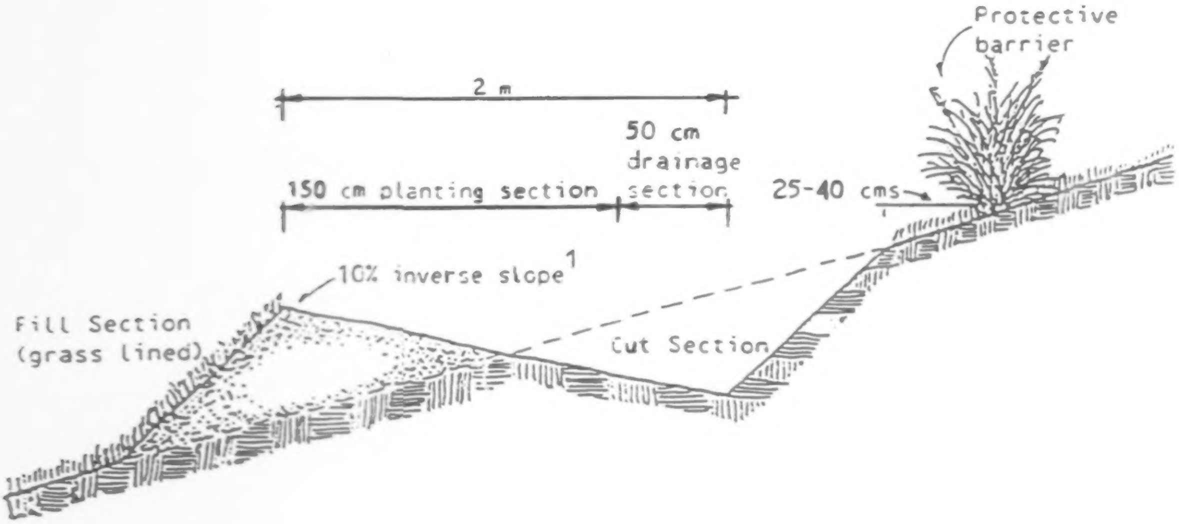


Figure 2.12 Discontinuous Narrow Terrace (Orchard Terrace) (Ref. 9)


Protective barrier
2 m
50 cm drainage section
150 cm planting section
25-40 cms
10% inverse slope[1]
Fill Section (grass lined)
Cut Section

If initially constructed with an inverse slope of 15-20%, some self-compaction occurs resulting in a slope of approximately 10%.

Figure 2.13 Discontinuous Narrow Terrace (cross section) (Ref. 9)

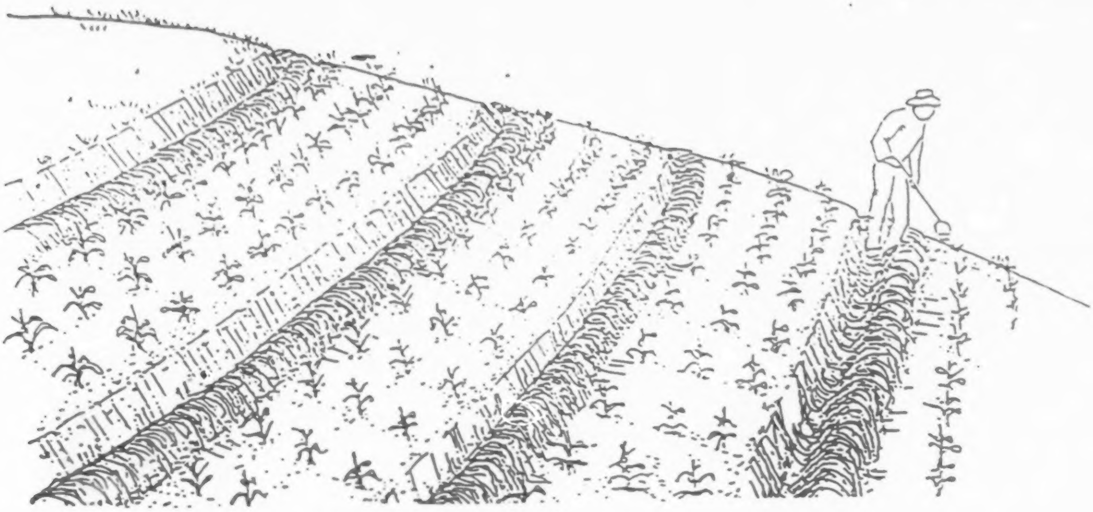


Figure 2.14 Contour Planting Beds (Ref. 9)

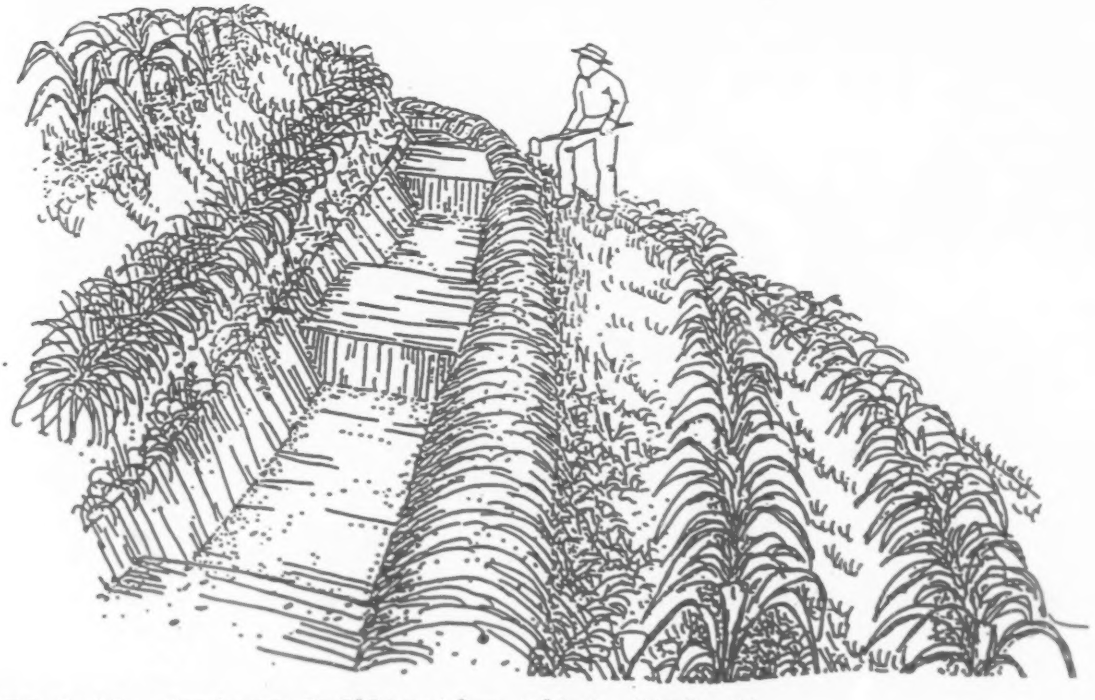
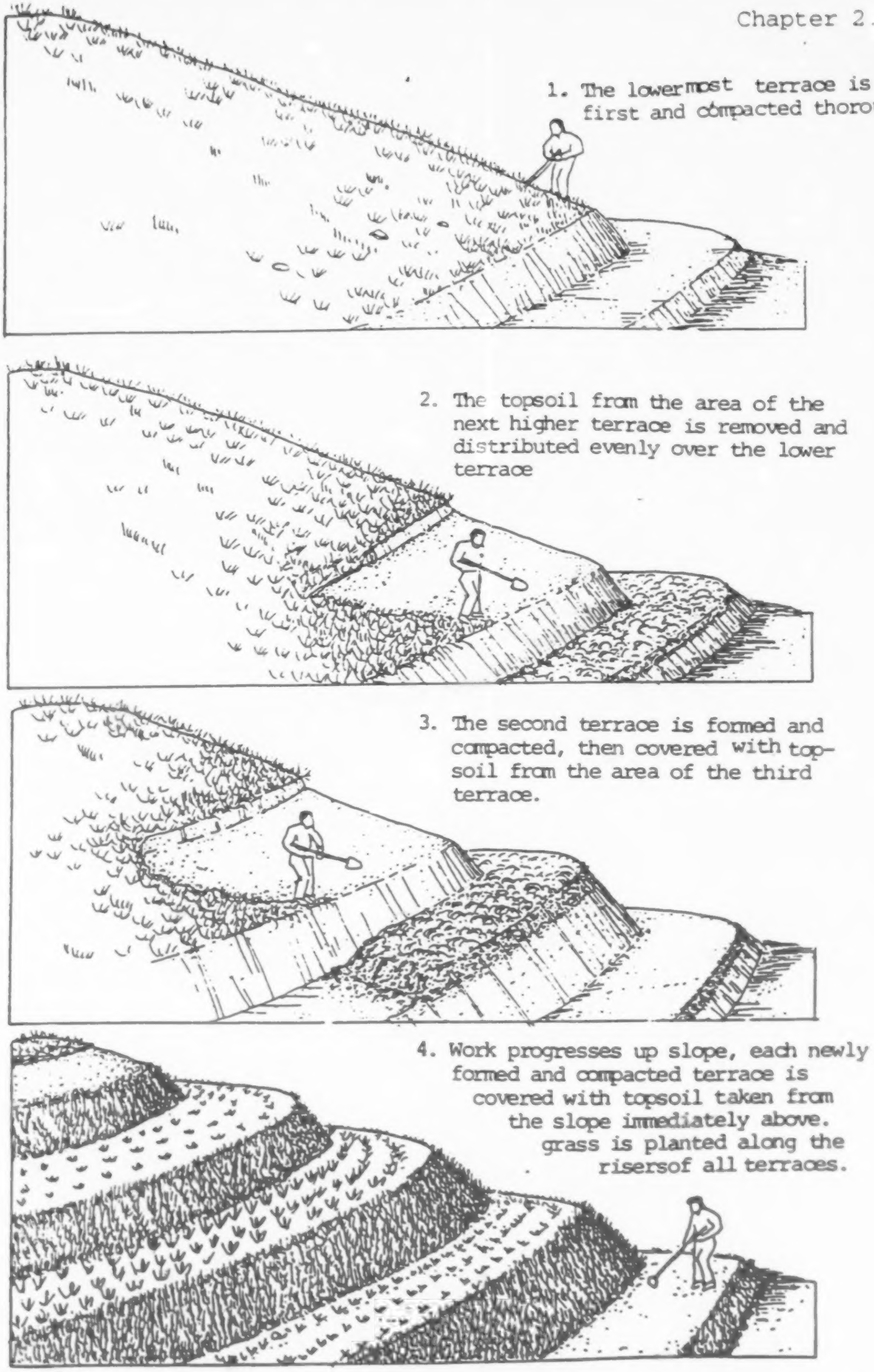


Figure 2.15 Contour Infiltration Ditch (Ref. 9)



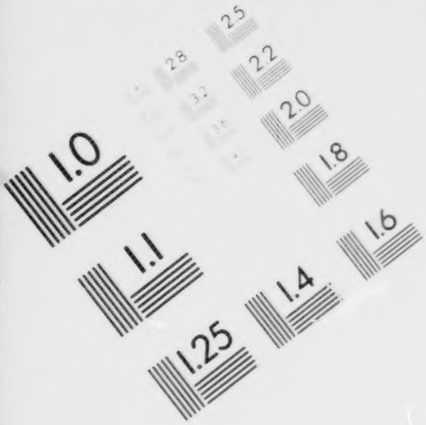
1. The lowermost terrace is formed first and compacted thoroughly

2. The topsoil from the area of the next higher terrace is removed and distributed evenly over the lower terrace

3. The second terrace is formed and compacted, then covered with topsoil from the area of the third terrace.

4. Work progresses up slope, each newly formed and compacted terrace is covered with topsoil taken from the slope immediately above. grass is planted along the risersof all terraces.

**Figure 2.16 Bench Terrace Construction Sequence "A" (Ref. 9)**

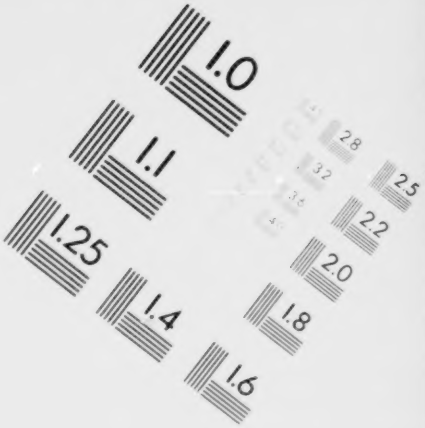

1.0
1.1
1.25
1.4
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6

AIIM

**Association for Information and Image Management**

1100 Wayne Avenue, Suite 1100
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910

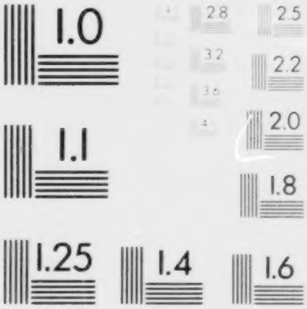
301/587-8202

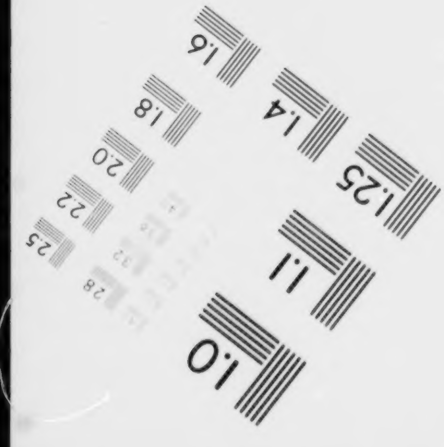

1.0
1.1
1.25
1.4
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6

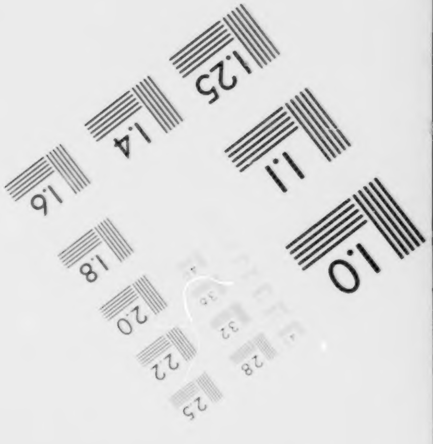
Centimeter

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
mm
1
2
3
4
5

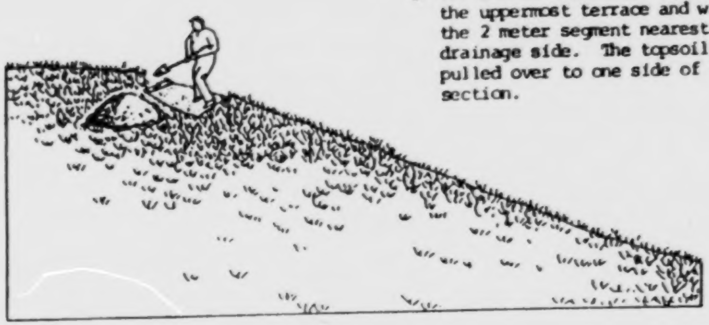
Inches


1.0
2.8
2.5
3.2
2.2
3.6
2.0
4
1.1
1.8
1.25
1.4
1.6

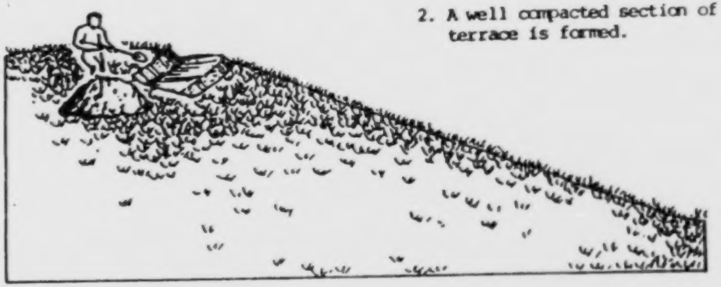

1.6
1.8
1.4
2.0
1.25
2.2
2.5
1.1
3.2
2.8
1.0


1.25
1.4
1.1
1.6
1.0
1.8
2.0
3.6
3.2
2.2
2.8
2.5

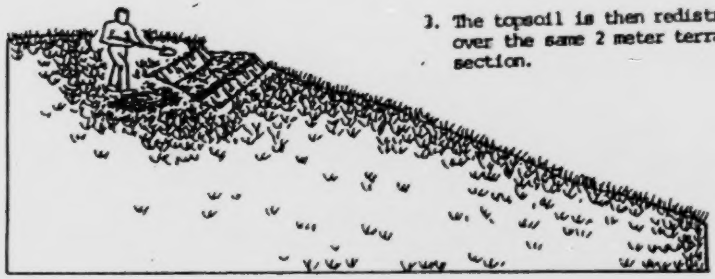
MANUFACTURED TO AIIM STANDARDS
BY APPLIED IMAGE, INC.



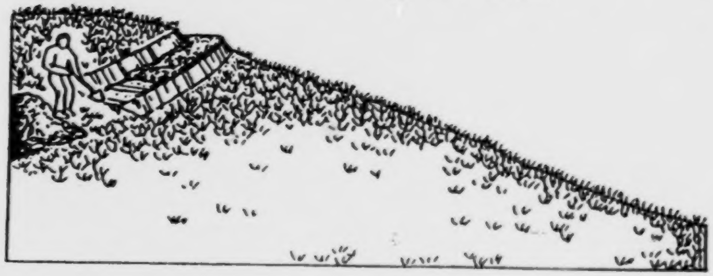
1. Terrace construction begins with the uppermost terrace and with the 2 meter segment nearest the drainage side. The topsoil is pulled over to one side of the section.



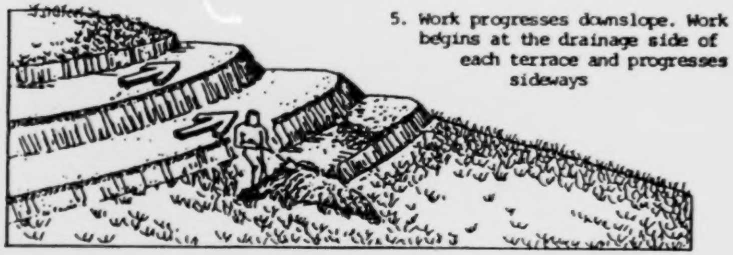
2. A well compacted section of the terrace is formed.



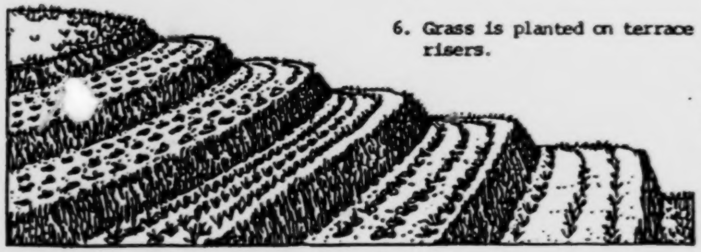
3. The topsoil is then redistributed over the same 2 meter terrace section.



4. Work progresses sideways along the uppermost terrace



5. Work progresses downslope. Work begins at the drainage side of each terrace and progresses sideways



6. Grass is planted on terrace risers.

**Figure 2.17 Bench Terrace Construction Sequence "B" (Ref. 9)**

**Table 2.1 Bench Terrace Construction Guide (Ref. 9)**

| SLOPE (%) | SOIL DEPTH* (Meters) | TOTAL TERRACE WIDTH (Meters) | PLATFORM WIDTH (Meters) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 20 | .2 | 1.68 | 1.30 |
| | .3 | 2.5 | 1.94 |
| | .4 | 3.34 | 2.60 |
| | .5 | 4.26 | 3.30 |
| | .6 | 5.02 | 3.90 |
| 30 | .2 | 1.16 | .80 |
| | .3 | 1.72 | 1.20 |
| | .4 | 2.3 | 1.60 |
| | .5 | 2.98 | 2.10 |
| | .6 | 3.46 | 2.40 |
| 40 | .2 | .90 | .56 |
| | .3 | 1.32 | .82 |
| | .4 | 1.78 | 1.10 |
| | .5 | 2.25 | 1.40 |
| | .6 | 2.68 | 1.66 |
| 50 | .2 | .74 | .40 |
| | .3 | 1.10 | .60 |
| | .4 | 1.46 | .80 |
| | .5 | 1.84 | 1.00 |
| | .6 | 2.20 | 1.20 |

*"Depth of A Horizon" in original changed to permit use in eroded areas where horizons are often indistinct.

**Table 2.2 Spacing of Contour Hillside Ditches (Ref. 9)**

| SLOPE (%) | ANNUAL CROP | | PERENNIAL CROP OR PASTURE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Distance (m) | Maximum Length (m) | Distance (m) | Maximum Length (m) |
| 2 | 42.0 | 90 | | |
| 4 | 25.0 | 120 | | |
| 6 | 19.3 | 160 | | |
| 8 | 16.6 | 200 | | |
| 10 | 14.9 | 260 | 40.2 | 140 |
| 12 | 13.8 | 280 | 33.5 | 140 |
| 14 | 13.0 | 300 | 28.9 | 140 |
| 16 | 11.4 | 340 | 25.3 | 160 |
| 18 | 10.2 | 380 | 25.0 | 180 |
| 20 | 9.2 | 420 | 24.0 | 200 |
| 22 | 8.4 | 470 | 23.2 | 200 |
| 24 | 7.7 | 500 | 21.4 | 210 |
| 26 | 7.2 | 500 | 19.8 | 220 |
| 28 | 6.6 | 500 | 19.5 | 220 |
| 30 | 6.3 | 500 | 18.9 | 220 |
| 32 | | | 18.7 | 220 |
| 34 | | | 18.6 | 230 |
| 36 | | | 17.7 | 230 |
| 38 | | | 16.9 | 230 |
| 40 | | | 16.2 | 230 |

# 2.2 WATER FLOW MEASUREMENT

## 2.2.1 Units of Measurement

Generally, water measurement units may be divided into two classes: those that express a certain volume and those that indicate a discharge or volume per unit time.

The units depend on the system being used, either metric or English. In the metric system, the more common units for volume are liters, cubic meters, cm-ha, and m-ha. A cm-ha is the volume required to cover an area of one hectare with a one-centimeter depth of water and is equivalent to 100 $m^3$. In the English system, the common units are ac-in or ac-ft, which correspond to depths of one inch and one foot, respectively, over an area of one acre (43,560 $ft^2$). All of these units are useful in expressing water requirements, or water applied, in terms of depths, and their equivalents to units of volume.

For discharge rates, or volume per unit time, common units in the metric system are $m^3$/sec (cum/sec) or liters/sec (lps) and, in the English system, $ft^3$/sec (cusec) or gallons per minute (gpm).

## 2.2.2 Measuring Devices in Open Channels

Nearly anything that partially restricts the flow in an open channel can serve as a measuring device if it is calibrated. The majority of these restrictions are not standard, however, and there are no formulas or tables available to determine their discharge. Even "standard" structures, if not properly built, installed, and maintained may not operate as expected. Standard devices include orifices, weirs, Parshall flumes, Cutthroat flumes, and broad crested weirs. Submerged orifices may be used under limited head conditions when trash and debris are not a problem. Weirs are useful and economical where flows are not too large and sufficient head is available in the canal. They are one of the oldest and most accurate devices when used under the proper conditions.

The flow measurement device selected for installation will depend on several factors, among which are:

1. *The accuracy required.* Most devices have an accuracy of ± 10% if they are properly installed and maintained. Many have better than ± 10% accuracy with careful fabrication, installation, and maintenance.
2. *Ease of construction.* A simple device that can be manufactured locally with the required precision may give better measurements than a more complicated one that is beyond the ability of local craftsmen to construct.

3. *Ease of use.* Readings must be easily made and accurately interpreted by the user.
4. *Cost of the flow measurement device.* Flow measurement devices must be economical to encourage their purchase and use.
5. *Topographic conditions and geometric shape of the channel where the flow will be measured and the range of the canal discharges to be measured.* Some devices require large differences in head and are most suitable for canals with significant slope while others will give satisfactory measurements with small differences in head. Many devices have a limited range of discharge for which they can be practically used.

Details of several common measuring devices such as orifices, sharp crested weirs, broad crested weirs, Parshall flumes, and Cutthroat flumes, as well as horizontal and vertical pipes, are provided in other publications. The following is a presentation of various common and simple methods of flow measurement.

## Methods of Measuring Channel Flow

### 2.2.3 Float Method

(Ref. 57)

The rate of flow passing a point in a ditch or other open channel can be determined by multiplying the cross sectional area of water by the average velocity of the water. Normally, the cross sectional area can be determined by direct measurement of the channel dimensions. The velocity can be estimated by timing the passage of a small float through a measured length of channel. The procedure for estimating rate of flow by the float method is as follows:

1. Select a straight section of ditch with fairly uniform cross sections. The length of the section will depend on the current, but 30 meters usually will be adequate. A shorter length may be satisfactory for slow flowing ditches.

2. Make several measurements of depth and width within the trial section to arrive at the average cross sectional area. The area should be expressed in terms of square meters.

3. Place a small float in the ditch about a meter upstream from the upper end of the trial section. Determine the number of seconds it takes for the float to travel from the upper end of the trial section to the lower end. Make several trials to get the average time of travel. The best floats are small rounded objects that float submerged. They are less apt to be

affected by wind or to be slowed by striking the side of the channel. Among small objects that make good floats are a long necked bottle partly filled with water and capped, a rounded block of wood, or an orange.

4. Determine the velocity (or speed) of the float in units of meters per second by dividing the length of the section (in meters) by the time (in seconds) required for the float to travel that distance.

5. Determine the average velocity of the stream. Since the velocity of the float on the surface of the water will be greater than the average velocity of the stream, the float velocity must by multiplied by a correction coefficient to obtain a good estimate of the true average stream velocity. The correction factor varies with the type of float used and with the shape and uniformity of the channel. With floats that sink about 2 to 5 cm below the water surface, a coefficient of about 0.80 should be used for most unlined farm ditches. A coefficient of 0.85 is appropriate for smooth uniform unlined ditches. With floats that extend two thirds or more of the water depth below the surface, the coefficient should be about 0.85 for unlined ditches and 0.90 for lined ditches.

6. Compute the rate of flow. The rate of flow is obtained by multiplying the average cross sectional area (item 2) by the average stream velocity (item 5). The accuracy of these estimates of flow rates is dependent upon the preciseness with which average cross sectional areas and float velocities have been determined and upon the selection of the proper correction coefficient. The method is not accurate enough for conveyance loss measurements. An example of this method of estimating flow rates is shown in Figure 2.18 using Figure 2.19.

### 2.2.4 Weirs

In a weir (Figures 2.20 and 2.21), water is open to atmospheric pressure on both upstream and downstream sides. Types of weirs are identified by their shape. The most common are the:

- rectangular weir,
- trapezoidal weir, and
- triangular weir.

## Sharp-Crested Contracted Rectangular Weirs

The standard contracted rectangular weir is built so that the outlet sides and crest are away from the bottom and sides of the canal in which it is set. The weir contracts the flow of the channel and causes it to fall over a crest.

Extensive experiments on weirs have resulted in the following guideline for accurate measurement of flow:

1. The upstream face of the bulkhead should be smooth and in a vertical plane perpendicular to the axis of the channel.

2. The upstream face of the weir plate should be smooth, straight, and flush with the upstream face of the bulkhead.

3. The entire crest should be a level, plane surface that forms a sharp, 90° edge where it intersects the upstream face.

4. The upstream corners of the notch must be sharp.

5. The distance of the crest from the bottom of the approach channel (weir pool) should not be less than twice the depth of water above the crest and in no case less than 20 cm.

6. The distance from the sides of the weir to the sides of the approach channel should be no less than twice the depth of water above the crest and never less than 20 cm.

7. The overflow sheet (nappe) should touch only the upstream edges of the crest and sides.

8. Air should circulate freely both under and on the sides of the nappe.

9. The measurement of head on the weir should be taken at a point upstream from the weir a distance of four times the maximum head on the crest.

Figures 2.20 and 2.21 indicate typical weir installation. Figure 2.22 summarizes the formulas used for different weirs.

---

* Assume a straight section of unlined irrigation ditch 30 meters in length. Representative cross sections at stations 00+0, 12+0 and 28+0 (Figure 2.19).

Cross Section Data

**Station 00+0**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Distance from left water edge | (m) | 0.00 | 0.45 | 1.00 | 1.50 |
| Water depth | (m) | 0.00 | 0.33 | 0.35 | 0.00 |

Area (Fig. 2.19) $= \frac{0.33 \times 0.45}{2} + \left[\frac{(0.33+0.35)}{2} \times 0.55^{*}\right] + \frac{0.35 \times 0.50^{*}}{2}$

$= 0.07 + 0.19 + 0.09$

$= 0.35\ m^2$

*(1.00-0.45 = 0.55 and 1.50-1.00 = 0.50)

**Station 12+0**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Distance from left water edge | (m) | 0.00 | 0.40 | 1.16 | 1.58 |
| Water depth | (m) | 0.00 | 0.26 | 0.32 | 0.00 |

Area (see Fig. 2.19) $= \frac{0.26 \times 0.40}{2} + \left[\frac{(0.26+0.32)}{2} \times 0.76\right] + \frac{0.32 \times 0.42}{2}$

$= 0.05 + 0.22 + 0.07$

$= 0.34\ m^2$

**Station 28+0**

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Distance from left water edge | (m) | 0.00 | 0.27 | 0.58 | 1.00 | 1.46 |
| Water depth | (m) | 0.00 | 0.24 | 0.35 | 0.35 | 0.00 |

Area (see Fig. 2.19) $= \frac{0.24 \times 0.27}{2} + \left[\frac{(0.24+0.35)}{2} \times 0.31\right] + 0.42 \times 0.35 + \frac{0.35 \times 0.46}{2}$

$= 0.03 + 0.09 + 0.15 + 0.08$

$= 0.35\ m^2$

Average cross section area $= \frac{0.35 + 0.34 + 0.35}{3} = 0.35\ m^2$

Velocity Data

Time for float (wooden sphere) to travel 30 meters

| Trial Number | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | Average |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Time (seconds) | 95 | 91 | 90 | 88 | 91 |

Float velocity $= \frac{30}{91} = 0.33$ m/sec

Average stream velocity $= 0.33 \times 0.80 = 0.26$ m/sec

Flow Rate

$Q = AV = 0.35\ m^2 \times 0.26$ m/sec $= 0.091$ cubic m/sec

or 0.091 cum/sec x 1000 L/sec/cum/sec = 91 L/sec (lps)

---

**FIGURE 2.18. Estimating Flow Rates by Float Method (Ref. 57)**

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

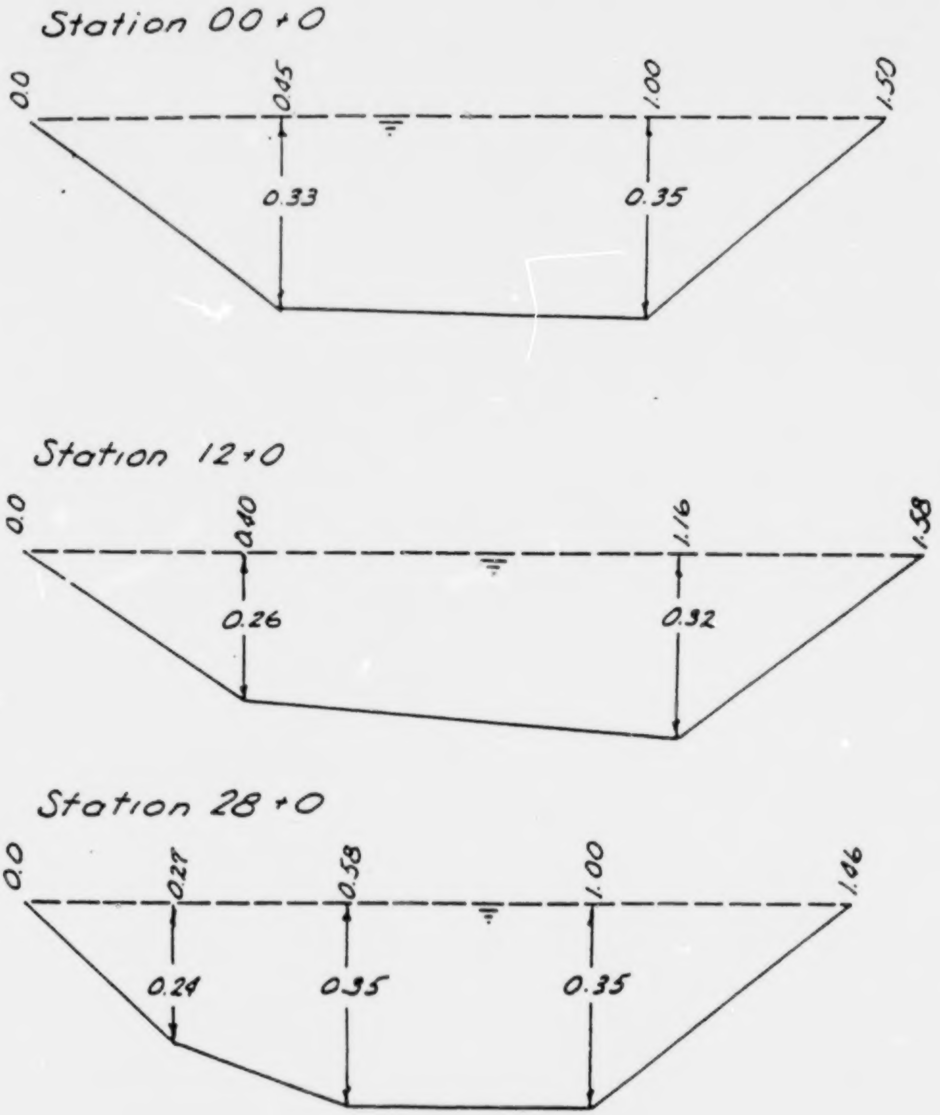

Station 00+0
0.0
0.45
1.00
1.50
0.33
0.35
Station 12+0
0.0
0.40
1.16
1.58
0.26
0.32
Station 28+0
0.0
0.27
0.58
1.00
1.06
0.24
0.35
0.35

**Figure 2.19 Ditch Cross Sections for Example (Ref. 57)**

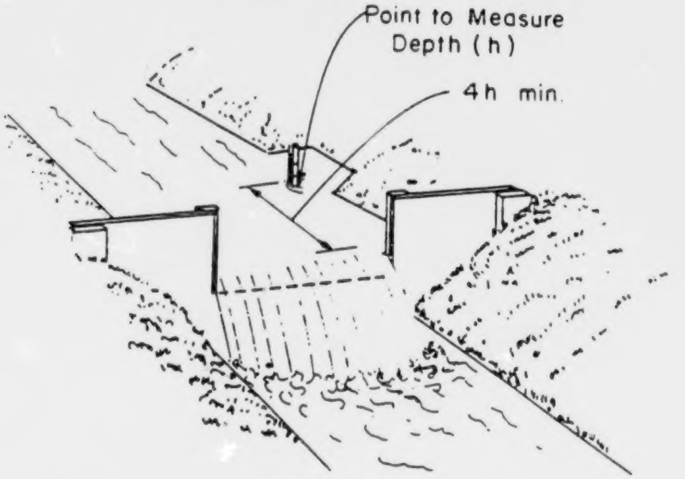

Point to Measure Depth (h)
4h min.

Figure 2.20 Rectangular Weir Used as Measuring Device and Drop (Ref. 41)

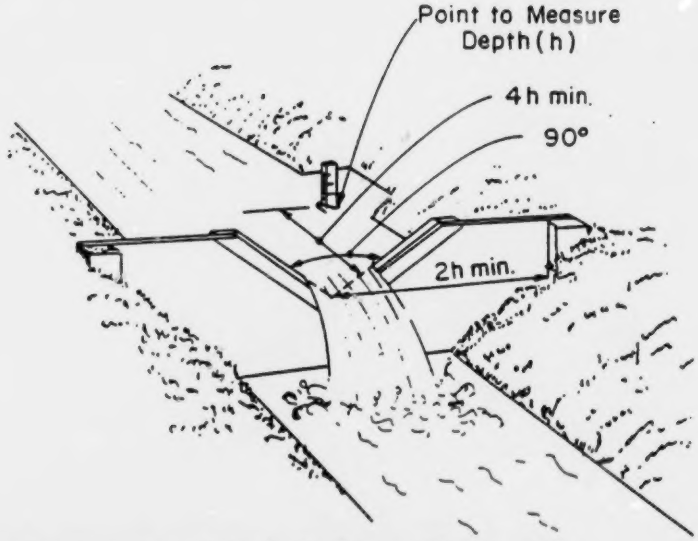

Point to Measure Depth (h)
4h min.
90°
2h min.

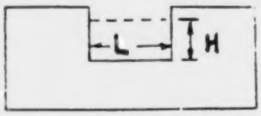
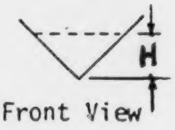
Figure 2.21 Ninety Degree V-Notch Weir (Ref. 41)

## 2.2.5 Siphon Tubes

Siphon tubes (Figure 2.23), used to remove water from a head ditch and distribute it over a field through furrows, corrugations, or borders, are also used to measure the rate of flow into these distribution system.

These tubes, made of aluminum, plastic, or rubber, are usually preformed to fit a half cross section of the head ditch. The normal diameter range is from 2.5 to 15 cm (1 to 6 inches), although both smaller and larger sizes are available. The smaller sizes are used with furrows and corrugations and the larger sizes with borders. Various lengths are available.

Siphon tubes are portable. For this reason, a low number of tubes is required to irrigate a given area resulting in low initial cost for equipment. Flow into individual furrows or borders can be controlled effectively by using the number of tubes that will divide the total head ditch flow into individual streams of the desired size.

| **Measuring Device**<br>(all sharp crested) | Front Views | Formula |
|---|---|---|
| | H = cm, L = cm | Q = Liters/Second |
| Rectangular Weir<br>(with contraction) |  | $Q = 0.018(L - 0.2H)H^{3/2}$ |
| 90° Triangular Weir |  | $Q = 0.014H^{5/2}$ |

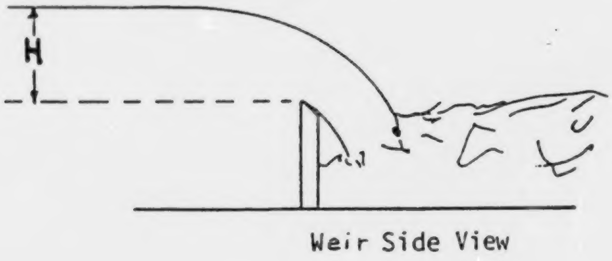


**Figure 2.22 Summary of weir formulas**

Siphon tube use is limited to fields with little cross slope in order to maintain a near-constant operating head on each tube. A disadvantage to their use is that each tube needs to be primed individually. This priming is the principal labor requirement when siphon tubes are used for surface irrigation.

The discharge of a siphon tube depends on: (1) the diameter of the tube, (2) the length of the tube, (3) the roughness of the inside surface and the number and degrees of bends in the tube, and (4) the head under which the tube is operating. When the outlet end of the tube is submerged, the operating head is the difference in elevation between the water surfaces measured at the entrance and outlet ends of the tube. When the tube is flowing free, the operating head is the difference in elevation between the water surface at the entrance of the tube and the center of the outlet end (Figure 2.23).

## Method of Measuring Pipe Flow

### 2.2.6 Bucket and Stopwatch Method

This method for measuring flow is generally well adapted to small flows. It is very simple to set-up and conduct, requires no special equipment, and gives good results. The necessary equipment to perform this test are a bucket of known volume (preferably 20 liters), a 1 m long PVC tube(the diameter will depend on the flow rate), and an ordinary wrist watch with a second hand.

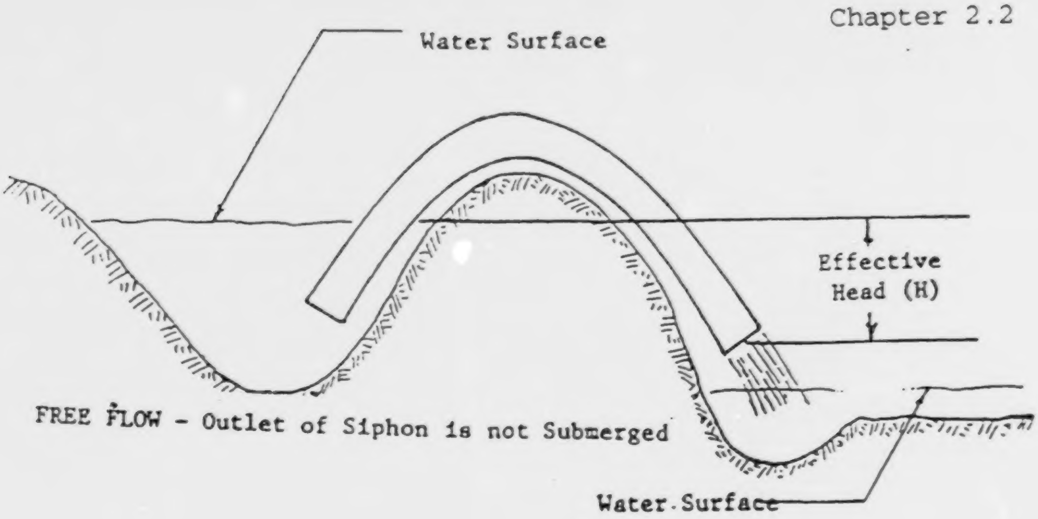
To use this method, first dam the water source and insert the PVC tube into the dam so that all the flow goes through the tube. The PVC tube will have to be high enough above the base level of the dam so the bucket can be placed under the tube. Measurements should not be taken until the flow in the tube stabilizes. The procedure works best with two people: one person filling the bucket and the other timing the event.

To measure the flow, record the time it takes to fill the bucket. The procedure should be repeated at least twice. The flow is calculated by:

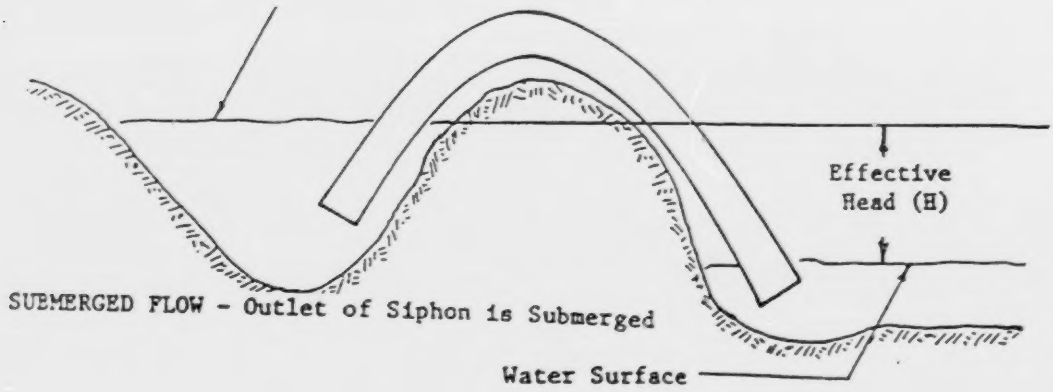
$$\text{Flow} = \frac{\text{Volume of bucket}}{\text{Time to fill}}$$

### 2.2.7 Orifices

An orifice is an opening in a plate that has well-defined and sharp edges. It may be round or rectangular. The water surface upstream must be above the top of the opening, if orifice flow is to occur. The orifice is mounted on a flat plate or is cut out from a flat metal plate. The flat plate or wall on which the orifice is mounted is placed perpendicular to the direction


Water Surface
Effective
Head (H)
Water Surface

FREE FLOW - Outlet of Siphon is not Submerged


Effective
Head (H)
Water Surface

SUBMERGED FLOW - Outlet of Siphon is Submerged

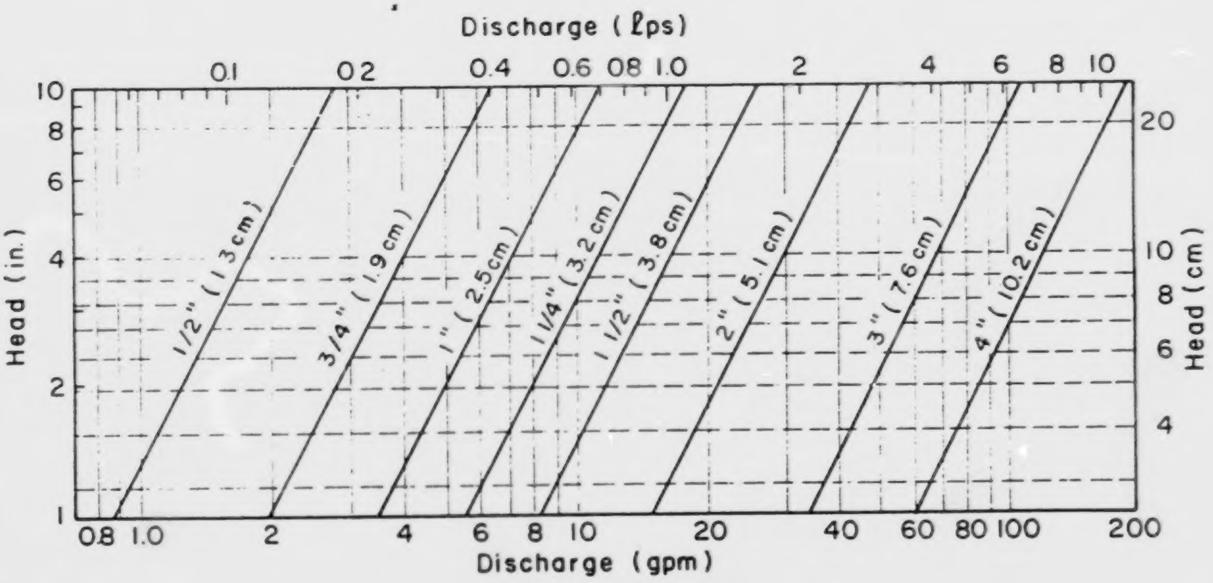


**Figure 2.23 Siphon Tubes: Head Measurement and Discharge**

of flow across the channel. Knowing the size of the orifice and the head across the orifice, the flow can be estimated. Figure 2.24 provides a definition of the terms.

For a freely discharging orifice, the only head measurement required is the water level height above the center of the orifice. For an orifice that is submerged on both sides, the head across the orifice must be measured. The equation and units are given in Figure 2.24. The conditions that should be met for accurate flow measurements are:

1. The upstream edges of the orifice should be sharp and smooth.
2. The distance from the edges of the orifice to the sides of the canal or stream bed should be greater than twice the least dimension of the orifice.
3. The face of the orifice wall should be vertical.
4. In a rectangular orifice, the top and bottom edges of the orifice should be level.
5. The cross-sectional area of the water in the canal should be at least 8 times the cross-sectional area of the orifice.

An orifice plate for measuring flows in small streams can be constructed easily by cutting either a rectangular or circular hole in a piece of sheet metal. The orifice should be carefully cut to the proper dimensions, and the edges should be sharp. The sheet metal plate can then be installed across a stream as part of a check dam while the measurements are taken. A 2 1/2 cm circular orifice is useful for flow rates to 1/2 liters per second. A circular orifice with a 5 cm diameter opening is useful for flows to 3 liters per second with 30 cm of head. A 10 cm orifice is useful for flows to 9 liters per second.

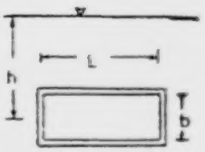
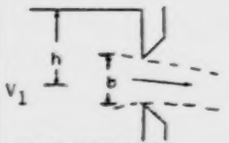
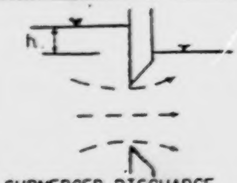
| | VIEW | | FORMULA | UNITS |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ORIFICE WITH FULL CONTRACTION |  <br>FRONT VIEW |  <br>FREE DISCHARGE | Q= 0.027 $A\sqrt{h}$ | Q ····· l/sec<br>rectangular:<br>A= b*L $cm^2$<br>h····· cm<br>$V_1 \approx 0$<br>for circular orifice:<br>$A = \pi D^2/4$<br>D= dia. hole |
| | |  <br>SUBMERGED DISCHARGE | Q= 0.027 $A\sqrt{h}$ | |

**Figure 2.24 Definition Sketch and Formulas for Orifice**

## 2.3 SURVEYING

Topographic surveying provides some of the basic information required for the design, construction, and operation of an irrigation system. Some of the most important aspects of surveying are:

1. **Profiling**. Measurement of the elevations of the ground surface along a route (for example, where a pipeline will be installed) or where a structure will be installed.
2. **Area measurements.**
3. **Topographic mapping**. Determination of ground surface elevations in a field in order to construct a contour map is necessary for determining land leveling requirements, placement of ditches or structures, etc.

Every Volunteer working with irrigation should have, at a minimum, a hand level (at least 4 X power) or an Abney level; a surveying rod; a measuring tape (minimum of 30 meters); a carpenter's level; and a scientific calculator (capable of computing roots and powers). This will allow the Volunteer to determine elevation differences, profiles, and area measurements. Some topographic mapping can be accomplished with this equipment. For significant leveling work, however, an engineer's level and/or transit is often required. This equipment is not often available to the Volunteer. The theory and practice of land leveling is beyond the scope of this manual. The Volunteer should consult appropriate references and obtain assistance from an engineer or surveyor before undertaking significant land leveling.

This section covers the basics of profiling and topographic mapping. It also includes some appropriate techniques for laying out contour lines and determining elevation differences.

### 2.3.1 Profiling

(Ref. 21)

Accurate knowledge of the ground profile along a pipeline route is often critical for proper pipeline design. Correct profiling depends on correct use of simple equipment. "Eyeball" methods of profiling are sufficient only in the simplest of situations. The following is a general description of profiling methods.

## Theory of Leveling

1. The line of sight of a properly used level is always at the same elevation, regardless of the direction in which it is pointed.

2. If the elevation at any point on the ground is known, the elevation of the level line of sight may be found by measuring up from the known point. Because most work requires knowledge of relative elevations only, the known point is often assumed to be 100 or 1000.

3. If the elevation of the level line of sight is known, the elevation of any point on the ground may be found by measuring down from the line of sight.

4. By successive use of the above concepts, the elevation of any point may be found.

## Equipment

1. Surveying level and tripod or hand level. Levels are surveying instruments that have a telescope and means for orienting the telescope's line of sight on a horizontal plane.

2. A stick marked with distance measurements (e.g. feet or meters). This stick is called a "rod."

3. Distance measuring equipment, such as a measuring tape, engineer's chain, or optical distance estimating equipment. Pacing is adequate only for flat terrain or short distances.

4. A notebook, properly set up.

## Theory of Profiling

1. Profiling involves measurement of elevations (leveling) along a line, together with measurement of horizontal distances.

2. Distances must be measured on a straight line between points for which elevations are taken.

## Notekeeping

1. Notekeeping is one of the most critical portions of surveying. Many surveying mistakes can often be traced back to poor notation. A notebook should always be properly set up and time taken to make notes clear and readable.

2. A site sketch should accompany the measurements. This will help the notetaker remember important surface features of the area. The sketch should show salient features such as houses, streams, hills, and trees along the pipeline route. A North arrow should also be included.

Terminology

1. **Sta = Station.** This is the point on the profile line at which an elevation was measured. These are normally numbered by hundreds of feet. For example, a station 10 may be 1000 feet from the beginning of the survey. Intermediate distances are indicated by pluses: Sta 10 + 50 would equal 1050 from the beginning.
2. **Bm = Benchmark.** This is a monument or point of known description that includes elevation.
3. **Tbm = Temporary Benchmark.** This is an object that is relatively permanent, such as large rocks or trees, where the elevation has been determined.
4. **Bs = Backsight.** This is a rod reading at a point of known elevation.
5. **HI = Height of Instrument.** This is the elevation of the line of sight of the instrument.
6. **Fs = Foresight.** This is a rod reading at a point of unknown elevation.
7. **Elev = Elevation.**
8. **Dist = Distance between points.**
9. **Tp = Turning Point.** This is a point used primarily to serve as a reference elevation to move the instrument. Both a foresight and backsight are taken on the point. The point may be on or off the profile line but should be a solid point that is easy to relocate.

Profiling Procedure

1. Setup and level instrument.
2. Sight Benchmark (point of known elevation) for Backsight reading.
3. Enter rod reading in Backsight (Bs column 2).
4. Add rod reading (column 2) to Benchmark (column 5) to get Height of Instrument (HI column 3).

5. Sight point to be determined (Foresight) and enter reading in Foresight (Fs column 4).

6. Subtract Foresight (column 4) from Height of Instrument (column 3) to get elevation of Foresight (column 5).

Turning Point

1. Rodman maintains position at Foresight.

2. Move setup, and level the instrument at new location (Tp 1).

3. Sight rod at Backsight (last foresight station) and enter reading in column 2.

4. Add rod reading (column 2) to elevation of backsight (column 5) to get Height of Instrument (column 3).

5. Proceed with Foresight (steps 5 and 6 above).

**Example** 1: An example survey is presented in Figure 2.25. Notation for this survey is presented in Table 2.3

**TABLE 2.3 Survey Notation (meters) for Figure 2.25 (Ref. 27)**

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | + |  | (-) |  |  |
| Sta | Bs | HI | Fs | Elev | Notes |
| Pt A | 2.5 | 102.5 |  | 100 | Assumed elev. |
| Pt B |  |  | 11.5 | 91 |  |
| Tp 1 | 4.2 | 95.2 |  |  | Pt B |
| Pt C |  |  | 12.3 | 82.9 |  |

The steps used in the example problem are different from those used by professional surveyors. They have been simplified in an attempt to reduce confusion and are more than adequate for the type of surveying that is necessary in small-scale piped water systems. When using this method, always remember the following simple calculations:

1. Known elevation + Backsight reading = Height of Instrument

2. Height of Instrument - Foresight = Next Elevation

## Practical Hints for Surveying

1. Before starting, walk the course to be surveyed and mark the line to be profiled. If the survey is conducted for a piped water system, remember to keep in mind that pipe will have to be laid in trenches along the course. Whenever possible, avoid obstacles that will make laying difficult.

2. Mark with a sturdy stake all turning points, foresights, and backsights as work progresses so they will be visible if a recheck is necessary.

3. After you have finished your calculations, redo the survey if unacceptable errors occur. It is much easier to correct a surveying mistake before pipe has been laid in the ground.

4. It is desirable to recheck horizontal distances as well. Approximate methods, such as pacing, will catch major errors with a minimum effort.

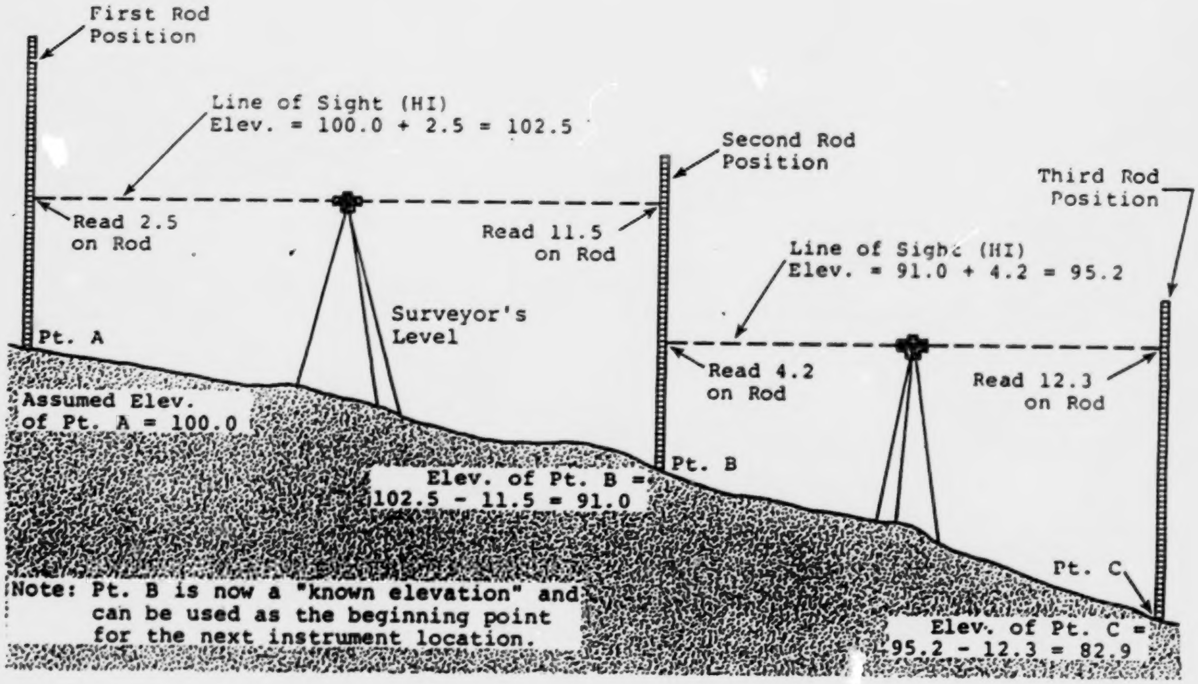

First Rod Position
Line of Sight (HI) Elev. = 100.0 + 2.5 = 102.5
Second Rod Position
Third Rod Position
Read 2.5 on Rod
Read 11.5 on Rod
Line of Sight (HI) Elev. = 91.0 + 4.2 = 95.2
Surveyor's Level
Pt. A
Read 4.2 on Rod
Read 12.3 on Rod
Assumed Elev. of Pt. A = 100.0
Pt. B
Elev. of Pt. B = 102.5 - 11.5 = 91.0
Pt. C
Note: Pt. B is now a "known elevation" and can be used as the beginning point for the next instrument location.
Elev. of Pt. C = 95.2 - 12.3 = 82.9

**Figure 2.25 Profiling: Example (Ref. 21)**

Plotting the Profile

Once the horizontal distances and elevations are surveyed in the field, the data is brought back to the office and plotted on graph paper. This completed profile can be used for sizing pipelines and locating storage tanks, air valves, and washout points among other requirements. Normally, the vertical scale is greater (numerically smaller) than the horizontal scale. For example, the vertical scale may be ten times the horizontal: in the vertical scale, one cm may equal 1 meter and in the horizontal, one cm may equal ten meters. Other similar ratios may be used.

**Example** 2: Figures 2.26 and 2.27 show a ground sketch of the area to be surveyed and the completed profile for the survey. The following are measurements taken during this survey:

At 0 + 00 100.0 + 0.2 = 100.2 (equals HI)
At 0 + 47 100.2 - 9.7 = 90.5 (equals next elevation)

This is repeated for the next instrument setup:

At 0 + 47 90.5 + 1.3 = 91.8 (equals HI)
At 1 + 03 91.8 - 9.9 = 81.9 (equals next elevation)

Many different ground elevations may be found from a single Height of Instrument sight, as shown by the following:

At 1 + 03 81.9 + 4.2 = 86.1 (equals HI)
At 1 + 30 86.1 - 5.5 = 80.6 (equals ground elevation)
At 1 + 37 86.1 - 8.9 = 77.2 (equals ground elevation)
At 1 + 45 86.1 - 5.2 = 80.9 (equals ground elevation)
At 2 + 00 86.1 - 4.2 = 81.9 (equals ground elevation)

## 2.3.2 Steps in Making a Topographic Map

1. Clear field of all debris, ensure clear line of sight to all points on the field.

2. Measure boundaries of the field and determine its area.

3. Collect and make a sufficient number of marker stakes.

4. Stake out a square grid over entire field. Use one side of the field (straightest side, if possible) as a starting point and set stakes at the recommended spacing of:
   a. 10 m if broken or irregular land relief.
   b. 20 m if flat or uniform land relief.

   The use of a 3-4-5 right triangle will assist in laying out the grid evenly and at 90° degree angles.

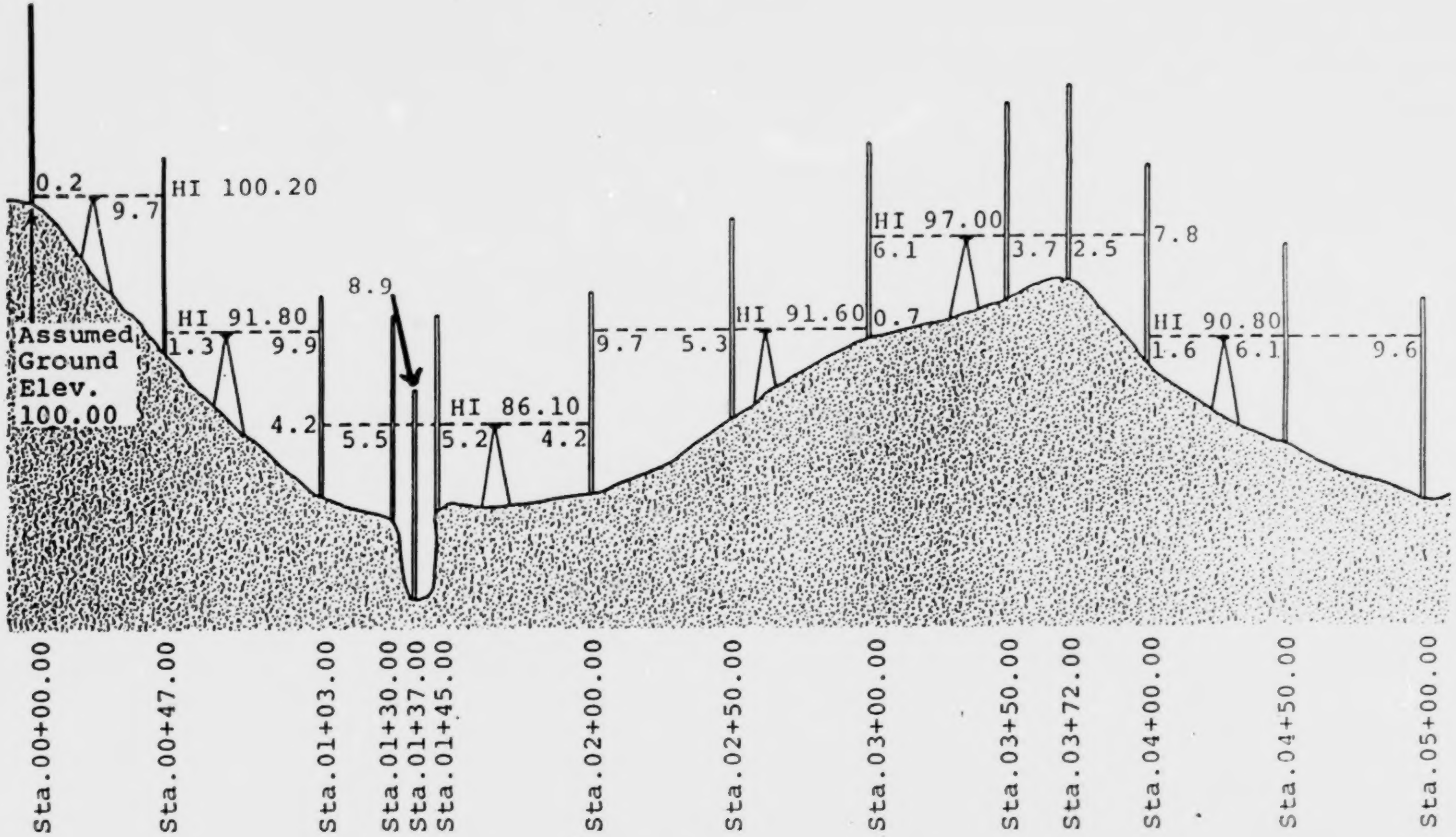

0.2
HI 100.20
9.7
Assumed Ground Elev. 100.00
HI 91.80
1.3
9.9
8.9
4.2
5.5
HI 86.10
5.2
4.2
9.7
5.3
HI 91.60
0.7
HI 97.00
6.1
3.7
2.5
7.8
HI 90.80
1.6
6.1
9.6
Sta.00+00.00
Sta.00+47.00
Sta.01+03.00
Sta.01+30.00
Sta.01+37.00
Sta.01+45.00
Sta.02+00.00
Sta.02+50.00
Sta.03+00.00
Sta.03+50.00
Sta.03+72.00
Sta.04+00.00
Sta.04+50.00
Sta.05+00.00

**Figure 2.26 Typical Profile (Ref. 21)**

LOCATION:
SURVEYOR:
DATE:

| STA | +B.S. | H.I. | -F.S. | ELEV. | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0+00 |  | Assumed |  | 100.0 | Spring |
|  | 0.2 | 100.2 |  |  |  |
| 0+47 |  |  | 9.7 | 90.5 | TP#1 |
|  | 1.3 | 91.8 |  |  |  |
| 1+03 |  |  | 9.9 | 81.9 | TP#2 |
|  | 4.2 | 86.1 |  |  |  |
| +30 |  |  | 5.5 | 80.6 | Stream West Edge |
| +37 |  |  | 8.9 | 77.2 | Stream |
| +45 |  |  | 5.2 | 80.9 | Stream East Edge |
| 2+00 |  |  | 4.2 | 81.9 | TP#3 |
|  | 9.7 | 91.6 |  |  |  |
| 2+50 |  |  | 5.3 | 86.3 |  |
| 3+00 |  |  | 0.7 | 90.9 | TP#4 |
|  | 6.1 | 97.0 |  |  |  |
| +50 |  |  | 3.7 | 93.3 |  |
| +72 |  |  | 2.5 | 94.5 | Top of Hill |
| 4+00 |  |  | 7.8 | 89.2 | TP#5 |
|  | 1.6 | 90.8 |  |  |  |
| +50 |  |  | 6.1 | 84.7 |  |
| 5+00 |  |  | 9.6 | 81.2 | E.O.L. |

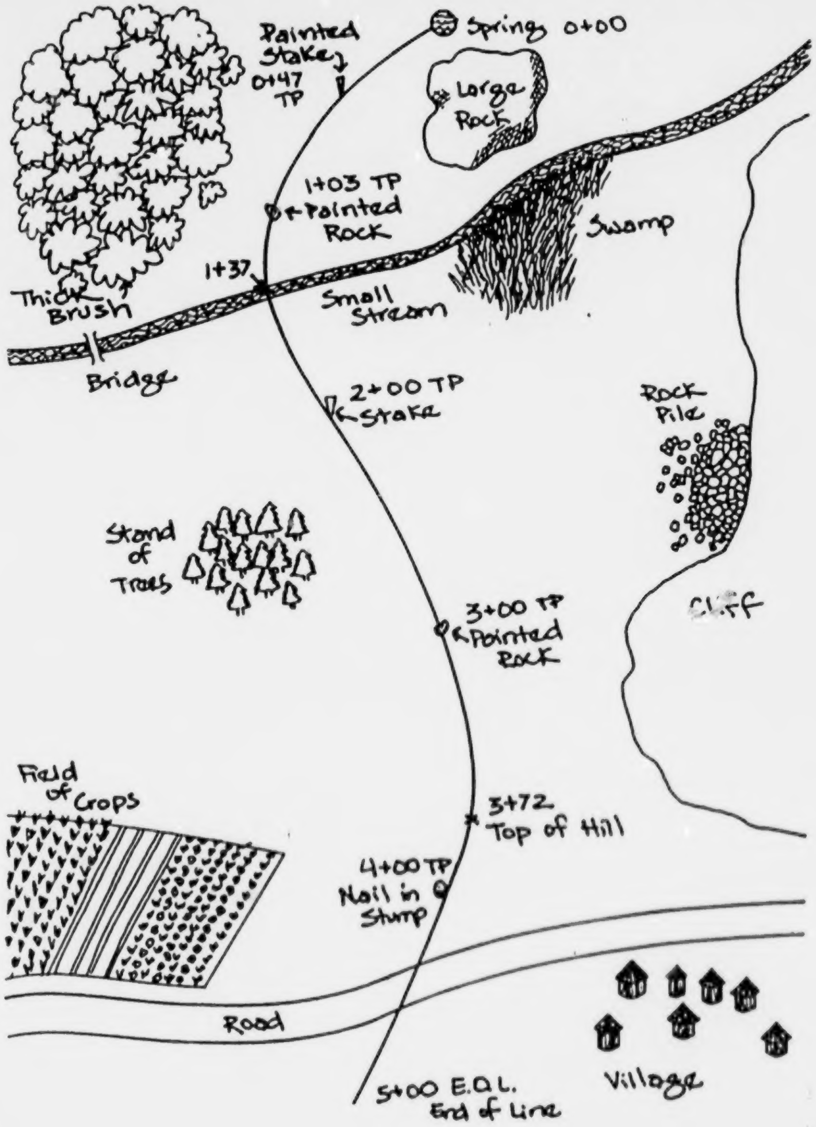

Spring 0+00
Painted Stake 0+47 TP
Large Rock
1+03 TP Painted Rock
Swamp
Thick Brush
1+37
Small Stream
Bridge
2+00 TP Stake
Rock Pile
Stand of Trees
3+00 TP Painted Rock
Cliff
Field of Crops
3+72 Top of Hill
4+00 TP Nail in Stump
Road
Village
5+00 E.O.L. End of Line

Figure 2.27 Survey Sketch and Notations (Ref. 21)

5. Establish a benchmark (permanent or semipermanent object) on or near the field.

6. Take readings of elevational differences for each stake in the grid with reference to the benchmark with some type of leveling device and rod.

7. Take field notes for the entire field.

8. Sketch topographical map of field:
   a. Sketch field to scale on graph paper.
   b. Place grid on sketch.
   c. From the field notes, fill in all of the elevational readings for each point on the grid.
   d. With a continuous smooth line, connect the points of the same elevation reading and extrapolate points in between where need be; this is a **contour line.**
   e. Incrementally increase (or decrease) value of elevation reading and repeat step (d) for each new elevation.
   f. Complete topographic map for the range of elevation readings. Make sure there is an incremental progression of elevation readings so that the contour lines will have equal elevational differences between them. The contour line increment will depend on the range of elevation readings, the detail required, and the size of the area being mapped. For example, a 1 meter increment between contour lines will provide more detail than a 10 meter increment in one given area.

### 2.3.3 Abney Level Surveying

(Adapted from Reference 27 with appropriate modifications. For greater details on surveying, and adjustment of the level, the user should consult Reference 27 or books on surveying. The Abney level should also be periodically checked to insure that it is properly adjusted.)

Abney level surveying is especially useful for rapidly determining elevation differences, particularly in hillside situations, where great precision is not required.

The Abney level consists of a square tube (dimensions of about 16 x 1.5 x 1.5 cm) with an eyepiece at the observer's end, a horizontal cross-hair at the objective end, a bubble level, a 45° mirror, and a moveable indexed arc.

Conducting a survey with the Abney requires two persons. An abney level, a 30 meter tape measure, and a field book are necessary; a compass may be used if bearings are desired.

The survey is begun at some fixed reference point (such as the water source or some prominent landmark along the route) and proceeds long the route of proposed construction.

The surveying technique is simple: the surveyor sights through the Abney at a target held by the other person, and the ground distance between them is measured. This distance, and the vertical angle (angle measured by the Abney) are recorded in the field book. It is important that the target that the surveyor sights upon is the same height above the ground as the Abney, which is the same as the surveyor's eye-level. If the assistant is not as tall as the surveyor, then the assistant should carry a target stick cut exactly to the same length as the surveyor's eye-level. A red cloth can be tied to the top of the stick, or the assistant's hand can be placed over the end of it, to provide a clear target. It is also useful for the surveyor to use a forked stick as a stand to rest the Abney on, in order to obtain a steadier reading (in this case, the target stick should be cut to the same length as this forked stick).

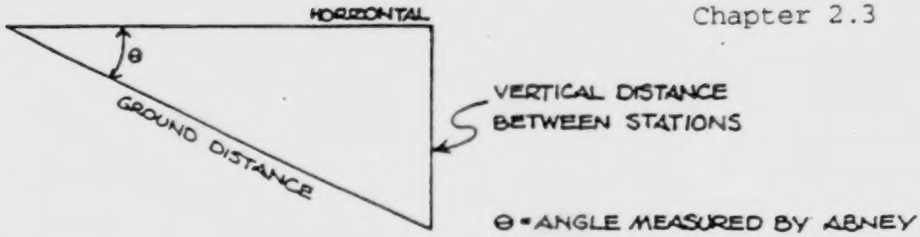
Figure 2.28 shows the basic arrangement and calculation used in trigonometric leveling with the Abney: the surveyor and assistant are 28 meters apart (ground distance), and the vertical angle is $-16^\circ$ (the negative angle indicates that the surveyor was sighting downhill). Use a calculator or trigonometric table to determine the sine of the angle. In this case the sin of $16^\circ$ is 0.2756 so 28 x 0.2756 is 7.7 meters elevation difference.

## Field Methods

While conducting the survey, the surveyor and assistant must also observe the terrain being walked. The surveyor must constantly keep in mind that, at some later time, other people will actually have to dig a trenchline along that route. Notes must be made about the type of terrain being traversed, such as stretches of jungle, cultivated fields, footpaths, gullies, soil conditions (e.g. gravel, soft dirt, bare rock). It is easy to survey across terrain over which might be exceedingly difficult or impossible to lay a pipeline!

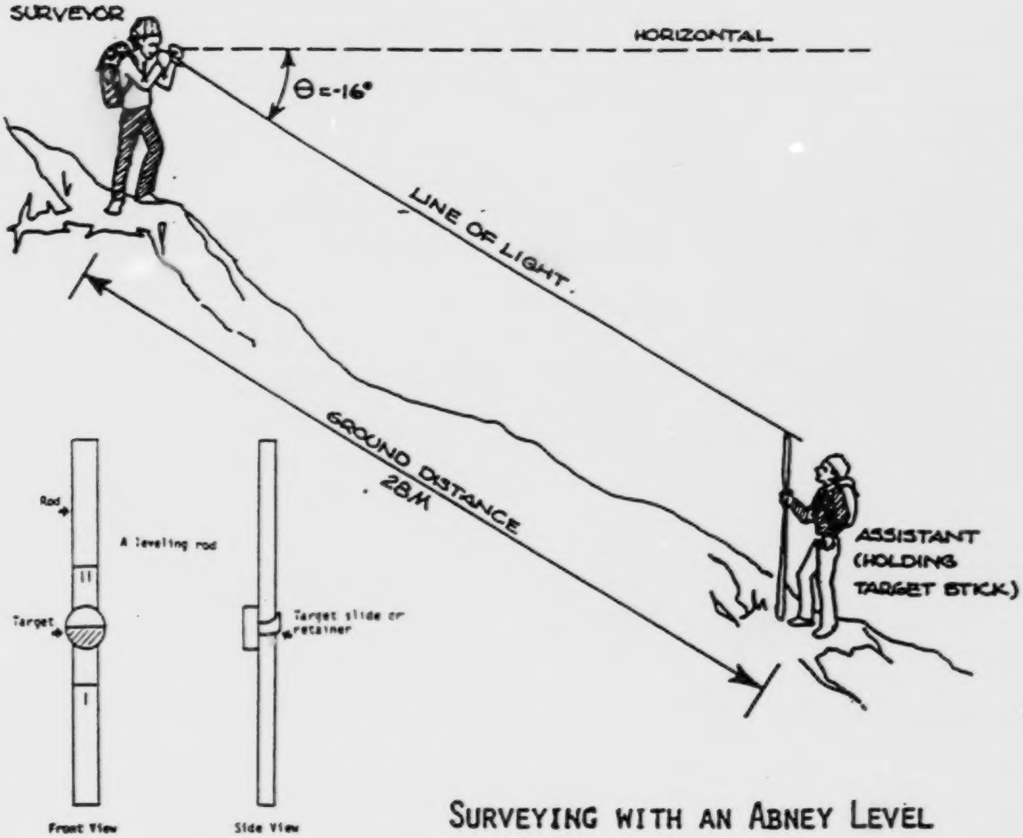
The surveyor should make use of as many reference points as possible so that if a section of the pipeline needs to be resurveyed at a later time, a convenient starting point can be found. Reference points should be permanent or semi-permanent. Suitable examples are prominent trees, rock outcroppings, etc. If the surveyor carries flagging, spray paint, lime, nailpolish or enamel paint, landmarks can be identified with a permanent label.

Figure 2.29 shows a good, precise format for recording accurate and complete notes.


HORIZONTAL
θ
GROUND DISTANCE
VERTICAL DISTANCE BETWEEN STATIONS
θ = ANGLE MEASURED BY ABNEY

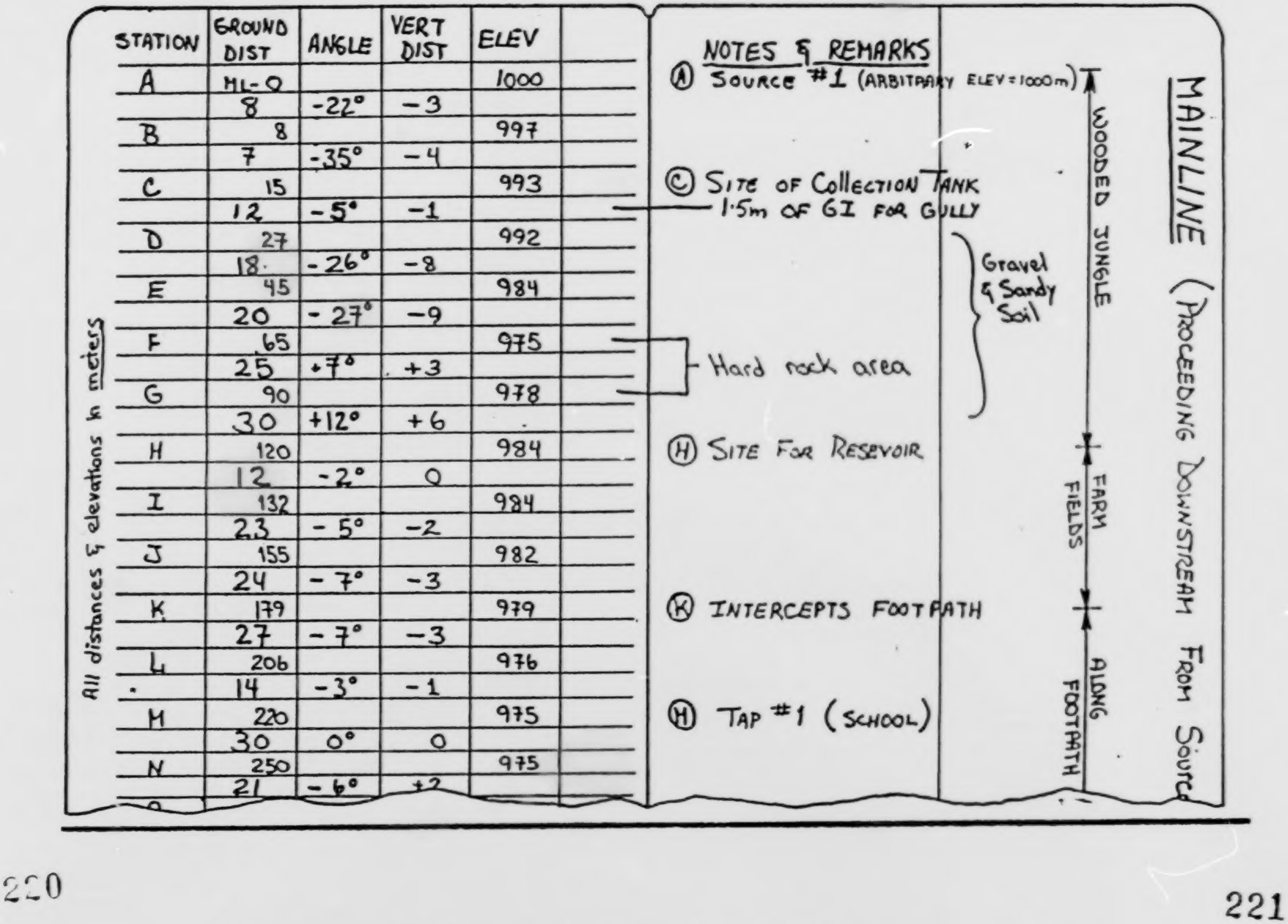
VERTICAL DISTANCE = GROUND DISTANCE × SIN θ

EXAMPLE ILLUSTRATED BELOW :
θ = -16° (NEGATIVE SIGN INDICATES SIGHTING DOWNHILL)
SIN θ = 0·276 (FROM TRIGONOMETRIC TABLE)
GROUND DISTANCE = 28 METERS
VERTICAL DISTANCE = 28 × 0·276 = 7·73 METERS.


SURVEYOR
HORIZONTAL
θ = -16°
LINE OF LIGHT.
GROUND DISTANCE 28M
ASSISTANT (HOLDING TARGET STICK)
Rod
A leveling rod
Target
Target slide or retainer
Front View
Side View

SURVEYING WITH AN ABNEY LEVEL

**Figure 2.28 Trigonometric Surveying with an Abney Level (Ref. 27)**



All distances & elevations in meters

| STATION | GROUND DIST | ANGLE | VERT DIST | ELEV |  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | ML-0 | | | 1000 | |
| | 8 | -22° | -3 | | |
| B | 8 | | | 997 | |
| | 7 | -35° | -4 | | |
| C | 15 | | | 993 | |
| | 12 | -5° | -1 | | |
| D | 27 | | | 992 | |
| | 18 | -26° | -8 | | |
| E | 45 | | | 984 | |
| | 20 | -27° | -9 | | |
| F | 65 | | | 975 | |
| | 25 | +7° | +3 | | |
| G | 90 | | | 978 | |
| | 30 | +12° | +6 | | |
| H | 120 | | | 984 | |
| | 12 | -2° | 0 | | |
| I | 132 | | | 984 | |
| | 23 | -5° | -2 | | |
| J | 155 | | | 982 | |
| | 24 | -7° | -3 | | |
| K | 179 | | | 979 | |
| | 27 | -7° | -3 | | |
| L | 206 | | | 976 | |
| | 14 | -3° | -1 | | |
| M | 220 | | | 975 | |
| | 30 | 0° | 0 | | |
| N | 250 | | | 975 | |
| | 21 | -6° | +2 | | |

NOTES & REMARKS

Ⓐ SOURCE #1 (ARBITRARY ELEV=1000m)

Ⓒ SITE OF Collection TANK
1·5m OF GI FOR GULLY

Gravel & Sandy Soil

Hard rock area

Ⓗ SITE FOR RESEVOIR

Ⓚ INTERCEPTS FOOTPATH

Ⓜ TAP #1 (SCHOOL)

WOODED JUNGLE
FARM FIELDS
ALONG FOOTPATH
MAINLINE (PROCEEDING DOWNSTREAM FROM SOURC
220
221

Figure 2.29 Example: Field Book Notes (Ref. 27)

### Closing the Survey

Closing the survey means tying the survey to two reference points of known elevations, thus providing a check on the surveyed elevations. Closing a survey can be done by repeating it entirely, beginning from the original endpoint and ending at the original starting point, but not necessarily along the same original route.

### Leveling Rods

A leveling rod is used to measure the vertical distance from the surface of the ground to the line of sight of a surveying level (Figure 2.28). It can be constructed as a land measuring rod but the "0" m should just be the end of the rod. The overall length should be about 3 m and the rod should be marked in meters, decimeters, and centimeters.

Attach a moveable target to the rod. This might be a small board held against the rod with something such as a short piece of rubber (from an old inner tube) to hold it in place after the height is adjusted.

When the surveying instrument is sighted on the rod, the target is moved up or down until it is centered on the line-of-sight. The vertical distance is then read.

## 2.3.4 Simple Levels For Use in Surveying Contour Lines

(Ref. 9, with appropriate modifications)

In many areas, sophisticated surveying levels are not available to farmers interested in designing soil conservation structures. Even where they are available, it is often more practical for the farmer to build a cheap, simple, effective level for use in surveying contour lines. Although less accurate than more sophisticated levels, the A-Frame level (Figure 2.30), the Line Level (Figure 2.31), and the Hose Level (Figure 2.32), when properly constructed and used, are sufficiently accurate for the work on small hillside farms.

### A. How to Build and Use an A-Frame Level

1. Construction

   The materials required are 3 straight boards or sticks, 3 nails or screws, a thin string, and a plumb-bob -- a screw-capped glass bottle or uniform-shaped rock. A small level is very convenient and is easier to use on windy days.

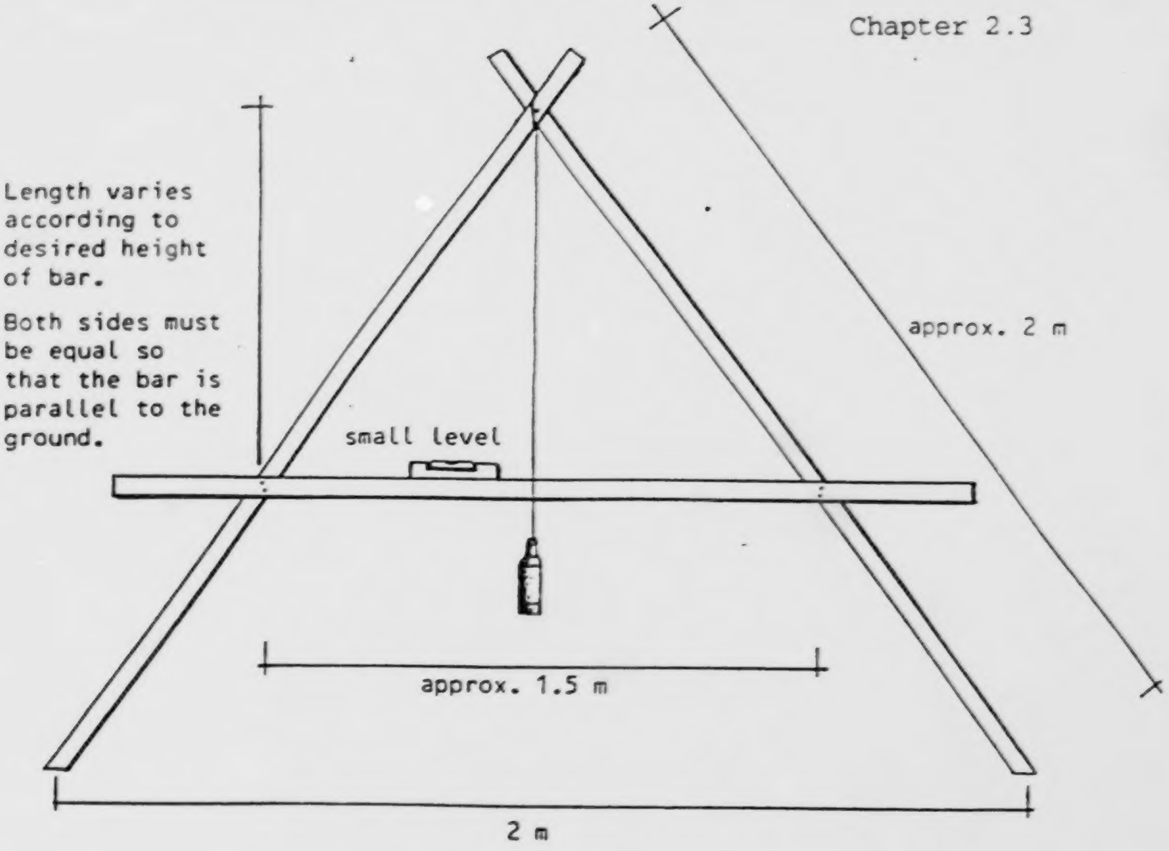

Length varies according to desired height of bar.
Both sides must be equal so that the bar is parallel to the ground.
small level
approx. 2 m
approx. 1.5 m
2 m

**Figure 2.30 A-Frame Level for Surveying Contour Lines (Ref. 9)**

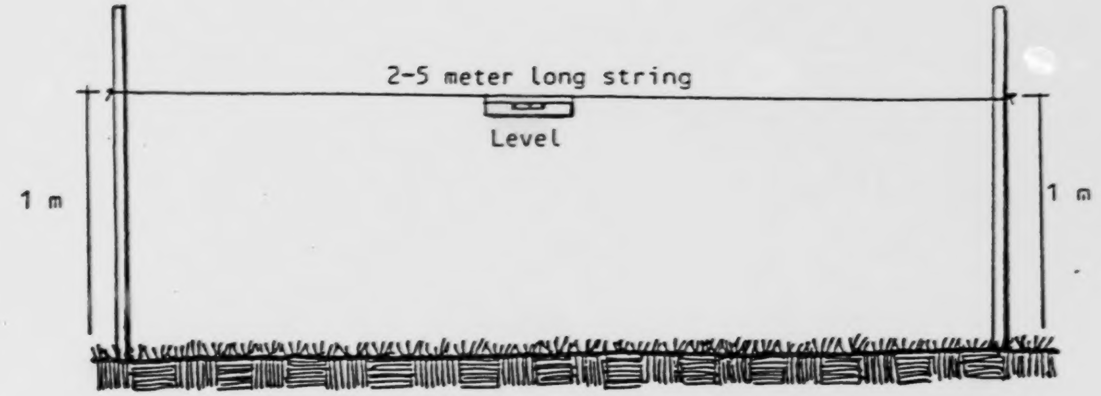

2-5 meter long string
Level
1 m
1 m

**Figure 2.31 Simple Line Level for Surveying Contour Lines (Ref. 9)**

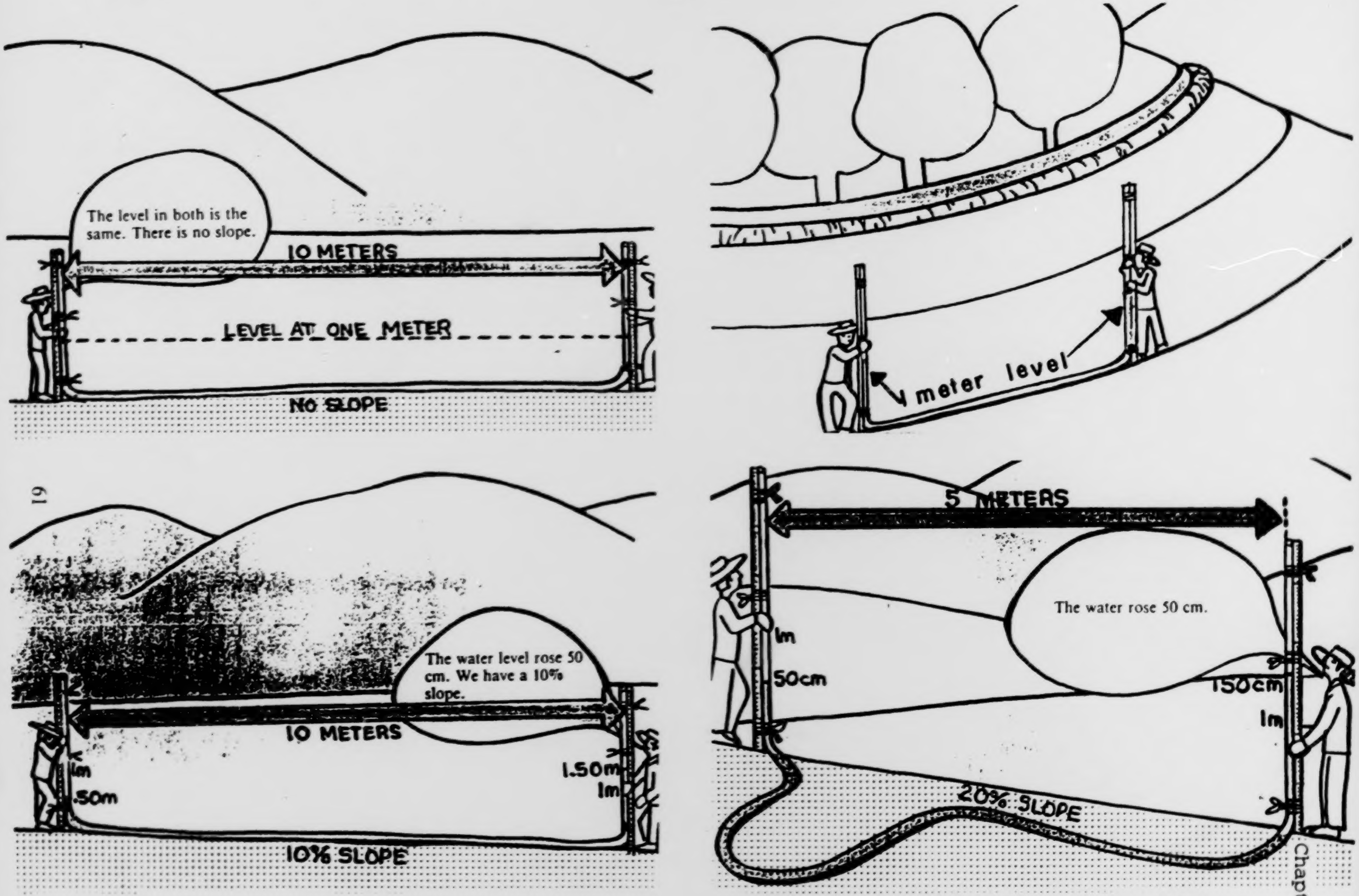

The level in both is the same. There is no slope.
10 METERS
LEVEL AT ONE METER
NO SLOPE
1 meter level
The water level rose 50 cm. We have a 10% slope.
10 METERS
1m
.50m
1.50m
1m
10% SLOPE
5 METERS
The water rose 50 cm.
1m
50cm
150cm
1m
20% SLOPE

Figure 2.32 Use of a Hose Level (Ref. 42)

Important points to consider in building the A-frame level:

a. The symmetry of the level is important (two legs should be the same length and crossbar should be positioned identically on the legs so that it is parallel to the ground.)

b. The dimensions of the level are not important, but if constructed in larger dimensions than the one in Figure 2.31, the level should be assembled with screws so that it can be disassembled for transportation. Measuring an exact distance (2 m) between the feet makes calibrating the 1% slope position easier.

c. The plumb-bob must be attached so that it does not deflect the string to either side. If a screwcap bottle is used, it should be hung by a hole made exactly in the center of the cap. If a rock is used, it is important that a very uniformly shaped rock be chosen.

2. Calibration

The level should be calibrated every day before use, as warping of the wood can greatly change the results.

**a. Calibration of 0%**

1. The level should be positioned with both feet on firm surfaces but with one end obviously higher than the other.

2. The level is gently rocked, allowing the string with the plumb-ob to gently strike the crossbar.

3. When the plumb-bob stops swaying side to side and the string strikes the crossbar at the same point repeatedly (5-10 times), mark this position in pencil on the crossbar.

4. Reverse the position of the level so that the other foot is now at the higher point. Care must be taken to position the feet of the level in exactly the same points as before.

5. Repeat steps 2 and 3, obtaining a second mark on the other side of the center of the crossbar.

6. The 0% position of the level is exactly in between the two marks obtained in this trial. This position can be marked by measuring with a ruler or paper (half the distance between the 2 marks). Now when the feet of the level are even the string will strike the crossbar at the 0% position. This position is used to survey contour lines for barriers,

terraces, or ditches be used for retention, rather than diversion, of water.

7. Once calibrated, a small carpenter's or line level can be fastened to the crossbar to facilitate use on windy days.

**b. Calibration of 1%**

1. Position the level so that the feet are on the same level and the string strikes the crossbar at the 0% position. The feet should be on firm surfaces.

2. Raise one foot by the distance required to position the level at a 1% slope. For example, if the distance between the feet is 2 m (200cm), then a 2 cm tall object (e.g. a 2 cm tall stack of coins) should be placed under one foot. [2 cm (raised foot)/200 cm (distance between feet) = 0.01; 0.01 x 100% = 1%.]

3. Rock the level gently, now the string strikes the 1% slope position. Mark this position on the crossbar.

4. Since this type of contour line will be used to construct structures to divert water, an arrow should be placed pointing toward the lower foot to indicate the direction of water flow.

5. As in previous calibration, if desired, a small level can be fastened to the crossbar.

### 3. Use of the A-frame level

The A-frame level is used to survey contour lines by placing stakes at the position of the feet when the level gives the desired reading. Stakes should all be placed on the same side of the level, all upslope or all downslope, in order to avoid errors. When not being used, the level should be stored in a dry, shady place.

## B. How to Build and Use a Line Level

### 1. Construction

The materials required are 2 straight boards or sticks, a string of desired length, and a line level (Figure 2.31).

## 2. Calibration

The level should be calibrated every day before using as bending of the hooks on the line level or warping or chipping of the sticks can greatly change the results.

### a. Calibration of 0%

1. Slots are cut in each stick at the same distance from one end.

2. The string is tied firmly to each stick so that it cannot slip out of the slots.

3. Hook the line level on the string and find a place on firm ground which gives a level reading.

4. Reverse the direction of the line level on the string while maintaining the position of the sticks. If the reading changes, the hooks of the line level must be adjusted slightly by bending them.

5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 until the line level gives identical readings upon reversal.

### b. Calibration of 1%

1. Repeat the steps as in the calibration of 0%. However, this time the slots on the sticks should be placed so that a 1% drop occurs over the distance of the string. (For example, if the string measures 2 m then the slot on one stick should be 2 cm higher than on the other.)

2. Remember that the stick that has the slot located higher actually represents the lower ground surface when the reading of the string is level. Remember to mark the sticks so that no confusion as to the direction of water flow will arise when surveying contour lines.

## 3. Use of the Line Level

This type of level is easiest to use with at least three people, two holding the sticks and the third reading the line level and placing stakes. When not in use, the line level should be protected so that the glass vial and hooks are not damaged.

### **C.** How to Build and Use a Hose Level
(Ref. 42)

1. Construction:

A simple hose level (Figure 2.32), useful for laying out a grade line, can be constructed using the following materials:

a. A transparent plastic hose, 16 m long and 1.5 to 2 cm in diameter.

b. Two thin rods or boards, or other thin, rigid material about 2.6 m long.

c. Strips of wire, rubber, or string with which to tie the hose.

d. Small cans of white and black paint.

e. Measuring tape.

The level can be constructed as follows:

a. Mark the rods every 5 cm, starting 10 cm from one end.

b. Tie the hose to the graduated rods so that it lies against the rods from top to bottom.

c. Place the two rods side by side on the same level. Stretch the hose downhill on a slope.

d. Fill the hose with water so that is rises to the 1 m mark on each end of the hose. Make sure that no air bubbles remain in the hose. The simple level is complete!

2. Use:

This simple tool can be used to determine slope as follows:

1. Separate the rods by 10 m.
2. Note how much the water has changed in the hose. If the water level at both rods are equal, then the two points are at the same elevation. The slope between the two points is 0%.

   If the water level lowers 5 cm from the 1 m mark on the upper rod, it will rise 5 cm above the 1 m mark on the lower rod. (10 cm total difference.)

With each 5 cm change against either of the rods, there is a 1 percent change in slope, so that with a 5 cm change the slope is 1 percent, with a 10 cm change the slope is 2 percent, with a 50 cm change the slope is 10 percent, and with a 1 m change the slope is 20%.

If the water in the downhill end goes over 2 m, the slope is greater than 20% and should be measured as described below.

3. Slopes between 20 and 40 percent can be measured as follows:

    a. Separate the rods by 5 m.

    b. Note the change in water level on either side. A 50 cm change indicates 20 percent (for each 5 cm change there is 2% more slope). If the water level changes 75 cm, the slope is 30%. If the water level changes 100 cm, the slope is 40%.

The simple level can be used to mark a level contour line in the field in the following way:

1. Select a starting point and mark it with a stake.

2. Separate the rods by 10 m or some convenient distance.

3. Move the leading rod up or down, until its water level is the same as that in the rod at the initial point. Mark this point.

4. Follow the same procedure from point 2 to point 3, point 3 to point 4, and so on.

We can also mark lines with one, two, or three percent slope.

1. Choose a starting point.

2. Separate the rods by 10 m. The water level at each rod must change:
    5 cm for 1% slope
    10 cm for 2% slope
    15 cm for 3% slope

    If the water level indicated in the leading rod rises, the slope is downhill. If the water level drops, the slope is uphill.

3. Repeat the procedure for succeeding points.

## 2.3.5 Compass Use

In the field it may be necessary to measure the angle between two different lines or points. This can be done by direct measurements with a protractor if the lines can be drawn on a flat surface. Another more accurate and easier method is the use of a simple compass. To do this, it is important that the compass have peripheral degree graduations that are 360° to make a full circle.

To measure a horizontal angle, the compass holder stands at a fixed point, usually a corner of a field, and visually aligns the north reading of the compass along the line of sight to another point (another corner in field). Since the needle automatically points to negative north, the compass holder notes the difference in degrees between the needle reading and the north reading on the compass. This is known as the negative bearing of the object from the fixed point. A second bearing is taken on a second object (another corner of field) and the difference between the two bearing readings will give the angle between the two points in relation to the fixed point.

The compass method can be used with a tape measure or long string for surveying the area of an irregular plot of land. The area is first walked over, and the points in the corners of the field are located and staked. With a tape measure, the distances between the corners are measured and recorded. At a corner of the field, the compass holder takes magnetic and adjoining corners bearings and determines the angle. This is done at each corner of the field.

With the aid of a protractor, the area is plotted to scale on a sheet of graph paper. The square units of the graph paper are given an area that will depend on the scale. The number of unit squares in the area of the field are totalled and an area is determined for the field.

In using the compass, be sure that it is free from the effect of magnetism due to iron objects carried by yourself or in nearby surroundings.

# 2.4 SOIL-PLANT-WATER RELATIONSHIPS

Proper irrigation requires knowledge of soil water storage and movement of water in the soil, as well as availability of this water to the plant. Irrigation also requires knowledge of plant root development, crop water use rates, and of the irrigation system itself. This section covers basic definitions and relationships that must be understood by those who work with irrigation management at the field level.

## 2.4.1 Soil Moisture Storage and Availability

Figure 2.33 indicates the availability of soil water. A soil is at saturation or near saturation following a heavy irrigation or rainfall in which most or all of the spaces between soil particles are filled by water. The force of gravity is greater than the force with which soil particles hold water, so between saturation and field capacity (see below), water is free to drain through the soil by the force of gravity.

**Field capacity (FC)** is the amount of water that a soil can hold against drainage by gravity.

**Permanent wilting point (PWP)** is the moisture content in a soil at which plants permanently wilt and will not recover.

**Available water (AW)** is the water content that the soil can hold between field capacity and wilting point.

**Readily available water (RAW)** is that portion of available water that the crop can use without affecting its evapotranspiration and growth. This portion is often indicated as a fraction of available water (p) and is dependent primarily on the type of crop and evaporative demand. A p value of 0.5 is commonly used. Shallow rooted crops such as most vegetables, however, require high moisture levels for acceptable yields, so p is about 0.3. Deeper rooted crops will generally tolerate higher depletions, so p = 0.6 to 0.7. During critical stages of growth (for example, flowering in corn), less depletion should be allowed than at other stages.

Soil moisture is typically measured as a percent of dry weight of soil, or as a volume percentage. Expression as a volume percentage or depth of water per unit depth of soil is most common and convenient in irrigation management.

The most useful measurement gives available water-holding capacity (AW) as a depth of water per unit depth of soil expressed as mm of water per meter of soil depth (mm/m) or inches of water per foot of soil depth (in/ft).

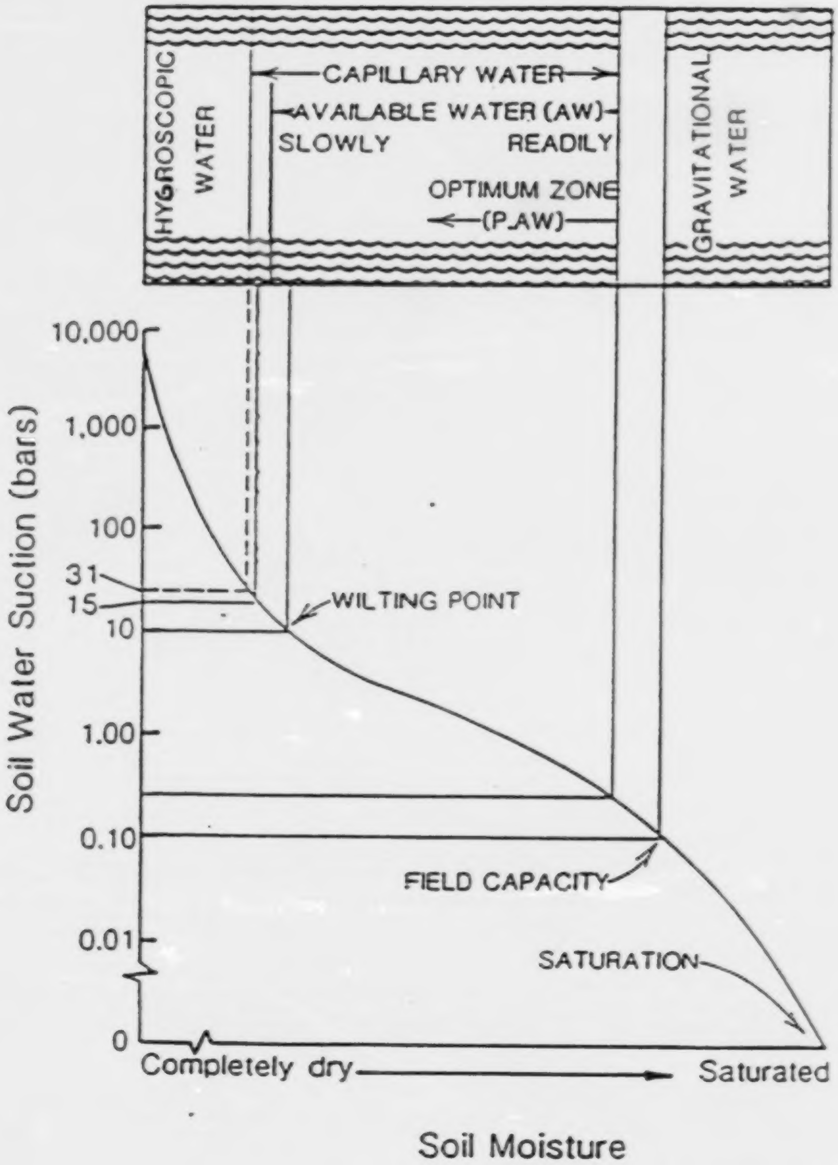


**Figure 2.33 Soil Water and its Availability**

The **total available water** (TAW) for a crop with root zone depth (D) is the product of the available water-holding capacity (AW) per unit of soil depth and the root depth in the same units, or:

$$TAW = D \times AW$$

The readily available water in the root zone (RAW) is:

$$RAW = p \times TAW$$

p = percent of allowable depletion not resulting in crop stress

### Field Capacity

Although there are several lab methods for determining field capacity, it may be faster and more practical to estimate as follows:

(1) select a recently irrigated plot with no plants on it or make a small basin and fill with water;
(2) cover the saturated soil with canvas or plastic to prevent evaporation; and
(3) take samples after the soil has drained to field capacity. The time required is usually one day in coarse-textured soils, two days in medium-textured soils, and three to four days in fine-textured soils. Samples of the soil taken after the indicated time period will be approximately at field capacity. Table 2.5 can then be used to understand the concept of field capacity for different soil textures by the "feel" method.

Typical relationships, such as that illustrated in Figure 2.34, which indicates field capacity as a function of texture, are often sufficiently accurate for planning scheduling programs. For more details on determination of soil moisture in quantifiable terms, see Ref. 44.

### Permanent Wilting Point

Permanent wilting point can be established by determining the moisture at which plants permanently wilt.

A simple criterion satisfactory for water management is that PWP is 50% of FC for coarse to medium-textured soils amd about 67% of FC for clays and clay loams. Typical relationships, such as those illustrated in Figures 2.33 and 2.34 often provide sufficient accuracy in estimating wilting point for water management purposes.

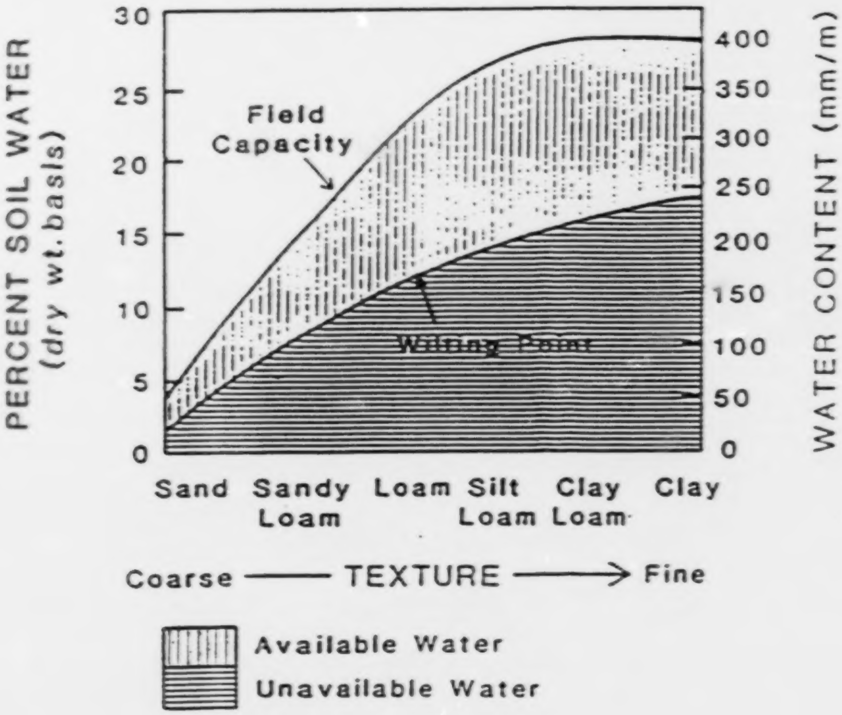


**Figure 2.34 Typical Relationship Between Soil Moisture Characteristics and Texture**

Available Water

Available water-holding capacities for soils are a function of soil texture, structure, organic matter, and salt content. For general agricultural soils without salt, compaction, or other types of problems, information such as that in Figure 2.34 or Table 2.4 on water-holding capacities as a function of texture and soil water tension can be used for planning. The factors that affect soil available water-holding capacity are:

1) **Soil texture:** as Table 2.4 shows, the smaller the soil particles, the greater the surface area, and hence the greater the area on which water can cling. This results in a higher available soil water holding capacity. In the case of heavy clay soils, the soil water's availability to plant roots is limited by the soil denseness, since the water is so tightly held.

2) **Soil structure** is the arrangement of soil particles into groups or aggregates. The spaces between these aggregates provides places for soil drainage, soil aeration, and root growth. This is especially important in heavy soils with small soil particles. Four common soil structures are:

- **Crumb or Granular:** Roundish aggregates that are porous and easily worked.
- **Blocky:** Blocklike soil aggregates that are relatively porous.
- **Columnar:** Column-like soil aggregates that are relatively porous.
- **Platy:** Platelike, flat soil aggregates that can overlap and impair soil permeability.

A soil with poor structure and drainage will tend to trap water in the profile, increasing soil water-holding capacity, but also creating problems with waterlogging and restricted root development.

3) **Hardpans** are hardened or cemented layers caused by physical or chemical processes and restrict soil drainage. This results in a similar situation as poor structure.

4) **Organic matter** can increase a soil's water-holding capacity, mainly by improving its physical condition.

5) A soil's **salt content** restricts a plant's ability to take up water from the soil solution.

**TABLE 2.4 Available Water-holding Capacities for General Soil Types**

| | |
|---|---|
| Coarse sands - gravelly sands | 40- 70 mm/m |
| Fine sands - loamy sands | 70-100 mm/m |
| Sandy loams | 120-160 mm/m |
| Loams | 180-220 mm/m |
| Silt loams | 230-270 mm/m |
| Silty clay loams, silty clays, heavy clays | 160-200 mm/m |

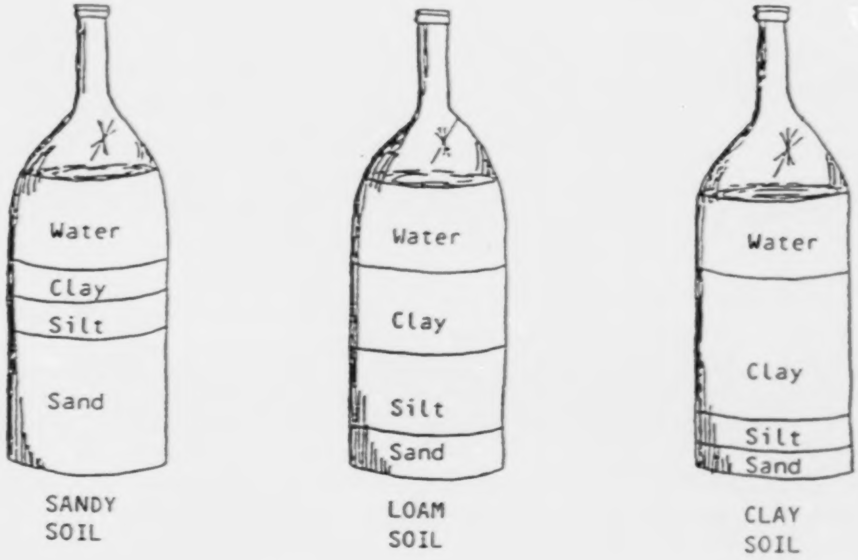
### 2.4.2 Estimating Soil Water Characteristics on Site

Soil maps developed by local or national agencies often provide sufficient information on soil water characteristics for developing irrigation management programs. If such sources are not detailed enough (as is often the case with very non-uniform soils), quick on-site evaluations can be conducted. This usually involves estimating soil texture and correlating it with available water through use of tables and/or experience.

Interviews with owners or managers of the farm will help to identify areas of different soils. Often simple observations of differences in crop development, superficial soil texture, and color of soil may help to define such areas.

The soil texture and structure can be evaluated by the visual and feel method using a soil probe or shovel and taking samples to typical rooting depths in increments. Table 2.5 describes properties often associated with specific textures. Figure 2.35 demonstrates an easy, visual method of assessing soil texture. Figure 2.36 shows typical water extraction patterns.

In tropical areas with high rainfall and good drainage, centuries of weathering have washed out much of the soils' mineral nutrients. This changes the characteristics of the clay fraction of these soils. These "tropical clays" are considerably less sticky and plastic than temperate clays described in Table 2.5. Unfortunately, most of the soils' natural fertility is also lost in this process. These soils are usually characterized by their distinctive red or yellow color.



Place soil in a bottle, add water, shake, and set on a stable level surface. The heavier sand-sized particles will settle out first followed by silt-sized and then clay-sized particles. This demonstration illustrates the particulate nature of soils and can be used to help farmers understand what soil texture means and how it can be important in affecting the drainage or erodability of a soil. The bottles should be allowed to remain undisturbed for a full day in order for the finer, clay-sized particles to settle out.

**Figure 2.35 Demonstrating the Particulate Make-Up of Soils (Ref. 9)**

**TABLE 2.5 Textural Properties of Mineral Soils**

| Soil Class | Feel and Appearance of Dry Soil | Feel and Appearance of Moist Soil |
|---|---|---|
| **Sand** | Loose, single grains that feel gritty. When squeezed, the soil falls apart when pressure is released. | Forms cast when squeezed that crumbles when touched. Doesn't form a ribbon. |
| **Sandy loam** | Aggregates easily crushed; very faint velvety feeling initially; continued rubbing gives gritty feeling. | Forms cast requiring careful handling without breaking. Doesn't form a ribbon. |
| **Loam** | Aggregates crushed under moderate pressure; firm clods. When pulverized it feels velvety, becoming gritty with continued rubbing. Casts bear careful handling. | Cast can be handled quite freely without breaking. Very slight tendency to ribbon. Rubbed surface is rough. |
| **Silt loam** | Aggregates firm, but may be crushed under moderate pressure. Clods firm to hard. When pulverized, it feels smooth, flour-like. | Cast freely handled without breaking. Slight tendency to ribbon. Rubbed surface has a broken or rippled appearance. |
| **Clay loam*** | Very firm aggregates. Hard clods strongly resist crushing. When pulverized, it feels gritty from the small aggregates left behind. | Cast bears much handling without breaking. Forms ribbon feeling slightly gritty when wet and rubbed. Plastic, sticky, and puddles easily. |
| **Clay*** | Hard aggregates and clods that strongly resist crushing. When pulverized it feels gritlike due to harshness of numerous small aggregates that persist. | Casts bear considerable handling without breaking. Forms a flexible ribbon and retains its plasticity when elongated. Satin feeling when rubbed. Sticky when wet and easily puddled. |

*The properties described for the clayey soils refer to those of the clayey soils found in the temperate regions.

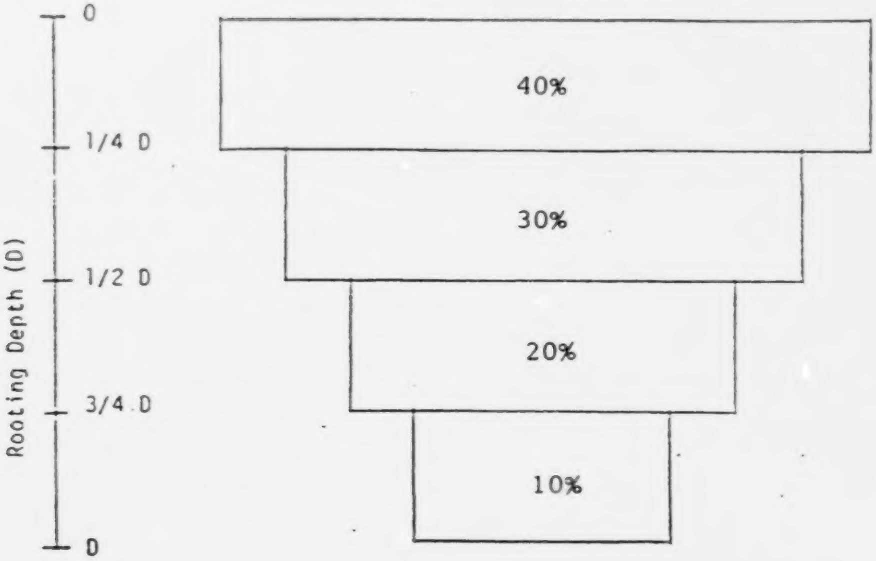


**Figure 2.36 Typical Crop Water Extraction Patterns**

## 2.4.3 Development of the Soil Water Reservoir

The soil water reservoir available to the plant changes as the root system develops. Root depth varies with crop and variety, stage of growth, soil chemistry, structure, drainage and management. For example, excessive irrigation or inadequate wetting of the root zone may limit root development. The root system of a plant develops from seed depth at germination to a maximum depth at full vegetative development, or until it encounters impermeable barriers or other obstacles to root development. Typical rooting depths for several crops divided into four groups are described in Table 2.6.

**TABLE 2.6 Rooting Depths of Various Crops (Ref. 44)**

| Rooting Depth (m) | Crops |
|---|---|
| 0.3 - 0.5 | Cabbage, celery, lettuce, onion, pineapple, potatoes, sisal, spinach, leafy vegetables |
| 0.5 - 1.0 | Bananas, beans, beets, carrots, peas, clover, groundnuts, peppers, soybeans, sugar beets |
| 1.0 - 1.5 | Barley, citrus, cucumber, flax, small grains, maize, melons, sunflower, sweet potato, wheat |
| 1.5 - 2.0 | Alfalfa, cotton, deciduous orchard, grapes, sunflower, sorghum, sugar cane |

For management purposes such as irrigation scheduling, the root zone is often assumed to develop linearly from planting depth at time of planting, or shortly after, to typical maximum root depth at full cover. In monitoring the moisture on many field crops, the primary rooting system may be assumed to be from one to two times the crop height, or to the depth where hardpans or other obstacles are encountered. Moisture monitoring to the depth of plant height is adequate for many crops other than alfalfa, tree crops, and some other deep-rooted crops.

### 2.4.4 Soil Water Availability and Crop Use Patterns

#### Readily Available Water and Allowable Depletion

Table 2.7 groups several crops according to permissible soil moisture depletion for maximum yield conditions. Table 2.8 indicates the fraction allowable depletion of available moisture (p) as a function of crop group and evaporative demand. The readily available water that can be extracted from the root zone without limiting yield is obtained by multiplying p by the total available water (TAW) to root zone depth.

Fungal and bacterial pathogens proliferate faster at higher moisture levels. Crop quality, such as protein in wheat and color in cotton, may improve with lower available water. Irrigation system flexibility or limited water supplies may dictate allowable depletions. Osmotic potentials created by salts in the soil create the same effects as soil moisture tensions. Salts may inhibit water and nutrient uptake from the soil, therefore, and maintenance of higher moisture levels than those indicated may be desirable in saline soils. Tables 2.7

and 2.8 should serve only as guidelines when water supplies are abundant and flexible.

**TABLE 2.7 Crop Groups According to Soil Water Depletion (Ref. 11)**

| Group | Crops |
|---|---|
| 1 | Onion, pepper, potato |
| 2 | Banana, cabbage, grape, pea, tomato |
| 3 | Alfalfa, bean, citrus, groundnut, pineapple, wheat, sunflower, watermelon |
| 4 | Cotton, maize, olive, safflower, sorghum, soybean, sugarbeet, sugarcane, tobacco |

**Note:** Group 1 -- Most sensitive to water stress
Group 4 -- Least sensitive to water stress

**TABLE 2.8 Practical Depletion Values (Fraction) not Resulting in Significant Water Stress**

| Crop Group | Hot High Water Use | Cool Low Water Use |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0.25 | 0.40 |
| 2 | 0.30 | 0.50 |
| 3 | 0.40 | 0.60 |
| 4 | 0.50 | 0.70 |

Moisture Extraction Patterns

Plants maintained at high moisture levels will take their water from the root zone approximately in proportion to the concentration of roots. A typical extraction pattern of water from the soil is indicated in Figure 2.36, with 70% of the moisture extraction taking place from the upper half of the root zone. Moisture-sensitive crops such as potatoes, maintained at high moisture levels, may take 80% to 90% of their water from the upper half of the root zone. As plants are subjected to stress, they will take more of their water from where it is available in the lower reaches of the root zone.

## 2.4.5 Soil Intake Characteristics

Soils that take up water rapidly will wet the root zone rapidly after the onset of irrigation, and thus irrigations will usually be of short duration. The rate at which soils take water is called the **soil intake rate**, and the rate at which water goes into the soil is the **infiltration rate**. The intake rate of a soil will affect such management and design factors as irrigation durations, flow rates to be used, and dimensions of the system.

### Factors Affecting Intake Rates

The most important factors influencing the infiltration rate of water into the soil are:

1. **Soil texture and structure.** The coarser the texture and the more highly structured, the higher the infiltration rates.
2. **Soil surface conditions**. Orientation of soil particles and compaction: after water moves over a soil surface, soil particles are rearranged and the soil surface tends to seal.
3. **Soil moisture content and moisture gradients**. Generally, the drier the soil, the faster the infiltration rate.
4. **Time since the start of irrigation**. Infiltration rate decreases with time until the basic intake rate is reached.
5. **Salt content in the water and soil**. Soils high in soluble salts will typically exhibit higher intake rates than soils from which salts have been leached.
6. **High levels of sodium** on the soil's exchange sites will severely affect infiltration if structure collapses. See Chapter 7 for details.

Infiltration rate, as used in border irrigation and sometimes in furrow irrigation, has the units of velocity (l/t) and is the depth of water entering the soil profile per unit time. It can also be thought of as the volume of water absorbed by a unit area per unit time. The metric units commonly used to express infiltration rate are mm/hr or mm/min. In furrow irrigation, where infiltration rate is expressed as a depth per unit time, an equivalent depth is usually implied since movement is horizontal as well as vertical. The depth is obtained by dividing the volume rate of infiltration per unit of furrow length by the product of unit length and furrow spacing. In furrow irrigation, infiltration rate is commonly expressed as the volume absorbed by a unit length of furrow in a unit time.

Most soils exhibit an initially high infiltration rate that decreases with time and eventually reaches a constant or nearly constant rate called the **basic intake rate**. Figure 2.37 demonstrates the typical infiltration rate behavior with time, as well as cumulative infiltration with time.

The basic intake rates for loamy sands and sands may be 2 to 3 cm per hour or greater. For sandy loams, it is typically 1 to 2 cm per hour. For silt loams and clay loams, it is typically 0.5 to 1.0 cm/hr. For silty clays, it may be 0.2 to 0.5 cm/hr or less. With poorly structured soils, these values may decrease by 25% to 50%. With highly structured and loose soils, the values may be 50% to 100% higher than those indicated.

Because infiltration can change so much during the season, infiltration data should be used with caution, and sound judgment should be exercised in interpreting it. To use such data requires knowledge of crops and cropping history, irrigation methods and management, tillage, soil type and structure, and time of season.

### Infiltration Equations

In management of irrigations systems, several infiltration equations and methods for establishing these have been used. One common method for estimating infiltration rate uses ring infiltrometers. These are installed by penetrating the soil surface by 15 to 20 cm. They are then covered with plastic film, filled with water, and then the film is removed rapidly. A water level reading is taken immediately on removal of the plastic because water begins to infiltrate the soil at this time. The decline of the water surface is measured as a function of time and these results are recorded and graphed (see Figure 2.37).

To obtain an approximation of infiltration rate in a field situation, small 1 m x 1 m basins are constructed with well compacted banks. A sheet of plastic is placed in the basin and 15 to 20 cm of water introduced to the basin. The plastic sheet is removed from the bottom, and the decline of the water surface is measured as a function of time. Results can be graphed to provide an approximation of the time required to infiltrate a certain depth of water. Base infiltration rates may require additional water to be added to the basin.

## 2.4.6 Soil Chemistry and Fertility

Soil is made up of mineral particles derived from the weathering of rocks and organic matter resulting from decomposing plants. Soil mineral particles decrease in size from sand to silt to clay. Sand and silt usually contribute very little to a soil's fertility but are important to a soil's pore space and drainage.

Clay particles, on the other hand, are very small and have tremendous surface area. The surfaces and edges of clay particles are negatively charged. These negatively charged sites on the clay particles act like weak magnets for positively charged ions or cations. Certain fractions of soil organic matter also have negatively charged sites. This organic matter and clays are termed the **soil colloids** by virtue of their charge and size. The sum of all the negative charged sites on clay and organic matter in a soil is called the **Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC)** and is expressed as meq/100 g.

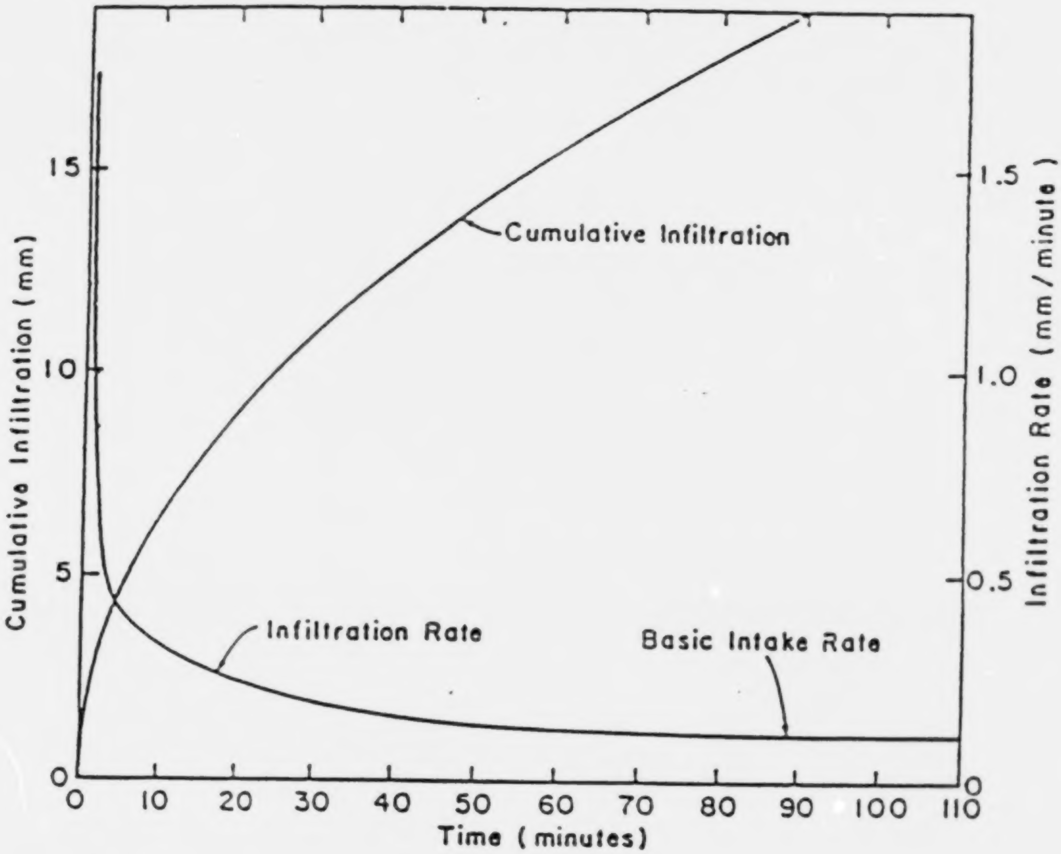


**Figure 2.37 Infiltration Curve**

Many nutrients required by a plant are positively charged ions. They are loosely held by these negatively charged sites and are not washed out (leached) from the root zone when water travels through. For this reason, the CEC is a good measure of soil fertility. Clay particles and organic matter also have plant nutrients in their structure that are slowly released by soil weathering and decomposition. This natural fertility and the CEC of the soil are components of a soil's potential fertility. Negatively charged ions are not held by soil colloids and can thus be readily leached out.

Organic matter has a very high CEC and can dramatically affect a soil's ability to hold nutrients. Organic matter is thus very important to a soil's productivity. This is especially important in severely weathered "tropical clays," which rapidly lose most of their natural fertility and whose clay particles have few negatively charged sites. Addition of organic matter to these soils can be very beneficial.

Nitrogen is a very important plant nutrient involved in plant growth, photosynthesis, and plant proteins. In the ammonium form, nitrogen is positively charged and readily held on the negative exchange sites on soil. Soil microbes, however, change ammonium into nitrate, and this occurs at a very rapid rate in warm climates. The nitrate form of nitrogen is negatively charged and is easily leached out of the root profile. Proper irrigation water management is required to reduce the potential for leaching and ensure good nitrogen fertility levels.

Other nutrients are more or less resistant to being leached out of the soil, but it is a likely event when nutrient ions are negatively charged. As more of these nutrients are leached out and minerals continue to weather, the soil becomes more and more dominated by the hydrogen ion, resulting in acid soil. High rainfall tropical areas will often have tropical clay soils, red or yellow in color, exhibiting very acidic reactions (low pH).

Leaching of nutrients can also result in imbalances that can severely affect plant growth. Chapter 7 discusses the effect of excess ions (salts) in the soil solution. Soil chemistry is complicated, so a more complete reference should be consulted.

## 2.5 CONDUCTING INITIAL ENVIRONMENTAL EVALUATIONS OF IRRIGATION PROJECTS

Irrigation projects can result in a wide variety of impacts to surrounding ecosystems, both positive and negative. On the positive side, irrigation projects in Thailand have been credited with reducing the destruction of tropical rainforests by enabling rural people to increase food productivity on smaller parcels of land, thus eliminating the need for continuous clearing of forests for agricultural development. Irrigated fields have improved habitat for some species, particularly birds and small mammals. Some Asian farmers have integrated fish production into their irrigated rice fields, thus creating habitat while maximizing food productivity. In addition, the use of irrigation has improved human welfare dramatically, providing foods and fibers to a large percentage of the world's population that might otherwise have none.

Some irrigation projects, however, have contributed to significant environmental degradation, primarily through poor project planning and administration. Irrigation projects reshape the land surface and change the way water moves, is stored, and is recycled in the hydrologic cycle. Poor management of water applications in irrigation projects has frequently resulted in high salt content of soil, in some cases rendering these lands useless for further crop production. Poor drainage and poor scheduling of water applications have resulted in waterlogged soils in some locations.

For more than 7,000 years, people have constructed diversion and conveyance systems that enable water supplies to nurture crops on previously unproductive or less productive lands. The consequence has been a proliferation of crops, enabling regions to expand population levels, accumulate wealth, and develop cultural and political power. Improper management of the soil and water resources that support irrigated lands, however, can result in salinization of the irrigated soils, silting of canals, and contamination of water supplies. Several formerly powerful ancient cultures virtually disappeared, in part due to poor administration and management of irrigation systems.

Even today, productivity on approximately 25 million hectares (7 percent) of the world's irrigated lands is seriously affected by these problems (Ref. 3). Salinization of fertile croplands affects approximately 1.5 million hectares per year. World Bank studies in Pakistan and Egypt indicate that waterlogging and salinization have decreased the yields of major crops by 30 percent. Approximately 20 percent of the 40 million hectares irrigated in India are also affected by these problems.

Construction of water storage reservoirs and irrigation channel networks affect the amount of moisture in the soil, and the height of the ground water table, and can influence water quality through increased sediments, organic materials, and agrochemicals. Diversion of water for irrigation from the huge Aral Sea in central Russia has largely eliminated local fisheries and wildlife habitat, resulting in the loss of employment for people who fish, creating health hazards, and threatening the very existence of this sea.

Poorly developed and managed water supply sources for irrigation projects have resulted in a considerable loss of the world's wetland habitats and have created new vector breeding environments, contributing to the spread of serious infectious diseases, notably malaria, bilharzia, and yellow fever. In the Sudan, incidents of bilharzia (schistosomiasis) increased more than 80 percent after the development of reservoirs and canals for irrigation systems.

### 2.5.1 The Role of Environmental Assessment

Many of these adverse impacts are difficult to predict accurately or quantify. In some cases, the effects are the cumulative result of several land alteration practices, with irrigation systems being only one of the causative agents. Still, the fact that irrigation systems can result in or contribute to environmental problems requires all irrigation workers to take full account of potential environmental impacts *before* any project activities are implemented.

In most countries, an environmental review is now required for virtually all projects that will involve some construction or modification of the environment. In most cases, the general public has insisted that projects consider several alternatives for achieving the same goal, and implement only the alternative that has been demonstrated to represent the least environmental risk. All signs indicate that both professional and public concern over adverse environmental impacts will continue to grow. The irrigation specialist will increasingly be required to document not only the wider impacts of his or her decisions but also the greatest balance that can be achieved between development and conservation.

Volunteers who will be participating in projects that divert water or otherwise alter water sources, construct canals, cultivate fields, or result in any other potential changes to the social or natural environment should be prepared to conduct a careful analysis of potential environmental impacts. The most important output from this analysis should be a documentation of potential impacts and the development of mitigative measures that will be implemented as part of the project to guarantee that any potential environmental problems will be avoided or minimized. Examples of mitigative measures include such actions as ensuring that the vegetation along streams is protected or restored; stocking Gambusia or other larvae-feeding fish in storage ponds to minimize the incidents of mosquito-borne diseases; and building terraces and drains in irrigated fields to minimize waterlogging and soil loss.

The process should begin with an initial environmental review that uses field observations and professional judgment to determine if a proposed project is likely to result in any significant environmental impacts. The review is intended to rely on qualitative analyses and to be done fairly rapidly. An illustrative form that can be used by Volunteers to complete an initial environmental review is included in the next section of this chapter. For most small projects that will not involve the construction of permanent dams, extensive canal systems, or the irrigation of more than 10-15 hectares of land, this initial environmental review should be sufficient to ensure that careful environmental management will be built into all project components.

Larger projects that are likely to result in more extensive environmental impacts can still be initially reviewed using this simple environmental review form. If significant impacts are identified it may be necessary to conduct a more thorough environmental assessment of the project. A comprehensive environmental assessment (EA) will require much more time and professional expertise than may be available to many Peace Corps Volunteers. If a comprehensive EA is deemed necessary for a project, then the Volunteer will most likely need to contact qualified government staff, private sector firms, or international donors to assist with the effort. Volunteers should be aware of the content of any comprehensive EA, which includes the following:

- A concise but thorough description of the proposed actions that will occur, a statement of project purpose, and a review of the roles and responsibilities of all agencies, organizations, or individuals to be involved in the project.

- A detailed description of the physical, biological, and social environment that will, or could potentially, be affected by the proposed project actions. This description should be quantified, wherever possible.

- A discussion of the relationship of the proposed project actions to existing land use plans, policies, and controls for the affected area.

- A detailed description of alternative strategies that can be taken to achieve the stated project purpose. This description should include the project plan (unamended) and a "No Action" alternative, which essentially indicates how the stated project purpose will be affected if the project is not implemented at all.

- A detailed description of predicted environmental impacts that should result from the implementation of each alternative. Environmental impacts should include both beneficial and negative consequences and secondary or indirect effects that may occur. This description should include quantified predictions wherever possible.

- Identification of environmental impacts that cannot be avoided with any of the alternatives, including the "No Action" alternative.

- Identification of the preferred alternative and use of some kind of quantifiable process to show why this alternative is the most preferable selection.

- A detailed description of measures that can be incorporated into the preferred alternative to ensure that any adverse environmental impacts will be minimized or avoided and to guarantee that careful environmental management will be built into the overall project effort.

### 2.5.2 Illustrative Environmental Review Form for Irrigation or Water Resource Development Projects

The following illustrative form provides a scheme that can be used by Volunteers or technicians to identify and rank probable environmental impacts from proposed field work prior to the initiation of construction or development activities. The form can also be used to help identify mitigative measures that will eliminate these environmental impacts. Impacts are identified as to whether they are of MINOR, MODERATE, OR SIGNIFICANT environmental concern. Any MODERATE impact should identify measures that can improve the scheme. Any SIGNIFICANT impacts should identify alternative activities that can replace the initial proposed project.

## PART I PROJECT CHARACTERIZATION

Project Description

1. Obtain topographic map(s) covering the area within or including the proposed project development scheme.

2. Delineate the watersheds, natural drainage directions, and approximate affected area within which the project will occur. Affected area includes lands directly upstream and downstream from the proposed project, which the project could alter by changing runoff or flood flows, vegetation cover, or soil conditions.

3. Obtain land use, vegetation, soils, or flood maps for the affected area if available.

4. Obtain information on the likelihood of occurrence of important wildlife, fisheries, or habitat types, and the presence of threatened or endangered species in the affected area.

5. Obtain information on the likelihood of occurrence of important cultural resources in the affected area.

Note: Bring the topographic map to the field when doing the field review.

## PART II FIELD EVALUATION

Based on available information and field observations, evaluate the predicted effect of the proposed project on the following resources. Include proposed mitigation resources, if necessary.

| | |
|---|---|
| N | NO environmental impact or IMPROVED environmental conditions. |
| L | MINOR negative environmental impact. |
| M | MODERATE negative environmental impact. |
| S | SIGNIFICANT negative environmental impact. |
| U | UNKNOWN environmental impact. |

### I Water Resources

Use the topographic map to make a brief sketch of the proposed development scheme. Identify significant local features, including rivers, canals, ponds, lakes, forest lands, wetlands, other unique habitats, and archeological sites. Show the apparent flow directions for floods and note any obvious signs of flood depths or flood locations for a 10-year flood. Include a map scale.

1. The project is located in a floodplain area. (Yes) (No)
2. The project will increase/decrease/have no effect on the duration of floods (circle one answer). If yes, the ranking of impact is _____.
3. The project will change the location of floods. (Yes) (No) If yes, the ranking of impact is _____.
4. The project will change stream channel shapes, or the amount or type of vegetation alongside streams. (Yes) (No)

Impact Ranking

| MINOR | MODERATE | SIGNIFICANT |
|---|---|---|
| Some change, but overall channel/vegetation remains the same. | Causes measurable change in shape or vegetation. | Causes major change in channel shape or vegetation. |

5. Recommended measures to mitigate (reduce) effects:
6. Explain how recommended measures will mitigate moderate or significant impacts.
7. What moderate or significant impacts cannot be mitigated and why?

II Fish and Wildlife

1. Project will result in destruction or degradation of habitat for fish or wildlife. (Yes) (No) If yes, the ranking of this impact is _____.
2. Project will block fish or wildlife migratory pathways. (Yes) (No) If yes, the ranking of the impact is _____.

Impact Ranking

| MINOR | MODERATE | SIGNIFICANT |
|---|---|---|
| Impacts localized and no impacts to migratory pathways or habitat. | May temporarily block pathways or eliminate habitat. | Will block migratory pathways or will eliminate habitat. |

3. Endangered or threatened species are likely to occur in the project area. (Yes) (No) If yes, list.

4. Proposed project will result in loss of individual threatened or endangered species. (Yes) (No) If yes, which one(s) and how?

5. Will any loss of habitat affect the survival of species? Explain.

6. Recommended measures to mitigate effects:

7. Explain how recommended measures will mitigate moderate or significant impacts.

8. What moderate or significant impacts cannot be mitigated and why?

### III Vegetation

1. Vegetation types found in the area include

2. Project will result in cutting of trees, or loss of vegetative cover. (Yes) (No) The ranking of the impact is _____.

#### Impact Ranking

| MINOR | MODERATE | SIGNIFICANT |
|---|---|---|
| No loss of important plant communities or changes in runoff. | Some loss of important plants and change in runoff patterns. | More than 50 percent of plant cover lost and runoff patterns vary greatly. |

3. Recommended measures to mitigate effects:

4. Explain how recommended measures will mitigate moderate or significant impacts.

5. What moderate or significant impacts cannot be mitigated and why?

### IV Soils

1. Changes in soil moisture:
   (a) waterlogging ________
   (b) drought ________

2. Project will cause soil loss from farm fields. (Yes) (No) If yes, ranking is _____.

3. Project will result in adverse changes to soil physical or chemical conditions. (Yes) (No) If yes, ranking is _____.

Impact Ranking

| MINOR | MODERATE | SIGNIFICANT |
|---|---|---|
| Soil loss less than 5 tons/ha/year, and no salt or chemical concentration. | Soil loss greater than 5 tons/ha/year, and some salt or chemical concentration. | Soil loss greater 10 tons/ha/year, and high salt or chemical concentration. |

4. Recommended measures to mitigate effects:

______________________________

______________________________

______________________________

5. Explain how recommended measures will mitigate moderate or significant impacts.

6. What moderate or significant impacts cannot be mitigated and why?

## V Cultural Resources

1. Proposed project will result in the loss of archeological, historical or cultural resources. (Yes) (No) If yes, identify resources and rank the impact.

Impact Ranking

| MINOR | MODERATE | SIGNIFICANT |
|---|---|---|
| Project will make cultural resource less accessible. | Project will result in loss or damage to less important resources. | Project will result in the loss or damage of important resources. |

2. Recommended measures to mitigate effects:

______________________________

______________________________

______________________________

3. Explain how recommended measures will mitigate moderate or significant impacts.

4. What moderate or significant impacts cannot be mitigated and why?

## VI Summary of Moderate and Significant Impacts and Recommended Mitigative Measures

# CHAPTER 3

# DEVELOPING WATER SOURCES

3.1 Diversions
3.2 Concrete
3.3 Designing Structures for Springs and Seeps
3.4 Ponds for Irrigation Water Storage
3.5 Pumps and Water Lifting Devices
3.6 Wells

References - Primary: (5), (15), (20), (28), (39), (54), (58)
Other: (13), (28), (59)

# 3.1 DIVERSIONS

## 3.1.1 Types

Diversion structures are used to separate all or part of the flow in a stream to a location where it will be used or stored. Diversion structures may be either temporary or permanent. If high flows make a permanent structure very expensive, then temporary structures that can be easily and economically reconstructed might be installed.

In streams or springs that have constant flow year-round, or stream beds that are very wide, a permanent diversion can be used to channel water, generally at an angle, towards the bank. The diversion may be constructed across only a part of the stream's bed.

In streams with narrow beds and small flow rates, the diversion may span the stream and pond up the water.

## 3.1.2 Types of Construction Materials

Depending on the availability and cost of materials, and the size and purpose of the structure, the following materials are commonly used:

- soil,
- boulders and rocks,
- logs,
- sand bags,
- gabions,
- masonry, and
- concrete.

## 3.1.3 Construction and Maintenance Factors

1. Many diversions are only temporary structures, so they should be built with the understanding that they will be destroyed by flood water during hard rainfall.

2. Diversions can be constructed so that part of the structure is permanent and the other part temporary. In areas where there is a large variation in stream flow during a relatively short period of time, this system of diversion reduces the amount of labor required to reconstruct the structure after each rainfall.

3. Design of any permanent structure should take into consideration the amount of sediment that will settle upstream and reduce water storage volume. Sediment traps can be constructed upstream of the diversion to reduce some of the sediment. Maintenance will have to be performed

after each rainfall to clean the sediment traps. In watersheds with steep slopes, special precautions should be taken for the probable movement of large rocks in the stream bed during high flow.

4. If the diversion structure will be used as a check dam to allow for water storage, the site of the diversion should have a natural basin upstream to maximize water storage volume and decrease the necessary height of the diversion or dam.

5. Gabions are baskets made of heavy duty galvanized wire mesh that are filled with rocks and wired shut. The gabion provides an easily constructed unit that is large enough and heavy enough to remain stable in moving water. Gabions can be made to any convenient size ranging from 2-4 m long by 1 m wide by 0.5-1 m deep. The wire mesh is usually 2-3 mm in diameter. Evenly graded stones are used so that the gabions are well packed with few empty spaces, and the largest stone should not be more than two-thirds of the minimum gabion dimension.

6. Diversions constructed of materials that allow excess amounts of seepage may require some type of impervious core or barrier to reduce losses. These barriers are generally installed during the construction of the structure. A common core, if available, is clay. Other barriers include heavy grade plastic sheets, used fertilizer/animal feed sacks, and sod.

7. Diversion structures require upstream and downstream side slopes to assure their stability. The ratio generally depends on the construction material, but, for small structures, values of 2:1 upstream and 1.5:1 downstream are acceptable.

8. A spillway, overflow structure, or other bypass structure is necessary to allow water from the stream to pass over the diversion structure and flow back into the natural watercourse without washing out or damaging the structure. Water needs to be channeled through a bypass so that it does not flow over the top of the entire length of the diversion, which could cause erosion problems. Additionally, the energy of the water falling from the outlet to the stream bed must be dissipated. Rocks or other durable materials can be placed at the base of the downstream side of the bypass structure for protection.

9. If the diversion provides water to a pipeline, a trash removal system may be required to prevent blockage of the pipe. Sometimes a simple screen over the inlet may suffice. If sediment is a problem, an offstream sedimentation pond may be required.

257

## 3.2 CONCRETE

Concrete is widely used for irrigation systems. It has several desirable properties that make it a versatile and popular building material. Freshly mixed concrete can be formed into practically any shape.

Rules for making good concrete are simple:

- Use proper ingredients (cement, sand, and gravel).
- Proportion the ingredients correctly.
- Measure the ingredients accurately by volume.
- Mix the ingredients thoroughly.

Table 3.1 provides an initial estimate of the ratios of ingredients to be used to make common small-scale concrete structures:

**TABLE 3.1 Concrete Ratios by Volume**

| Coarse Aggregate, Maximum Size, mm (in) | Cement | Sand | Coarse Aggregate | Water |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10 (3/8) | 1 | 2 1/2 | 1 1/2 | 1/2 |
| 13 (1/2) | 1 | 2 1/2 | 2 | 1/2 |
| 19 (3/4) | 1 | 2 1/2 | 2 1/2 | 1/2 |
| 25 (1) | 1 | 2 1/2 | 2 3/4 | 1/2 |
| 38 (1 1/2) | 1 | 2 1/2 | 3 | 1/2 |

### 3.2.1 Hand Mixing

Mixing should be carried out on a clean, hard surface or in a mortar box. Concrete should not be mixed on the ground. Commonly, the correct proportion of ingredients is measured by shovelfuls. A small bucket is also a good measuring device. The ingredients are first thoroughly mixed together dry until the mix is of a uniform color and consistency. Clean water is added slowly and in small quantities; with each addition of water, the mix is turned over a few times with a shovel. Water is added until the concrete is at the desired consistency. Concrete should not be any runnier than is necessary to work with because it loses strength if it is too watery.

Wet concrete is poured; it should not be dumped from any height since separation may occur. Before it sets, the concrete must be settled and compacted (rodded) to eliminate air pockets and make sure that there is good contact with the foundation materials. Excessive trowelling causes segregation of the aggregates and should be avoided. Forms are removed after the concrete has hardened (a few days). It should be kept wet for at least 3 days, preferably 7, to assure adequate curing time.

## 3.3 DESIGNING STRUCTURES FOR SPRINGS AND SEEPS

Protective structures for springs and seeps assure a clean water supply to irrigation systems. The protective structure increases the volume of water that can be diverted from the spring and protects the site from contamination by runoff or animals.

Developing a spring or seep requires some understanding of ground water flow (see Chapter 2) and preparation of a thorough construction plan. The construction plan should include (a) a map of the area identifying the location of the spring, the locations of water use, distances from source to use outlet points, and surveyed changes in elevations; (b) a complete list of all labor, materials, and tools needed; and (c) a spring box design with diagrams of the top, side, and front views, and the dimensions of a cover. Spring box structures can be costly in terms of the amount of time and finances invested, so careful planning is essential.

### 3.3.1 Spring Box Designs

There are several possible designs for springs boxes, but, in general, their basic features are similar. Two basic design choices are a box with one pervious side for collection of water from a hillside and a box with a pervious bottom for collection of spring water flowing from a single opening on level ground. To determine which design to use, dig out around the area until an impervious layer is reached, locate the source of the spring flow, and design to fit the situation. Figures 3.1 through 3.10 and Table 3.2 provide sample drawings and work sheets.

#### General Construction Steps

The following steps are appropriate for either design choice:

1. Locate the spring site and mark out the area with measuring tape, cord, and wooden stakes or pointed sticks.
2. Clean out the area around the spring to ensure a good flow. If the spring flows from a hillside, dig into the hill far enough to determine the origin of the flow. Where water is flowing from more than one opening, dig back far enough to ensure that all the water flows into the collecting area. If the flow cannot be channeled to the collection area because openings are too diffuse, drains will have to be installed. Flow from several sources may be diverted to one opening by digging farther back into the hill. Always try to dig down deep enough to reach an impervious layer. An impervious layer makes a good foundation for the spring box, and provides a better surface for a seal against underflow.

3. Pile loose stones and gravel against the spring before putting in the spring box. The stones serve as a foundation for the spring box and help support the ground near the spring opening to prevent dirt from washing in.

4. Approximately 8 meters above the spring site dig a trench for diverting surface runoff. Use large stones, if available, to line the diversion trench and prevent erosion.

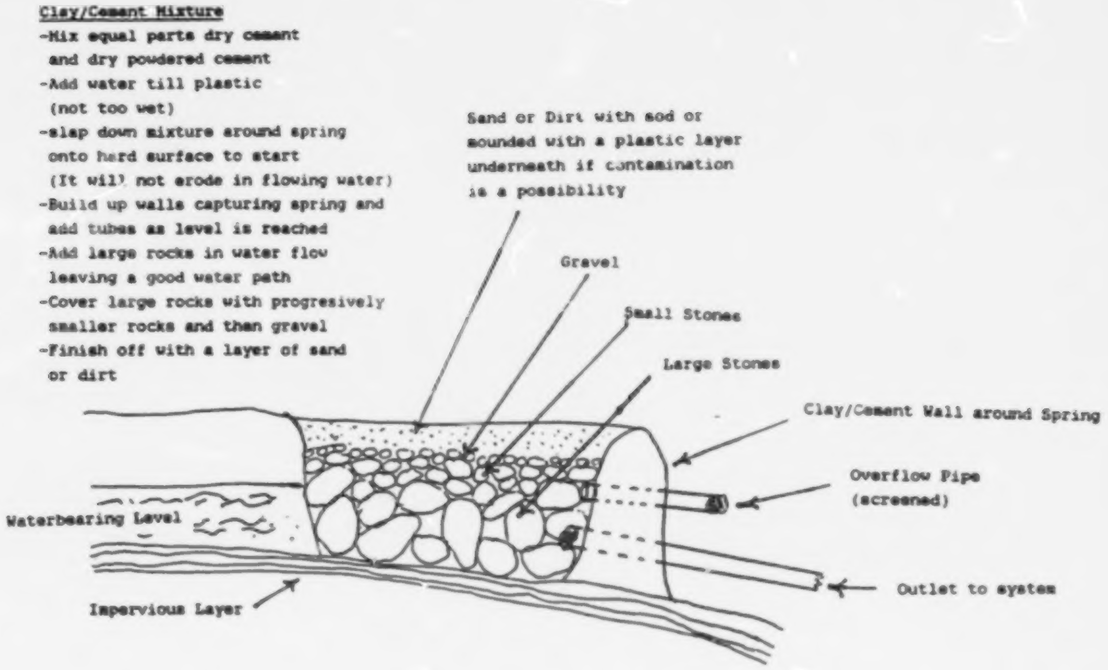
5. Mark off an area about 9 meters by 9 meters for a fence. Place the fence posts 2 meters apart and string the fence.

## Concrete Construction Steps

In order to have a strong structure, concrete must cure at least 7 days. Strength increases with curing time. Be sure that all tools and materials needed to build the forms and mix the concrete are at the site.

1. Build wooden forms. Once the dimensions of the box have been drawn, cut wood to the appropriate sizes and set up the forms on a level surface. The outside dimensions of the forms should be 0.1 meter larger than the inside dimensions. An open bottom or back should be planned, depending on the spring source location. The size of the opening in the form depends on the area that must be covered to collect the maximum water. When building forms for a box with a bottom, be sure to set the inside forms 0.1 meter above the bottom for the floor. This is done by nailing the inside form to the outside form so that it hangs 0.1 meter above the floor. Make holes in the forms for the outflow and overflow pipes. Place small pieces of pipe in them so that correctly sized holes are left in the box as the concrete sets. Build a form for the box cover. Build all forms at the site.

2. Set the forms in place. Forms must be well secured and braced before pouring the concrete. The braces can be tied together with wire. Use a stick to tighten the wire and force the forms together. If the forms are set and concrete is poured at the permanent site, water must be diverted from the area to allow the concrete to cure. If diversion is not possible, pour the concrete near the permanent site, and plan to have 6-8 people available to help move the box later after the concrete has cured.

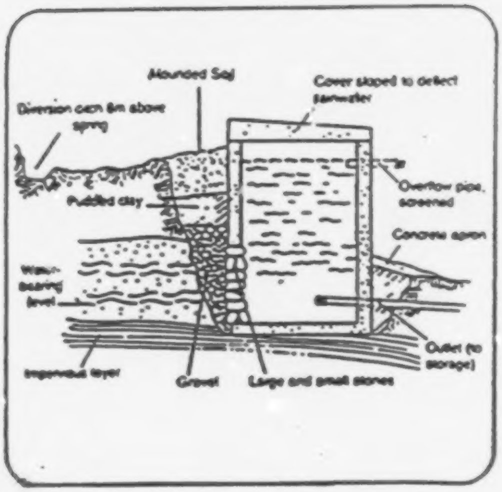


**Clay/Cement Mixture**

- Mix equal parts dry cement and dry powdered cement
- Add water till plastic (not too wet)
- slap down mixture around spring onto hard surface to start (It will not erode in flowing water)
- Build up walls capturing spring and add tubes as level is reached
- Add large rocks in water flow leaving a good water path
- Cover large rocks with progresively smaller rocks and then gravel
- Finish off with a layer of sand or dirt

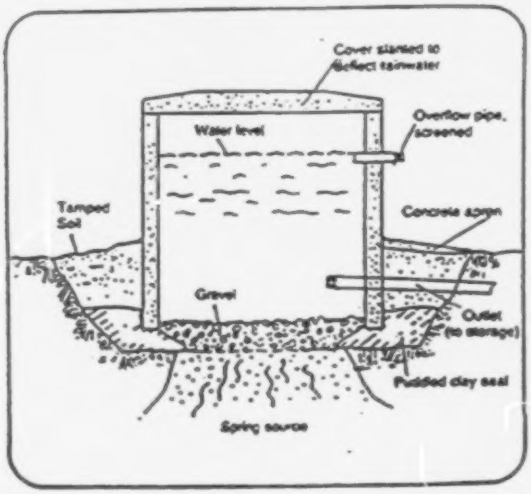
Sand or Dirt with sod or mounded with a plastic layer underneath if contamination is a possibility
Gravel
Small Stones
Large Stones
Clay/Cement Wall around Spring
Overflow Pipe (screened)
Waterbearing Level
Outlet to system
Impervious Layer

Figure 3.1 Spring Box Design



Mounded Soil
Cover sloped to deflect rainwater
Diversion ditch 8m above spring
Puddled clay
Overflow pipe, screened
Concrete apron
Water-bearing level
Impervious layer
Gravel
Large and small stones
Outlet (to storage)

Figure 3.2 Spring Box with Open Sides (Ref. 39)



Cover slanted to deflect rainwater
Water level
Overflow pipe, screened
Tamped Soil
Concrete apron
Gravel
Outlet (to storage)
Puddled clay seal
Spring source

Figure 3.3 Spring Box with Open Bottom (Ref. 39

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

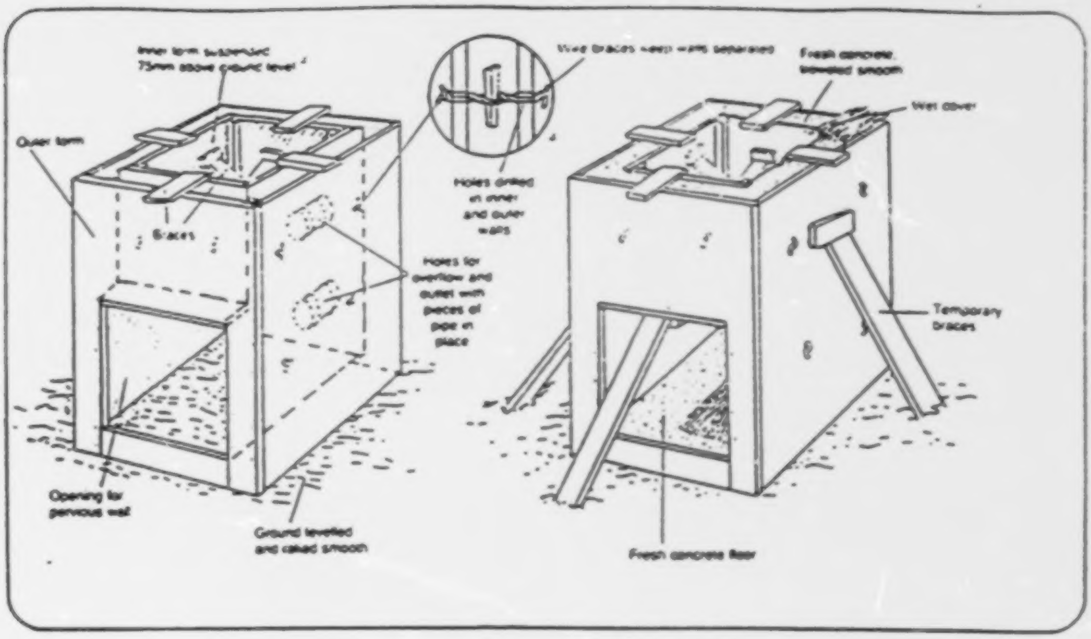

Inner form suspended
75mm above ground level
Outer form
Braces
Wire braces keep walls separated
Holes drilled
in inner
and outer
walls
Holes for
overflow and
outlet with
pieces of
pipe in
place
Opening for
pervious wall
Ground levelled
and raked smooth
Fresh concrete,
bevelled smooth
Wet cover
Temporary
braces
Fresh concrete floor

**Figure 3.4 Forms for Spring Box with Open Side (Ref. 39)**

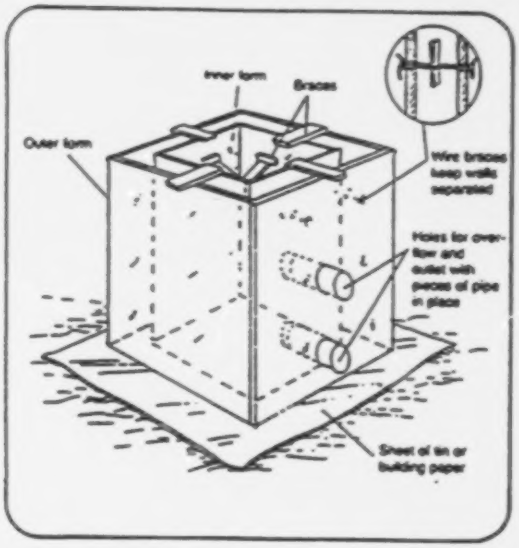

Inner form
Braces
Outer form
Wire braces
keep walls
separated
Holes for over-
flow and
outlet with
pieces of pipe
in place
Sheet of tin or
building paper

**Figure 3.5 Forms for Spring Box with Open Bottom (Ref. 39)**

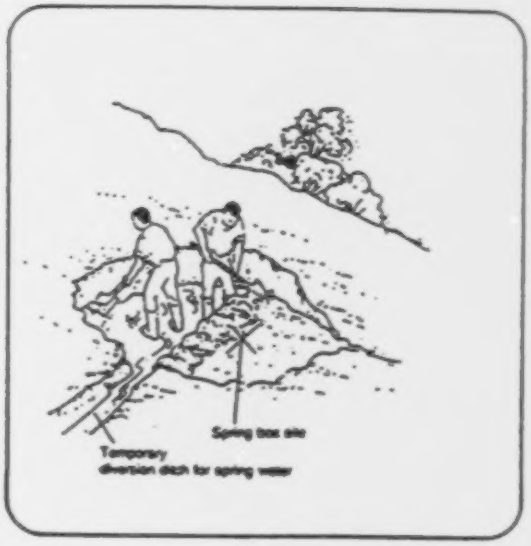

Spring box site
Temporary
diversion ditch for spring water

**Figure 3.6 Excavating Spring Site (Ref. 39)**

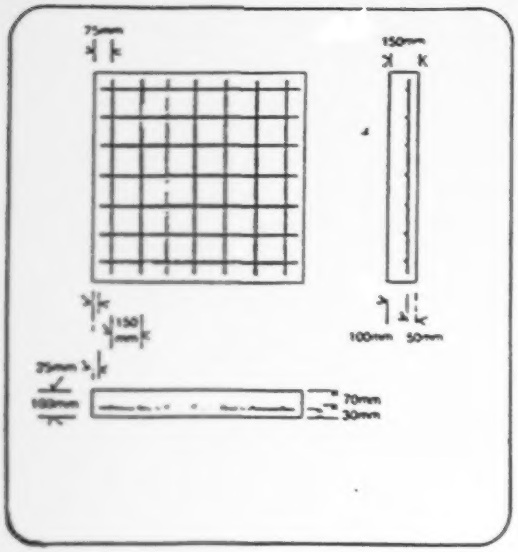

75mm
150mm
150 mm
100mm
50mm
75mm
100mm
70mm
30mm

**Figure 3.7** Placement of Rebar in Concrete Slab (Ref. 39)

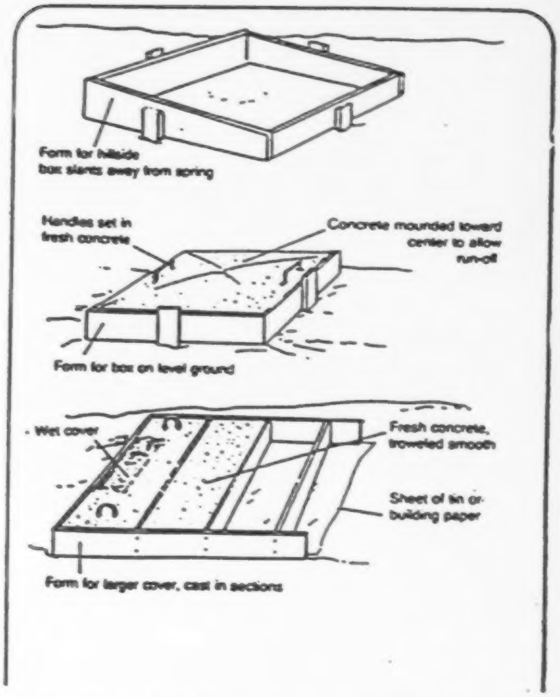

Form for hillside box slants away from spring
Handles set in fresh concrete
Concrete mounded toward center to allow run-off
Form for box on level ground
Wet cover
Fresh concrete, troweled smooth
Sheet of tin or building paper
Form for larger cover, cast in sections

**Figure 3.8** Forms for Spring Box Cover (Ref. 3

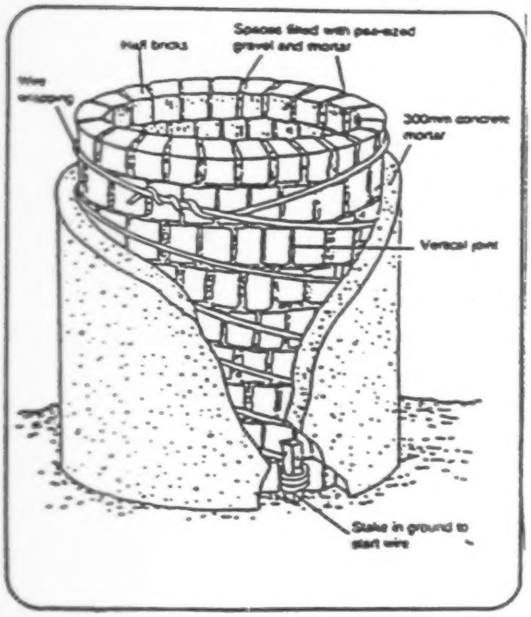

Half bricks
Spaces filled with pea-sized gravel and mortar
Wire wrapping
300mm concrete mortar
Vertical joint
Stake in ground to start wire

**Figure 3.9** Brick Spring Box (Ref. 39)

(Calculations for a box 1m × 1m × 1.0m with open bottom)

Total volume of box = length (l) x width (w) x height (h)

Thickness of walls = 0.10m (t)

1. Volume of top = l 1.2 m x w 1.2 m x t 0.10 m = 0.144 $m^3$
2. Volume of bottom = l 0 m x w 0 m x t 0 m = 0 $m^2$
3. Volume of two sides = l 1 m x w 1 m x t 0.10 m x 2 = 0.20 $m^3$
4. Volume of two ends = l 1 m x w 1 m x t 0.10 m x 2 = 0.20 $m^3$
5. Total volume = sum of steps 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 = 0.54 $m^3$
6. Unmixed volume of materials = total volume x 1.5; 0.54 $m^3$ x 1.5 = 0.81 $m^3$
7. Volume of each material (cement, sand, gravel, 1:2:3):

   cement: 0.167 x volume from Line 6 0.81 = 0.13 $m^3$ cement.
   sand: 0.33 x volume from Line 6 0.81 = 0.26 $m^3$ sand.
   gravel: 0.50 x volume from Line 6 0.81 = 0.4 $m^3$ gravel.

8. Number of 50kg bags of cement = $\frac{\text{volume of cement}}{\text{volume per bag}}$

   volume of cement 0.13$m^3$ / .033$m^3$/bag = 4 bags.

9. Volume of water = 28 liters x 4 bags of cement = 112 liters.

(NOTE: 1) Do not determine volume for an open side or bottom.
2) The top slab has a 0.1m overhang on each side.
3) The same calculations will be used to determine the quantity of materials for construction of a seepage wall.
4) To save cement a 1:2:4 mixture can be used.)

**Figure 3.10 Calculating Quantities Needed for Concrete (Ref. 39)**

**Table 3.2 Sample Materials List (Ref. 39)**

| Item | Description | Quantity | Estimated Cost |
|---|---|---|---|
| Labor | Foreman | | |
| | Laborers | | |
| Supplies | Portland cement | | |
| | Clean sand and gravel, if available, or locally available sand and gravel. | | |
| | Water (enough to make a stiff mixture) | | |
| | Wire mesh or reinforcing rods | | |
| | Galvanized steel or plastic pipe (for outlets, overflow, and collectors) | | |
| | Screening (for pipes) | | |
| | Boards and plywood (for building forms) | | |
| | Old motor oil or other lubricant (for oiling forms) | | |
| | Baling wire | | |
| | Nails | | |
| Tools | Shovels and picks (or other digging tools) | | |
| | Measuring tape or rods | | |
| | Hammer | | |
| | Saw | | |
| | Buckets | | |
| | Carpenter's square or equivalent (to make square edge) | | |
| | Mixing bin (for mixing concrete) | | |
| | Crowbar | | |
| | Pliers | | |
| | Pipe wrench | | |
| | Wheelbarrow | | |
| | Adjustable wrench | | |
| | Screwdriver | | |
| | Trowel | | |

Total Estimated Cost ____

3. Oil the forms. This prevents the concrete from sticking.

4. Prepare the reinforcing rods (rebar) in a grid pattern for placement in the forms for the spring box cover. Make sure there is 0.15 meters between the parallel bars and that the rods are securely tied together with wire. Then position the reinforcing rods in the form. Four bars tied together to form a square should be placed in the forms.

5. Mix the concrete in a proportion of 1 part cement, 2 parts sand, and 3 parts gravel. Add just enough water to form a thick paste. More gravel can be used to conserve cement.

6. Pour the concrete into the forms. Tamp the concrete to avoid pockets or voids. Smooth all surfaces. Make the middle of the cover a little higher than the sides to encourage drainage away from the spring box.

7. Cover the concrete with canvas, burlap, empty cement bags, plastic, straw or some other protective material to prevent it from losing moisture. The covering should be kept wet so water from the concrete is not absorbed. If concrete drys, it no longer hardens, its strength is lost, and it begins to crack. Keep the cover on for as long as the concrete is curing.

8. Let the concrete structures set for at least 7 days, wetting the concrete daily. After 7 days, the forms can be removed and the box installed.

### Installing a Spring Box

The spring box must be properly installed to ensure that it fits on a solid, impervious base, and that a seal with the ground is created to prevent water seeping under the structure.

1. Place the spring box in position to capture the maximum flow. Place gravel around the box or in the basin so that water flows through it before entering the box.

2. Seal the area where the spring box makes contact with the ground. Use concrete or puddled clay to form a seal.

3. Be sure that the area where the spring flows from the ground is well lined with gravel, and then backfill the dug out area with gravel. The gravel fill should reach as high as the inlet opening in the spring box so that the water flowing into the structure passes through gravel. For spring boxes on level ground, gravel backfill is unnecessary.

4. Place the pipes in the box. Use concrete to seal around the pipes and prevent leaks. Place screening over the pipe openings and secure with wire.

5. Disinfect the inside of the box with a chlorine solution. Before the spring box is closed, wash its walls with a light solution of chlorine.

6. Place the cover on the box.

# 3.4 PONDS FOR IRRIGATION WATER STORAGE

Ponds or small reservoirs can be extremely important water storage structures for the irrigated farm. Some reasons for constructing water storage ponds are to:

- collect water from small spring flows so that it can be used efficiently when needed in large flow rates;
- provide overnight storage of canal water that is available at night;
- store water for times of critical need; and
- regulate flow.

Water for ponds can come from irrigation supply canals, natural streams, springs, wells, or even rainfall runoff. In selecting a site for a pond, one should consider the location of the water supply, the availability of water, the soils, and the topography of the site. One should not normally construct ponds and small reservoirs in streams, ponds, gullies, or places where severe storms could create high flows that would wash away the dam. Small, off-stream ponds and reservoirs generally will not have to handle intense storm runoff.

## 3.4.1 Location of the Pond

The pond should be located on or above the highest part of the farm to avoid the need for pumping. Water can flow freely from the pond. The pond should be located downslope from the water supply, unless water must be pumped to a higher elevation. Preferably water will flow freely from the source to the pond. A topographic survey will indicate the correct elevations to optimize flow from the water source to the pond.

## 3.4.2 Availability of Water

Generally, one liter per second will allow the farmer to irrigate one hectare of land. If water from a spring or other source will be stored and emptied at a given interval from the pond, the pond must be able to hold the maximum amount of water that the farmer needs to hold. For example, if a spring supplies 1/2 liter per second, and the farmer plans to store water for 12 hours, he must be able to store:

$$\text{Volume} = Q \times T = .0005\ m^3/\text{sec} \times 3600\ \text{sec/hr} \times 12\ \text{hrs} = 21.6\ m^3$$

## 3.4.3 Soils

Ponds should be as impermeable as possible to prevent leakage. The soils should contain a layer of material that is impervious and thick enough to prevent excessive seepage. Clays and silty clays are excellent for this purpose; sandy clays are usually satisfactory. Coarse-textured sands and sand-gravel mixtures are highly pervious and, therefore, usually unsuitable. The absence of a layer of impervious material over part of the ponded area does not necessarily mean that you must abandon the proposed site. However, the pond will have to be sealed in other ways.

You can generally determine if the soil has sufficient amounts of clay by wetting it, feeling it in your hand, and squeezing it between your fingers. If the soil can be molded, and if it can be ribboned out between the thumb and forefinger, the clay content is usually adequate.

### 3.4.4 Topography

Generally, reservoirs 2 to 3 meters in height can be constructed by any small-scale farmer if the design and construction are proper. Topography may determine the type of pond that can be built. Sloping topography will allow the farmer to fill and drain ponds using gravity. The topography may determine whether the farmer will be able to build an above-ground or below-ground reservoir or pond.

Some ponds are made by constructing a dam across a creek bed or gully to intercept water that would otherwise be lost after rainfall or to intercept water coming from a small creek or spring. This is possible only for very small watersheds that do not develop high flows during severe storms. One must be careful, however, to provide spillways and bypasses for excess water. Offstream ponds connected to a stream diversion structure provide protection against failures due to flooding.

### 3.4.5 Design and Construction

A pond consists of 4 components - the walls (dikes or levees), the floor, the inlet works, and the outlet works. The walls should be impermeable (or nearly) and capable of withstanding the pressure exerted outward by the pond. The floor must be as nearly impermeable as possible. The inlet works must be able to receive the expected amount of water. The outlet works should have the ability to regulate flow from the pond and also provide for the overflow of excess water.

Figure 3.11 provides some ideas for outlet works. Inlets often consist of a simple pipe of sufficient diameter to carry the maximum expected inflow. The Rivaldi valve (a flexible irrigation hose that can be submerged to allow water to flow from the pond) provides a convenient means of regulating the outflow, as does the siphon tube(s).

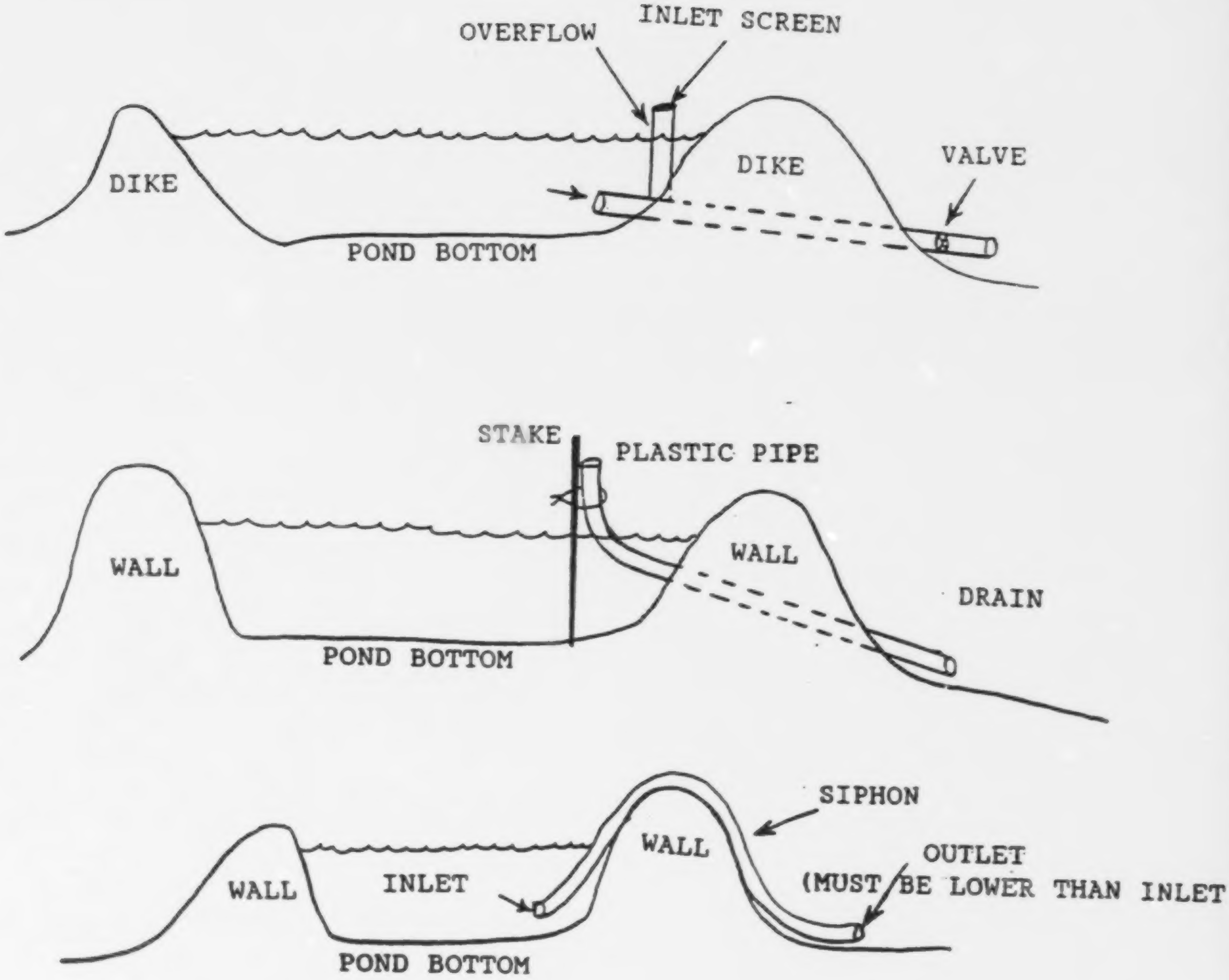

OVERFLOW
INLET SCREEN
DIKE
DIKE
VALVE
POND BOTTOM
STAKE
PLASTIC PIPE
WALL
WALL
DRAIN
POND BOTTOM
SIPHON
WALL
OUTLET
(MUST BE LOWER THAN INLET
WALL
INLET
POND BOTTOM

**Figure 3.11 Outlet Works for Small Irrigation Pond**

The walls and floor are best made of a mixture of sand and clay. If the soil is of a sandy or sandy loam texture, clay or other lining materials must be used. If clay is hard to come by, a 15 cm layer of sand/clay mixture (at least 20% clay) may be laid on the bottom of the pond and used as a core in the side walls (see Figure 3.12.) In all cases, the soils should be well compacted to ensure that leakage is held to a minimum.

Waterproof linings made of plastic, vinyl, or butyl rubber may be used. These can be expensive, however, and, if not properly installed, can quickly develop leaks. All of these linings should be laid over a smooth bed and have an earth cover of not less than 15 cm (at least 8 cm of material not coarser than sand). Keep livestock out of the pond to prevent puncturing the lining. Linings should be overlapped 15 cm at the seams. All vegetation and roots of woody vegetation should be cleared to prevent the plants from breaking through the lining. Polyethylene plastic should be laid out with 10% slack.

The side slopes of the inside of the pond should be no steeper than 3 to 1 on the inside (water side) of the bank and 2 to 1 on the outside banks. Top width for ponds up to 3 meters in height should be a minimum of 2 meters to assure stability.

The freeboard, or distance between the maximum expected high water and the top of the **berm** (a berm is the wall of a pond), for small ponds of less than 3 meters in height and 1 acre (0.4 hectares) in size can be 60 cm.

The spillway should not allow water to come closer than 30 cm from the berm during periods of overflow.

If water has a significant amount of silt in it, a desilting pond may be necessary for removal of sediment before the water enters the storage pond.

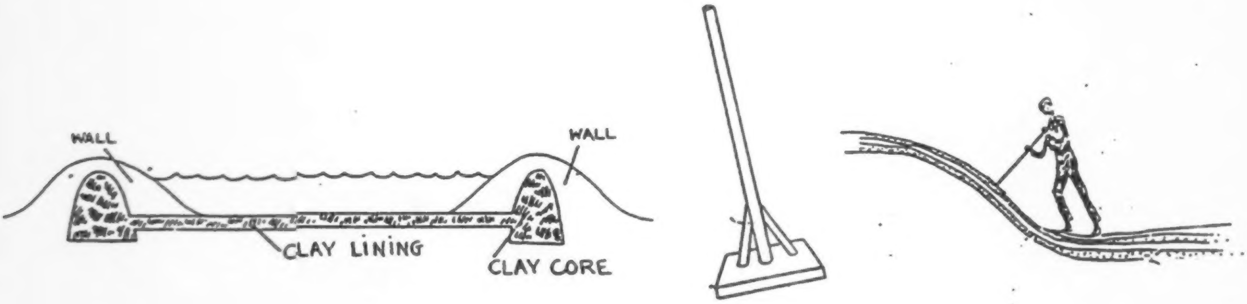


**Figure 3.12 Lining and Compaction of Irrigation Pond (Ref. 7)**

## 3.5 PUMPS AND WATER LIFTING DEVICES

Human and animal-powered water-lifting devices have been in use for thousands of years. These water-lifting devices have been used to provide water for irrigation as well as for drinking and other uses. More recently, machine-powered pumps have become the primary means of lifting water from wells and surface water sources.

The use of hand-dug wells as a source of water for irrigation also dates back several thousands of years. Hand-dug wells are still an important means of securing a reliable source of water in many developing countries. Hand-dug wells, however, are generally limited to areas where the water tables are within 20 meters of the ground surface. Modern well drilling technologies now permit wells to be drilled to several hundred, and even thousands, of feet in depth.

The design, construction, and use of deep wells requiring the application of modern technology is beyond the scope of this manual. Some basic concepts about shallow and deep wells, however are presented to allow the Volunteer to gain a basic understanding of types of wells and their characteristics. Hand-drilled wells and driven (sand point) wells are low-cost and appropriate technologies for many applications where water tables are shallow. These methods are presented in some detail. Other wells drilling methods that require the use of costly commercial drilling techniques and higher technologies are described very superficially. The Volunteer should consider these technologies where appropriate and can read a number of references for greater understanding (See Ref. 13). Design and construction of these wells should be left to the experienced engineer and/or commercial water well contractor.

The selection, design, construction, and maintenance of pumps to provide water from deep wells should be done with the assistance of experienced engineers and well installers. Basic concepts required for the selection, installation, and operation of some pumps and water lifters that can take water from streams, ponds, or shallow wells, are presented in this section. (Extensive information on the use of human and animal-powered water lifters is included in Refs. 28, 58, and 59.)

### 3.5.1 Types of Pumps

The type or kind of pumping system selected depends upon many factors, including (1) the total dynamic head (TDH) or pumping lift; (2) the required discharge (Q); (3) the source of available energy; and (4) the operating conditions.

The use of mechanical power and modern pumps makes possible the lifting of large quantities of water to considerable heights.

The supply of oil and electricity have made modern pumping economically feasible. Worldwide energy shortages have recently caused concerns in countries where fuel oil must be imported. Man and animal pumps are still used in some areas where irrigation is primarily associated with subsistence agriculture. Several types of hand and animal powered pumps are illustrated in Figures 3.13 through 3.25.

### 3.5.2 Pumps Powered by Humans and Animals

The simplest form of a manual lifting device is the water bucket or scoop used to lift water from shallow wells, reservoirs, or canals. The use of a bucket, rope, and roller or pulley increases the possible lift and allows the lifter to use his weight to assist in pulling down. Animals have also been used in some countries.

Labor costs of human powered irrigation are high unless there is no alternative demand for the labor supply. Where crop failure may result in serious malnutrition, the use of human and animal pumps for irrigation may be necessary.

### 3.5.3 Animal-Powered Pumps

Animal power has long been used for water lifting. Animals in good condition can develop about 0.10 HP per 100 kg of body weight. A 1,000 kg horse produces approximately one horsepower. Many different systems are used.

When animals are used for lifting water, the cost of owning and feeding them must be included in the cost of pumping water. A major problem in the use of manual and animal lifting devices for irrigation is the small amount of water that can be pumped. Irrigated areas are generally limited to garden-size plots of less than one-fourth hectare and very shallow lifts.

### 3.5.4 Mechanically Driven Pumps

Pumps powered by mechanical means other than man or animal can be classified as positive displacement pumps or variable displacement pumps. Positive displacement pumps (piston pumps, diaphragm pumps, gear pumps, screw pumps) are seldom employed for irrigation and will not be discussed in this manual.

Variable displacement pumps include the centrifugal, mixed flow, turbine, propeller and jet pumps, and the hydraulic ram. The first four of these are commonly used for irrigation.

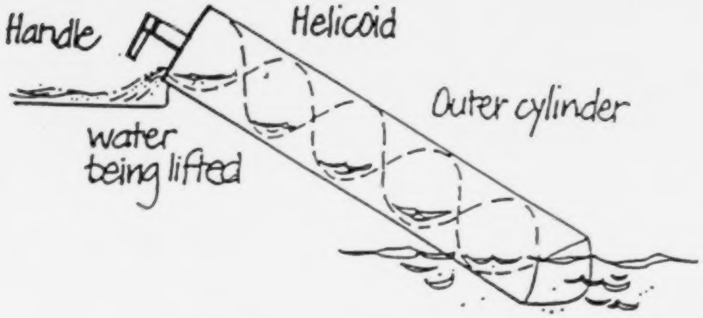

Handle
Helicoid
Outer cylinder
water
being lifted

**Figure 3.13 Archimedean Screw (Ref. 28)**

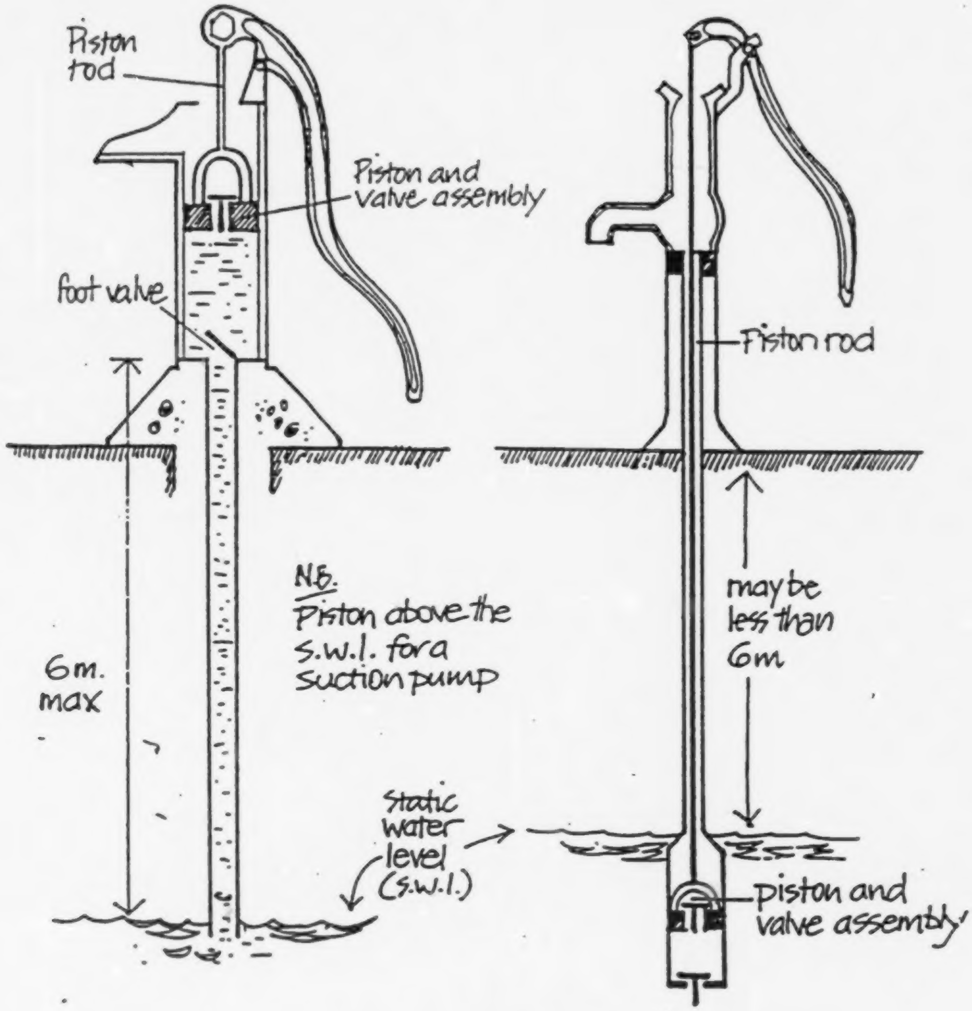
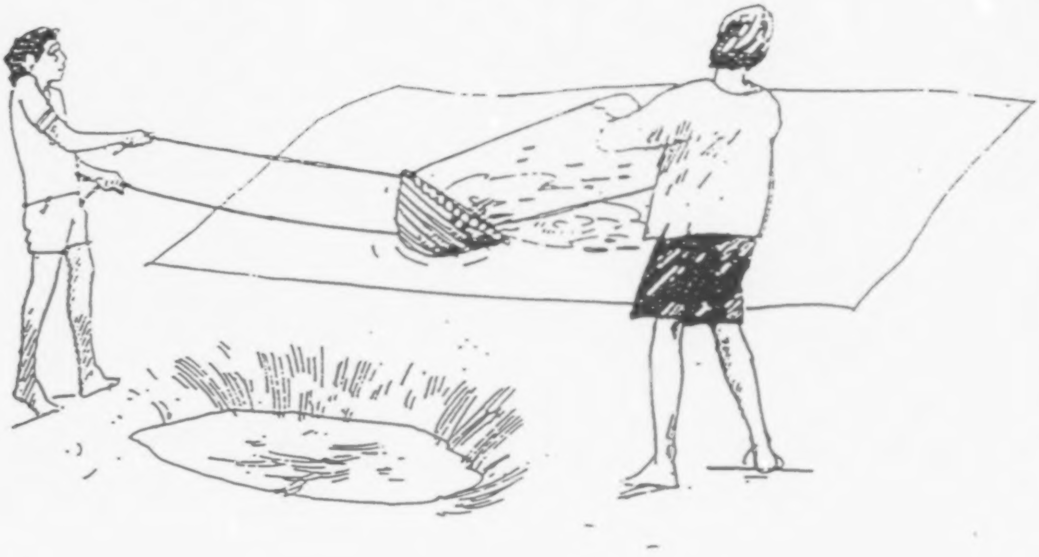
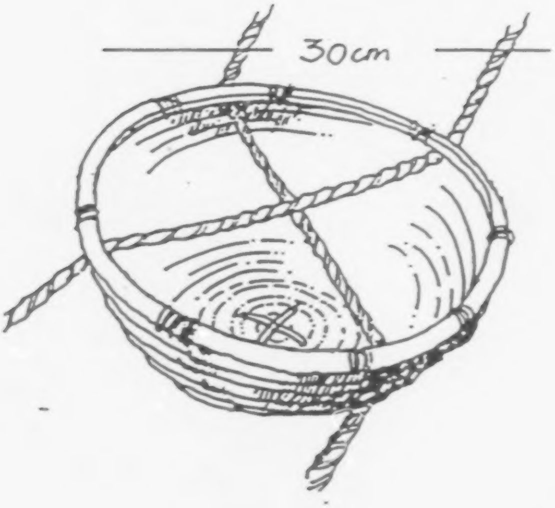
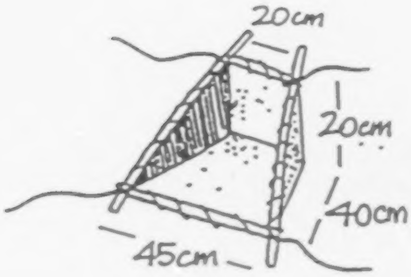

Piston
rod
Piston and
valve assembly
foot valve
6m.
max
N.B.
Piston above the
s.w.l. for a
suction pump
Static
water
level
(s.w.l.)
Piston rod
may be
less than
6m
piston and
valve assembly

**Figure 3.14 Hand (Piston) Pumps (Ref. 28)**





Wicker swing basket of average capacity 8 litres.


20cm
20cm
40cm
45cm

Swing basket made from metal sheets

Figure 3.15 Swing Baskets (Ref. 28)

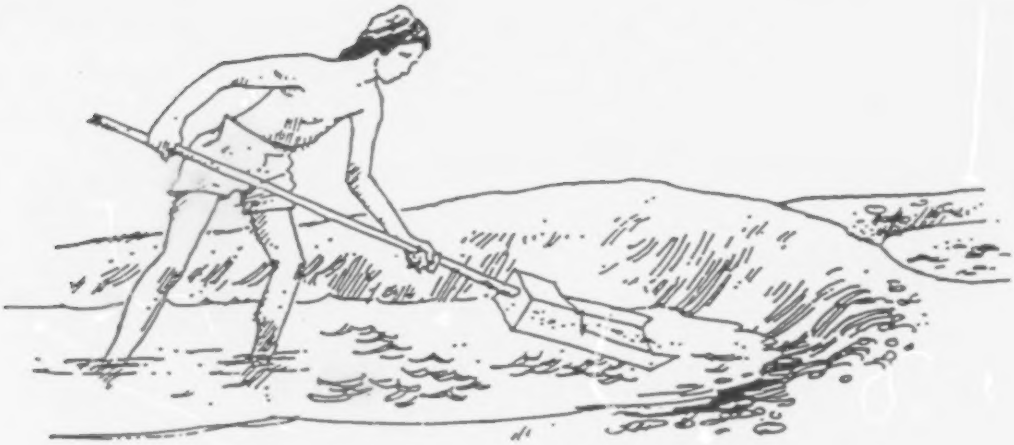


Figure 3.16 Water Scoop (Ref. 28)

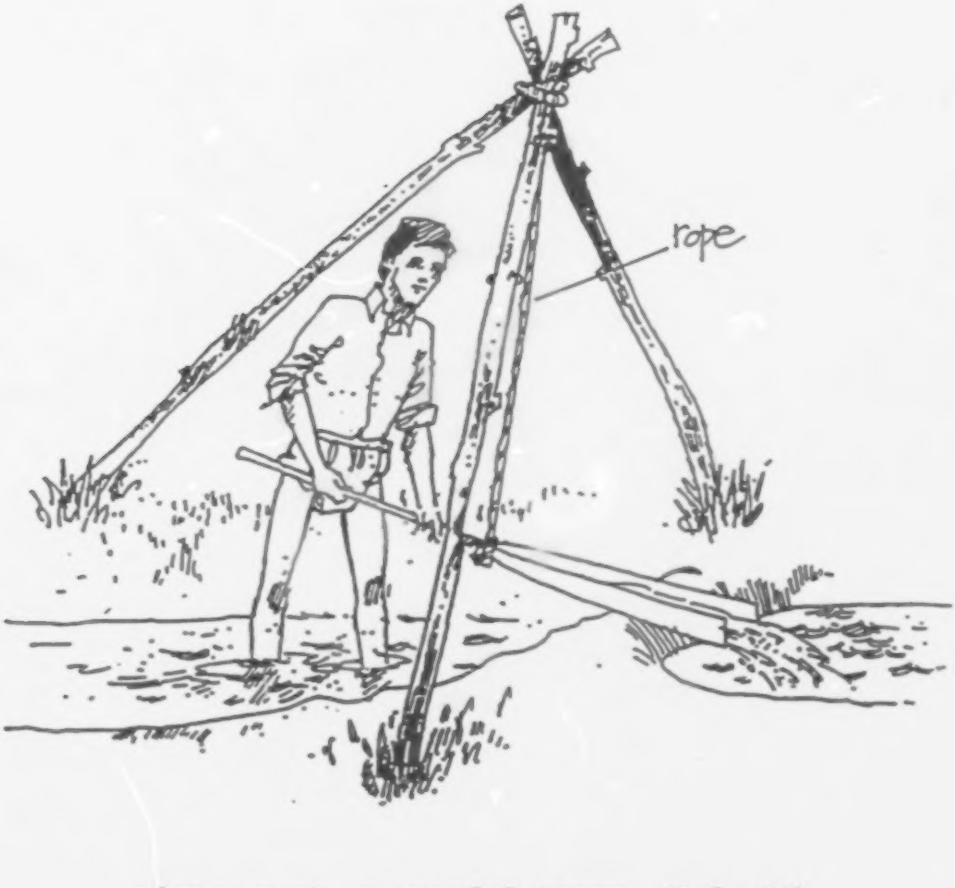


Figure 3.17 Suspended Scoops (Ref. 28)

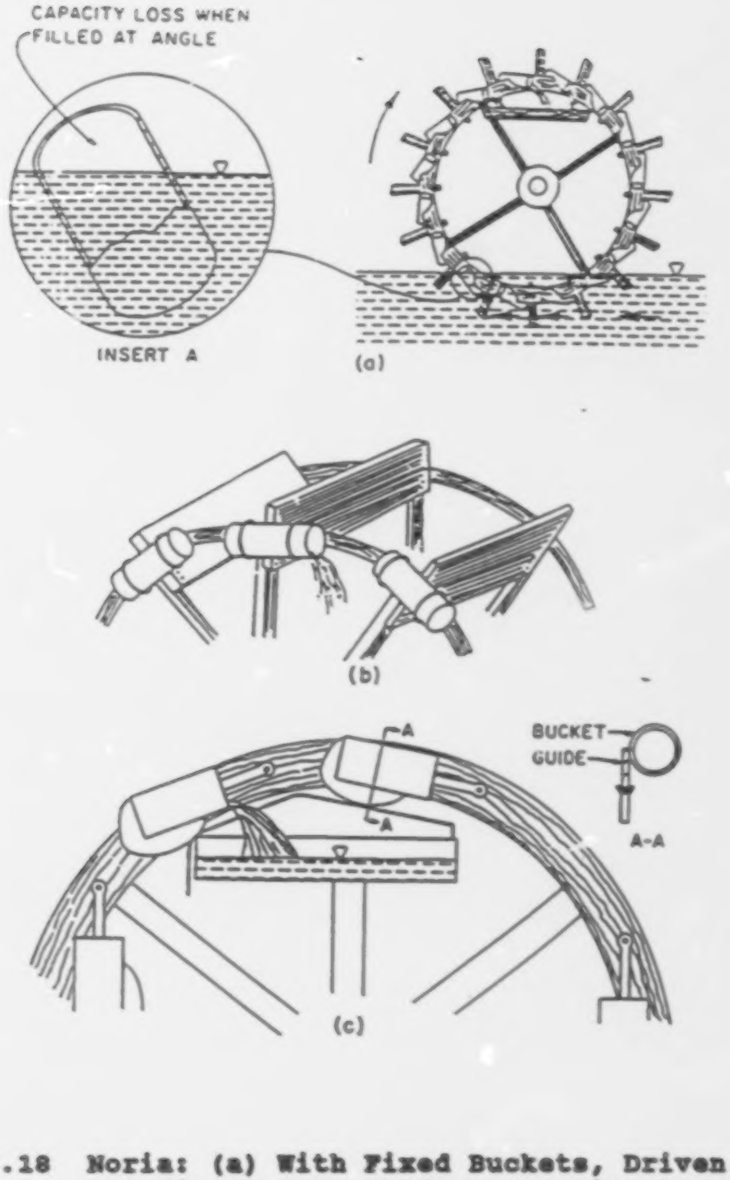

CAPACITY LOSS WHEN FILLED AT ANGLE
INSERT A
(a)
(b)
A
A
BUCKET
GUIDE
A-A
(c)

**Figure 3.18 Noria: (a) With Fixed Buckets, Driven by Currents (b) With Larger Paddles (c) With Moveable Buckets (Ref. 58)**

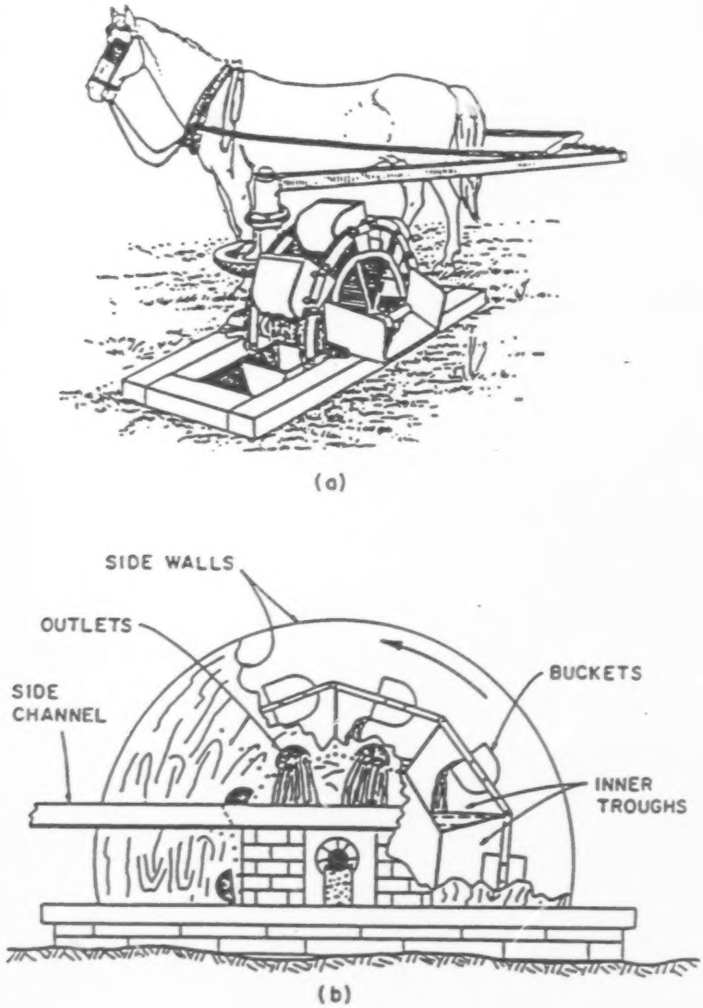

(a)
SIDE WALLS
OUTLETS
SIDE CHANNEL
BUCKETS
INNER TROUGHS
(b)

Figure 3.19 Modified Persian Wheel or Zawafa (Ref. 58)

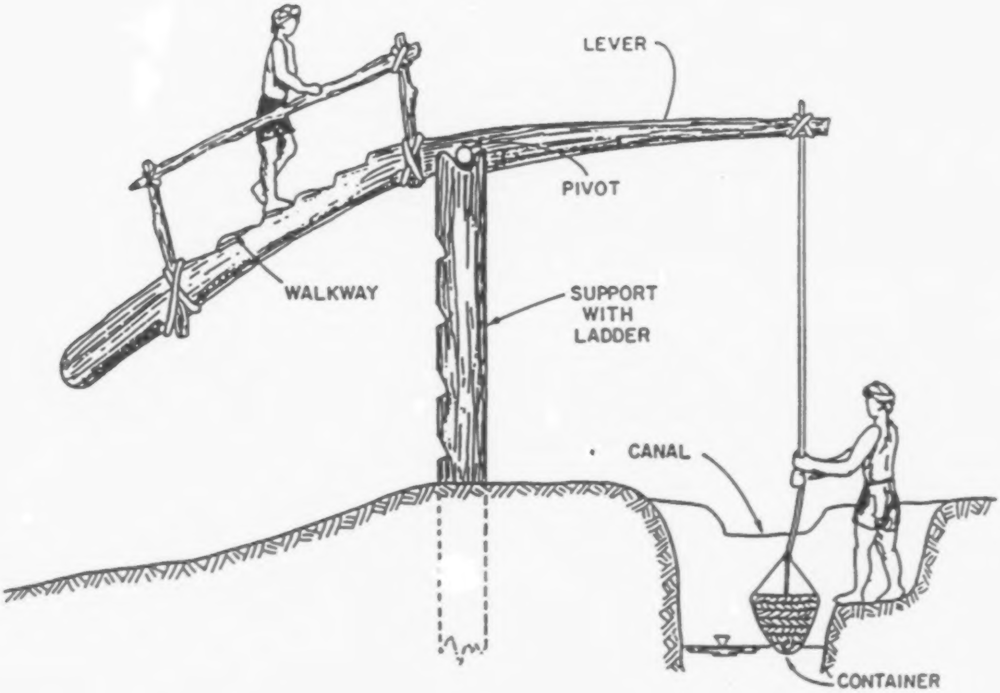

LEVER
PIVOT
WALKWAY
SUPPORT WITH LADDER
CANAL
CONTAINER

Figure 3.20 Picottah, Using Man as Moveable Counterweight (Ref. 58)

278

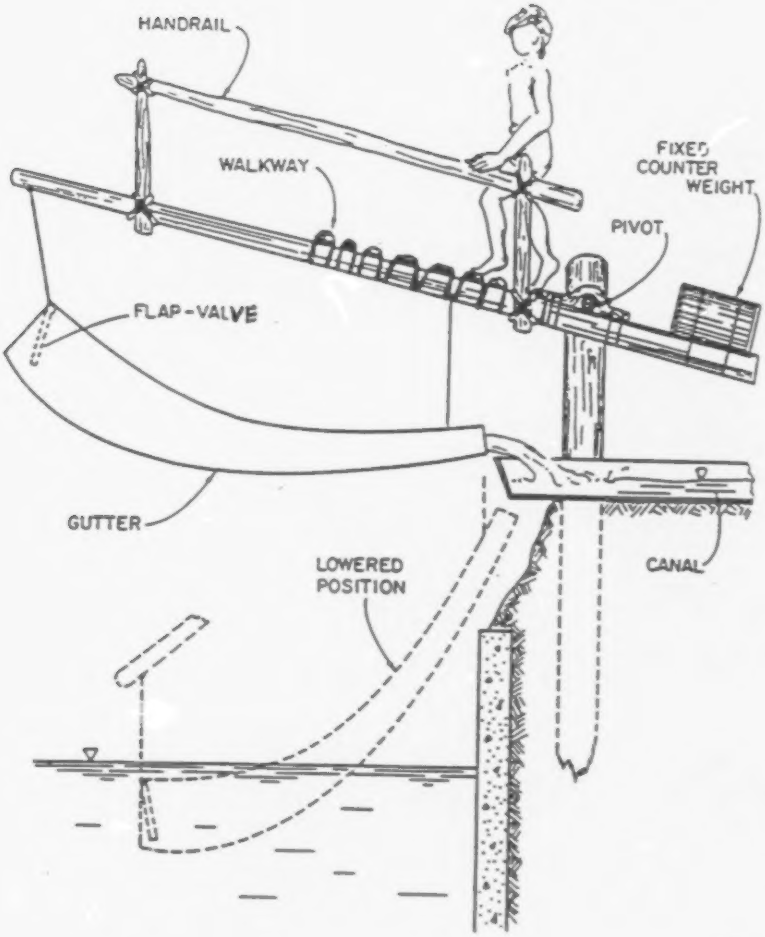

HANDRAIL
WALKWAY
FIXED COUNTER WEIGHT
PIVOT
FLAP-VALVE
GUTTER
CANAL
LOWERED POSITION

**Figure 3.21 Picottah Style Doon with Flap Valve (Ref. 58)**

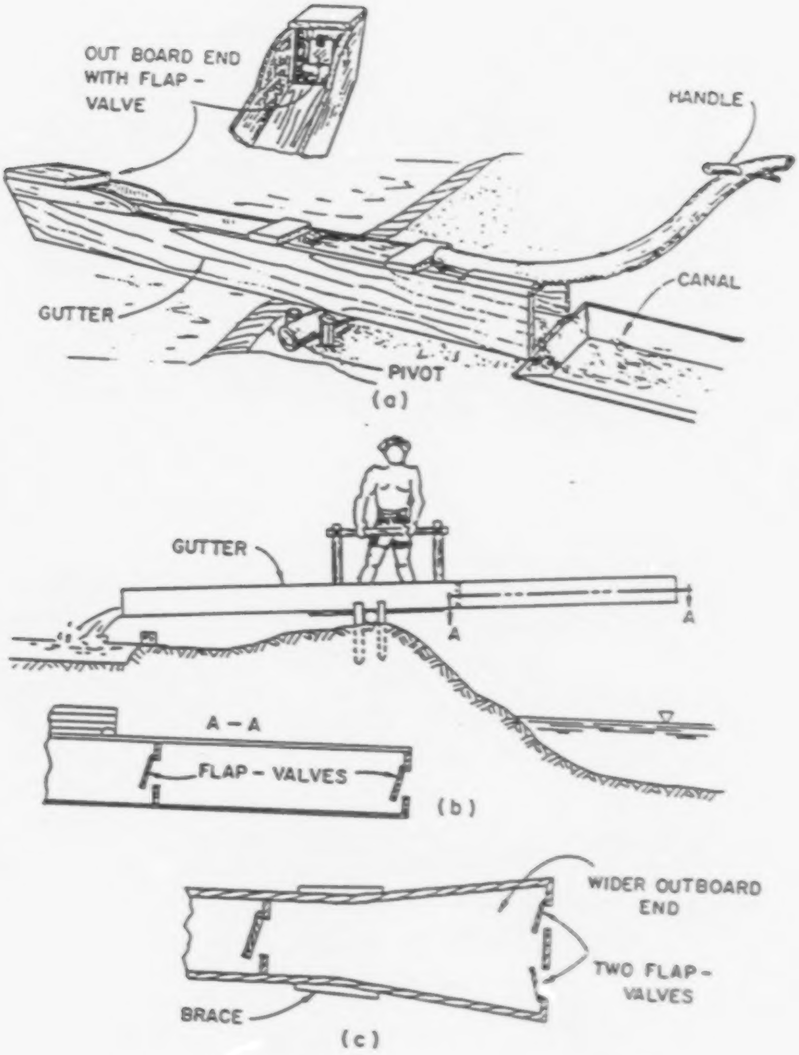

OUT BOARD END
WITH FLAP-
VALVE
HANDLE
CANAL
GUTTER
PIVOT
(a)
GUTTER
A
A
A – A
FLAP – VALVES
(b)
WIDER OUTBOARD
END
TWO FLAP-
VALVES
BRACE
(c)

**Figure 3.22 Gutters: (a) Single with Handle, (b) "See-Saw", (c) Modified to Increase Capacity (Ref. 58)**

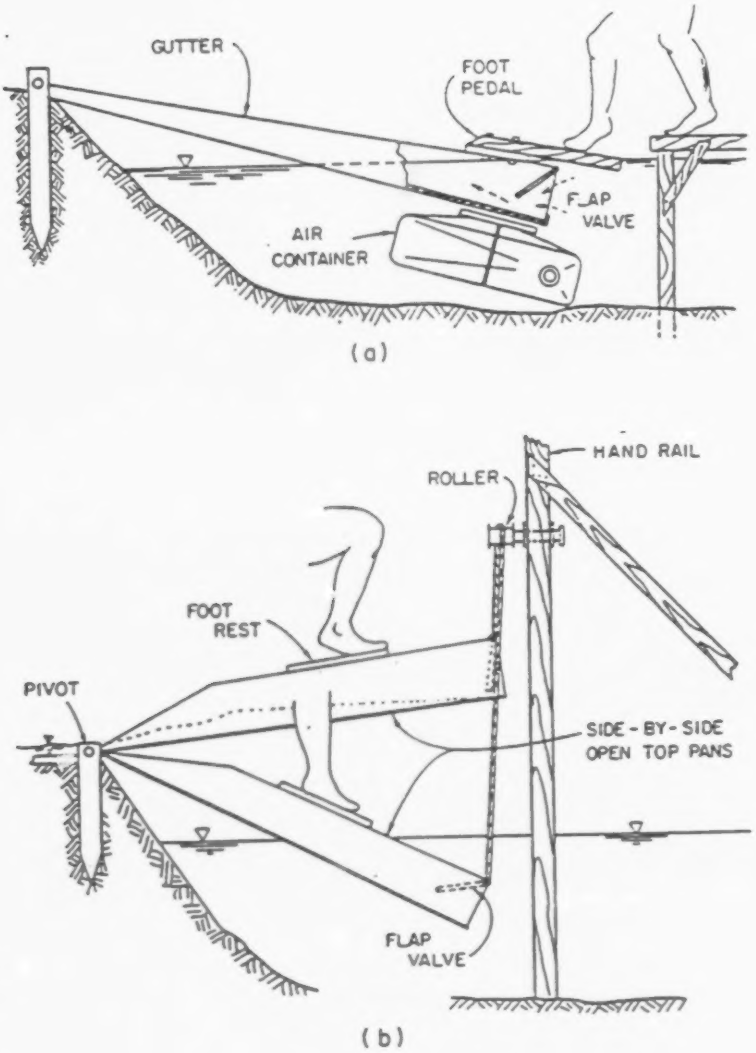

GUTTER
FOOT PEDAL
FLAP VALVE
AIR CONTAINER
(a)
HAND RAIL
ROLLER
FOOT REST
PIVOT
SIDE-BY-SIDE OPEN TOP PANS
FLAP VALVE
(b)

**Figure 3.23 Modifications of the Doon (Ref. 58)**

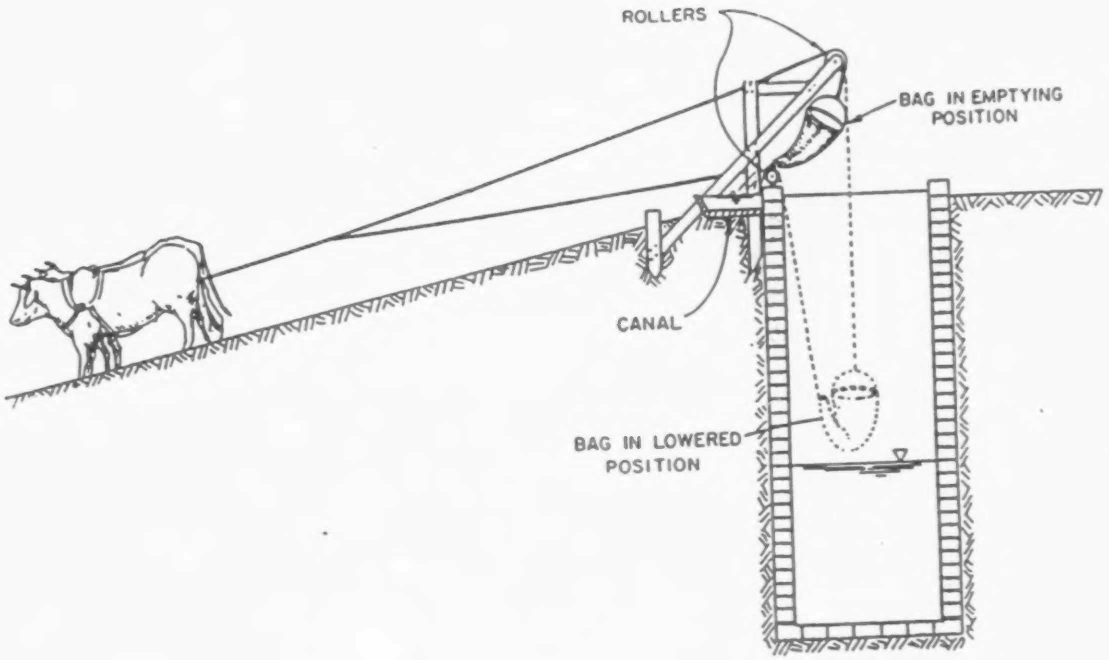

ROLLERS
BAG IN EMPTYING POSITION
CANAL
BAG IN LOWERED POSITION

**Figure 3.24 Self-Emptying Mot with Inclined Tow Path (Ref. 58)**

282

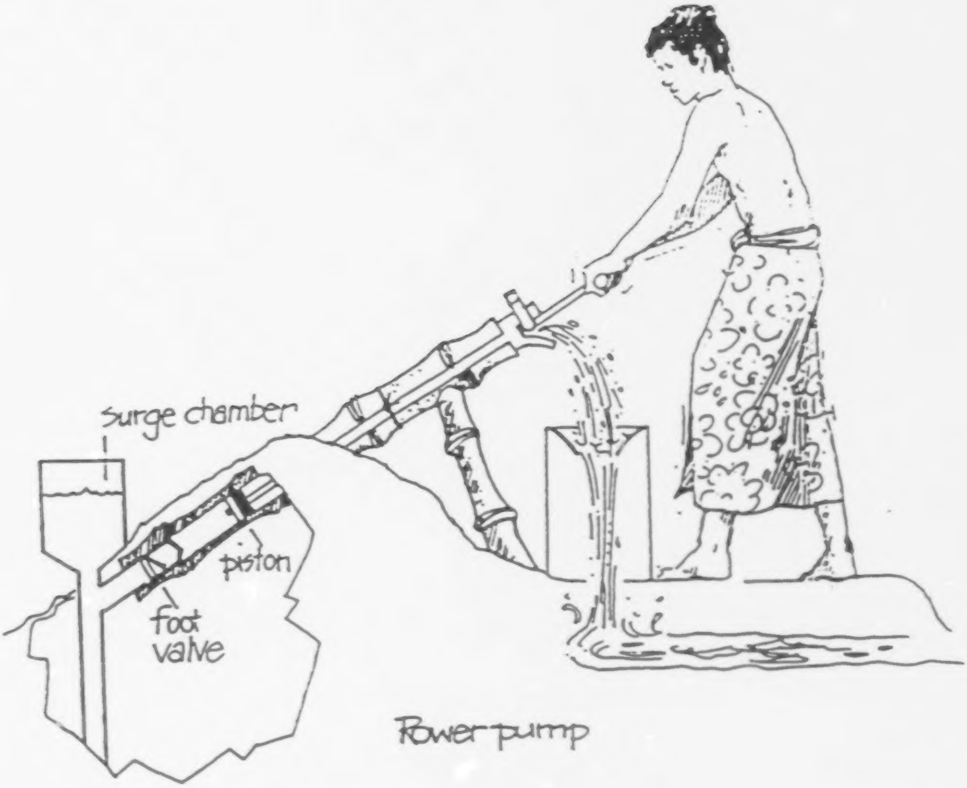

surge chamber
piston
foot valve
Rower pump

**Figure 3.25 Rower Pump (Ref. 28)**

Each type of pump has advantages for a given set of conditions, such as suction lift, total lift, discharge, efficiency of operation, and cost. Pumping systems (combinations of pump motor and accessories) need to be designed or selected for the range of conditions expected under normal operation.

### 3.5.5 Centrifugal Pumps

In centrifugal pumps, water enters the center of the impeller (Figure 3.26), is picked up by the vanes, and accelerated to a high velocity by rotation of the impeller. The water is forced to discharge into the casing, where much of the velocity energy is converted to pressure. When water is forced away from the center, or the "eye" of the impeller, a vacuum is created and atmospheric pressure pushes more water in.

Centrifugal pumps are available in a wide range of sizes and flow rates and can be used for both low and high head or pressure applications. Centrifugal pumps are recommended for pumping from rivers, lakes, canals, and wells. Usually, but not always, the pump is located above the water source.

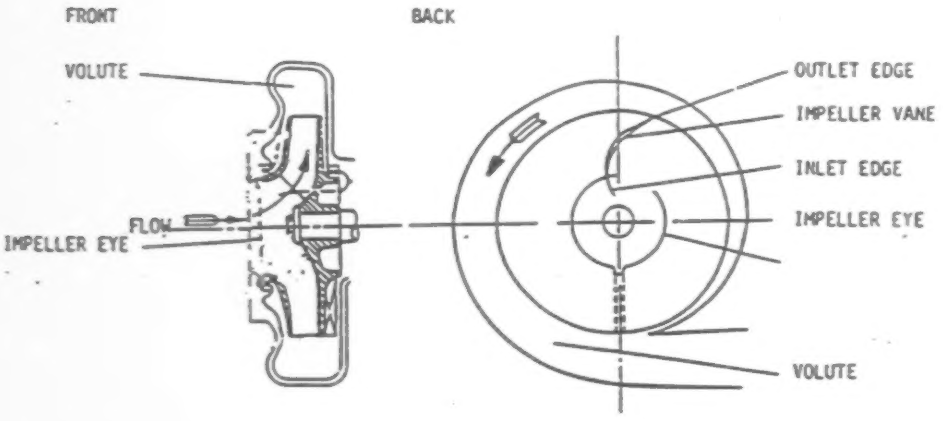


**Figure 3.26 Components of a Centrifugal Pump (Ref. 20)**

### 3.5.6 Propeller or Axial Flow Pumps

Propeller pumps are usually selected for pumping large volumes of water against relatively low (lifts) heads. Capacities range from 40 to 6,000 L/s (liters per second). Total dynamic head (TDH), which is pump lift plus friction losses, is usually from 1 to 2 meters but not more than 10 meters under certain design conditions. As the term "axial flow" implies, the impellers lift the water and push it forward perpendicular to the plane of rotation, or parallel to the axis.

### 3.5.7 Mixed Flow Pumps

Mixed flow pumps both lift the water and accelerate it. Mixed flow pumps are used for intermediate lifts over a wide range of flow rates. Most mixed flow pumps are installed where head requirements do not exceed 15 m, although they are available for heads ranging from 6 to 25 m. Capacities vary from 40 to 6,000 L/s.

### 3.5.8 Turbine Pumps

Turbine pumps are centrifugal pumps used in shallow to deep well applications. A turbine pump is designed so that it can be easily multistaged, developing several times the pressure obtained from a single stage pump. Deep well turbines are usually multistage types - that is, the turbines (impellers) or "bowls" are placed directly above each other. Each turbine picks up the flow and boosts, or increases, the pressure, thus making it possible to lift the water to higher elevations. Turbine pumps can be designed for discharges of less than one liter per second to more than 600 L/s. Deep well turbines are either installed with a motor at the surface, utilizing a long drive shaft, or with a submersible electric motor installed below the various stages of impellers. The submersible motor is often selected if the well has a crooked bore, if the drive shaft would be excessively long, if there is danger of flooding at the surface, and where economy and initial cost are favorable. A summary of pump types is given in Table 3.3.

**TABLE 3.3 A Summary of the Type of Pump Needed to Meet rious Pumping Conditions (Ref. 20)**

| Condition | Pump Type |
|---|---|
| A. Low to high lift, suction not exceeding 4 to 4.5 m, and low to moderate capacity. | Centrifugal (end suction) |
| B. Low lift and large capacity. | Propeller or axial flow |
| C. Low to moderate lifts and moderate to high capacities. | Mixed flow |
| D. Deep well with high lift over wide range of capacities (usually low to moderate). | Deep well turbine (semi-enclosed or enclosed multiple-stage impellers) |

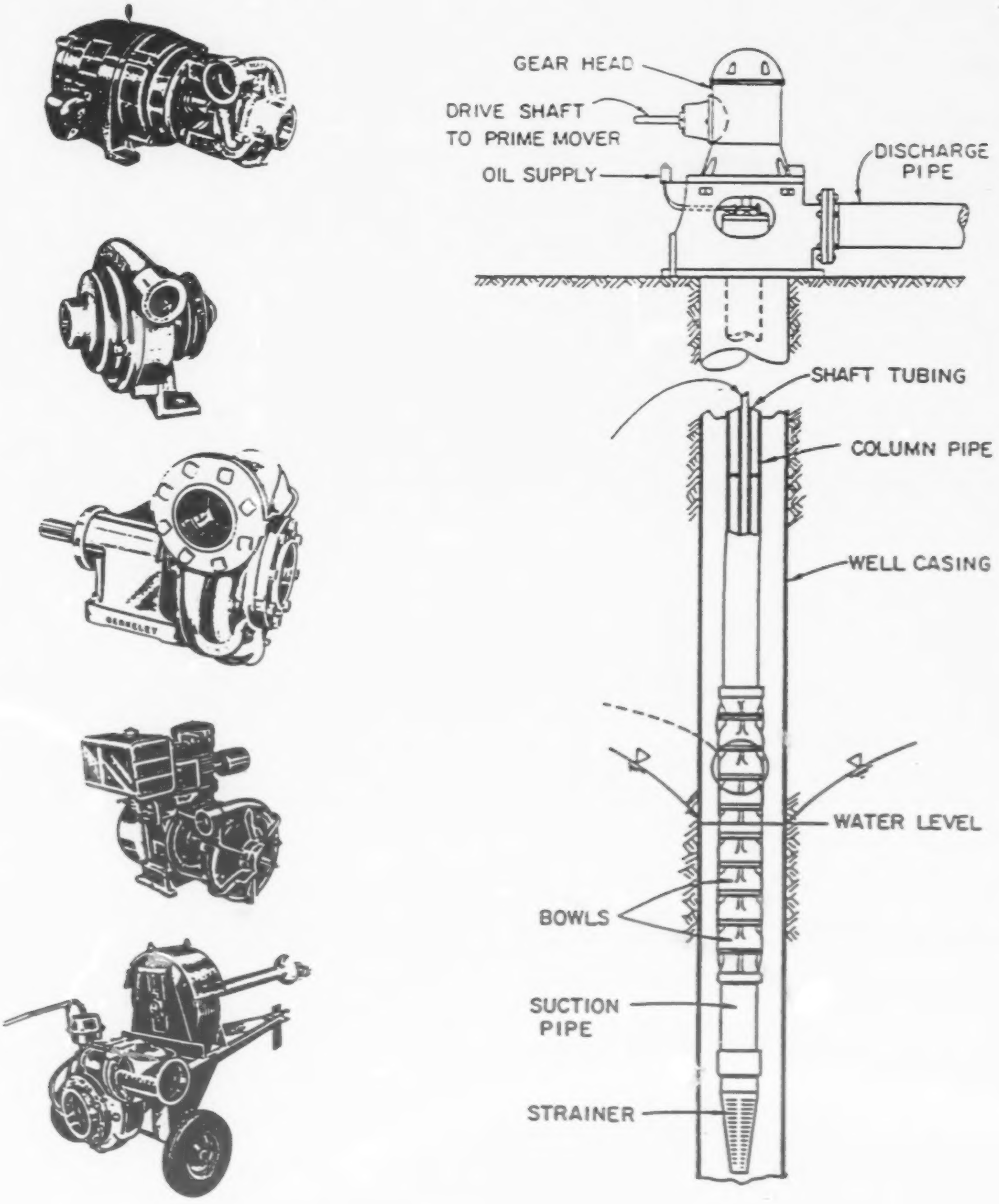
Centrifugal pumps in end section and deep well turbine configurations are illustrated in Figure 3.27

### 3.5.9 Sources of Power

The kind of power used to pump or lift water depends to a large extent upon cost, availability, and the amount of water to be pumped. Countries that do not have, and cannot afford, an adequate supply of mechanical energy may use man and animal power. (Both of these require energy in the form of food or fodder.) Wind and solar power have been used to pump small amounts of water. These sources of power will probably increase significantly in use as technology improves.

Table 3.4 is a comparison of various energy sources. Note that a liter of fuel provides about the equivalent energy of three to five person days of work. A person's output is about 0.08 to 0.10 horsepower (HP) and, when pumping water, the overall efficiency is about 60 percent; therefore, the usable horsepower a person can develop is about 0.05. If water is pumped to a height of 4 meters, three people, working continuously during the growing season in 8-hour shifts each, could pump 1 liter per second, which is taken as the normal maximum irrigation requirement for general crops other than rice for one hectare in many parts of the world.

Where large amounts of water are to be pumped to higher elevations, mechanical pumps are necessary. Gasoline engines are suitable for small commercial developments. Diesel engines, however, are used for most commercial pumping operations where electricity is not available. Diesel engines are usually more economical than other internal combustion engines and have a


GEAR HEAD
DRIVE SHAFT TO PRIME MOVER
OIL SUPPLY
DISCHARGE PIPE
SHAFT TUBING
COLUMN PIPE
WELL CASING
WATER LEVEL
BOWLS
SUCTION PIPE
STRAINER
BERKELEY

vertically-mounted, "turbine" pump.

**Figure 3.27 Pump Types and Configurations**

**TABLE 3.4 Comparative Costs to Pump 1,000 Cubic Meters of Water to a Height of 2 Meters (Ref. 20)**

| Energy | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Energy | Energy | | | Energy or Fuel | Time | Costs |
| Source | HP | KWH | Energy Units | Required | Required | (U.S $) |
| Human | 0.09[a] | 0.32[b] | person-day[c] | 16.90 person-days | 8 hrs | $84.50[d] |
| Animal | 0.10[e] | 1.79[f] | per day/ 100 kg weight | 3.04 animal-days | 8 hrs | $91.20[g] |
| Diesel | 9.12[h] | 6.82 | liters | 3.12 liters | 1 hr | $ 0.82[i] |
| Gasoline | 9.12[h] | 6.82 | liters | 4.07 liters | 1 hr | $ 1.36[j] |
| Propane | 9.12[h] | 6.82 | liters | 5.16 liters | 1 hr | $ 1.08[k] |
| Electric | 9.17[h] | 6.82 | KWH | 6.82 KWH | 1 hr | $ 0.61[l] |

[a] In this table, a person is assumed to produce 0.09 HP.

[b] 0.09 HP x 0.746 KW/HP x 8 hr/day x 60% eff. = 0.32 KWH

[c] 8 hours

[d] Labor costs of $5.00/person per day

[e] Assumes 0.10 HP per 100 kg of animal weight

[f] 500 kg animal x 0.10 HP/100 kg x 0.746 KW/HP x 8 hrs/day x 60% pump; efficiency = 1.79 KWH

[g] $30.00 per animal/day

[h] Pump efficiency 80%

[i] Diesel fuel at $0.26/liter

[j] Gasoline at $0.33/liter

[k] Propane at $0.21/liter

[l] Electricity at $0.09/KWH

longer life. Gasoline engines, including tractors, are more expensive to operate than diesel. They are lighter in weight, however, can be more easily moved, and are adaptable to many conditions where not more than 15 to 20 HP is required.

The electric motor can be a fraction of horsepower or of many thousands of horsepower. Smaller sizes are usually single phase, while above 3 HP horsepower, motors are normally 3-phase. The initial cost is usually lower than for other motors. Costs of operation and maintenance are low, and they have a long and useful life. Electricity has often been considered the ideal source of energy, and electric motors are suitable for all sizes of installation, from very small to very large. There is much variability in cost and dependability of electrical energy, however, and availability, dependability, and uniformity of the electric power need to be considered. Voltage fluctuations can damage a motor. Power outages during critical periods can result in serious loss of crop production.

Wind has historically been an important source of power, particularly for domestic and livestock water. Wind velocities are not significant in many interior valleys. Conditions are more favorable on hill tops along coastal plains and on islands. Generally, the velocity increases with elevation above a base that breaks the wind. Costs of constructing windmills increase exponentially with the height of the tower. Windmills can pump water for garden-size plots if sufficient wind is available.

Water provides the lifting power for some irrigation projects and small enterprises. The noria (Fig. 3.18) or water wheel is a cheap and economical means of lifting water up to 3 or 4 meters (10 or 12 feet) above the water surface of a river or small stream. A large metal wheel welded onto a wheel from an old automobile, operating on its original bearings, is inexpensive and effective. In some developing areas, the use of pumping projects organized as small cooperatives has largely eliminated the use of both human and animal power.

### 3.5.10 Selection of Pumps and Power Units

The selection of pump and power units depends upon several factors, including:

- amount of water to be pumped;
- the operating efficiencies (this includes the efficiencies of individual components such as impellers, gearheads);
- the pumping head (lift and/or pressure requirements);
- horsepower requirements;
- available energy (e.g. electricity, gasoline, diesel);
- cost and returns on investment; and
- the size of farm, type of irrigation, and the available labor supply.

Pumps are usually designed for a specific set of operating conditions. A significant departure from these conditions decreases efficiency; therefore, the pump must be operated at or near the design values.

In designing a pumping system, it is best to plan activities so that the pump operating conditions will be as constant as possible and that changes in water requirements will be compensated by increasing or decreasing the hours of pump operation.

## 3.5.11 Amount of Water to be Pumped

The amount of water to be pumped depends upon crop water requirements, the area to be irrigated, and the irrigation efficiency. The size of the pumping plant needed depends upon the amount of water required and the time that will be devoted to pumping.

The most economical use of investment capital is to select a pump for continuous operation. In irrigated agriculture, however, pumps are usually designed and operated continuously only during peak crop water requirements. During other growing stages, the pump is operated at intervals to meet crop water use. Some irrigators prefer to irrigate only during daytime hours. In the design of a system, the decision should be made so as to economize both labor and pumping plant costs.

A first approximation of the size of the pumping plant needed can be made by assuming that, for maximum crop growth, the plants will require an application equivalent to one liter per second per hectare (1 L/sec/ha), or 6.4 gpm/acre (gallons per minute/acre) of continuous pumping. This assumes that rainfall is negligible. Another rough estimate is that crop water requirements during the growing season are seldom less than 3 mm per day (0.12 inches per day) and usually will not exceed 8 mm per day (0.32 inches per day) during maximum use.

The amount of water a pump must deliver can be calculated from the continuity equation:

$$Qt = 28ad \text{ (metric)}$$

where

Q = required pump discharge in liters/second
t = time in hours
a = area in hectares
d = desired irrigation depth in centimeters

and, in the English system, approximately by

$$Qt = ad \text{ (English)}$$

where

Q = cubic feet/second (cfs)
t = time in hours
a = acres
d = inches

Note that in the metric system a pump discharge of 1 liter per second will cover one hectare to a depth of 8.64 mm in 24 hours, or 0.36 mm per hour. In the English system, 1 cfs will cover 1 acre to a depth of 1 inch each hour.

### 3.5.12 The Pumping Lift or Head

The total pumping lift or amount of pressure that a pump must develop to force the water through pipes, sprinklers, etc., and to the desired elevation is referred to as "head" or total dynamic head (TDH). The relationship, if water were standing in a vertical pipe, is

| | Head | | Pressure |
|---|---|---|---|
| English system | 100 feet | = | 43.3 psi |
| Metric system | 100 meters | = | 10 $kg/cm^2$ |

Figure 3.28 shows a typical pump installation for a centrifugal pump drawing water from a canal or pond and discharging through a sprinkler system.

The total dynamic head (TDH) is a measure of the energy per unit weight added to the pumped water by the pump, and is the sum of the changes in pressure, elevation, and velocity heads between the pumping water level in the well and the point of discharge, along with any friction losses between the two points.

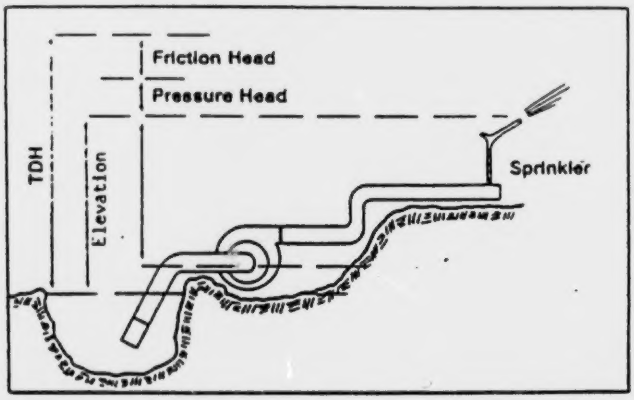


**Figure 3.28 Diagram of a Centrifugal Pump Installation Showing Head and Lift Concepts**

Total dynamic head must be determined as accurately as possible in order to design a pump. The TDH in Figure 3.28 can be determined as follows:

TDH = hp + hz + hv + hf

where,

hp = pressure head. This is usually the pressure required at the discharge point, eg., to force water out through sprinklers.

hz = elevation head. This is the difference in elevation between the pumping water level and the point of discharge or the point at which hp is measured. The pumping levels should be determined while the pump is running and after the pumping levels have stabilized. In pumping from a reservoir or stream, the pumping water level may stabilize immediately. In pumping from a deep well, the pumping level may not stabilize for several hours. In measuring pumping water levels in deep wells, electric sounders, air lines, or other methods may need to be used.

hv = velocity head. This can be visualized as the vertical distance water would flow out of the end of the pipe as a result of its velocity. It is given by the equation:

$$hv = \frac{v^2}{2g}$$

g is the acceleration of gravity ($32.2\ \text{ft/sec}^2$ in English system, $9.8\ \text{m/sec}^2$ in metric system).

Because of friction losses, possible water hammer and other structural damages may occur, and the velocity in most irrigation pipes should be kept below 2 m/sec (7 ft/sec). Therefore, the velocity head is minimal. It is usually negligible when estimating TDH and thus is not even accounted for.

hf = friction head. This is the pressure or head that the pump must produce to overcome friction, i.e., the loss that occurs as water "rubs" against pipe walls and fittings.

**Example**: Determine the required TDH for a centrifugal pump as shown in Figure 3.28. Q = 411 $m^3$/hr (1811 gpm); v = 2 m/sec (6 ft/sec).

| | Metric | English |
|---|---|---|
| Elevation at discharge | 933.00 m | 3061.00 ft |
| Elevation at pump | 922.00 m | 3024.00 ft |
| Elevation at water surface | 919.00 m | 3015.00 ft |
| Pressure head (32 psi) | 22.50 m | 73.90 ft |

| | Metric | English |
|---|---|---|
| Friction head | | |
| (18 in. suction, elbows, etc., 20 ft.) | 0.01 m | 0.03 ft |
| (16 in. diameter, 1,000 ft) | 1.16 m | 3.80 ft |
| Velocity head (v = 2 m/sec, or 6 ft/sec) | | |
| $hv = \frac{2 \times 2}{2 \times 9.8} = \frac{6 \times 6}{2 \times 32.2}$ | 0.20 m | 0.56 ft |
| hz = discharge head + static suction | | |
| lift = (3061 - 3024) + (3024 - 3015) = | 14.00 m | 46.00 ft |
| TDH = hz + hp + hf + hv | | |
| Metric = 14 + 22.5 + 1.17 + 0.2 | 37.90 m | |
| English = 46 + 73.9 + 3.83 + 0.56 | | 124.30 ft |

## 3.5.13 Horsepower and Efficiency

The power output (energy per unit time) of a pump is the energy that the pump provides to the water in the form of discharge and head. This quantity is called water horsepower (WHP). With discharge, Q, in gpm, and TDH in feet, the equation is:

$$WHP = \frac{Q \times TDH}{3960}$$

If Q is in L/sec, and TDH is in meters, m, the equation is:

$$WHP = \frac{Q \times TDH}{76}$$

The power needed at the output shaft of the power unit to run the pump is called brake horsepower (BHP) and is determined by the WHP and the pump efficiency (Ep). For Ep expressed as a decimal fraction, the equation is:

$$BHP = \frac{WHP}{Ep}$$

The efficiency given in the manufacturer's pump characteristic curves is the laboratory efficiency. It is determined for a new pump under closely controlled conditions. Minimum length of column and pump shaft is used, and impellers are adjusted for ideal clearance. Ep in a field installation is usually several percentage points lower than the efficiency in the manufacturer's pump curves. A value of 70%, or Ep = 0.7, should generally be the minimum acceptable for new pumps that are directly coupled to an electric motor, even though theoretical values could be near 80% (Ep = 0.8).

A right angle gearhead will usually have an efficiency (Eg) of about 95%. If the power from either an electric or internal combustion engine is transmitted to the pump through a gearhead, the efficiency of the transmission device must be accounted for in determining the horsepower requirements as follows:

$$BHP = \frac{WHP}{Ep \times Eg}$$

**Example**: For the previous example, Q = 411 $m^3$/hr, or 114 L/sec (1811 gpm), and TDH = 37.9 m (124.3 ft). If a pump with Ep = 0.70 will be powered by either a diesel gasoline engine or electric motor through a gearhead with Eg = 0.95, what size of engine or motor will be needed?

WHP = (114 x 37.9)/76 (metric) = 57, or
WHP = (1811 gpm x 124 ft)/3960 (English) = 57

$$BHP = \frac{57}{0.7 \times 0.95} = 86$$

## 3.5.14 Pump Characteristic Curves

The amount of energy (head) a pump will add to a given discharge of water, the pump required, and the efficiency are all measured by laboratory testing. The results are displayed on a diagram known as a "pump characteristic curve." An example of a typical characteristic curve is shown in Figure 3.29 for a centrifugal pump. A pump that operates near the flattest portion of the efficiency curve should be selected so that a small change in conditions will not significantly change the pump efficiency.

The total head (TDH) that a pump will develop is plotted on the graph versus the pump discharge. Often more than one curve is shown. Each curve is for a different sized impeller or rotation speed. The efficiencies at which the pumps will operate under various conditions, together with the required brake horsepower curves, are superimposed over the other curves. In Figure 3.28, the total dynamic head for which the pumps would be designed would be the head required to lift the water from its source through the pipe and sprinklers or into the ditch as shown. In the example, it was 37.9 meters (124.3 ft) at 114 L/sec (1811 gpm).

After the required discharge (Q) and TDH are determined, a search is made through a manufacturer's pump curves to find the pump with a high operating efficiency that meets these conditions. In Figure 3.29, a pump with 13.75 inch impellers, operating at 1750 RPM, with an efficiency of 80%, meets the requirements of the previous example.

The calculated BHP at a pump efficiency of 80% is:

$$\text{BHP} = \frac{114 \times 37.9}{76 \times 0.8} = 71 \text{ BHP}$$

The operating efficiency of a pump in the field is generally lower than that given in the catalogs. Thus, a 75 HP direct couple (no gearhead) motor would probably operate quite satisfactorily, unless bearing, shaft, and other mechanical losses were high.

### 3.5.15 Power Source and Power Costs

To estimate precisely the cost per hour of pumping, one would need to measure the energy consumption of an engine or electric motor under normal operation. One would then need to multiply this consumption by the cost per unit of energy consumption. For new pumping plants that are properly designed, one can estimate what the cost per hour of pumping will be if one knows the required BHP and the cost per gallon or liter of fuel, propane, or diesel. For electric units, one needs to know the cost per kilowatt hour (KWH). The basic equations are:

Diesel, Gasoline, Propane (see Table 3.5)

$$\$/\text{hr} = \frac{\text{BHP required}}{\text{BHP-Hr per unit of fuel}} \times \text{cost of fuel per unit}$$

**Example**: With gasoline at $0.30/liter, and with 100 BHP required, what will the per hour costs be?

$$\$/\text{hr} = \frac{100 \text{ BHP}}{2.98 \text{ BHP-Hr per liter}} \times \$0.30/\text{liter} = \$10.07/\text{hr}$$

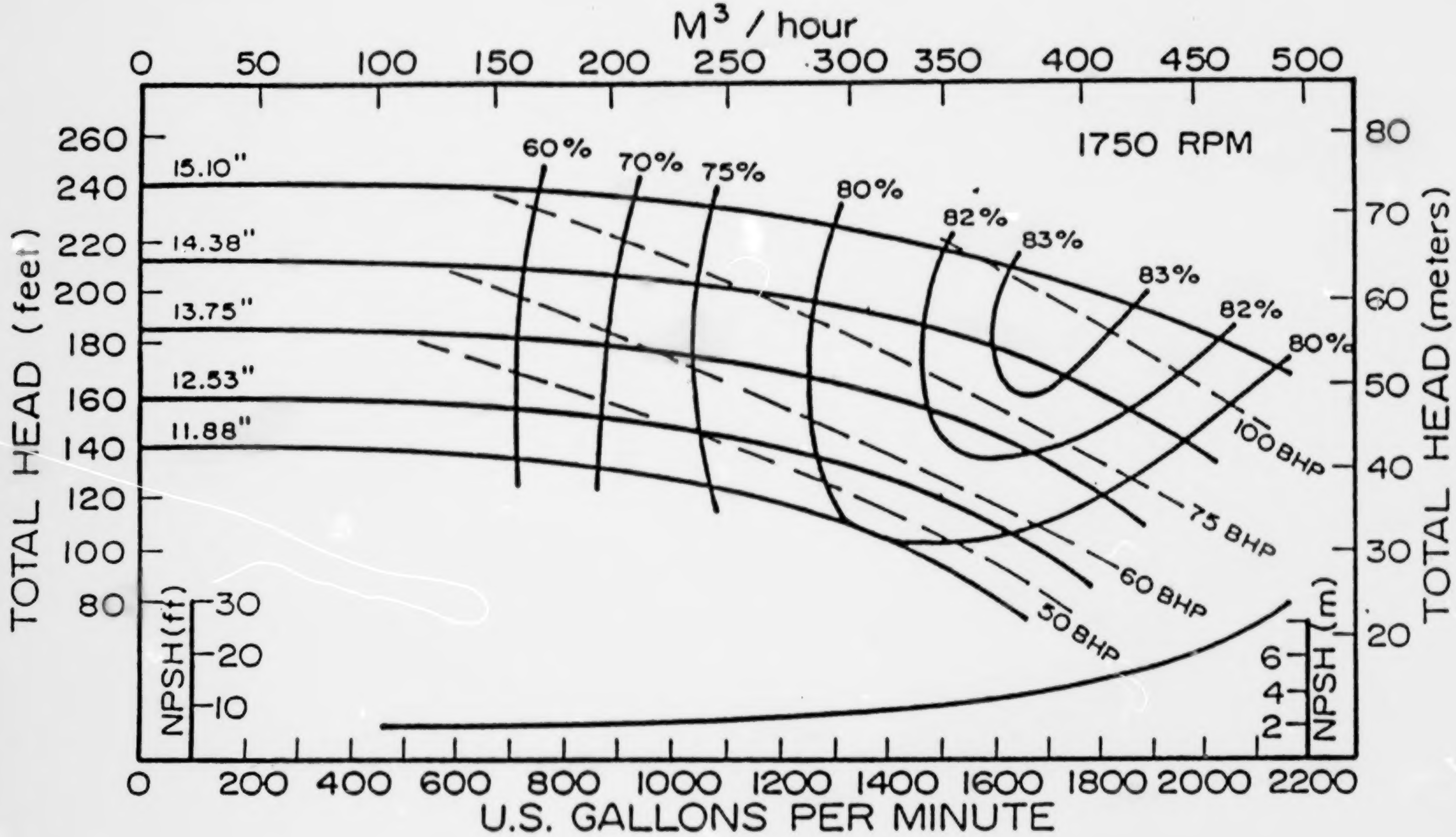


Figure 3.29 Pump Curve

Electric (Assume electric motors are about 85% efficient)

$/hr = BHP required x 0.85 x cost per KWH

**Example**: With electric power rates at $0.07/KWH, and 100 BHP required, what will the per hour costs be?

$/hr = 100 x .85 x $0.07 = $5.95

**TABLE 3.5. Performance Standards for Engines (Adapted from University of Nebraska Tractor Tests) (Ref. 20)**

| Energy | Brake Horsepower Developed | |
|---|---|---|
| Source | BHP-Hr/$U.S. Gal. of Fuel | BHP-Hr/Liter of Fuel |
| Diesel | 14.75 | 3.90 |
| Gasoline | 11.30 | 2.98 |
| Propane | 8.92 | 2.36 |

## 3.5.16 Pump Location

The physical location of the pump in relation to the water level in the sump (well, reservoir, pond) from which water is being pumped is critical. If the pump is too high, cavitation may occur. The liquid is pulled apart as it goes through the impeller, causing vapor pockets that collapse after they have passed the impeller. This process, called cavitation, can destroy a pump or cause it to deteriorate rapidly. The pump may operate very inefficiently. If the pump is too high above the water surface, it may also lose its prime.

The height or distance that a pump can be located above a water surface varies with elevation above sea level, properties of the water, friction loss in the suction pipe, and the net positive suction head requirements of the pump.

Net positive suction head (NPSH) is the head that causes water to flow through the suction pipe into the pump. **NPSH required** is the suction head (pressure) required at the inlet of the impeller to ensure that the liquid will not boil or form vapor pockets that result in cavitation. NPSH required is a function of the pump design and is supplied by the manufacturer (e.g., Figure 3.29). It varies between different makes of pumps and the capacity and speed of any one pump.

**NPSH available** represents the pressure head available to force the liquid into the pump impeller and is a function of the system in which the pump operates. It determines how high a pump can be located above a water surface and can be calculated for any installation. To operate successfully, any pump installation must have an available NPSH equal to or greater than the required NPSH at the desired pump condition. Thus:

NPSH Available ≥ NPSH required

To calculate how high above or below the pumping water level the impellers may be located, consider the following:

PL = atmospheric pressure - NPSH required - friction losses in suction - vapor pressure.

If PL is positive, the pump may be set above the pumping water level a distance PL.

If PL is negative, the pump must be set a distance PL below the pumping water level.

**Example** - for the pump with impellers from Fig. 3.29:

| | |
|---|---|
| Discharge | 408.6 $m^3$/hr (1800 gpm) |
| Friction loss in suction pipe | 1.16 m (3.8 ft) |
| Elevation of pump | 930 m above sea level (3061 ft) |
| NPSH required | 4.86 m (16 ft.) |
| Water temperature | 15.6°C (60°F) |
| Vapor pressure of water at 60°F: | 0.17 m (0.57 ft) (Appendix A) |
| Atmospheric pressure at 3000 ft: | 9.26 m (30.4 ft) (Appendix A) |

NPSH available

= 9.26 m - (suction lift + 1.16 m + 0.17 m) = 3.06

Solution: PL = 9.26 m - 4.86 m - 1.15 m - 0.17 m = 3.08 m

This is also shown graphically in Figure 3.30. Thus, the static suction lift (height of pump above the pumping water level) cannot be greater than 3.08 m. In practice, stormy conditions can reduce atmospheric pressure by more than 10% at times. Therefore, to assure good pump operation and prevent cavitation, the pump may need to be placed as much as 0.6 m to 0.9 m (2 to 3 feet) lower than the NPSH would indicate at normal atmospheric conditions. For this reason, the static suction lift should be 2.1 m to 2.4 m (7 to 8 feet).

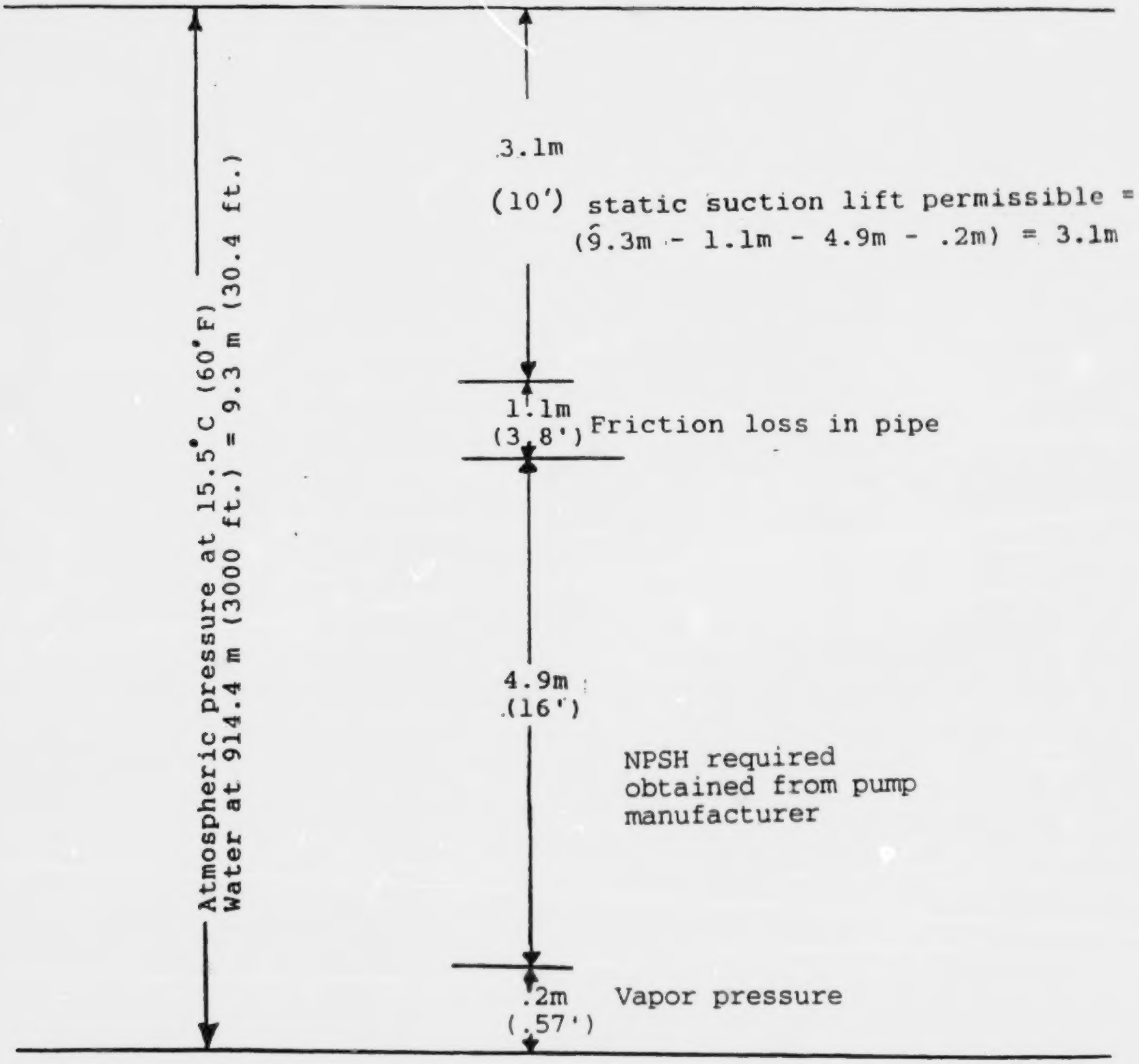

Atmospheric pressure at 15.5°C (60°F)
Water at 914.4 m (3000 ft.) = 9.3 m (30.4 ft.)
3.1m
(10') static suction lift permissible =
(9.3m - 1.1m - 4.9m - .2m) = 3.1m
1.1m
(3.8') Friction loss in pipe
4.9m
(16')
NPSH required
obtained from pump
manufacturer
.2m
(.57') Vapor pressure

**Figure 3.30 Graphical Solution of NPSH (Ref. 20)**

### 3.5.17 Pump Installation

Figures 3.31 and 3.32 show a top and side view of a recommended pump installation when pumping from a sump. Figure 3.33 shows a recommended installation when pumping from a well.

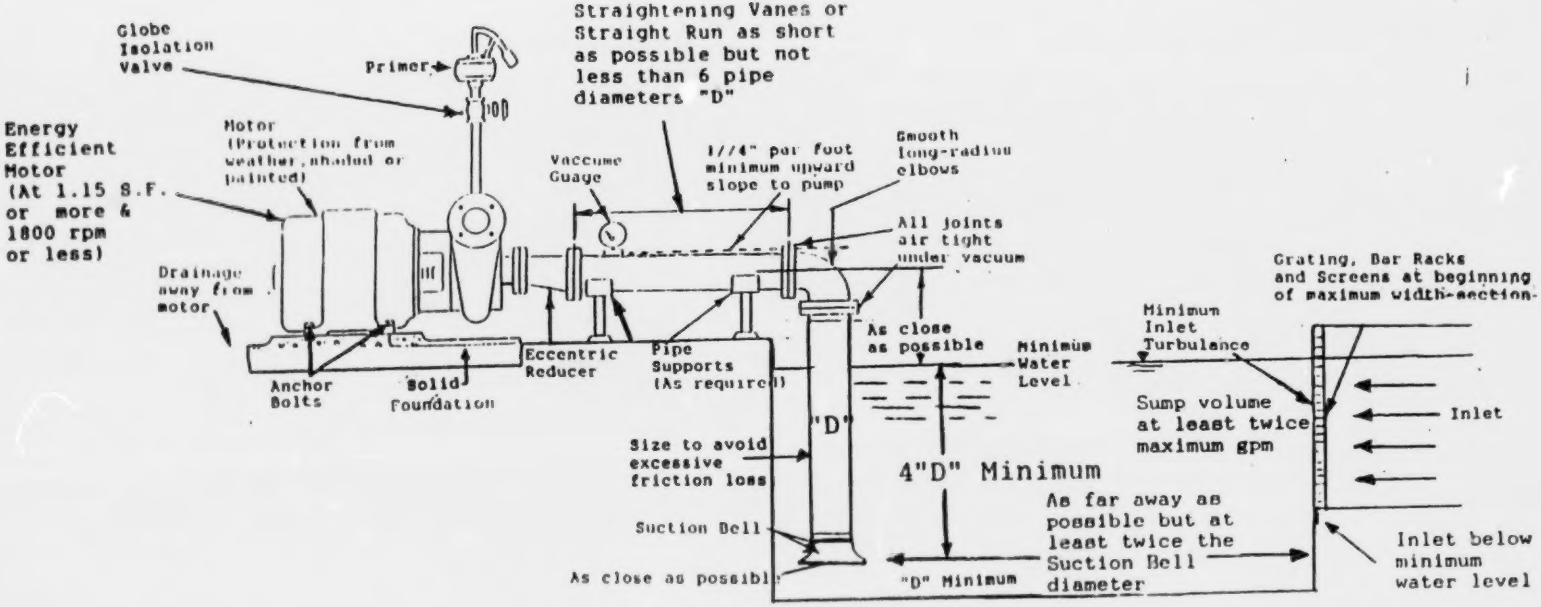

Globe Isolation Valve
Primer
Straightening Vanes or Straight Run as short as possible but not less than 6 pipe diameters "D"
Energy Efficient Motor (At 1.15 S.F. or more & 1800 rpm or less)
Motor (Protection from weather, shaded or painted)
Vaccume Guage
1//4" per foot minimum upward slope to pump
Smooth long-radius elbows
All joints air tight under vacuum
Drainage away from motor
Grating, Bar Racks and Screens at beginning of maximum width-section-
Minimum Inlet Turbulence
As close as possible
Minimum Water Level
Eccentric Reducer
Pipe Supports (As required)
Anchor Bolts
Solid Foundation
Sump volume at least twice maximum gpm
Inlet
"D"
Size to avoid excessive friction loss
4"D" Minimum
As far away as possible but at least twice the Suction Bell diameter
Suction Bell
As close as possible
"D" Minimum
Inlet below minimum water level

Figure 3.31 Recommended Pump Installation - Side View (Ref. 54)

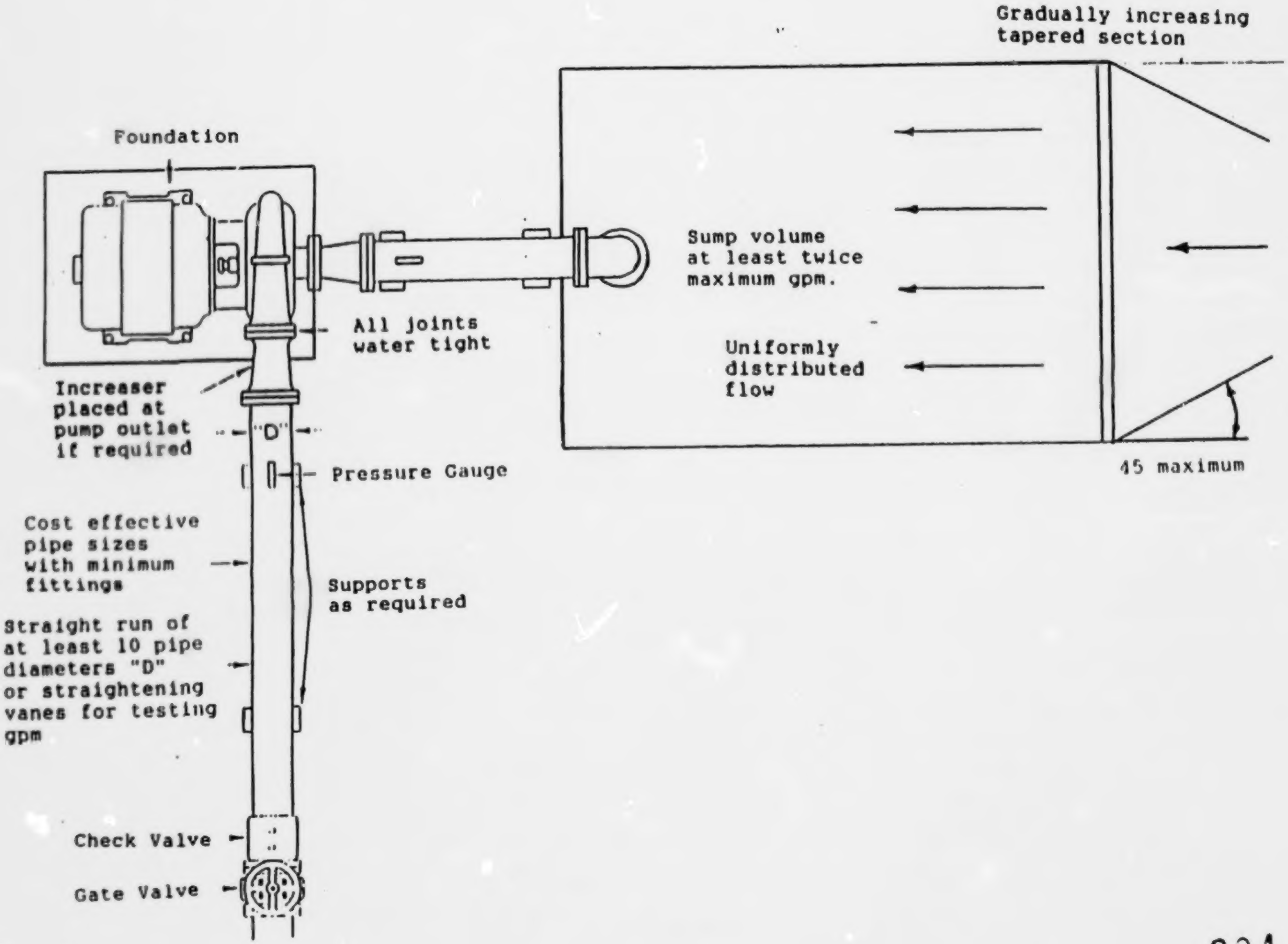

Gradually increasing tapered section
Foundation
Sump volume at least twice maximum gpm.
All joints water tight
Uniformly distributed flow
Increaser placed at pump outlet if required
"D"
Pressure Gauge
45 maximum
Cost effective pipe sizes with minimum fittings
Supports as required
Straight run of at least 10 pipe diameters "D" or straightening vanes for testing gpm
Check Valve
Gate Valve

**Figure 3.32 Recommended Pump Installation - Top View (Ref. 54)**

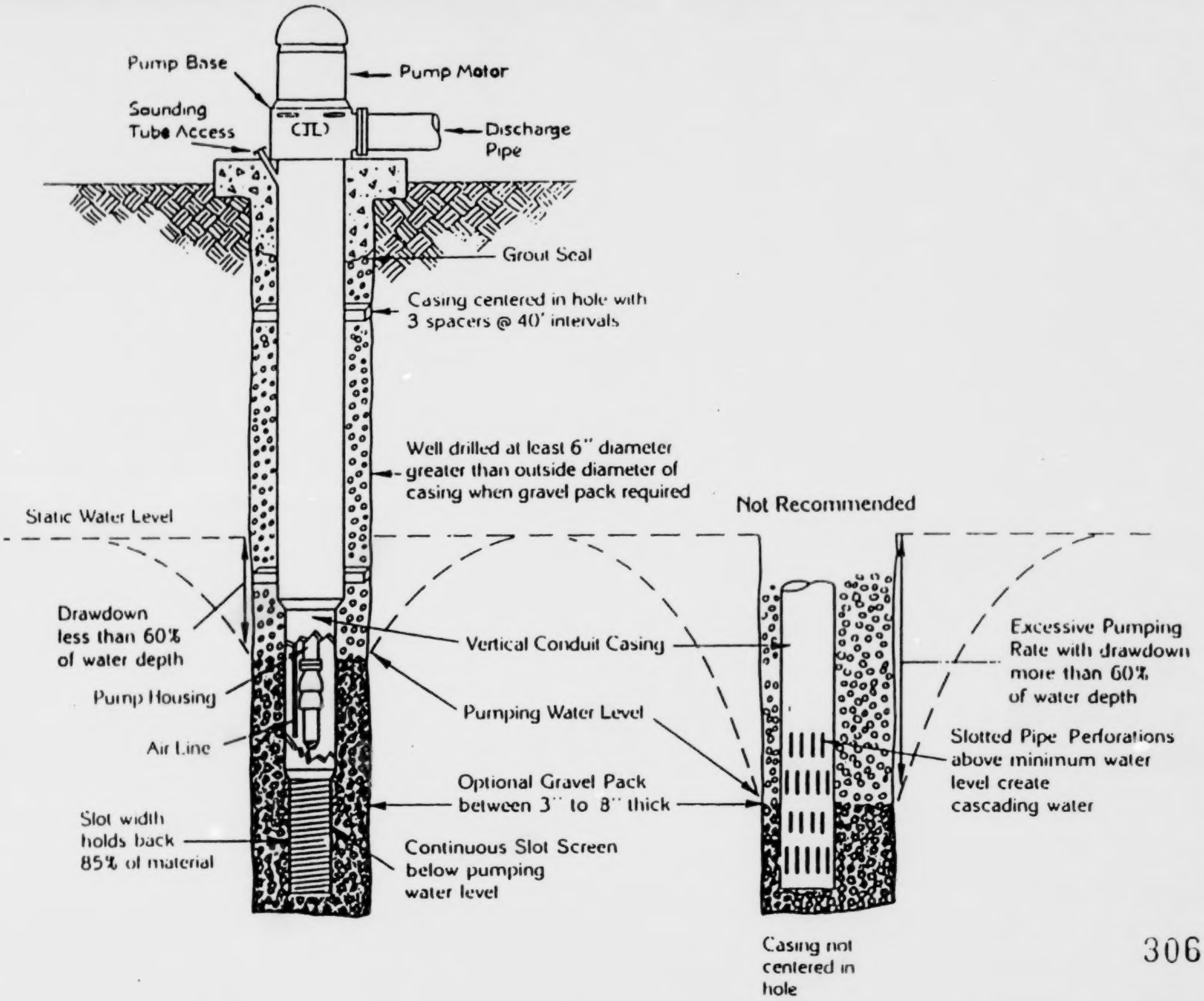

Pump Base
Pump Motor
Sounding Tube Access
Discharge Pipe
Grout Seal
Casing centered in hole with 3 spacers @ 40' intervals
Well drilled at least 6" diameter greater than outside diameter of casing when gravel pack required
Static Water Level
Not Recommended
Drawdown less than 60% of water depth
Vertical Conduit Casing
Excessive Pumping Rate with drawdown more than 60% of water depth
Pump Housing
Pumping Water Level
Air Line
Slotted Pipe Perforations above minimum water level create cascading water
Optional Gravel Pack between 3" to 8" thick
Slot width holds back 85% of material
Continuous Slot Screen below pumping water level
Casing not centered in hole

Figure 3.33 Recommended Pump Installation (Turbine) (Ref. 54)

## Suction Pipe Design

When pumping water from a sump, the proper design of the suction pipe is essential to good pump performance. If a centrifugal pump is designed with a suction pipe that is too long, with too many bends, or too small a diameter, cavitation and poor pump performance may result, much the same as if the pump is located too high above the water surface.

Another critical factor in the suction pipe design is the potential for entrapped air. Improper design can result in "high spots" in the suction piping that trap air and either decrease capacity or periodically permit large air bubbles to enter the pump. The pump may lose its prime, not operate at expected efficiency, or give somewhat erratic discharge and pressure increases. Remember that the suction line is generally under negative pressure, and air release valves cannot be used to remove air.

Improper approach just upstream of the pump entrance may cause flow to enter the pump with spiral velocities or non-uniform flow profiles. The pump will not perform efficiently at the design flow if the water is spiralling.

The guidelines for suction pipe design are formulated with these potential problems in mind. The closer the designer can follow the guidelines, the more trouble-free his or her pumping system will be.

The following recommendations apply to suction pipe design:

1. Keep velocity as low as possible. This is accomplished with larger diameter suction pipe.

2. Avoid bends in the suction pipe but, if bends are necessary, use long radius bends.

3. Keep suction pipe horizontal or continually sloping upward towards the pump. Avoid high spots in the line.

4. If suction pipe is to be reduced in diameter as it enters the pump, use a reducer of a length at least twice the diameter of the small pipe.

5. If the reducer is in a horizontal portion of the pipe, an eccentric reducer, placed with the flat side up, should be used. If a conventional reducer is used, the pipe must be inclined sufficiently to prevent air entrapment.

6. Make sure the joints in the suction pipe are well sealed, otherwise difficulty in pumping will be experienced and air will continually be sucked into the system.

7. Ideally, a straight pipe eight diameters in length just upstream from the pump suction inlet should be used to provide uniform, non-spiralling flow.

8. Suction pipe should be of equal or greater diameter than the pump suction connection.

9. Do not use screens on suction pipe inlet, as they may clog and reduce flow and pressure at impeller inlet. Screens should be placed at some distance from the suction pipe.

10. Use a streamlined suction bell at the inlet of the suction pipe if possible. If not possible, use an inlet that minimizes friction loss.

In summary, keep suction pipe velocities low, minimize bends and friction losses, avoid high spots, and direct the flow into the suction side of the pump with a uniform, non-spiralling flow.

### 3.5.18 Turbine and Propeller Pumps

In general, turbine and propeller pumps are used in situations where no suction piping is required. They are usually placed in a pumping pit with the pumps submerged, so no suction pipe is necessary. As a result, they are generally supplied with a suction bell attached to the bottom of the pump. No suction pipe design is required.

If these types of pumps are to be installed in a situation that would require suction pipe, the same guidelines for design as were advised for centrifugal pumps would be used.

### 3.5.19 Intake Structures

#### Geometry and Positioning

Intake structures, sumps, or pits should be designed to supply an evenly distributed flow of water to the suction bell to prevent vortices that introduce air into the pump, reducing capacity and efficiency. Water should not flow past one pump to reach another pump. The suction bell(s) should be as close as possible to the back wall and not less than the suction bell diameter above the bottom of the sump. False back walls should be installed when the location of driving equipment prevents normal positioning. Centering pumps in the sump leaves large vortex areas behind the pumps. Figure 3.34 shows a top view of a recommended sump design when pumping from a canal, stream, or lake.

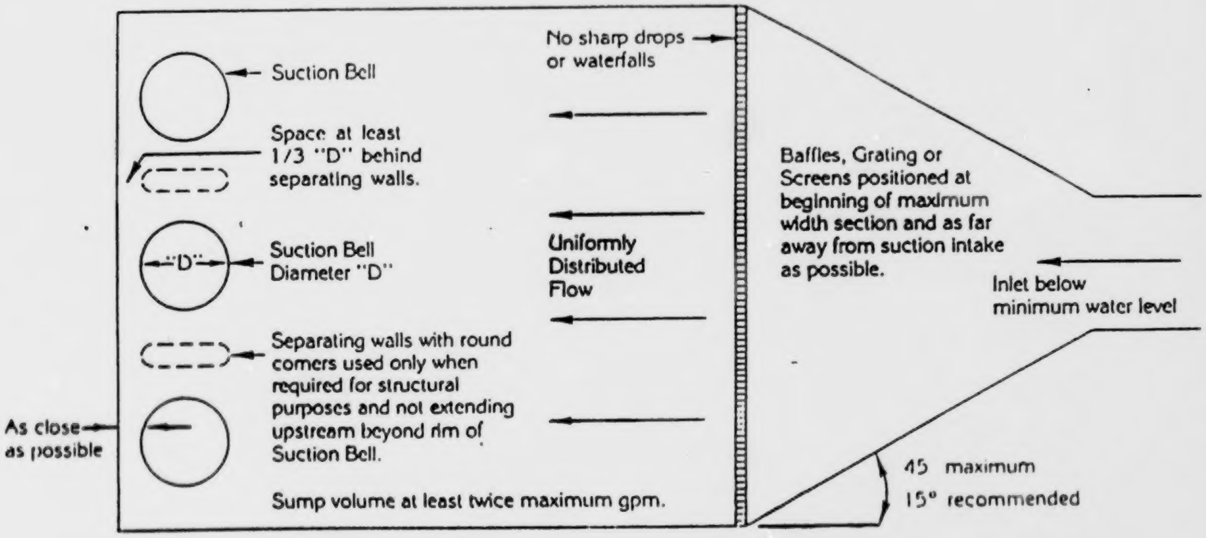

Suction Bell
Space at least 1/3 "D" behind separating walls.
Suction Bell Diameter "D"
"D"
Separating walls with round comers used only when required for structural purposes and not extending upstream beyond rim of Suction Bell.
As close as possible
Sump volume at least twice maximum gpm.
No sharp drops or waterfalls
Uniformly Distributed Flow
Baffles, Grating or Screens positioned at beginning of maximum width section and as far away from suction intake as possible.
Inlet below minimum water level
45 maximum
15° recommended

**Figure 3.34 Recommended Sump Design for Installation of One or More Pumps (Ref. 54)**

Inlet

The sump inlet should be designed with gradually increasing tapered sections, as shown in Figure 3.34. Abrupt changes in size from inlet to sump can cause turbulent, cascading water and a vortex effect, which can cause uneven operation of the pump, air entering the pump, or a vacuum effect, all of which can cause excessive wear on the pump.

The sump inlet should be below the minimum water level and as far away from the pump suction as the sump geometry will permit. No sharp drops or waterfalls should be permitted. The flow should not hit directly on the pump suction, or enter the sump in such a way as to cause rotation of water in the sump.

Protective Screens

Protective screens should be provided whenever there is any possibility of debris entering the pump (or pipe and sprinklers). Screens must be cleaned frequently to allow water to pass through to the pump easily.

Sump Volume

The usable sump volume in cubic meters should equal or exceed twice the volume pumped in one minute. This ensures adequate size to dissipate inflow turbulence.

### 3.5.20 Minimum Water Level

Minimum water level should be adequate to satisfy the particular pump design requirements to prevent cavitation, but suction submergence ought never be less than four times the diameter of the suction pipe (not the bell).

Some examples of pumping plant installations for pumping from streams, ponds, or shallow wells are provided in Figures 3.35 and 3.36.

### 3.5.21 Typical Pump Design

As stated before, a pump should be designed for the maximum crop water requirements and possible operational changes, such as a declining water table. Decreasing efficiency should be anticipated and provided for.

Listed below are typical designs:

1. Centrifugal pump - conditions:

   a. Pumping from a river or reservoir into a canal at a higher elevation.

   b. Area to be irrigated 2 hectares (4.9 acres).

   c. Elevation 912 meters (3000 feet).

   d. Irrigation efficiency = 67%, including conveyance losses.

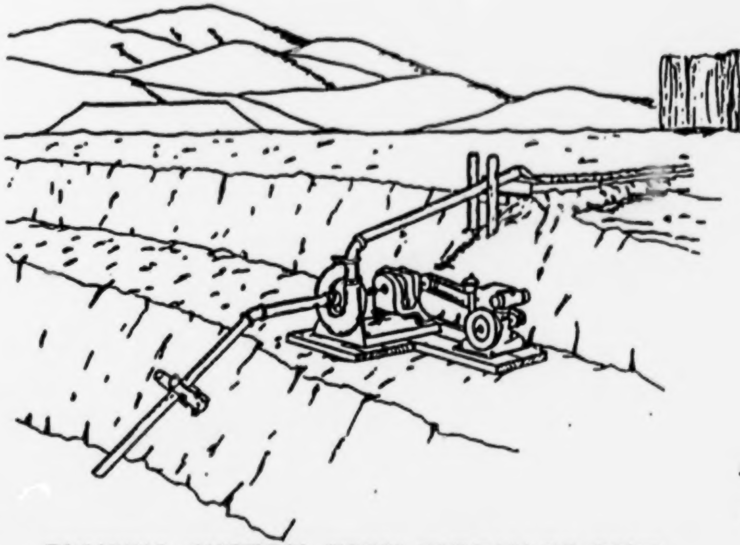
   e. Maximum monthly crop ET in July of 206 mm with no rainfall, or an average of 6.65 mm/day average continuous flow:

      Irg = Irn/Ea x Ec = 6.65/.67 = 9.9 mm = 1 cm
      from QT = 28 a d: Q = 28 x 2 x 1/24= 2.31 L/s (37 gpm)

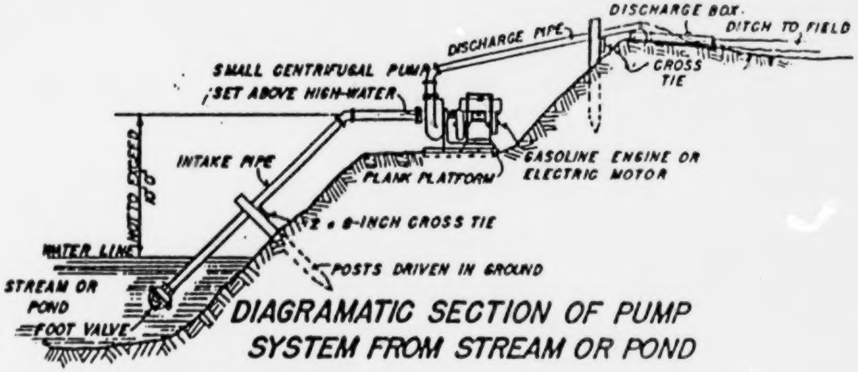
   f. Vertical distance from pump to canal (discharge head) = 62 meters (204 feet).

   g. Vertical distance from water level to pump inlet = 3 meters (10 feet).

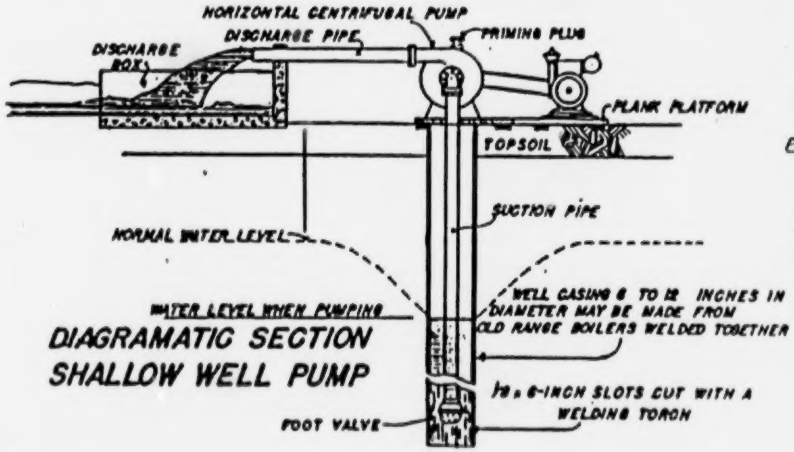
   h. Friction loss = 2 meters (6 feet).



PUMPING SYSTEM FROM STREAM OR POND


DISCHARGE BOX
DITCH TO FIELD
DISCHARGE PIPE
SMALL CENTRIFUGAL PUMP
SET ABOVE HIGH-WATER
CROSS TIE
INTAKE PIPE
GASOLINE ENGINE OR ELECTRIC MOTOR
PLANK PLATFORM
2 x 8-INCH CROSS TIE
WATER LINE
POSTS DRIVEN IN GROUND
STREAM OR POND
FOOT VALVE

DIAGRAMATIC SECTION OF PUMP SYSTEM FROM STREAM OR POND


HORIZONTAL CENTRIFUGAL PUMP
DISCHARGE PIPE
PRIMING PLUG
DISCHARGE BOX
PLANK PLATFORM
TOPSOIL
SUCTION PIPE
NORMAL WATER LEVEL
WELL CASING 8 TO 12 INCHES IN DIAMETER MAY BE MADE FROM OLD RANGE BOILERS WELDED TOGETHER
WATER LEVEL WHEN PUMPING
1/8 x 6-INCH SLOTS CUT WITH A WELDING TORCH
FOOT VALVE

DIAGRAMATIC SECTION SHALLOW WELL PUMP

PUMPING FROM A STREAM OR POND

*Irrigation can be accomplished by pumping from ponds and streams if the lift is not too great. A small horizontal centrifugal pump set not higher than 10 feet above the water and powered by a gasoline engine is the equipment ordinarily used. Pumps of this type are made in sizes which will deliver from 30 to 1,000 gallons or more per minute.*

PUMPING FROM SHALLOW IRRIGATION WELLS

*Along river bottoms where the ground-water level is permanently within 10 feet or less from the surface, small irrigation wells may be successfully used for the irrigation of farm land. Casings for such wells are ordinarily made from sheet metal slotted to permit water to enter. In some instances old range boilers with the ends cut out are welded together and slotted with a welding torch. Small centrifugal pumps set at the ground surface are quite satisfactory.*

Figure 3.35 Designs of Centrifugal Pump Installations

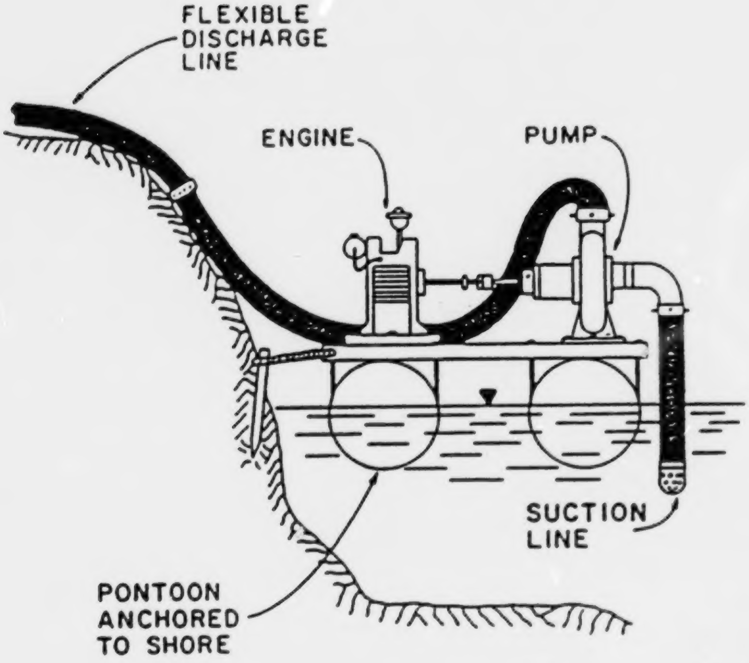

FLEXIBLE DISCHARGE LINE
ENGINE
PUMP
SUCTION LINE
PONTOON ANCHORED TO SHORE

**Figure 3.36 Pump and Driver Mounted on Pontoon in Water Supply (Ref. 58)**

### 3.5.22 Size of Pumps

TDH = 62 + 3 + 2 = 67 meters, or 204 + 6 + 10 = 220 feet

$$\text{WHP} = \frac{\text{liters/sec x TDH (meters)}}{76}, \text{ or } \frac{2.31 \times 67}{76} = 2.04$$

$$\text{BHP} = \frac{2.03}{0.70} = 2.9 \Rightarrow 3 \text{ BHP}$$

If the pump is powered by an electric motor, a 3 BHP direct coupled motor would probably be selected.

If an internal combustion engine (diesel or gasoline) were used, a gearhead would probably be used to transmit the power and the operating conditions could be obtained by throttle adjustment.

In this case, the motor will also have to overcome losses at the gearhead.

The Peace Corps Volunteers working with irrigation need not be experts on pumps. They must know, however, the fundamentals of design, installation, and maintenance. This will enable them to provide the basic specifications to the supplier and supervise the installation. A pump supplier can provide the correct pump and accessories if provided with information on the flow, head required, the power source to be used, and the configuration for installation. The technicians (irrigation specialist) should in all cases demand that the pump curves and maintenance instructions come with the pump. Often, the pumps in stock are not the correct ones, and the Volunteer should not settle for pumps that are extremely oversized or undersized or which do not operate with good efficiencies.

### 3.5.23 Costs

In considering the economics of any pumping system, all costs and benefits should be included. Initial or capital investment costs are important because they are usually high, and the purchaser is often required to finance this capital investment by obtaining a loan. The best measure of the economics of a system is to compare the annual costs with the annual returns.

Annual costs should include:

- interest, depreciation, insurance, and taxes,
- repairs and maintenance,
- operating costs (energy),
- irrigation labor costs, and
- production and fixed costs.

The expected life of various components used in pump irrigation is included in Appendix B. In irrigation by pumping, the annual energy and maintenance costs may be significantly higher than the amortized capital costs. Therefore, it is extremely important that good estimates of these costs be made before a pumping plant is purchased.

### 3.5.24 Evaluation of Pumping Plants

Proper design of pumping plants is only the first step to successful operation. Equipment that is expected to last 10 to 20 years requires good maintenance. Inadequate maintenance causes shorter life of equipment, operational delays, and increases in the overall operating costs.

Pumping plant evaluations may be conducted to determine the following:

- discharge of pump,
- discharge and pressure at normal operating conditions and under varying conditions,
- pump adjustment for optimum efficiencies,
- well characteristics,
- whether the pumping plant is operating as designed (quality control),
- whether the pump and power unit are properly matched, and
- problems within components of the pumping plant or its management.

When the pump is new, and periodically after that, it should be checked. As a minimum, a pressure gauge should be installed at the outlet side of the pump to determine whether it is generating the desired pressure or head. If the pump has an open discharge into a canal or pond, the pressure will be zero and the flow rate will be the best indicator of whether the pump provides an adequate or close to the design flow rate. When possible, measurements of both discharge and head will provide a good indication of how the pump is performing.

### 3.5.25 Rower Pump

The Rower pump (Figure 3.25) is a reciprocating-action piston pump whose PVC cylinder is inclined at an angle of 30° to the horizontal. A unique feature of this pump is that it is fitted with a surge chamber at the pump suction. This absorbs the impact of the accelerating and decelerating column of water within the tube-well pipe and so provides a steadier upward flow of water. This in turn enables the operator to make easier and quicker strokes. A person can pump 50% more water in a given time using a pump with a surge chamber fitted. The addition of the surge chamber enables children (who would otherwise be too small to operate a conventional hand pump) to pump water quite easily. The pump is being used to irrigate small plots in Bangladesh and other countries.

### 3.5.26 Hydraulic Ram

The hydraulic ram is a pumping device for lifting water to heights of over 100 m. It works solely on the power of falling water carried in a drive pipe. It is completely automatic and has an exceptional record of trouble-free operation. It can be constructed from commercial pipe fittings and adapts well to low input rural use. The disadvantage in the use of the hydraulic ram, in irrigation in particular, is the low water yields that it produces. Figure 3.37 shows the simple assembly of a hydraulic ram and the necessary building materials.

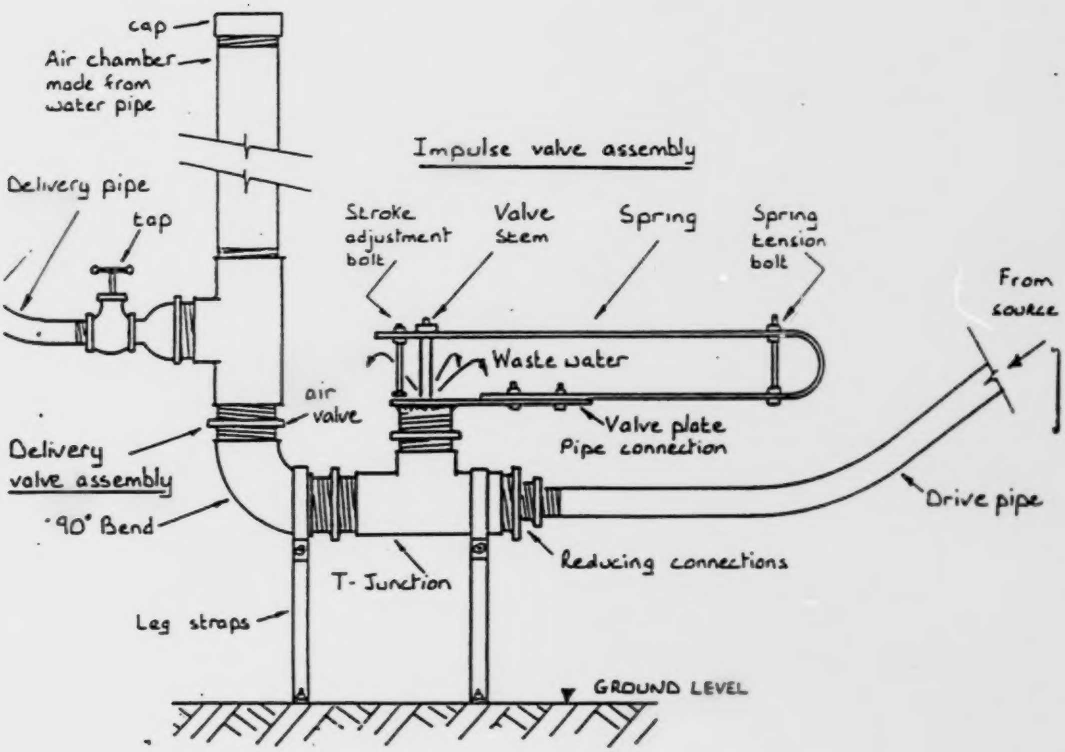

cap
Air chamber made from water pipe
Impulse valve assembly
Delivery pipe
tap
Stroke adjustment bolt
Valve stem
Spring
Spring tension bolt
From source
Waste water
air valve
Valve plate
Pipe connection
Delivery valve assembly
90° Bend
Drive pipe
Reducing connections
T-Junction
Leg straps
GROUND LEVEL

**Figure 3.37 Hydraulic Ram (Ref. 55)**

## 3.6 WELLS

A well is a structure that consists of an open hole that penetrates into the water bearing strata below the surface of the ground. The walls of the well are kept open by a liner or casing, which is typically made of plastic, metal, or rock. Holes in this casing (the so-called screened portion) permit water to enter the well from which it is extracted. Wells may be dug by hand, drilled mechanically with hand or machine tools, or the casing may be driven into the ground, creating the hole as it penetrates. The hydraulics, hydrogeology, and methods of well drilling are generally too complex and extensive to be treated in this manual. The irrigation specialist who must know more about wells should review References 5, 13, and 15. In this manual, some basic concepts of well drilling are discussed. Details are presented on the construction of only driven wells and hand drilled wells. These wells are low cost and, in areas where water tables are within 30 feet (10 meters) of the surface, will generally provide sufficient water for irrigating garden-sized farm plots.

### 3.6.1. Methods of Drilling: Percussion Drilling

In percussion drilling, a heavy bit is repeatedly lifted and dropped, progressively boring through the earth. In rotary drilling, the drilling results from the continuous scraping of the bit under constant pressure. The hole is cleaned out as the drilling progresses, either with a drilling fluid (mud), with high velocity air or, in auger drilling, by the mechanical lifting of the auger.

Cable tool drilling is one of the most common methods of percussion drilling. It is usually done by commercial well drillers with motorized equipment. In some countries, however, manual means of raising and lowering the bit have been developed.

In cable tool drilling, a chisel faced bit is repeatedly raised and dropped. The bit breaks and pulverizes the materials. A slurry of water and cuttings, which is formed by the drilling action, is periodically removed by a bailer. Water is continually added to the borehole as needed. With manual methods, the 40 to 80 kg drill is lifted and dropped through a tripod and pulley arrangement operated by four to six people.

Wells may often be constructed by communities or individuals, without the need for commercial drillers. The three types of wells commonly encountered, which can be constructed relatively inexpensively, are the driven wells, hand augered wells, and hand dug wells. The description of driven and hand auger techniques that follows is extracted from "Appropriate Well-Drilling Technologies" by the National Water Well Association

(Ref. 15). Sketches of other types of drilling equipment useful in drilling small capacity irrigation wells are included in Figures 3.38 through 3.44.

## EQUIPMENT AND METHOD - Driven Wells

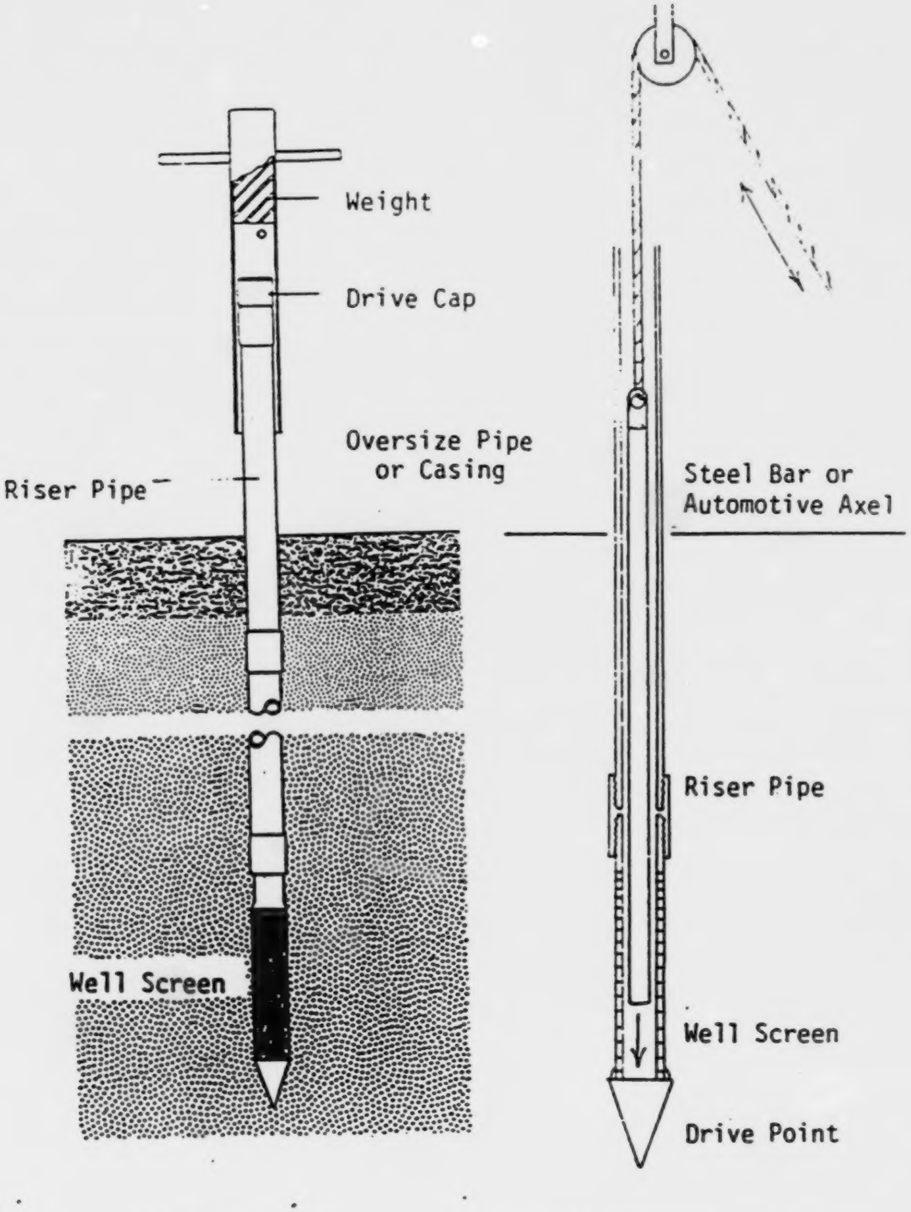
Whenever the water table lies at shallow depths (23 feet or 7 meters), a well screen equipped with a drive point may be driven through the overlying soil and into the water-bearing formation. This method employs a drive hammer. Three basic types of drive hammers are in common use: (1) the hand driver, consisting of a sliding weight and an attached pipe that fits over the riser pipe (Figure 3.38), (2) an internal driving bar, which strikes directly upon the driving point (Figure 3.38), or (3) a sliding weight and drive stem or guide that attaches to the uppermost riser pipe coupling (Figure 3.39).

The basic equipment required for a driving rig ranges from a 4-foot (1.2 meter) section of oversized pipe (used as a sliding hand driver) to more elaborate systems requiring a tripod, pulley, rope, and driving bar or drive stem and sliding hammer. The driving rig will also require two or three pipe wrenches and a shallow well hand pump to develop and remove soil debris from the well screen.

## Geological Applications

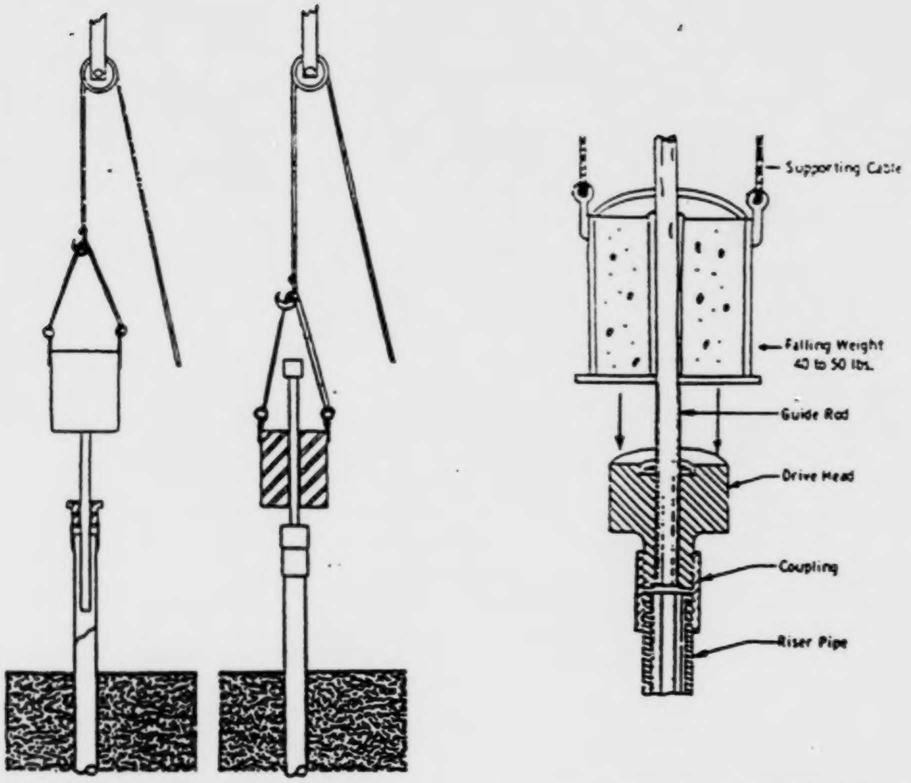
Driven wells are generally one of the most efficient methods of drilling whenever the water table is within 23 feet (7 meters) of the surface and the soil consists principally of sand with minor quantities of silt and clay. Under ideal soil conditions, a small diameter well point may be driven to a depth of 25 feet (7.6 meters) in 15 minutes. In heavy soils such as stiff clay, or soils that contain numerous boulders, drilling with an auger or percussion bit is faster than driving with a well point.

Hand-driven well points of 1 1/4 to 2 inches (3 to 5 centimeters) in diameter can be driven up to 25 feet (7.6 meters). If heavy, 100-300 lb. (45 to 135 kg) drive hammer assemblies are used, 4-inch (10 centimeters) well points and casings can be driven to depths of 33 to 49 feet (10 to 15 meters).


Weight
Drive Cap
Oversize Pipe or Casing
Riser Pipe
Well Screen
Steel Bar or Automotive Axel
Riser Pipe
Well Screen
Drive Point

(a) Hand Driver (b) Internal Rod Driver

**Figure 3.38 Methods for Driving Well Points (Ref. 15)**


Supporting Cable
Falling Weight 40 to 50 lbs.
Guide Rod
Drive Head
Coupling
Riser Pipe

internal guide drive hammer

drive stem with sliding hammer

cross-section of sliding hammer and drive stem

These assemblies provide an effective means for driving both well screens and casings.

**Figure 3.39 Heavy Duty Sliding Hammer and Drive Stem Assemblies (Ref. 15)**

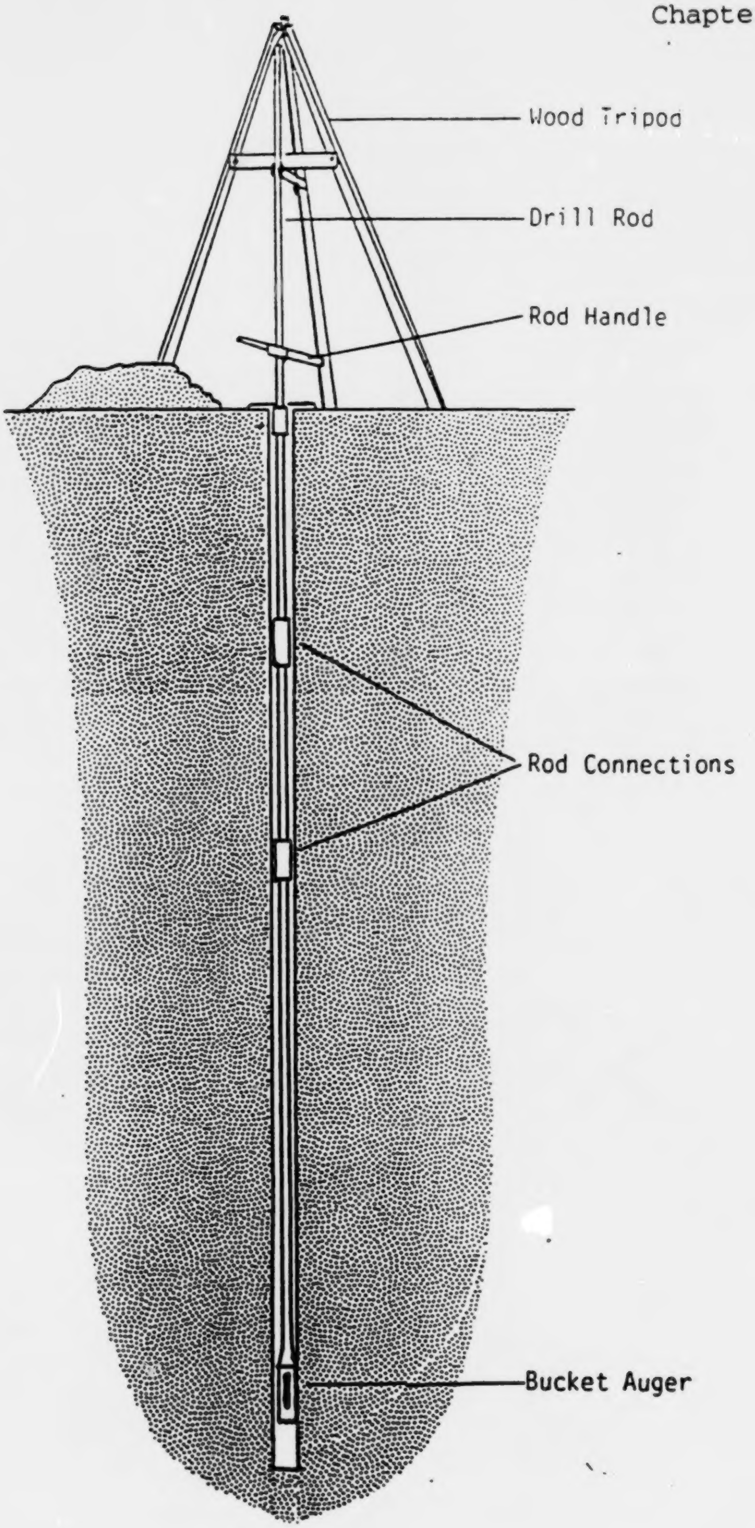
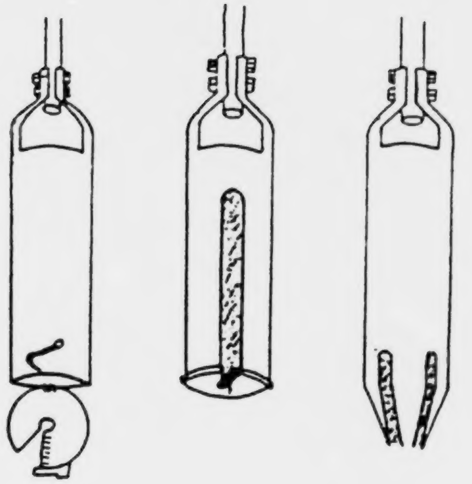
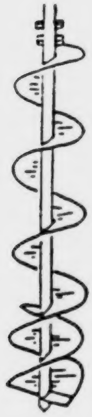

Wood Tripod
Drill Rod
Rod Handle
Rod Connections
Bucket Auger

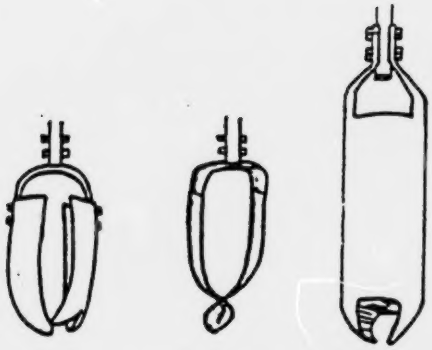
**Figure 3.40 Hand Auger Drilling (Ref. 15)**



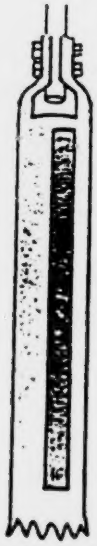
(a) Sand Augers for Non-Cohesive Soils



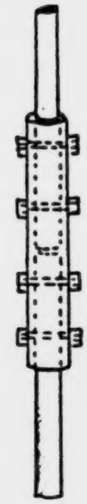
Helical Auger



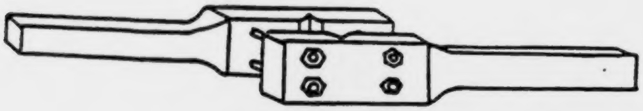
(b) Cohesive Soil Augers



Bucket Auger

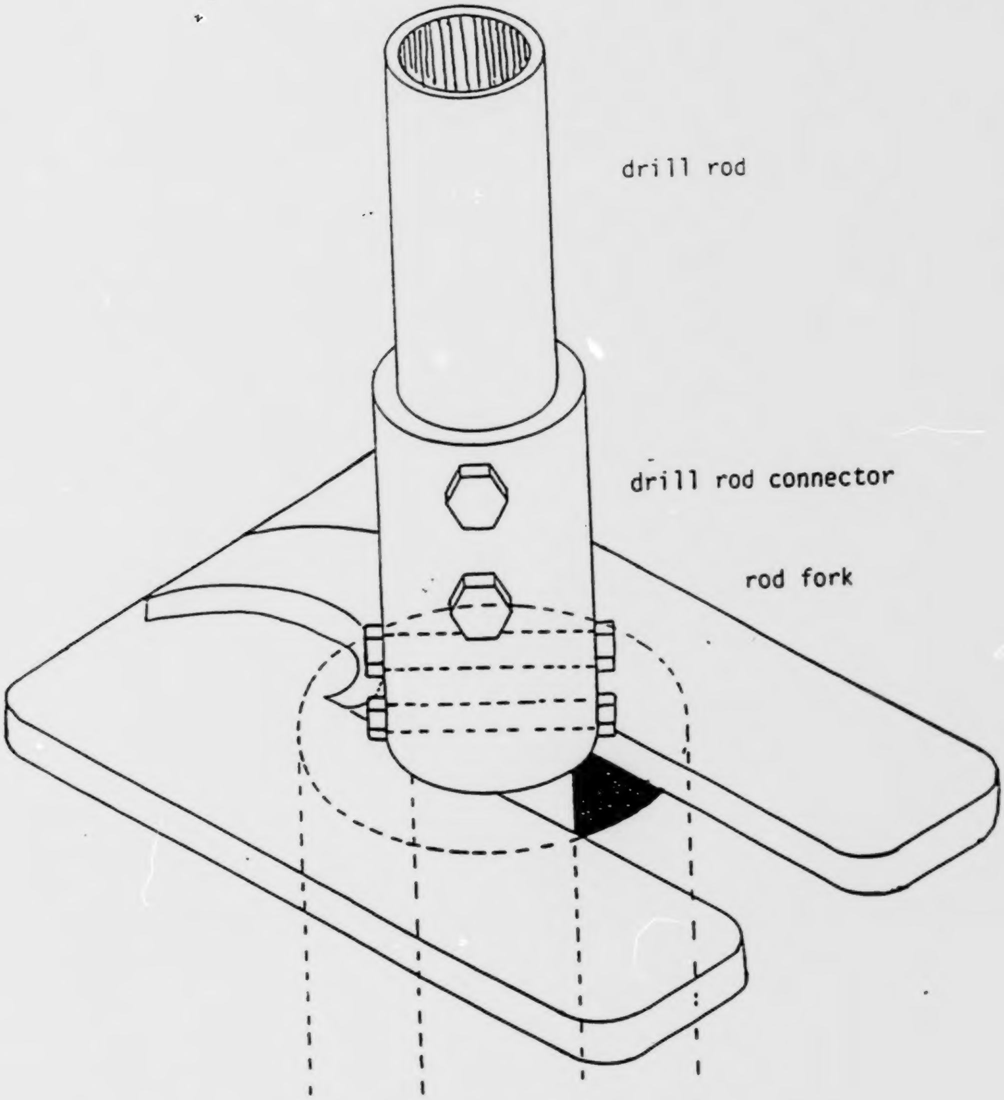


Typical Drill Rod Connection



Hard-Wood Rod Handle

**Figure 3.41 Typical Hand Augers and Equipment (Ref. 15)**


drill rod
drill rod connector
rod fork

When placed around a drill rod or auger, the fork acts as a support for the drilling tools. In this manner, rods and augers may be added or removed from the drill string with little danger of dropping sections down the bore hole.

**Figure 3.42 Rod or Auger Fork Locally Fabricated From 1/4" (6 mm) Steel Plate (Ref. 15)**

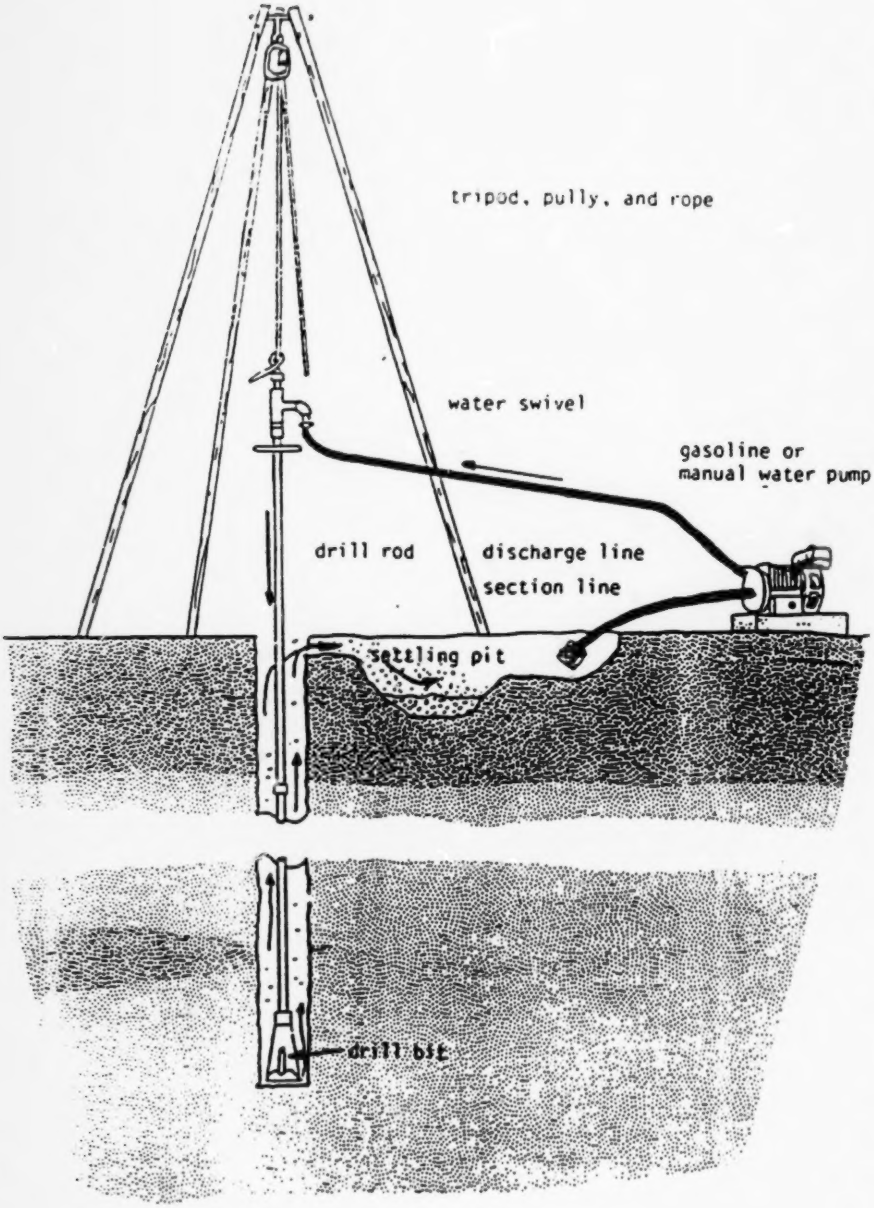
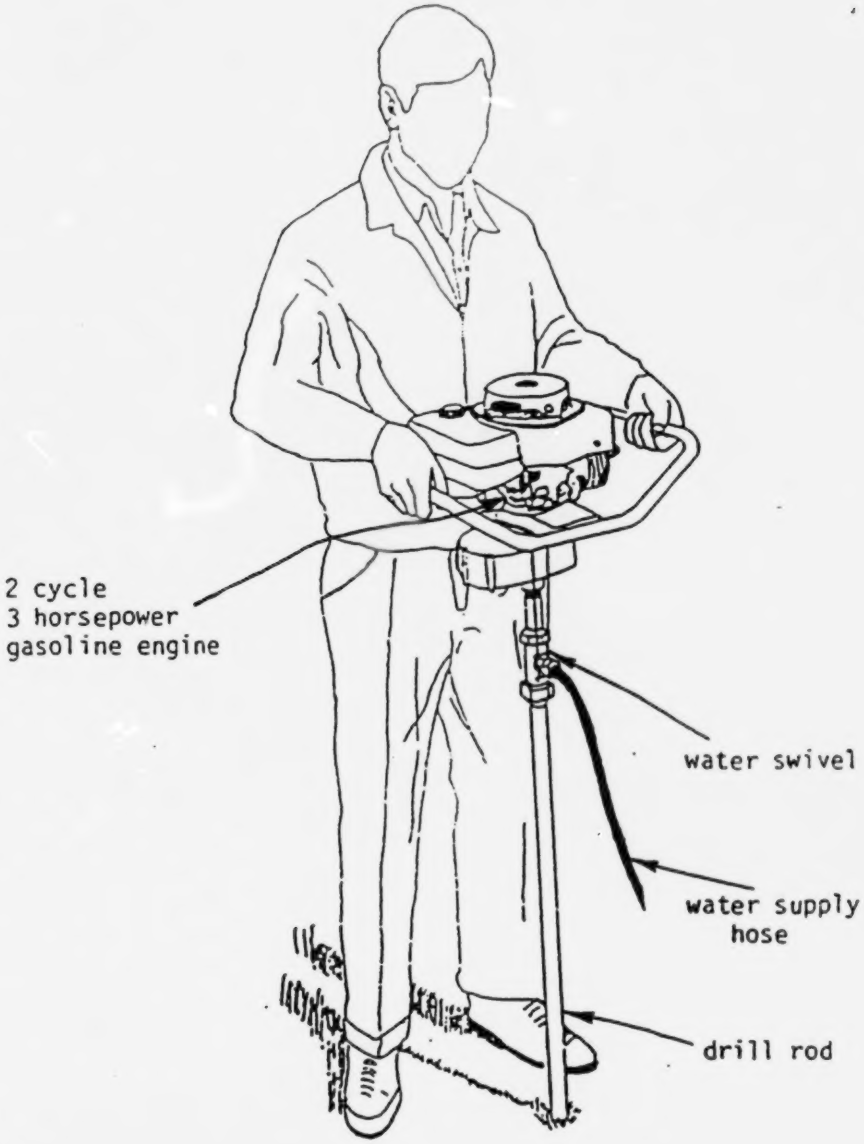

tripod, pully, and rope
water swivel
gasoline or
manual water pump
drill rod
discharge line
section line
settling pit
drill bit

Figure 3.43 Manual Jetting Equipment (Ref. 15)


2 cycle
3 horsepower
gasoline engine
water swivel
water supply
hose
drill rod

One person may operate this equipment to depths of 50 feet (15 m). Greater depths may be attained when the engine and drill rod are suspended from a tripod.

**Figure 3.44 Hydra-Drill (Ref. 15)**

### Labor Requirements

Given the proper soil and water table conditions, small diameter driven wells may be completed by one to two unskilled persons. Large diameter driven wells require a heavy-duty drive hammer and a tripod assembly. The crew necessary for operation of this equipment consists of six people for manual methods, and two or three for a motorized cathead system.

### Fabrication Skills

All well point driving equipment can be constructed easily from locally available scrap pipe or steel bars and standard pipe fittings. The fabrication of simple drive hammers requires basic metal working and blacksmith abilities. Construction of heavy-duty drive hammers, which weigh in excess of 50 lbs. (22.5 kg), will require the aid of an electric arc welder or basic metal casting techniques.

### Cost of Equipment

Excluding the initial cost of a well screen, drive point, and riser pipe, a locally constructed hand drive system that requires no tripod will be relatively inexpensive. Heavy-duty systems may cost more for the fabrication of both drive hammer and drive stem, depending on the type of tripod used. If a driving rig incorporates a motorized cathead, the system price could increase again. A hub-driven cathead would cost considerably less but would require a support vehicle.

## 3.6.2 Methods of Drilling: Hand Auger Rig

### EQUIPMENT AND METHOD - Hand auger rig

The hand auger method of drilling is one of the oldest and most basic forms of low-cost labor intensive well drilling. In hand augering, the drilling action is applied by manually rotating a cutting blade or auger (Figure 3.40). As drilling progresses, the auger fills with soil and must be periodically lifted to the surface and emptied. Drilling by this method is fairly rapid for the first 20 feet (6 m). Thereafter, the number of drill rod sections that must be coupled and uncoupled each time the auger is brought to the surface adds considerably to the drilling time.

The basic components of a hand auger rig are:

- support tripod,
- drill rod, fork, and auger handle,
- auger,
- rope and pulley,
- sand bailer,
- temporary casing to case hole through caving soil,

and
- drill bit to break up hard soil and boulders.

Most light duty hand auger drilling systems utilize an inexpensive wood or pipe tripod.

Drill rods are constructed from locally available 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) galvanized or black iron pipe. All connections between drill rods and augers are of box and pin-type construction (Figure 3.41). Joining pins for the connections are made from either toggle bolts or standard nut and bolt assemblies. Both pin systems have proven to be highly reliable.

To avoid dropping a disconnected section of drill rod down the borehole, a rod fork or auger fork is slid under a coupling to support and retain lower sections of the drill stem (Figure 3.42). This rod fork may be constructed from a 1/4 inch (6 millimeter) steel plate, or from a notched hardwood board. In either case, the notch must be wide enough to slide around the drill rod, but narrow enough to retain a coupling.

An auger handle is constructed by clamping two hardwood handle sections around the drill rod (Figure 3.41). As the borehole advances, the bolts are loosened, and the handle is relocated to a more convenient height.

Auger construction falls into two main categories, those for use in cohesive soils and those for non-cohesive soils. The cohesive soil augers (Figure 3.41) are designed for use in soils that adhere or stick together. These soils commonly contain a mixture of sand, silt, and clay. Augers designed for use in non-cohesive soils (Figure 3.41) are best suited to loose sand and gravel formations.

Each type of auger can be produced locally using discarded sections of casing, pipe, sheet metal, or perhaps the tubular section of an automobile drive shaft. Local soil types determine the type of construction used. In general, the best performance in soft cohesive soils can be obtained with an open blade or helical auger. Hard clay soils may be excavated with the bucket auger. In non-cohesive soil, the tapered tube auger is most effective (Figure 3.41).

In addition to a tripod, rope and pulley are also primary components of the drilling equipment. On a hand auger rig, a rope and pulley are often used to handle the drill rods when a long pull of 20 or more feet (6 meters) is necessary to raise the auger. This long pull saves time and eliminates the need for disconnecting numerous drill rods.

A rope and pulley are also necessary to handle other drilling equipment such as well casings, wet bailers, and percussion bits. These accessories provide a useful means for continuing the well when water saturated or hard-pan formations are encountered.

The most frequently used wet bailer on a hand auger rig is the flap valve bailer, also used in bail-down drilling.

A percussion drill bit is also commonly used in conjunction with hand auger equipment. Its ability to break up and loosen hard soil and boulders that cannot be excavated with a hand auger permits drilling under a wide variety of conditions.

### Geological Applications

Hand augered wells are particularly well adapted to alluvial deposits consisting primarily of silt, clay, sand, and limited quantities of gravel. Maximum depths for hand augered wells range up to 122 meters (400 feet); however, normal hand augering is best suited to maximum depths ranging from 15 to 25 meters (49 to 80 feet). Hand auger wells of these depths were used for an extensive hydrological survey of specific community well sites in Tanzania. Other significant hand auger well projects include wells in the following locations: Western Pakistan, Vietnam, Sri Lanka, India, Togo and the Ivory Coast Region of Africa, and in Ecuador.

### Labor Requirements

The operation of a hand auger rig requires a minimum crew of four to five people. One member of the crew must be trained in basic well drilling, as well as development techniques. The remainder of the crew may be unskilled local labor. Under ideal conditions, inexperienced crews have drilled to depths of 49 feet (15 meters) in a single morning. However, greater drilling depths will require a considerably longer period due to the time and effort spent in removing and emptying the auger.

### Fabrication Skills

All hand auger tools and equipment are easily produced using locally available sheet metal and pipe.

## 3.6.3 Other Drilling Equipment

Other types of equipment used in drilling operations are shown in Figures 3.45. and 3.46.

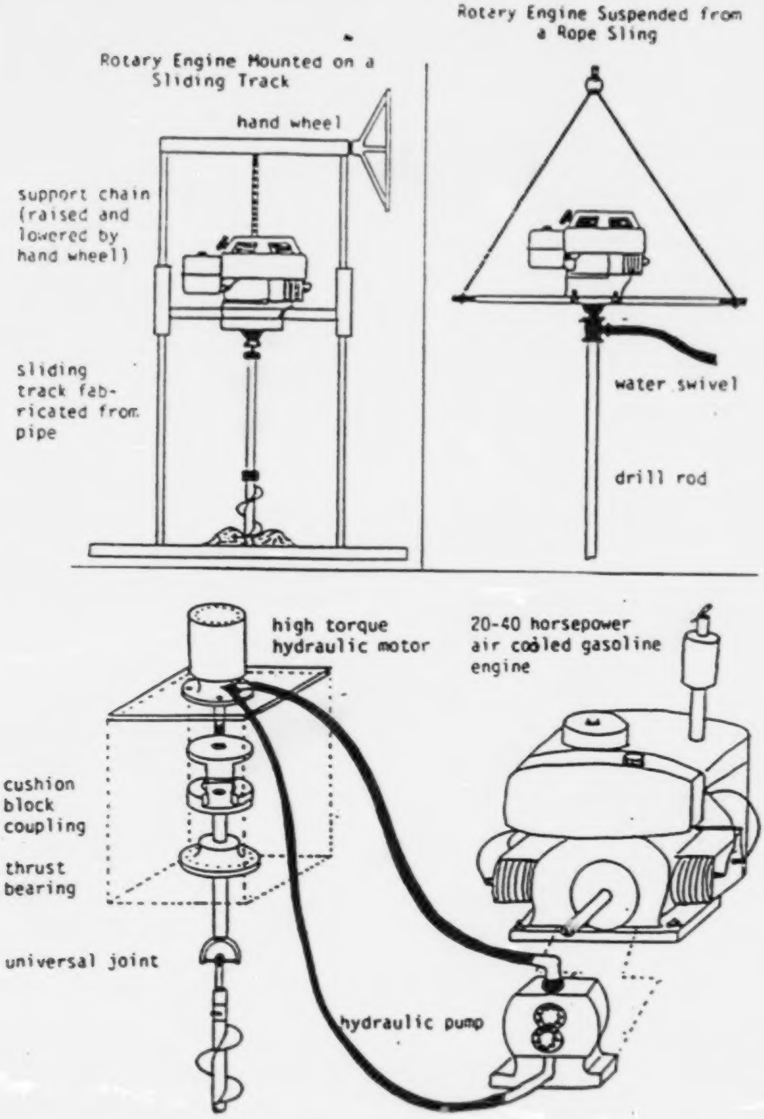

Rotary Engine Mounted on a Sliding Track
hand wheel
support chain (raised and lowered by hand wheel)
sliding track fabricated from pipe
Rotary Engine Suspended from a Rope Sling
water swivel
drill rod
high torque hydraulic motor
20-40 horsepower air cooled gasoline engine
cushion block coupling
thrust bearing
universal joint
hydraulic pump

**Figure 3.45 Drilling Equipment (Ref. 15)**

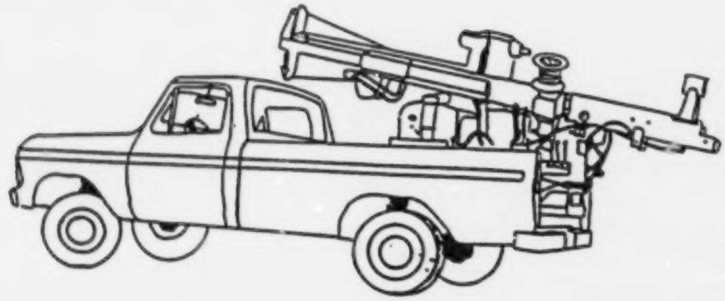


**Figure 3.46 Hydraulic Rotary Rig Mounted on a 1-Ton Pickup Truck (Ref. 15)**

### 3.6.4 Hand Dug Wells

Hand dug wells have been used through the centuries as a source of water for domestic and irrigation uses. Figure 3.47 shows a schematic of one such well. Most hand dug wells are less than 20 meters in depth, even though some wells have been constructed deeper than 60 meters.

The use of hand dug wells is limited to areas with fairly shallow water tables (generally 20 meters or less), in contrast to some wells that can be drilled to several meters. The construction of hand dug wells is a very slow process, especially in rock formations that require blasting for the penetration process. These wells are generally limited to small flow rates, as the wells generally do not penetrate deep below the water table. Fluctuations in water tables will usually cause significant variations in the yield of the well.

Constructing a hand dug well is a labor-intensive process requiring a minimum of five workers for wells deeper than 5 meters. In loose soil, the excavation speed may be 1/3 to 1 meter per day, while in rock formations it may be even slower. Hand dug wells should be dug during the dry season, when the water table is lowest.

Details on the construction of hand dug wells are presented in ICE Manual M-9, entitled "Wells Construction." This manual should be considered indispensable for Volunteers who are contemplating well construction for the development of water supplies.

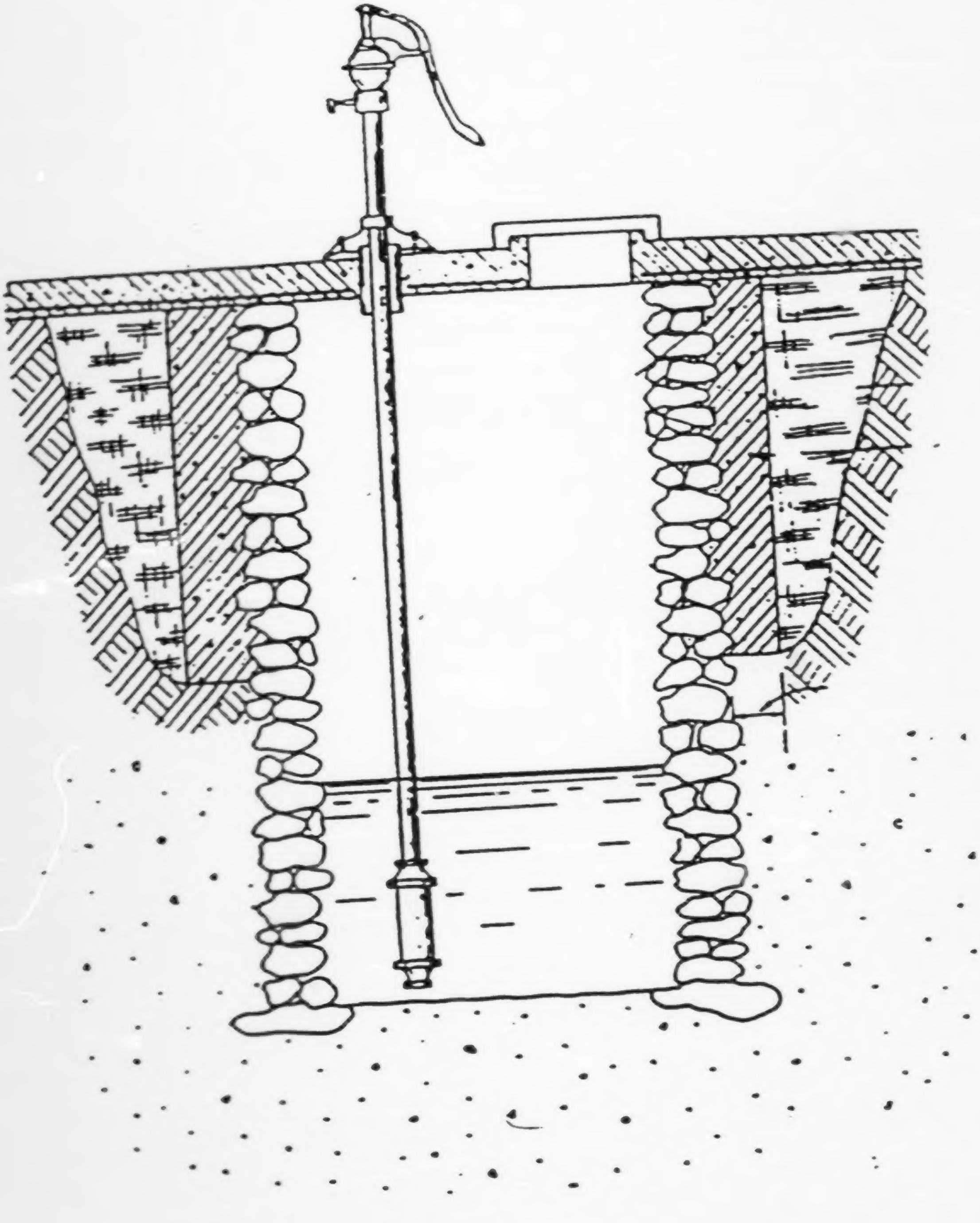


Figure 3.47 Hand Dug Well

# CHAPTER 4

# ESTIMATING IRRIGATION REQUIREMENTS

4.1 Introduction
4.2 Reference Crop Evapotranspiration
4.3 FAO Crop Coefficients
4.4 Dependable Precipitation
4.5 Effective Precipitation
4.6 Ground water Contributions to Crop Requirements
4.7 Gross Irrigation Requirements

References - Primary: (11), (12), (22), (44)

## 4.1 INTRODUCTION

Proper irrigation design and management requires that net and gross irrigation requirements be accurately estimated. This information is necessary for determining the timing and amounts of irrigation (irrigation schedules) and the design capacities of the water storage and distribution systems.

Crop water use and requirements, rainfall, stored soil water and contributions of ground water to the crop needs are generally expressed as equivalent depths of water over the crop growing area (e.g., cm or mm). In determining delivery requirements, the crop irrigation requirements are then usually expressed in terms of volume per unit time or flow rate (e.g., liters/sec).

The net irrigation requirement for a crop maintained without water stress for any time period can be determined through the following relationship:

$$Irn = ETc - Pe - Gw - Wb$$

where:

Irn is the net irrigation requirement for a given crop.
ETc is the crop evapotranspiration or crop water use under no stress conditions.
Pe is the effective precipitation.
Gw is the ground water contribution.
Wb is the available stored soil water at the beginning of the period.

Evapotranspiration is the process by which water is transferred from the plant and soil into the atmosphere. It includes evaporation of water from the plant and soil surfaces, as well as transpiration of water through the plant tissue.

Evapotranspiration rates or amounts are determined by climatic, plant, and soil conditions. Solar radiation, temperatures, wind, and humidity are the primary climatic influences. Crop ground cover, physiology, and metabolism are some of the plant factors. Soil moisture, composition, and salinity also affect evapotranspiration rates.

Irrigation requirements are usually estimated with the assumption that the crop(s) will be kept at or near optimum growth conditions. The crop evapotranspiration (ETc) can be estimated by multiplying a reference crop evapotranspiration (ETo) by corresponding crop coefficients (Kc). The relationship is usually expressed as:

$$ETc = K_c \times ETo$$

## 4.2 REFERENCE CROP EVAPOTRANSPIRATION (ETo)

A method known as the Hargreaves Temperature Method, which requires only maximum and minimum temperature data, has been used in many developing countries for determining ETo (mm). The equation is:

$$ETo = .0023\ Ra\ Td^{1/2}\ (T^{\circ}C + 17.8)$$

Ra is the evaporation equivalent of extraterrestrial solar radiation (mm per day), which is a function of latitude and time of year. It can be obtained from Table 4.1.

Td is the difference between average daily maximum and minimum temperatures for the period in $^{\circ}$C.

$T^{\circ}C$ is the average temperature in $^{\circ}$C for the period, i.e., $T^{\circ}C = (Tmx + Tmn)/2$.

The relationship between crop ET and the reference crop evapotranspiration is affected by climatic conditions, soil profile moisture, soil surface moisture, crop variety, canopy, stage of growth, and other factors.

Maximum and minimum temperature data are the most common and reliable data obtained in field meteorologic stations worldwide. The irrigation Volunteer should be able to access this data, along with precipitation data, from the local or national weather service.

**Example**: In the Azua region of the Dominican Republic, the Ciaza station (latitude 18° north) has weather records from 1981 to 1988 that include the maximum and minimum temperature data. The average maximum and minimum temperatures and precipitation from the station and the extraterrestrial radiation (Ra) from Table 4.1 (for a latitude of 18°) are as follows:

| Month | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep | Oct | Nov | Dec |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Tmax ($^{\circ}$C) | 30.5 | 30.2 | 31.8 | 30.8 | 30.6 | 30.5 | 32.4 | 32.1 | 31.9 | 32.0 | 31.3 | 31.3 |
| Tmin ($^{\circ}$C) | 20.1 | 19.0 | 19.9 | 20.8 | 22.2 | 22.4 | 22.6 | 21.6 | 23.3 | 21.7 | 22.8 | 19.7 |
| Precip[1] | 10.0 | 13.0 | 15.0 | 38.0 | 121 | 67.0 | 51.0 | 77.0 | 124 | 138 | 55.0 | 16.0 |
| Ra | 11.6 | 13.0 | 14.6 | 15.6 | 16.1 | 16.1 | 16.1 | 15.8 | 14.9 | 13.6 | 12.0 | 11.1 |

[1] (mm/m)

ETo for January:

$$\begin{aligned} ETo &= .0023\ (11.6)\ (30.5-20.1)^{1/2}\ [(30.5+20.1)/2 + 17.8] \\ &= .0023\ (11.6)\ (10.4)^{1/2}\ (25.3 + 17.8) \\ &= .0023\ (11.6)\ (3.22)\ (43) = 3.7 \text{ mm/day} \end{aligned}$$

**Table 4.1 Extraterrestrial Radiation (Ra) Expressed in Equivalent Evaporation in mm/day (Ref. 12)**

| Northern Hemisphere | | | | | | | | | | | | | Southern Hemisphere | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | June | July | Aug | Sept | Oct | Nov | Dec | Lat | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | June | July | Aug | Sept | Oct | Nov | Dec |
| 3.8 | 6.1 | 9.4 | 12.7 | 15.8 | 17.1 | 16.4 | 14.1 | 10.9 | 7.4 | 4.5 | 3.2 | 50° | 17.5 | 14.7 | 10.9 | 7.0 | 4.2 | 3.1 | 3.5 | 5.5 | 8.9 | 12.9 | 16.5 | 18.2 |
| 4.3 | 6.6 | 9.8 | 13.0 | 15.9 | 17.2 | 16.5 | 14.3 | 11.2 | 7.8 | 5.0 | 3.7 | 48 | 17.6 | 14.9 | 11.2 | 7.5 | 4.7 | 3.5 | 4.0 | 6.0 | 9.3 | 13.2 | 16.6 | 18.2 |
| 4.9 | 6.6 | 9.8 | 13.0 | 15.9 | 17.2 | 16.5 | 14.5 | 11.5 | 8.3 | 5.5 | 4.3 | 46 | 17.7 | 15.1 | 11.5 | 7.9 | 5.2 | 4.0 | 4.4 | 6.5 | 9.7 | 13.4 | 16.7 | 18.3 |
| 5.3 | 7.5 | 10.6 | 13.7 | 16.1 | 17.2 | 16.6 | 14.7 | 11.9 | 8.7 | 6.0 | 4.7 | 44 | 17.8 | 15.5 | 12.2 | 8.8 | 6.1 | 4.9 | 5.4 | 7.4 | 10.6 | 14.0 | 16.8 | 18.3 |
| 5.9 | 8.1 | 11.0 | 14.0 | 16.2 | 17.3 | 16.7 | 15.0 | 12.2 | 9.1 | 6.5 | 5.2 | 42 | 17.8 | 15.5 | 12.2 | 8.8 | 6.1 | 4.9 | 5.4 | 7.4 | 10.6 | 14.0 | 16.8 | 18.3 |
| 6.4 | 8.6 | 11.4 | 14.3 | 16.4 | 17.3 | 16.7 | 15.2 | 12.5 | 9.6 | 7.0 | 5.7 | 40 | 17.9 | 15.7 | 12.5 | 9.2 | 6.6 | 5.3 | 5.9 | 7.9 | 11.0 | 14.2 | 16.9 | 18.3 |
| 6.9 | 9.0 | 11.8 | 14.5 | 16.4 | 17.2 | 16.7 | 15.3 | 12.8 | 10.0 | 7.5 | 6.1 | 38 | 17.9 | 15.8 | 12.8 | 9.6 | 7.1 | 5.8 | 6.3 | 8.3 | 11.4 | 14.4 | 17.0 | 18.3 |
| 7.4 | 9.4 | 12.1 | 14.7 | 16.4 | 17.2 | 16.7 | 15.4 | 13.1 | 10.6 | 8.0 | 6.6 | 36 | 17.9 | 16.0 | 13.2 | 10.1 | 7.5 | 6.3 | 6.8 | 8.8 | 11.7 | 14.6 | 17.0 | 18.2 |
| 7.9 | 9.8 | 12.4 | 14.8 | 16.5 | 17.1 | 16.8 | 15.5 | 13.4 | 10.8 | 8.5 | 7.2 | 34 | 17.8 | 16.1 | 13.5 | 10.5 | 8.0 | 6.8 | 7.2 | 9.2 | 12.0 | 14.9 | 17.1 | 18.2 |
| 8.3 | 10.2 | 12.8 | 15.0 | 16.5 | 17.0 | 16.8 | 15.6 | 13.6 | 11.2 | 9.0 | 7.8 | 32 | 17.8 | 16.2 | 13.8 | 10.9 | 8.5 | 7.3 | 7.7 | 9.6 | 12.4 | 15.1 | 17.2 | 18.1 |
| 8.8 | 10.7 | 13.1 | 15.2 | 16.5 | 17.0 | 16.8 | 15.7 | 13.9 | 11.6 | 9.5 | 8.3 | 30 | 17.8 | 16.4 | 14.0 | 11.3 | 8.9 | 7.8 | 8.1 | 10.1 | 12.7 | 15.3 | 17.3 | 18.1 |
| 9.3 | 11.1 | 13.4 | 15.3 | 16.5 | 16.8 | 16.7 | 15.7 | 14.1 | 12.0 | 9.9 | 8.8 | 28 | 17.7 | 16.4 | 14.3 | 11.6 | 9.3 | 8.2 | 8.6 | 10.4 | 13.0 | 15.4 | 17.2 | 17.9 |
| 9.8 | 11.5 | 13.7 | 15.3 | 16.4 | 16.7 | 16.6 | 15.7 | 14.3 | 12.3 | 10.3 | 9.3 | 26 | 17.6 | 16.4 | 14.4 | 12.0 | 9.7 | 8.7 | 9.1 | 10.9 | 13.2 | 15.5 | 17.2 | 17.8 |
| 10.2 | 11.9 | 13.9 | 15.4 | 16.4 | 16.6 | 16.5 | 15.8 | 14.5 | 12.6 | 10.7 | 9.7 | 24 | 17.5 | 16.5 | 14.6 | 12.3 | 10.2 | 9.1 | 9.5 | 11.2 | 13.4 | 15.6 | 17.1 | 17.7 |
| 10.7 | 12.3 | 14.2 | 15.5 | 16.3 | 16.4 | 16.4 | 15.8 | 14.6 | 13.0 | 11.1 | 10.2 | 22 | 17.4 | 16.5 | 14.8 | 12.6 | 10.6 | 9.6 | 10.0 | 11.6 | 13.7 | 15.7 | 17.0 | 17.5 |
| 11.2 | 12.7 | 14.4 | 15.6 | 16.3 | 16.4 | 16.3 | 15.9 | 14.8 | 13.3 | 11.6 | 10.7 | 20 | 17.3 | 16.5 | 15.0 | 13.0 | 11.0 | 10.0 | 10.4 | 12.0 | 13.9 | 15.8 | 17.0 | 17.4 |
| 11.6 | 13.0 | 14.6 | 15.6 | 16.1 | 16.1 | 16.1 | 15.8 | 14.9 | 13.6 | 12.0 | 11.1 | 18 | 17.1 | 16.5 | 15.1 | 13.2 | 11.4 | 10.4 | 10.8 | 12.3 | 14.1 | 15.8 | 16.8 | 17.1 |
| 12.0 | 13.3 | 14.7 | 15.6 | 16.0 | 15.9 | 15.9 | 15.7 | 15.0 | 13.9 | 12.4 | 11.6 | 16 | 16.9 | 16.4 | 15.2 | 13.5 | 11.7 | 10.8 | 11.2 | 12.6 | 14.3 | 15.8 | 16.7 | 16.8 |
| 12.4 | 13.6 | 14.9 | 15.7 | 15.8 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 15.1 | 14.1 | 12.8 | 12.0 | 14 | 16.7 | 16.4 | 15.3 | 13.7 | 12.1 | 11.2 | 11.6 | 12.9 | 14.5 | 15.8 | 16.5 | 16.6 |
| 12.8 | 13.9 | 15.1 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 15.5 | 15.5 | 15.6 | 15.2 | 14.4 | 13.3 | 12.5 | 12 | 16.6 | 16.3 | 15.4 | 14.0 | 12.5 | 11.6 | 12.0 | 13.2 | 14.7 | 15.8 | 16.4 | 16.5 |
| 13.2 | 14.2 | 15.3 | 15.7 | 15.5 | 15.3 | 15.3 | 15.5 | 15.3 | 14.7 | 13.6 | 129 | 10 | 16.4 | 16.3 | 15.5 | 14.2 | 12.8 | 12.0 | 12.4 | 13.5 | 14.8 | 15.9 | 16.2 | 16.2 |
| 13.6 | 14.5 | 15.3 | 15.6 | 15.3 | 15.0 | 15.1 | 15.4 | 15.3 | 14.8 | 13.9 | 13.3 | 8 | 16.1 | 16.1 | 15.5 | 14.4 | 13.1 | 12.4 | 12.7 | 13.7 | 14.9 | 15.8 | 16.0 | 16.0 |
| 13.9 | 14.8 | 15.4 | 15.4 | 15.1 | 14.7 | 14.9 | 15.2 | 15.3 | 15.0 | 14.2 | 13.7 | 6 | 15.8 | 16.0 | 15.6 | 14.7 | 13.4 | 12.8 | 13.1 | 14.0 | 15.0 | 15.7 | 15.8 | 15.7 |
| 14.3 | 15.0 | 15.5 | 15.5 | 14.9 | 14.4 | 14.6 | 15.1 | 15.3 | 15.1 | 14.5 | 14.1 | 4 | 15.5 | 15.8 | 15.6 | 14.9 | 13.8 | 13.2 | 13.4 | 14.3 | 15.1 | 15.6 | 15.5 | 15.4 |
| 14.7 | 15.3 | 15.6 | 15.3 | 14.6 | 14.2 | 14.3 | 14.9 | 15.3 | 15.3 | 14.8 | 14.4 | 2 | 15.3 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 15.1 | 14.1 | 13.5 | 13.7 | 14.5 | 15.2 | 15.5 | 15.3 | 15.1 |
| 15.0 | 15.5 | 15.7 | 15.3 | 14.4 | 13.9 | 14.1 | 14.8 | 15.3 | 15.4 | 15.1 | 14.8 | 0 | 15.0 | 15.5 | 15.7 | 15.3 | 14.4 | 13.9 | 14.1 | 14.8 | 15.3 | 15.4 | 15.1 | 14.8 |

ETo for February is:

$$ETo = .0023\ (13.0)\ (30.2-19)^{1/2}\ [(30.2+19)/2 + 17.8] = 4.2$$

Likewise, for all months we have:

| | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep | Oct | Nov | Dec |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ETo | 3.7 | 4.2 | 5.1 | 4.9 | 4.7 | 4.7 | 5.3 | 5.3 | 4.6 | 4.5 | 3.6 | 3.7 |

In very hot, dry climates with long days, ETo can often reach 10 mm per day. In cool, humid climates, ETo may be as low as 3 mm per day.

Locations that have long, hot, sunny days (14 hours or more) in summer may exceed an average of 8 mm per day of ETo. Individual days may exceed 10 mm per day. Locations nearer the equator will typically have 5 to 6 mm of water use per day in the hotter months and around 4 mm per day during the cooler, cloudier months. ETo decreases with elevation, as temperatures decrease with elevation.

A designer in a hot, dry climate might need to design irrigation systems using 8 mm per day as a value for ETo while, in a more moderate climate, a value of 5 mm might be more acceptable. The previous table, however, clearly shows the need for using local data to establish ETo. Table 4.2 provides an index of general levels of ETo as a function of climatic zones. The following example provides an indicator of how ETo can vary with factors such as latitude and elevation.

| Location | J | F | M | A | M | J | J | A | S | O | N | D |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Indonesia[1] | 3.7 | 4.1 | 4.1 | 4.2 | 4.0 | 3.8 | 4.0 | 4.5 | 4.7 | 4.5 | 4.2 | 3.9 |
| Egypt[2] | 2.0 | 2.9 | 3.8 | 4.9 | 6.2 | 6.8 | 6.8 | 6.3 | 5.3 | 4.1 | 2.7 | 2.0 |
| Phillipines[3] | 3.1 | 3.2 | 4.6 | 5.6 | 5.1 | 4.7 | 3.7 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.8 | 3.6 | 3.5 |
| Ecuador[4] | 3.6 | 3.6 | 3.4 | 3.2 | 3.0 | 2.8 | 2.9 | 3.1 | 3.2 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 |
| Ecuador[5] | 5.3 | 5.4 | 5.5 | 5.4 | 4.6 | 3.9 | 4.3 | 4.2 | 4.2 | 4.7 | 4.8 | 4.9 |
| Bolivia[6] | 5.6 | 5.7 | 5.2 | 5.1 | 3.5 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 4.5 | 5.0 | 5.3 | 6.4 | 5.8 |
| U.S[7] | 2.1 | 3.0 | 4.3 | 5.9 | 7.4 | 8.4 | 7.9 | 7.5 | 6.1 | 4.2 | 2.6 | 1.9 |

[1] Jakarta, Lat. = 6°S, Elev. = 5 m
[2] Cairo, Lat. = 3°N, Elev. = 74 m
[3] Manila, Lat. = 15°N, Elev. = 15 m
[4] Quito, Lat. = 0°S, Elev. = 2818 m
[5] Talara, Lat. = 5°S, Elev. = 90 m
[6] Tarija, Lat. = 22°S, Elev. = 1905 m
[7] Yuma, Arizona, Lat. = 33°N, Elev. = 63 m

**TABLE 4.2 Reference Crop Evapotranspiration (ETo in mm/day) for Various Agroclimatic Zones (Ref. 11)**

Mean Daily Temperature (°C)
<10 ------------------20------------------->30

| Region | Cold | Moderate | Hot |
|---|---|---|---|
| TROPICAL | | | |
| Humid | 3-4 | 4-5 | 5-6 |
| Sub-humid | 3-5 | 5-6 | 7-8 |
| Semi-arid | 4-5 | 6-7 | 8-9 |
| Arid | 4-5 | 7-8 | 9-10 |
| SUBTROPICAL | | | |
| Summer Rainy Period | | | |
| Humid | 3-4 | 4-5 | 5-6 |
| Sub-humid | 3-5 | 5-6 | 6-7 |
| Semi-arid | 4-5 | 6-7 | 7-8 |
| Arid | 4-5 | 7-8 | 10-11 |
| Winter Rainy Period | | | |
| Humid, sub-humid | 2-3 | 4-5 | 5-6 |
| Semi-arid | 3-4 | 5-6 | 7-8 |
| Arid | 3-4 | 6-7 | 10-11 |
| TEMPERATE | | | |
| Humid, sub-humid | 2-3 | 3-4 | 5-7 |
| Semi-arid, arid | 3-4 | 5-6 | 8-9 |

## 4.3 FAO CROP COEFFICIENTS

Table 4.3 presents a set of crop coefficients, using grass as the reference crop, for various stages of crop growth. In this case, the crop evapotranspiration (ETc) under optimum conditions is:

$$ETc = Kc \times ETo$$

where:

Kc is the coefficient for crops growing under conditions of optimum fertility and soil moisture and achieving full production potential.

During germination and initial crop development, the majority of water loss from the plant and soil surface is evaporation. A soil surface that is kept continually wet will have very high evaporation; thus, ETc can be almost equal to ETo. With infrequent wetting of the soil surface, ETc will be much lower than ETo during initial development stages, and Kc is generally less than 0.5. When the crop has developed a full canopy and shading of the soil is almost complete, the majority of water loss is through transpiration. Evapotranspiration is generally at or near maximum, and the crop coefficient is usually between 1.0 and 1.2. As the crop begins to mature, its physiological ability to use water is decreased, and the crop coefficient rapidly decreases.

Until most of the ground is shaded, Kc is dependent on the stage of crop development, frequency of irrigation or significant rainfall, and the evaporative potential (as indicated by ETo). After effective cover, the coefficient is primarily dependent on stage of growth and climatic conditions of wind and humidity.

In developing the crop coefficients for the growing season, different stages of crop development are considered:

1. Initial state: from planting through germination and plant emergence, and until about 10% ground cover is achieved. Water loss is practically all evaporation.

2. Crop development stage: from 10% of ground cover to effective full ground cover. This occurs at about 70% or 80% ground cover.

3. Mid-season stage: from effective cover to the start of maturity. The crop is physiologically capable of the highest water use during this time. The crop coefficient is highest.

## Table 4.3 Crop Coefficients (Kc) (Ref. 11)

Crop Coefficients (kc)

| CROP | Crop Development Stages | | | | | Total growing period |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Initial | Crop development | Mid-season | Late season | At harvest | |
| Banana | | | | | | |
| tropical | 0.4-0.5 | 0.7-0.85 | 1.0-1.1 | 0.9-1.0 | 0.75-0.85 | 0.7-0.8 |
| subtropical | 0.5-0.65 | 0.8-0.9 | 1.0-1.2 | 1.0-1.15 | 1.0-1.15 | 0.85-0.95 |
| Bean | | | | | | |
| green | 0.3-0.4 | 0.65-0.75 | 0.95-1.05 | 0.9-0.95 | 0.85-0.95 | 0.85-0.9 |
| dry | 0.3-0.4 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.05-1.2 | 0.65-0.75 | 0.25-0.3 | 0.7-0.8 |
| Cabbage | 0.4-0.5 | 0.7-0.8 | 0.95-1.1 | 0.9-1.0 | 0.8-0.95 | 0.7-0.8 |
| Cotton | 0.4-0.4 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.05-1.25 | 0.8-0.9 | 0.65-0.7 | 0.8-0.9 |
| Grape | 0.35-0.55 | 0.6-0.8 | 0.7-0.9 | 0.6-0.8 | 0.55-0.7 | 0.55-0.75 |
| Groundnut | 0.4-0.5 | 0.7-0.8 | 0.95-1.1 | 0.75-0.85 | 0.55-0.6 | 0.75-0.8 |
| Maize | | | | | | |
| sweet | 0.3-0.5 | 0.7-0.9 | 1.05-1.2 | 1.0-1.15 | 0.95-1.1 | 0.8-0.95 |
| grain | 0.3-0.5 | 0.7-0.85 | 1.05-1.2 | 0.8-0.95 | 0.55-0.6 | 0.75-0.9 |
| Onion | | | | | | |
| dry | 0.4-0.6 | 0.7-0.8 | 0.95-1.1 | 0.85-0.9 | 0.75-0.85 | 0.8-0.9 |
| green | 0.4-0.6 | 0.6-0.75 | 0.95-1.05 | 0.95-1.05 | 0.95-1.05 | 0.65-0.8 |
| Pea, fresh | 0.4-0.5 | 0.7-0.85 | 1.05-1.2 | 1.0-1.15 | 0.95-1.1 | 0.8-0.95 |
| Pepper, fresh | 0.3-0.4 | 0.6-0.75 | 0.95-1.1 | 0.85-1.0 | 0.8-0.9 | 0.7-0.8 |
| Potato | 0.4-0.5 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.05-1.2 | 0.85-0.95 | 0.7-0.75 | 0.75-0.9 |
| Rice | 1.1-1.15 | 1.1-1.5 | 1.1-1.3 | 0.95-1.05 | 0.95-1.05 | 1.05-1.2 |
| Safflower | 0.3-0.4 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.05-1.2 | 0.65-0.7 | 0.2-0.25 | 0.65-0.7 |
| Sorghum | 0.3-0.4 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.0-1.15 | 0.75-0.8 | 0.5-0.55 | 0.75-0.85 |
| Soybean | 0.3-0.4 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.0-1.15 | 0.7-0.8 | 0.4-0.5 | 0.75-0.9 |
| Sugarbeet | 0.4-0.5 | 0.75-0.85 | 1.05-1.2 | 0.9-1.0 | 0.6-0.7 | 0.8-0.9 |
| Sugarcane | 0.4-0.5 | 0.7-1.0 | 1.0-1.3 | 0.75-0.8 | 0.5-0.6 | 0.85-1.05 |
| Sunflower | 0.3-0.4 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.05-1.2 | 0.7-0.8 | 0.35-0.45 | 0.75-0.85 |
| Tobacco | 0.3-0.4 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.0-1.2 | 0.9-1.0 | 0.75-0.85 | 0.85-0.95 |
| Tomato | 0.4-0.5 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.05-1.25 | 0.8-0.95 | 0.6-0.65 | 0.75-0.9 |
| Watermelon | 0.4-0.5 | 0.7-0.8 | 0.95-1.05 | 0.8-0.9 | 0.65-0.75 | 0.75-0.85 |
| Wheat | 0.3-0.4 | 0.7-0.8 | 1.05-1.2 | 0.65-0.75 | 0.2-0.25 | 0.8-0.9 |
| Alfalfa | 0.3-0.4 | | | | 1.05-1.2 | 0.85-1.05 |
| Citrus | | | | | | |
| clean weeding | | | | | | 0.65-0.75 |
| no weed control | | | | | | 0.85-0.9 |
| Olive | | | | | | 0.4-0.6 |

| | |
|---|---|
| First figure: | Under high humidity (RHmin>70%) and low wind (U<5m/sec). |
| Second Figure: | Under low humitidy (RHmin<20%) and strong wind (U>5m/sec). |

4. Late season stage: from the start of maturity until full maturity or harvest.

The procedures for establishing the crop coefficient are as follows:

1. Establish planting dates and length of growing season for local crop varieties under irrigation. This may vary significantly from dryland to irrigated conditions, from well-fertilized to non-fertilized crops, and even for plantings at different times of the year (e.g., if temperature and radiation conditions vary significantly through the season).

2. Establish the length of the crop development stages. Local research and extension agencies, interviews with farmers and agricultural technicians, or crop data from similar climatic zones can be used to establish these. Since the dates when crops reach these stages, or the length of these stages, are not typically recorded by research or extension personnel or farmers, it is often necessary to correlate these dates with more identifiable characteristics. For grain crops, 10% ground cover is usually reached from 10 to 15 days after emergence. Effective cover for annual crops occurs approximately at the time of flowering. The start of maturity for many crops is indicated by discoloring or dropping of leaves.

3. From Table 4.3, determine the Kc values for Stage 1 (initial state), Stage 2 (development), Stage 3 (mid-season), and Stage 4 (the maturing phase). The lower values should be used for low advective conditions (low wind and high humidity) and the higher values for higher advection (high wind and low humidity).

**Example**: Corn is an important crop in the Azua region of the Dominican Republic. It is a 4-month crop, often planted in March and harvested at the end of June. Determine the average water use for each stage of growth during the growing season. Azua is fairly humid, as it is near the ocean, and winds are generally calm, so use the lower values in the table, or use the ETo values from the previous example. Each growth stage is about 1 month in length.

Solution:

| Month<br>Crop stage | March<br>1 | April<br>2 | May<br>3 | June<br>4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ETo | 5.1 | 4.9 | 4.70 | 4.70 |
| Kc | 0.3 | 0.7 | 1.05 | 0.55 |
| ETc | 1.5 | 3.4 | 4.94 | 2.59 |

Table 4.4 provides a range of seasonal ET values for a number of common crops.

**TABLE 4.4 Seasonal ET Requirements for Maximum Yields of Crops (Ref. 11)**

| Crop | Seasonal ET (mm) | Crop | Seasonal ET (mm) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Alfalfa | 800-1600 | Pineapple | 700-1000 |
| Banana | 1200-2200 | Potatoes | 500- 700 |
| Beans | 300- 500 | Rice | 350- 700 |
| Cabbage | 380- 500 | Sorghum | 450- 650 |
| Citrus | 900-1200 | Sugar beets | 550- 750 |
| Cotton | 700-1300 | Sugar cane | 1500-2500 |
| Grapes | 500-1200 | Sunflower | 600-1000 |
| Peanuts | 500- 700 | Tobacco | 400- 600 |
| Maize | 500- 800 | Tomato | 400- 600 |
| Olives | 600- 800 | Watermelon | 400- 600 |
| Onions | 350- 550 | Wheat | 450- 650 |
| Peppers | 600- 900 | | |

## 4.4 DEPENDABLE PRECIPITATION

In areas where rainfall provides any significant portion of the crop water supply, it is essential that water availability from precipitation be evaluated in planning water delivery requirements, adjusting irrigation schedules, and even in developing possible crops and cropping patterns.

A probability analysis of rainfall based on historical precipitation is generally a part of this evaluation for large projects. Average rainfall can usually be obtained by the Peace Corps Volunteer from local weather stations, government agencies, or from a climatic atlas. The use of average precipitation for the planning and design of a small project will result in the design of a project that will ensure the farmer against crop failure, and crop yields will generally be near to their potential.

## 4.5 EFFECTIVE PRECIPITATION

Many definitions of effective precipitation are found in the literature. One of the more popular and useful definitions is that effective rainfall is that portion of the rainfall that contributes to the evapotranspiration requirements of a crop. Thus, that portion of rainfall that is not lost from the farm, either as surface runoff or as deep percolation to subsurface drainage, may be considered effective.

Even small amounts of water retained on the plant surface may be considered effective, as they help to satisfy evapotranspiration demand. It is common to discount small amounts of up to 4 or 5 mm, however, when ground cover is incomplete and evaporation from the soil surface would be very rapid.

High intensity rains producing a large amount of runoff and soils that have little capacity to store moisture may determine what little of the precipitation is effective. Rainfall that is lost during the non-cropped season as evaporation is ineffective.

Since effective rainfall is difficult to determine, it may be necessary to evaluate soil moisture after a rainfall event to evaluate the effectiveness of the rainfall in replenishing the soil profile so that irrigation can be adjusted accordingly. Generally, low intensity rainfall that does not exceed the soil water deficit is highly effective after significant canopy has been established.

Since effective rainfall is determined by rainfall intensity, soil infiltration characteristics, soil moisture deficit, surface storage, and evaporative conditions, it is difficult to estimate precisely. For planning purposes, it is generally adequate to assume that on deep rooted crops, flat ground, or sandy soils, the effective precipitation will usually be around 80%, if rainfall is generally not of great intensity and if moisture conservation practices are used. On steep terrains, heavy soils, and in areas of high intensity rainfall, the effective rainfall may be less than 50%.

## 4.6 GROUND WATER CONTRIBUTIONS TO CROP REQUIREMENTS

The rate of upward capillary movement from the ground water depends on the depth of water table below the root zone, soil moisture content and gradient, soil texture, structure and capillary properties, and on evaporative conditions. Generally, in coarse textured soils, rapid movement can occur over short distances with large moisture gradients. Water can move greater distances in fine textured soils, but movement is slower.

Because upward movement of the ground water is so greatly influenced by texture, structure, and other conditions, it is difficult to determine ground water contributions without detailed studies.

Although a significant portion of the total water requirement may be supplied from ground water at shallow depths, it is important to consider the detrimental effects of shallow water or waterlogged soils on crops. Shallow water tables may prevent adequate root development, which will result in low moisture storage capacity in the root zone if water tables drop. Some sugar cane varieties, potatoes, and broad beans can do well with water tables at 50 cm, while corn will be affected by water at 1 meter.

Upward movement of water may also result in salinization unless excess water and adequate drainage for leaching fraction can be provided at some time of year.

For these reasons, it may sometimes be necessary to plan for the elimination of shallow ground water, rather than to consider it as a contributor to crop requirements. Generally, water tables lower than 1 meter below the surface will not contribute significantly to most crops.

## 4.7 GROSS IRRIGATION REQUIREMENTS

Not all water available at the head of a canal is available to fulfill the net irrigation requirements (Irn). Losses to deep percolation, evaporation, and surface runoff, as well as leaching requirements, must be accounted for in the conveyance systems and in the farm application system. The gross irrigation water requirement (Irg) can be determined if field application and canal distribution system efficiencies are known or can be estimated.

The basic equation for determining gross irrigation requirements is:

$$Irg = \frac{Irn}{Ea \times Ec}$$

where:

Irn is the net irrigation requirement per day (depth).

Ea is the farm application efficiency (fraction), or the ratio between the water that enters and stays in the root zone to meet crop needs and that which is delivered to the field.

Ec is the canal conveyance efficiency (fraction), or the ratio of the water delivered to the field and that which enters the irrigation canal.

Primary factors affecting conveyance losses are management aspects that cause fluctuations or require adjustments in the supply, as well as physical factors such as seepage losses through canal banks and canal outlets. Typically, canal losses are very high when a large number of canals serve many small farms, and where organizational control of water is not strict and orderly. Highly permeable soils and poor maintenance of canals are other primary causes.

Primary factors affecting or resulting in low application efficiencies are improper irrigation system design, construction, and maintenance, as well as inadequate farmer knowledge of crop water requirements and irrigation scheduling criteria, irrigation system evaluation and monitoring criteria, and delivery system behavior. Many times, the delivery of water to the farm may be untimely, in improper amounts, and with excessive variation in the available discharge. These factors, which are beyond the farmer's control, may make efficient irrigation an impossibility.

Table 4.5 indicates some typical efficiencies for both the delivery system and the irrigation system. Irrigation scheduling, proper maintenance, and other techniques can significantly improve efficiencies above those given in the table.

**Table 4.5 Irrigation System Efficiency**

| IRRIGATION SYSTEM | EXPECTED APPLICATION EFFICIENCY (fraction) |
|---|---|
| Surface methods | |
| light soils | 0.55 |
| medium soils | 0.70 |
| heavy soils | 0.60 |
| Sprinkler | |
| hot, dry climate | 0.60 |
| moderate climate | 0.70 |
| humid and cool | 0.80 |
| Flooded rice | 0.30 |
| Drip or Trickle Irrigation | 0.80 |

Expected conveyance efficiencies in small, short canals (<2 km) are about 80% (0.8) for heavy soils, 70% (0.7) for medium soils, and 60% (0.6) for sandy soils. Canals with lower efficiencies should be evaluated to diminish the losses. Pipeline conveyance systems should always have close to 100% efficiencies.

Gross requirements can be expressed as a depth required per day, or as a flow rate required per unit area per day. The following equations help us to determine the maximum flow rate that we will require on a daily basis for a farm.

$$Q = \frac{2.8 \times A \times Irg}{t}$$

where:

Q is the flow rate required (liters/sec).
A is the area to be irrigated (hectares).
Irg is the gross daily water requirement (mm).
t is the number of hours per day that the farmer expects to irrigate during the peak season.

**Example**: For the Azua region of the Dominican Republic, we have determined crop water use of corn on a daily basis during the months of March through June. We have obtained the mean precipitation from local sources, and we know that in this dry, flat region with a deep rooted crop such as corn, the rainfall will be about 80% effective. Water tables are lower than 1 meter, and there will be no ground water contribution. Soils are medium textured. Farmers use surface irrigation methods, and they will generally irrigate 12 hours per day. Canals are well maintained and generally less than 2 km long. Neglect soil moisture storage in your analysis, and estimate what the flow rate required will be for each hectare.

Solution:

| Month | March | April | May | June |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ETc | 1.5 | 3.4 | 4.9 | 2.6 |
| P mean | 0.5 | 1.3 | 3.9 | 2.2 |
| Pe | 0.4 | 1.0 | 3.1 | 1.8 |
| Irn | 1.1 | 2.4 | 1.8 | 0.8 |
| Irg | 2.2 | 4.9 | 3.7 | 1.6 |

P mean monthly precipitation divided by days in month.

Pe effective precipitation = mean precipitation x 0.8 (in this case).

Irn is ETc - Pe - Gw - Wb = ETc - Pe - 0 - 0.

$$\text{Irg} = \frac{\text{Irn}}{\text{Ea} \times \text{Ec}} = \frac{\text{Irn}}{0.7 \times 0.7}$$

The month with the highest gross water requirement is April, with 4.9 mm/day of gross requirement. On a flow rate basis, this is:

$$Q = \frac{2.8 \times 1 \times 4.9}{12} = 1.14 \text{ liters/sec}$$

In summary, the crop during April will use 3.4 mm/day. Considering effective precipitation, our average daily water need would be 2.4. Due to efficiency losses, however, the gross amount of water that will be required will be 4.9 mm/day on average. If this amount is to be applied on a 12-hour per day schedule, we will need to be able to supply 1.1 liters per second for each hectare during the month of April. If we will irrigate only once per week for 12 hours, we will need seven times the flow rate.

# CHAPTER 5

# FARM WATER DELIVERY SYSTEMS

5.1 Control of Irrigation Water
5.2 Pipeline Hydraulics and Design
5.3 Land Leveling
5.4 Irrigation Methods
5.5 Surface Irrigation Systems
5.6 Sprinkler Irrigation Systems
5.7 Localized Irrigation Systems

**References - Primary:** (21), (41)

# 5.1 CONTROL OF IRRIGATION WATER

## 5.1.1 Components of Farm Irrigation Systems

Some of the components of a water supply and distribution system are shown in Figure 5.1. The primary components are canals or pipelines, control structures in canals, and the field application systems, which are generally surface, sprinkler, or drip irrigation systems. This section covers all of these components.

Good water control is an essential requirement for an efficient irrigation system, both at the project level and at the farm level. Conveyance systems should be designed and maintained to minimize seepage losses, provide for adequate control by the operator, and allow for efficient irrigation. Generally, pipelines or lined ditches that provide for greater seepage control with low maintenance will have higher initial costs.

## 5.1.2 Open Channel Systems

(Adapted from Ref. 41, with appropriate modifications)

Unlined ditches are commonly used because of their low cost and ease of construction. They may be bare, temporary earth ditches or protected with some type of vegetation, commonly sod. Special precautions are required in erodible soils, and seepage losses are likely to be high in non-cohesive, coarse- textured soils.

Ditches are usually designed for a capacity equal to the crop water requirement during peak demand, plus irrigation and operational losses.

### Delivery Channels and Ditches (Extracted from Ref. 41)

### Channel Design

In order to determine the channel size required, the maximum discharge, the shape of the planned section, and an estimate of the channel roughness, must be known. The Manning Equation is the most commonly used relationship for determining channel discharge and will be used in this handbook.

$$Q = CAR^{2/3}s^{1/2}/n$$

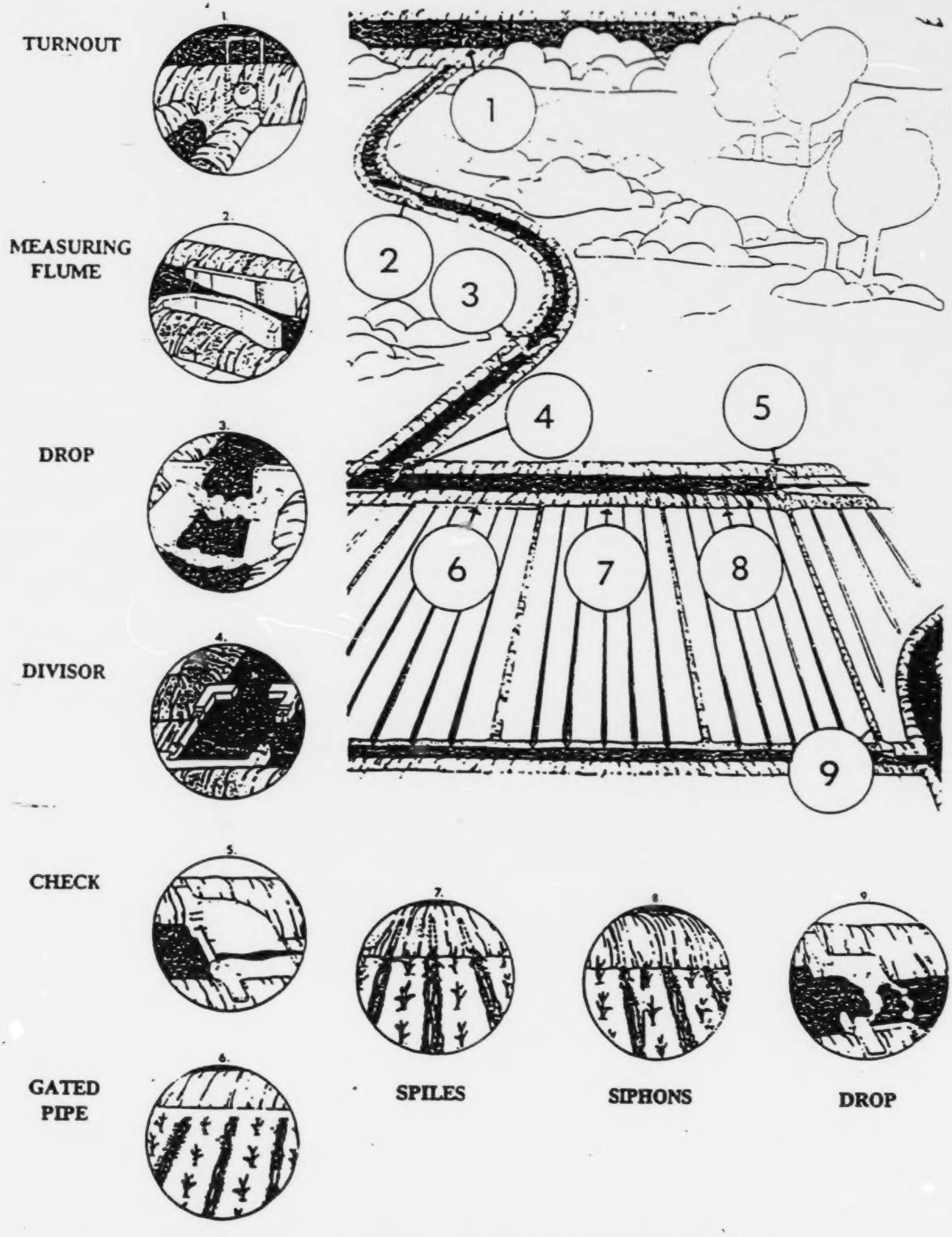

TURNOUT
MEASURING FLUME
DROP
DIVISOR
CHECK
GATED PIPE
SPILES
SIPHONS
DROP
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9

Figure 5.1 A Farm Irrigation System (Ref. 41)

where:

$Q$ = discharge, $m^3$/sec (or cfs).
$A$ = cross-sectional area of ditch, $m^2$ ($ft^2$).
$R$ = hydraulic radius - area divided by the wetted perimeter, m (ft).
$s$ = longitudinal slope, m/m (ft/ft).
$n$ = Manning roughness coefficient, $m^{1/6}$ or $ft^{1/6}$ (same value for both metric and English units).
$C$ = 1.0 when using metric units, 1.49 for English units.

The Manning roughness coefficient, n, varies from 0.010 for smooth concrete to over 0.10 for channels with weeds and brush. Table 5.1 lists values of n that can be used for design of earthen and lined channels. The value for n should be chosen only after a careful study of the field situation.

The channel design problem is usually determining the width and depth required for a given flow with a measured slope in a given material or with a selected lining of a predetermined shape. In other situations, an estimate of the discharge is required while one knows the ditch size and slope, with an estimate of the roughness (Manning n from Table 5.1). Figure 5.2 gives a solution for the Manning Equation that can be used to make estimates of the ditch shape and flow. Two examples using Figure 5.2 follow.

**Example 1:** Earth canal in clay loam after weathering, clean; $n = 0.022$ (Table 5.1).

Assume: Bottom width, $B = 0.45$ m (1.5 ft)
Longitudinal slope, $s = 0.001$
Side slope, $z = 1.5$ (1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical)
Discharge, $Q = 0.10\ m^3/s$ (3.5 cfs)

Problem: Determine the depth of flow.

Solution: Solve for the $E_m$ in Figure 5.2.

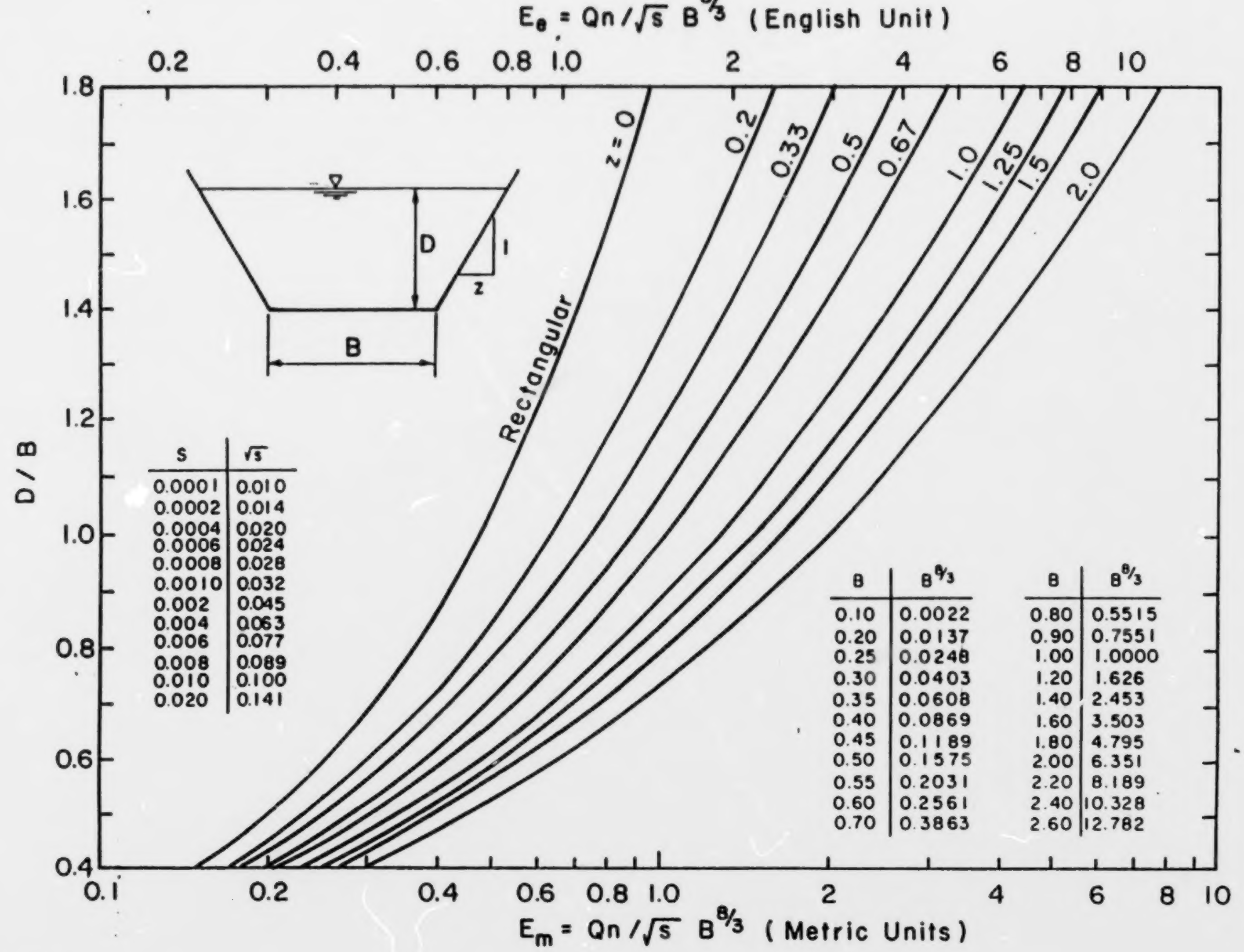
$$E_m = (Qn/s^{1/2})/B^{8/3} = [(0.10)(0.022)/(0.032)]/(0.12) = 0.57$$

From Fig. 5.2, if $z = 1.5$ and $E_m = 0.57$, then $D/B = 0.60$

Because $B = 0.45$ m (1.5 ft), then $D = 0.27$ m (0.89 ft)

**TABLE 5.1 Values of Manning Roughness Coefficient, n, for Earthen and Lined Channels (Ref. 41)**

| Type of Channel and Description | Roughness coefficient n | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Minimum | Normal | Maximum |
| A. Excavated earthen channels | | | |
| a. Straight and uniform | | | |
| 1. Clean, recently completed | 0.016 | 0.018 | 0.020 |
| 2. Clean, after weathering | 0.018 | 0.022 | 0.025 |
| 3. Gravel, uniform section, clean | 0.022 | 0.025 | 0.030 |
| 4. With short grass, few weeds | 0.022 | 0.027 | 0.033 |
| 5. With long grass and weeds | 0.030 | 0.040 | 0.045 |
| b. Winding and sluggish | | | |
| 1. No vegetation | 0.023 | 0.025 | 0.030 |
| 2. Grass, some weeds | 0.025 | 0.030 | 0.033 |
| 3. Dense weeds or aquatic plants in deep channels | 0.030 | 0.035 | 0.040 |
| 4. Earth bottom and rubble sides | 0.028 | 0.030 | 0.035 |
| 5. Stony bottom and weedy banks | 0.025 | 0.035 | 0.040 |
| 6. Cobble bottom and clean sides | 0.030 | 0.040 | 0.050 |
| c. Channels not maintained, weeds and brush uncut | | | |
| 1. Dense weeds, high as flow depth | 0.050 | 0.080 | 0.120 |
| 2. Clean bottom, brush on sides | 0.040 | 0.050 | 0.080 |
| 3. As c.2., highest state of flow | 0.045 | 0.070 | 0.110 |
| 4. Dense brush, high stage | 0.080 | 0.100 | 0.140 |
| B. Lined or built-up channels | | | |
| a. Cement | | | |
| 1. Neat, smooth surface | 0.010 | 0.011 | 0.013 |
| 2. Mortar | 0.011 | 0.013 | 0.015 |
| b. Concrete | | | |
| 1. Trowel finish | 0.011 | 0.013 | 0.015 |
| 2. Float finish | 0.013 | 0.015 | 0.016 |
| 3. Finished, with gravel on bottom | 0.015 | 0.017 | 0.020 |
| 4. Unfinished | 0.014 | 0.017 | 0.020 |
| c. Brick | | | |
| 1. Glazed | 0.011 | 0.013 | 0.015 |
| 2. In cement mortar | 0.012 | 0.015 | 0.018 |
| d. Masonry | | | |
| 1. Cemented rubble | 0.017 | 0.025 | 0.030 |
| 2. Dry rubble | 0.023 | 0.032 | 0.035 |



| S | $\sqrt{S}$ |
|---|---|
| 0.0001 | 0.010 |
| 0.0002 | 0.014 |
| 0.0004 | 0.020 |
| 0.0006 | 0.024 |
| 0.0008 | 0.028 |
| 0.0010 | 0.032 |
| 0.002 | 0.045 |
| 0.004 | 0.063 |
| 0.006 | 0.077 |
| 0.008 | 0.089 |
| 0.010 | 0.100 |
| 0.020 | 0.141 |

| B | $B^{8/3}$ | B | $B^{8/3}$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0.10 | 0.0022 | 0.80 | 0.5515 |
| 0.20 | 0.0137 | 0.90 | 0.7551 |
| 0.25 | 0.0248 | 1.00 | 1.0000 |
| 0.30 | 0.0403 | 1.20 | 1.626 |
| 0.35 | 0.0608 | 1.40 | 2.453 |
| 0.40 | 0.0869 | 1.60 | 3.503 |
| 0.45 | 0.1189 | 1.80 | 4.795 |
| 0.50 | 0.1575 | 2.00 | 6.351 |
| 0.55 | 0.2031 | 2.20 | 8.189 |
| 0.60 | 0.2561 | 2.40 | 10.328 |
| 0.70 | 0.3863 | 2.60 | 12.782 |

**Figure 5.2** Manning Equation Solution for Determining Canal Design (Ref. 41)

**Example 2:** Brick with vertical wall, mortar trowel finished surface, $n = 0.013$ (Table 5.1).

Assume: Bottom width, $B = 0.45$ m (1.5 ft)
Depth of section, 0.45 m (1.5 ft)
Freeboard, 0.15 m (0.5 ft)
Depth of flow, $D = 0.30$ m (1.0 ft)
Longitudinal slope, $s = 0.001$
Side slope, $z = 0$

Problem: Determine the discharge.

Solution: From Fig. 5.2 for $D/B = 0.67$ and $z = 0$, then $E_m = 0.28$

$$E_m = (Qn/s^{1/2})/B^{8/3}, \text{ or}$$

$$Q = E_m s^{1/2} B^{8/3}/n = (0.28)(0.032)(0.12)/0.013$$

$$Q = 0.083 \text{ m}^3/\text{s} \ (2.93 \text{ cfs})$$

Note that the amount of flow is inversely proportional to the roughness, n; i.e., an increase in roughness decreases the discharge in direct proportion, with shape, slope, and depth remaining the same. If the discharge remains constant and the roughness increases (such as from growing vegetation), then the depth of flow must increase.

So that water does not overflow the ditch, there should be a freeboard (distance from the maximum water surface to the top of the banks) of at least 15 cm (6 in) for small canals. The banks tend to lower with seasoning, aging of the canal, and use of the banks by traffic.

## Earth Ditches

Unlined earth ditches are the most common means of conveying irrigation water to farm fields. Unlined ditches are preferred by many farmers because they can be built cheaply and easily and maintained with farm equipment. Also, unlined ditches provide flexibility - it is easy to change the layout, increase capacity, or even eliminate ditches after a rotation and rebuild them the next season. Unlined ditches have many disadvantages, however, that make them less desirable than lined ditches or underground pipe:

- They occupy more land than lined ditches.
- They usually lose more water due to seepage, leakage, and spillage.
- Rodents can cause leakage.

- If weed growth is a problem, frequent cleaning is needed.
- Earth ditches can erode and meander, creating problems in maintaining straight or proper alignment.

The slope for an earth ditch may be as low as 0.00018. (Egyptian irrigation canals generally have slopes ranging from 0.00018 to 0.00020.) Small slopes result in slow flow velocities, large cross sections, and possible sediment deposition on the bed.

It is customary to use a gradient of 0.001 in many areas. The slope of the ditch should be such that the bed does not erode and the water flows at a self-cleaning velocity, i.e., there is no deposition. A heavy clay soil will allow fairly high velocities without eroding (Table 5.2). At times it is necessary to insert drops into the ditch to reduce velocities and prevent scour and erosion. For soils normally encountered, the maximum velocities given in Table 5.2 should not be exceeded. For Example 1 above, the average velocity for an earth canal in clay loam is 0.43 m/s (1.4 ft/s). For Example 2, and lined ditch, the velocity is 0.61 m/s (2.0 ft/s). Both of these velocities are in the safe range. For unlined ditch side slopes, the lower value (steeper slopes) given in Table 5.2 should be used for cuts and the higher value (flatter slopes) for canals excavated in a fill section.

The approximate sizing of earth ditches with a side slope of 1.5:2 (Z = 1.5) is given in Figure 5.3 and can be used for preliminary design. With an estimate of slope, roughness factor, and desired discharge, several possible ditch sizes can be determined. Conversely, with a known ditch shape (bottom width), roughness, and discharge, the required depth and slope can be estimated. By using the Manning Equation, tables similar to that in Figure 5.3 can be developed for other ditch shapes, roughness, and slopes.

Ditch locations should be carefully planned to serve the irrigated area adequately. If adjacent fields are being levelled, any needed fill material for the ditch can be easily obtained. Earth ditches can be formed manually or with pulled ditchers. The animal-powered V-ditcher can be run in furrows opened by a moldboard-type plow. Two furrows are made adjacent to each other, with the furrow slice thrown in opposite directions. The V-ditcher then moves the soil to form a berm on each side. It is usually necessary to plow a second or third time to obtain more earth for the banks.

**Table 5.2 Suggested Maximum Flow Velocities and Side Slopes for Lined and Unlined Channels**

| | Maximum Flow Velocities | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Type of Surface | m/sec | ft/sec | Side Slopes Range (z)[a] |
| Unlined Ditches, Seasoned | | | |
| Sand | 0.3 - 0.7 | 1.0 - 2.3 | 3 |
| Sandy loam | 0.5 - 0.7 | 1.6 - 2.3 | 2 to 2.5 |
| Clay loam | 0.6 - 0.9 | 2.0 - 3.0 | 1.5 to 2[b] |
| Clays | 0.9 - 1.5 | 3.0 - 5.0 | 1 to 2[b] |
| Gravel | 0.9 - 1.5 | 3.0 - 5.0 | 1 to 1.5 |
| Rock | 1.2 - 1.8 | 4.0 - 6.0 | 0.25 to 1 |
| Lined Ditches | | | |
| Concrete | | | |
| Cast-in-place | 1.5 - 2.5[c] | 5.0 - 8.2[c] | 0.75 to 1.5 |
| Precast | 1.5 - 2.0 | 5.0 - 6.5 | 0 to 1.5[d] |
| Brick | 1.2 - 1.8 | 4.0 - 6.0 | 0 to 1.5[d] |
| Asphalt | | | |
| Concrete | 1.2 - 1.8 | 4.0 - 6.0 | 1 to 1.5 |
| Exposed membrane | 0.9 - 1.5 | 3.0 - 5.0 | 1.5 to 2 |
| Buried membrane[e] | 0.7 - 1.0 | 1.6 - 3.3 | 2 |
| Plastic | | | |
| Buried membrane[e] | 0.6 - 0.9 | 2.0 - 3.0 | 2.5 |

---

[a] z is the horizontal unit to one (1) vertical unit.

[b] Side slopes of 1:1 for small canals in clay and clay loam are common.

[c] Flows in this velocity range may be supercritical (see definitions) and difficult to control. They are not recommended except for special uses.

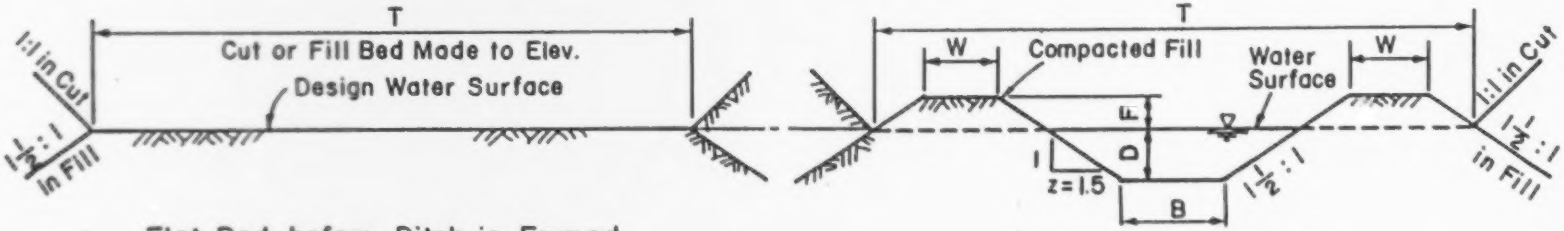
[d] Small precast and brick channels may have vertical walls (z = 0).

[e] Maximum flow velocities will depend on the cover over the membrane.

Many ditches erode and deteriorate. It is better to remove old ditches and form new ones. Figure 5.4 gives a procedure for doing so that will result in a new, more stable channel that will lose less water than the old one. The compaction and forming of the new channel can be done manually or with a machine. Soil that has a high percentage of silt and clay will form the best channel from all standpoints.

| Flat bed before ditch is formed | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Finished ditch section | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | s = 0.0005 | | | | s = 0.001 | | | | s = 0.002 | | | | s = 0.003 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | n = 0.03 | | n = 0.04 | | n = 0.03 | | n = 0.04 | | n = 0.03 | | n = 0.04 | | n = 0.03 | | n = 0.04 | |
| B | | D | | F | | W | | T | | A | | R | | Q | | Q | | Q | | Q | | Q | | Q | | Q | | Q | |
| m | ≈ ft | m | ft | m | ft | m | ft | m | ft | $m^2$ | $ft^2$ | m | ft | $m^3/s$ | $ft^3/s$ | $m^3/s$ | $ft^3/s$ | $m^3/s$ | $ft^3/s$ | $m^3/s$ | $ft^3/s$ | $m^3/s$ | $ft^3/s$ | $m^3/s$ | $ft^3/s$ | $m^3/s$ | $ft^3/s$ | $m^3/s$ | $ft^3/s$ |
| 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.30 | 1.0 | 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.30 | 1.00 | 2.6 | 8.5 | 0.19 | 2.00 | 0.15 | 0.49 | 0.04 | 1.4 | 0.03 | 1.0 | 0.05 | 1.9 | 0.04 | 1.5 | 0.08 | 2.7 | 0.06 | 2.1 | 0.10 | 3.4 | 0.07 | 2.5 |
| 0.30 | 1.0 | 0.30 | 1.0 | 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.46 | 1.50 | 3.0 | 10.0 | 0.23 | 2.50 | 0.16 | 0.54 | 0.05 | 1.8 | 0.04 | 1.4 | 0.07 | 2.6 | 0.06 | 2.0 | 0.10 | 3.7 | 0.08 | 2.8 | 0.13 | 4.5 | 0.10 | 3.4 |
| 0.46 | 1.5 | 0.30 | 1.0 | 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.61 | 2.00 | 3.5 | 11.5 | 0.28 | 3.00 | 0.18 | 0.59 | 0.07 | 2.3 | 0.05 | 1.7 | 0.09 | 3.3 | 0.07 | 2.5 | 0.13 | 4.7 | 0.10 | 3.5 | 0.16 | 5.7 | 0.12 | 4.3 |
| 0.61 | 2.0 | 0.30 | 1.0 | 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.76 | 2.50 | 4.0 | 13.0 | 0.33 | 3.50 | 0.19 | 0.62 | 0.08 | 2.8 | 0.06 | 2.1 | 0.11 | 4.0 | 0.08 | 3.0 | 0.16 | 5.6 | 0.12 | 4.2 | | | 0.15 | 5.2 |
| 0.30 | 1.0 | 0.37 | 1.2 | 0.21 | 0.7 | 0.38 | 1.25 | 3.4 | 11.3 | 0.31 | 3.36 | 0.19 | 0.63 | 0.08 | 2.7 | 0.06 | 2.0 | 0.11 | 3.9 | 0.08 | 2.9 | 0.16 | 5.5 | 0.12 | 4.1 | | | 0.14 | 5.0 |
| 0.46 | 1.5 | 0.37 | 1.2 | 0.21 | 0.7 | 0.46 | 1.50 | 3.7 | 12.3 | 0.37 | 3.96 | 0.21 | 0.68 | 0.10 | 3.4 | 0.07 | 2.5 | 0.14 | 4.8 | 0.10 | 3.6 | | | 0.14 | 5.1 | | | 0.18 | 6.2 |
| 0.61 | 2.0 | 0.37 | 1.2 | 0.21 | 0.7 | 0.61 | 2.00 | 4.2 | 13.8 | 0.42 | 4.56 | 0.22 | 0.72 | 0.12 | 4.1 | 0.08 | 3.1 | 0.16 | 5.7 | 0.12 | 4.3 | | | 0.17 | 6.1 | | | | |
| 0.46 | 1.5 | 0.41 | 1.33 | 0.24 | 0.8 | 0.53 | 1.75 | 4.1 | 13.6 | 0.43 | 4.65 | 0.23 | 0.74 | 0.12 | 4.2 | 0.09 | 3.2 | | | 0.13 | 4.5 | | | | | | | | |
| 0.61 | 2.0 | 0.41 | 1.33 | 0.24 | 0.8 | 0.61 | 2.00 | 4.5 | 14.6 | 0.49 | 5.31 | 0.24 | 0.78 | 0.14 | 4.9 | 0.11 | 3.8 | | | 0.15 | 5.3 | | | | | | | | |
| 0.61 | 2.0 | 0.46 | 1.5 | 0.30 | 1.6 | 0.46 | 1.50 | 4.7 | 15.5 | 0.59 | 6.38 | 0.26 | 0.86 | 0.18 | 6.4 | 0.14 | 4.8 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0.91 | 3.0 | 0.46 | 1.5 | 0.30 | 1.0 | 0.61 | 2.00 | 5.3 | 17.5 | 0.73 | 7.88 | 0.29 | 0.94 | | | 0.18 | 6.3 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

A - cross sectional area
R - hydraulic radius
n - Manning's roughness coefficient
0.03 - soil with gravel
0.04 - soil with grass
s - slope
Q - ditch flow capacity



Flat Bed before Ditch is Formed

Finished Ditch Section

**Figure 5.3 Earth Irrigation Ditch Sizes for Different Slopes, Roughness, and Discharges (Ref. 41)**

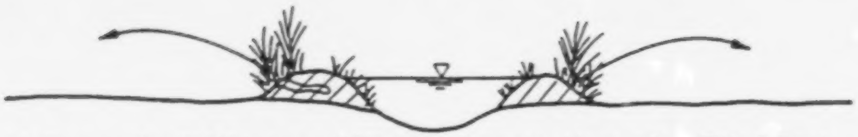
The importance of good construction for earth channels depends a great deal on expected ditch usage. Some ditches, such as those run on a contour for grain and rice, are used only one season and then filled in. Other ditches are relatively permanent and should be constructed with more effort and care. Ditches intended for furrow or border irrigation directly from the ditch need substantial banks, and the banks might be higher for using spiles and siphon tubes than for open ditch bank cuts. In this case, the top of the banks should be a minimum of 25 cm (10 in.) above the surrounding field surface. Banks must be high enough to allow the water level to be increased by checks, if needed. If seepage is excessive, compaction of the banks or deposition of a clay blanket can be tried.

### 5.1.3 Control Structures

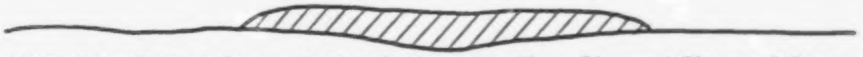
Good control structures are required to reduce labor requirements and simplify irrigation by providing easy and positive control of the water. Structures are used to control the water as it is conveyed from the main canal or lateral headgate to its destination on the field. Structures may be required to control the channel or ditch itself. These water control structures ensure adequate water levels, dissipate energy, provide accurate distribution, and deliver water to the field without erosion.

Grade control structures (Figures 5.5, 5.6, and 5.7) are used to prevent erosive velocities where unlined canals are on steep slopes. The water is lowered over drops and carried down the slope in a series of "stair steps." Stair steps basically consist of either vertical or inclined drops and a stilling pool or other means of dissipating the energy. Stair steps may also be used in combination with check structures, which are used to control the water level in field ditches. Drop heights in conveyance channels should generally be limited to 1 m, with the recommended height at about 0.6 m.

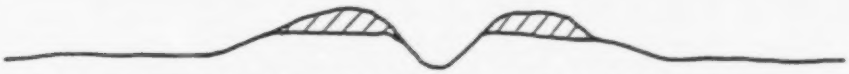
Drop heights in field distribution ditches are more limited because of delivery capability requirements; the maximum height should be limited to 0.3 m, with the recommended height at about 15 to 20 cm. For small drop structures, prefabricated structures may be used. Erosion control is improved by the use of wide stilling basins with low end sills and/or gravel lined stilling basins. Where steep ditch slopes require the use of many closely spaced drop structures, a lined ditch or a buried pipeline may be an economical alternative. A pipe drop is a commonly used structure for grade control, particularly when a combined road crossing is needed.



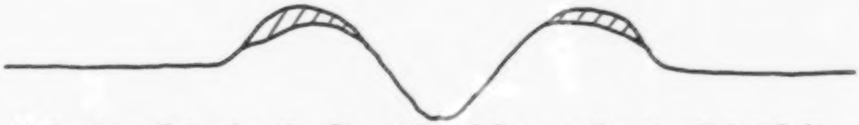
1) Remove the Old Banks and Pile the Organic, Vegetation Filled Bank Soil away from the New Channel Site.



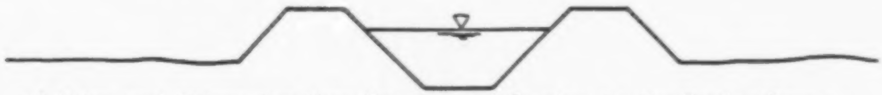
2) Build a Pad of Clean, Moist Soil on the New Channel Site and Compact the Pad in 10-15 cm (4-6 in.) Layers.



3) Pull the Ditch in Stages, Compacting the Bank Soil between each Excavation In 10-15 cm (4-6 in.) Layers.



4) Continue Enlarging the Channel and Compacting the Moist Soil Deposited on the Banks in Layers.



5) Trim and Shape the New Compacted Banks to the Design Cross Section

**Figure 5.4** Suggested Procedure for Mechanical Reconstruction of Earthen Channels with a Tractor-Drawn Scraper, Ditcher, and Compactor (Ref. 41)

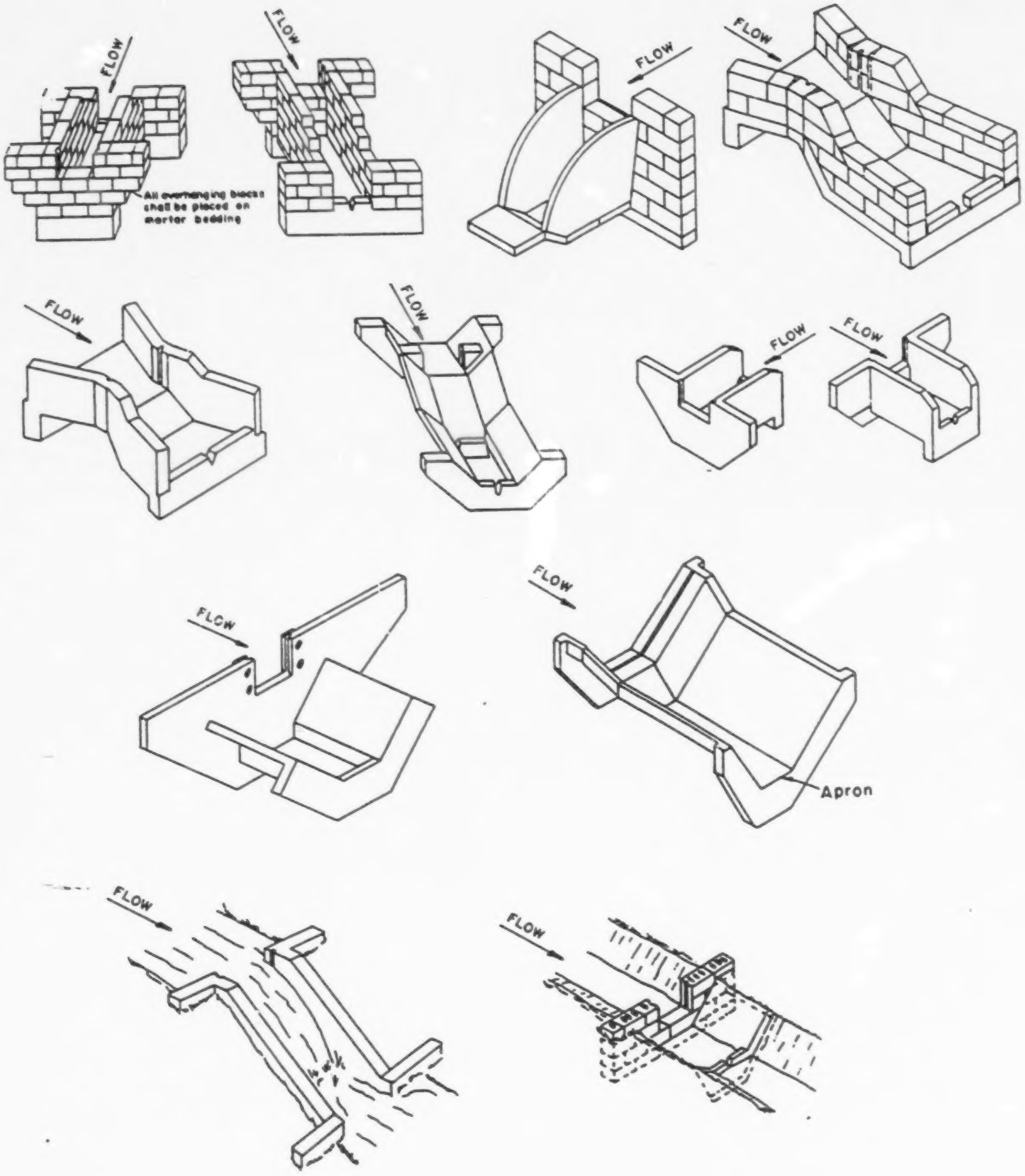
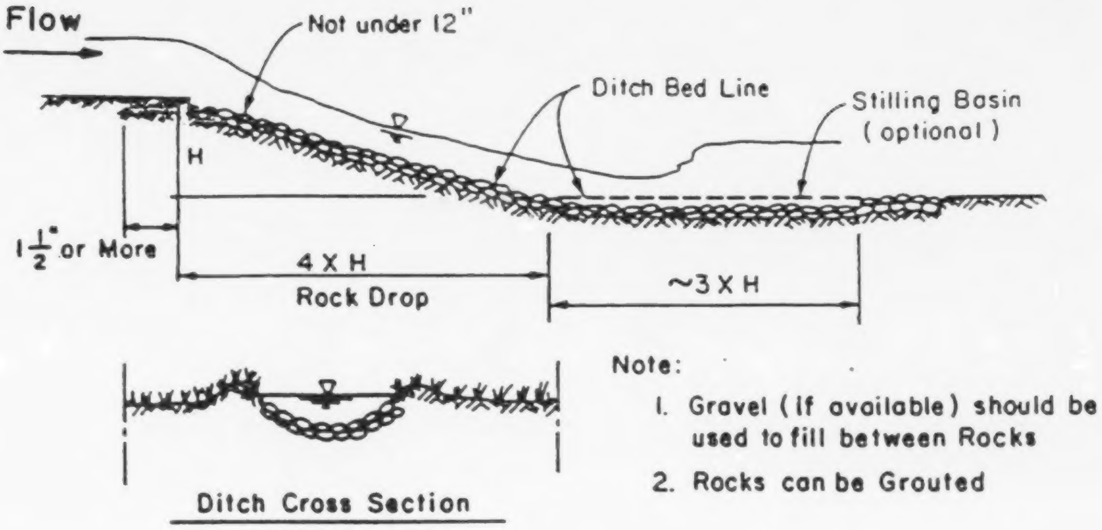

FLOW
FLOW
All overhanging blocks shall be placed on mortar bedding
FLOW
FLOW
FLOW
FLOW
FLOW
FLOW
FLOW
FLOW
FLOW
Apron
FLOW
FLOW

Figure 5.5 Examples of Small Drop Structures (Ref. 41)


Flow
Not under 12"
Ditch Bed Line
Stilling Basin ( optional )
H
1 1/2" or More
4 X H
Rock Drop
~3 X H
Ditch Cross Section

Note:

1. Gravel ( if available ) should be used to fill between Rocks
2. Rocks can be Grouted

**Figure 5.6 Sloping Rock Drop Structure (Ref. 41)**

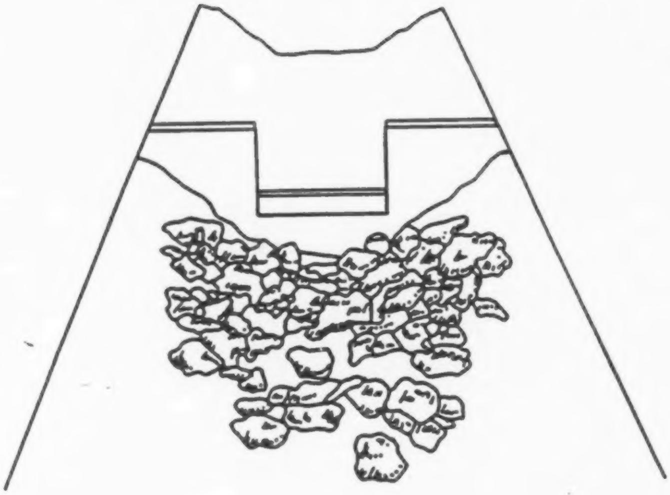


**Figure 5.7 Drop Structure with Gravel/Rock Stilling Basin (Ref. 41)**

Check structures (Figures 5.8, 5.9, and 5.10) are used to maintain or increase the water level in an open channel above the normal flow depth. If provided with flashboards, drop structures can also serve as check structures. When a constant water level is desired upstream from the check structures, an overflow-type check is generally used. The structure is usually fitted with grooves to accept flashboards or stop logs that permit water to flow over them while maintaining the water level upstream. Flow over such a type of check may be estimated by the general weir equation.

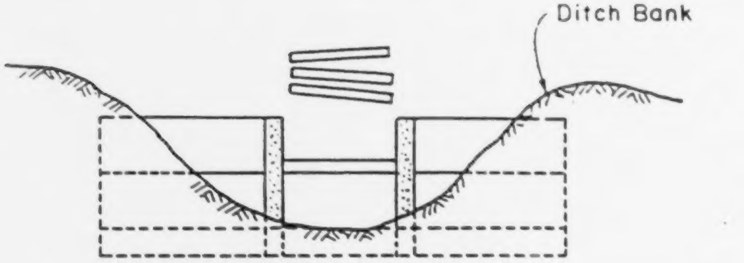
Discharge control structures (Figure 5.11), also referred to as outlets or turnouts, are used to control the release of water to laterals or ditches, or from a field irrigation ditch to borders, basins, or furrows. One of the most frequently used turnout is a concrete or metal pipe with a slide gate on the inlet or upstream end. For unlined ditches, the headwall and slide gate are usually vertical. Discharge through these pipes can be estimated by the orifice equation. Weir type openings are also used, and their capacity can be estimated with the general weir equation.

Siphon tubes are widely used for distributing water from field ditches into furrows, basins, or borders on the field. The flow through these siphon tubes depends on their length, diameter, number of bends, and material from which they are constructed.

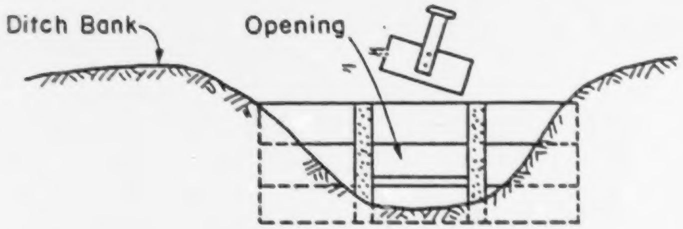
Siphons eliminate the need for cutting the ditch bank, thus reducing labor and ditch maintenance. Spiles are sometimes used in place of siphon tubes; they consist of short pipes or other small conduits through the ditch bank.

Division boxes (Figure 5.12) are used to divide water into two or more ditches. Flow measurement of both streams assures the most equitable and accurate division, but flows can be considered to be proportional to the size of the divisions if approach and exit conditions are adequate. Some boxes are designed to give fixed proportional division while others have a moveable splitter to vary the proportions. Usually, more accurate proportions can be obtained by dividing the flow at a control section where super critical flow occurs, such as at a free overfall. Satisfactory division can also be made without the critical flow section if the approach channel is long and straight and the flow conditions downstream do not favor one channel or the other.

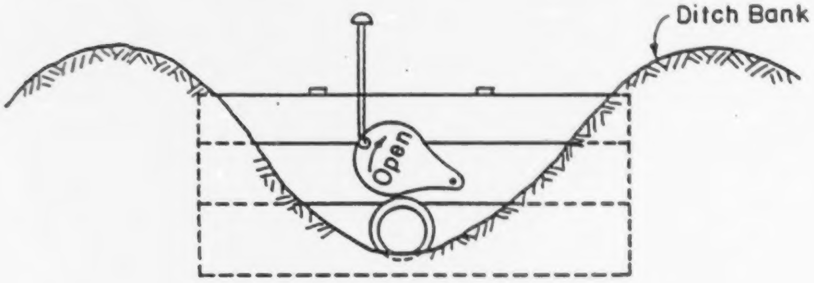
Sediment, trash, and weed seed can cause serious problems in irrigation systems by clogging sprinklers, pipelines, andsiphon tubes. Trash racks, screens, settling or distilling boxes, and sediment traps of various design can be utilized to minimize the effects of these problems.



(a) Top-opening Gate with Removable Section Cover


Ditch Bank
Opening

(b) Center-opening Gate with Unit Slide Cover


Ditch Bank
Open

(c) Bottom-opening Gate with Swinging Cover

**Figure 5.8 Wooden Ditch Checks with Different Openings (Ref. 41)**

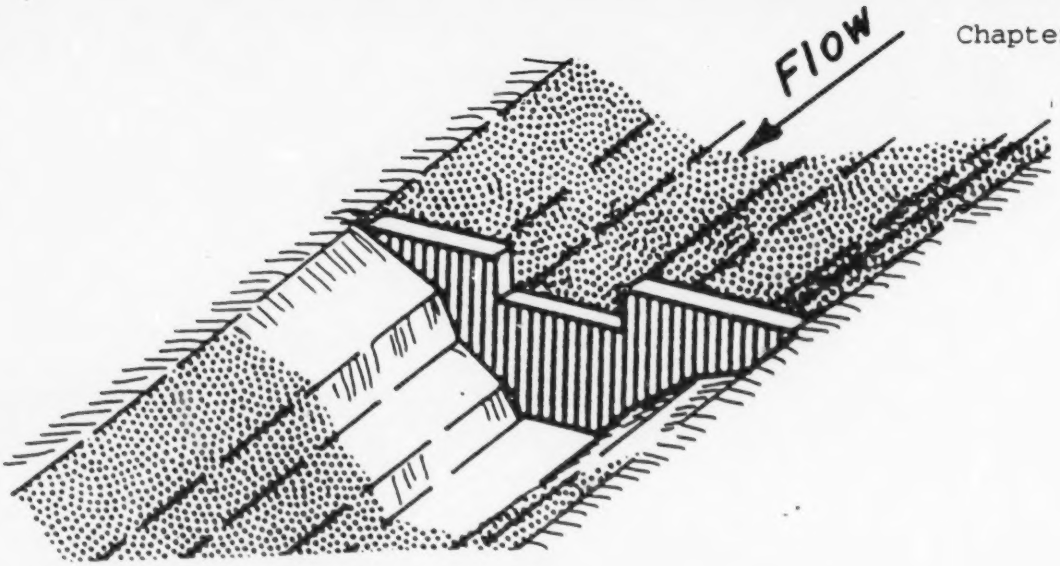


Figure 5.9 Small Concrete Ditch Check (Ref. 41)

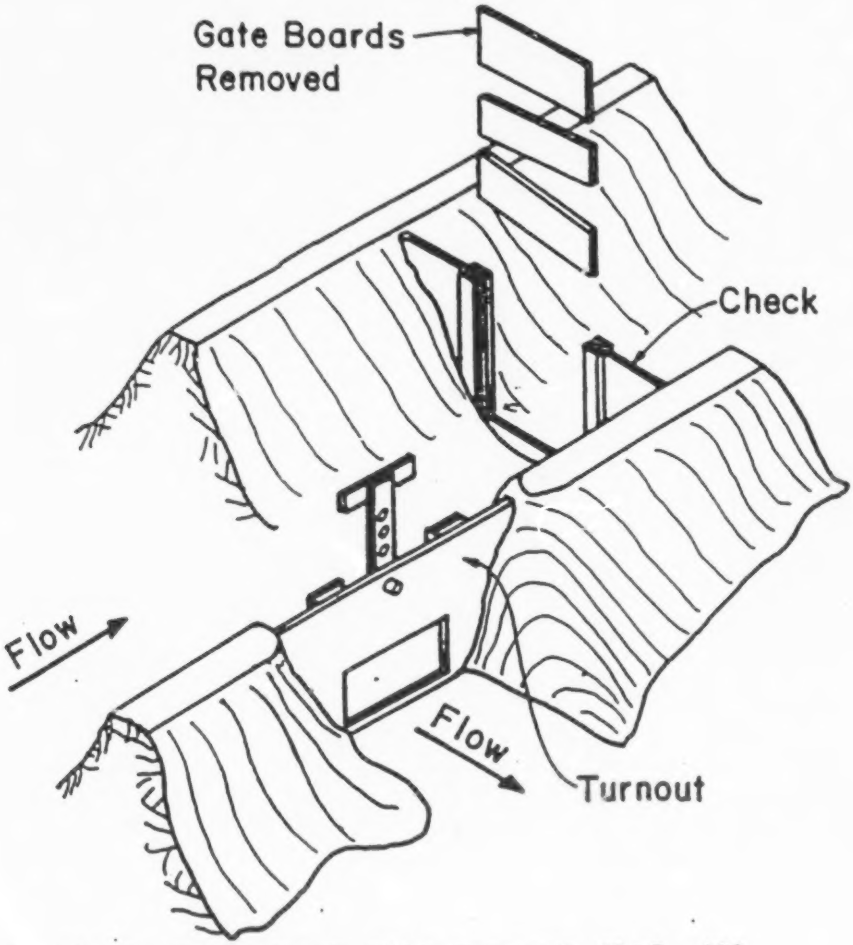
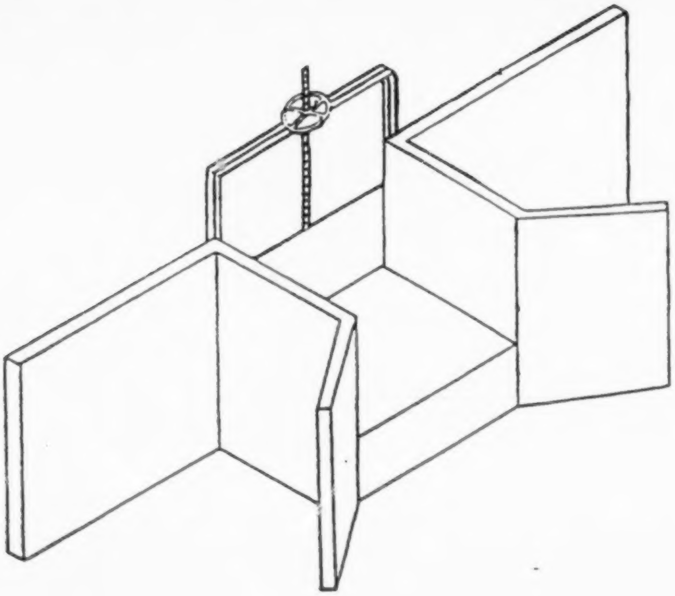
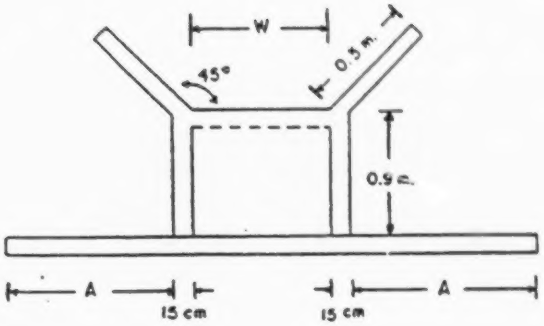

Gate Boards
Removed
Check
Flow
Flow
Turnout

Figure 5.10 Wood, Single Well Check with Turnout (Ref. 41)




W
45°
0.5 m.
0.9 m.
A
15 cm
15 cm
A

| Q | dimensions (cm) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | W | H | P | A |
| 30-60 l/sec | 30 | 40 | 30 | 80 |

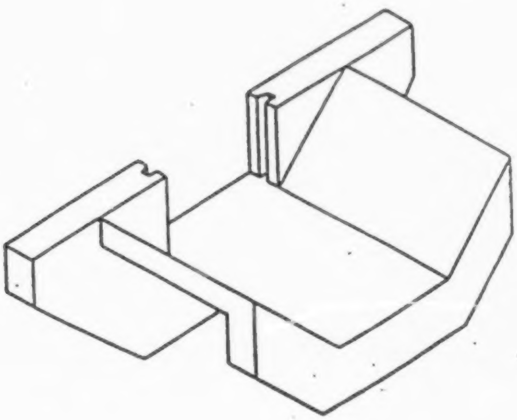
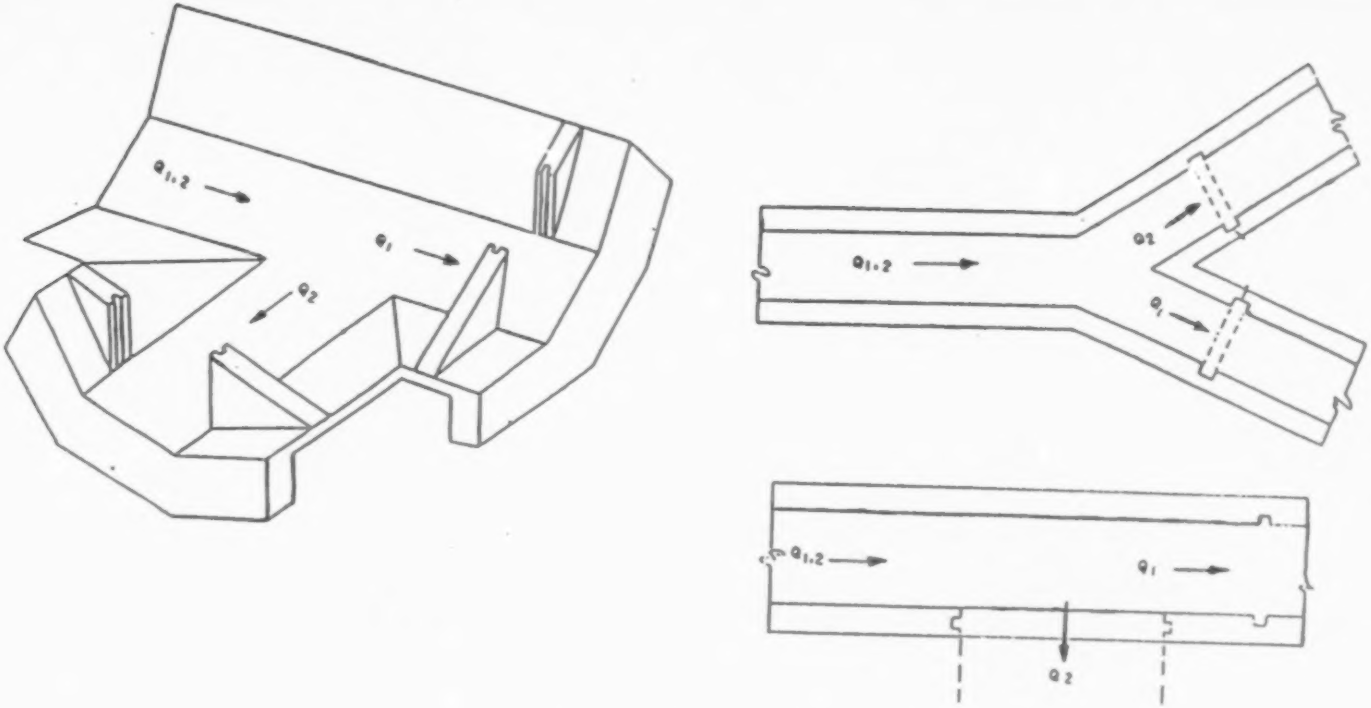


**Figure 5.11 Turnout Structures**


$Q_{1,2}$
$Q_1$
$Q_2$
$Q_{1,2}$
$Q_2$
$Q_1$
$Q_{1,2}$
$Q_1$
$Q_2$

| FLOW | dimension (m.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | W | H |
| 30-60l/sec | .5 | .5 |

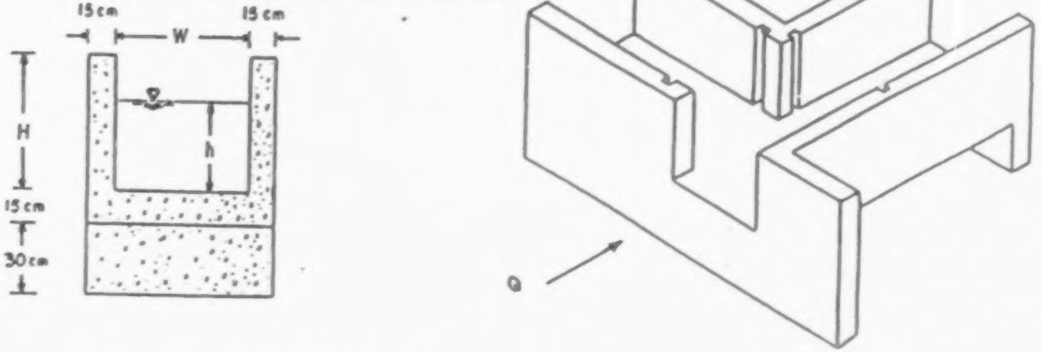

15 cm
W
15 cm
H
h
15 cm
30 cm
Q

Figure 5.12 Flow Dividers

All water control structures must be periodically checked and maintained. Follow these recommendations:

- Remove weeds and trash that restrict the flow of water. Clean the canals and raise their banks when necessary.
- Don't put more water in the canal than it can carry.
- Fix seeps and leaks in the canal.
- Don't cut ditchbanks just anywhere where water is needed. Select a few places and use the appropriate outlet structure.
- Keep animals away from the canal and its banks. They destroy the banks and protective vegetation.
- Fix breaks in the structures promptly before they become serious.

## 5.2 PIPELINE HYDRAULICS AND DESIGN

The design of pipelines requires an understanding of hydraulics. Hydraulics describes water and its behavior in closed conduits (pipelines). The most basic concepts that irrigationists should understand and be able to work with include:

- the continuity equation,
- head, pressure, and energy,
- friction, and
- water hammer.

### 5.2.1 Continuity Equation

The continuity equation is often written as:

$$Q = V_1 \times A_1 = V_2 \times A_2$$

where:

$Q$ = flow rate.
$V_1$ = velocity of the water at Point 1.
$A_1$ = cross-sectional area of the flow at Point 1.
$V_2$ = velocity of the water at Point 2.
$A_2$ = cross-sectional area of the flow at Point 2.

The equation assumes that the water is incompressible and there are no fluid losses between points 1 and 2. For example, a pipeline that carries 2.5 liters/sec, or 2500 $cm^3$/sec, will have a velocity of 178 cm/sec in a 50 mm diameter pipeline, and 112 cm/sec in a 63 mm diameter pipe.

**Example:** If we need to carry 2.5 liters/sec at a maximum velocity of 2.0 m/sec, what size pipe would be needed?

Step 1. Find the area of the pipe required.

$$A = \frac{Q}{V} = \frac{2500 \text{ cm}^3/\text{sec}}{200 \text{ cm/sec}} = 12.5 \text{ cm}^2$$

Step 2. Find the inside diameter of the pipe required. (Remember the area of a pipe $A = \pi r^2$, with $\pi = 3.142$ and $D = 2r$, where r is the radius and D is the diameter.)

372

$$r = \frac{A^{1/2}}{\pi^{1/2}} = \frac{12.5^{1/2}}{\pi^{1/2}} = 2 \text{ cm or } .79 \text{ inches}$$

Thus, the diameter, D, = 2r = 2 x .79 = 1.58"
= 2 x 2 = 4 cm

Step 3. Choose the closest pipe size available. (Remember, pipe is usually available in 1/2, 3/4, 1, 1 1/2, 2, 2 1/2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, and 15 inches.)

We would normally ask for a 1 1/2" pipe.

### 5.2.2 Pressure, Head, and Friction Losses

(Adapted with appropriate modifications from Ref. 21)

#### Pressure Exerted by a Column of Water

A column of water exerts a force due to the weight of the water. The pressure, or force per unit area, is dependent on the height of the column of water. Therefore, **head**, or water pressure, is usually expressed in terms of the equivalent height of water needed to exert that pressure. The pressure under static conditions is not dependent on pipe diameter. (See Figure 5.13)

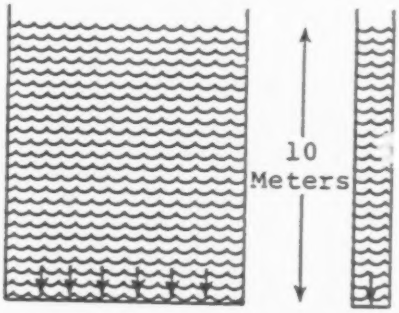


**Figure 5.13 Example of Static Head (Ref. 21)**

The pressure at the bottom of each column of water is the same. It is 10 meters of head, or 1.0 kg/cm$^2$. The pressure midway in each column would be 5 meters of head, or 0.5 kg/cm$^2$.

#### Pressure in a Static System

In a system under static conditions, the pressure at any point is dependent on the difference in height between the point in question and the highest point in the system. If an opening is made in the pipe in any part of the system and a tube connected to it, the water level will rise until it is the same as the highest point. (See Figure 5.14)

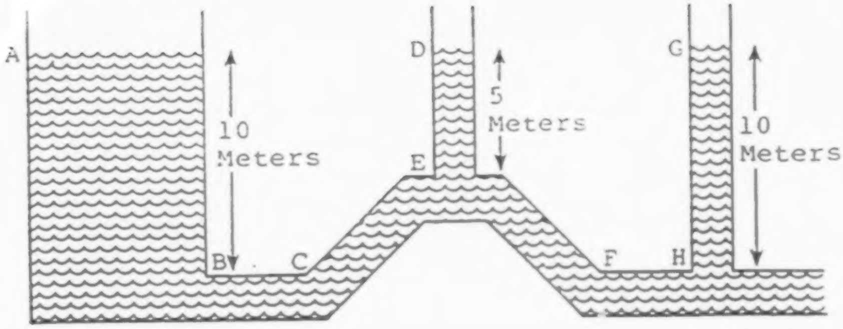

A
10
Meters
B
C
D
5
Meters
E
F
G
10
Meters
H

**Figure 5.14 Head on System with No Flow (Ref. 21)**

The system in Figure 5.14 is static, and no flow occurs. The pressure or head at Points B, C, F, and H is the same; i.e., 10 meters. The pressure or head at Point E is 5 meters, or the difference in height between Points A and E. If the pipeline were opened and a tube connected to it at Point C or F, then the water would rise 10 meters and would be at the same level as Points A, D, and G.

Pressure in a Flowing System

When water in the pipeline is flowing, the pressure is no longer dependent *solely* on the height difference with respect to the highest point. There is a loss of pressure or head due to friction between the water and the pipe. The pressure or head at any point is equal to the **static head** (relative height difference) minus the **head loss** due to friction and is known as the **dynamic head level**. Because of the head loss, the water will not rise to the same level as the highest point but only as high as the pressure or head at that point. Head loss occurs *only* when water is flowing. (See Figure 5.15)

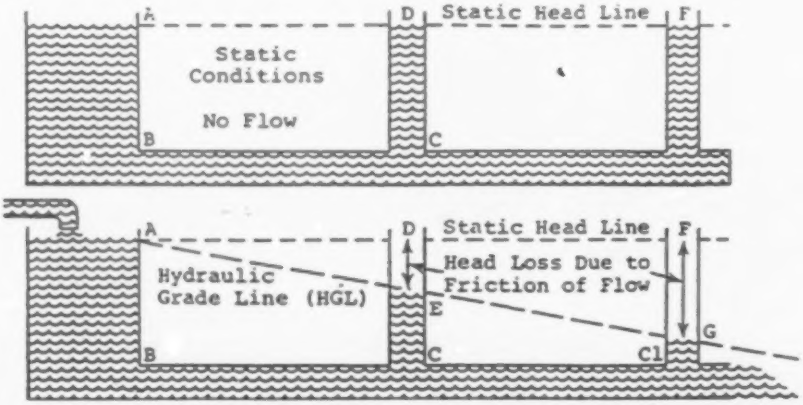

A
D
Static Head Line
F
Static
Conditions
No Flow
B
C
A
D
Static Head Line
F
Hydraulic
Grade Line (HGL)
Head Loss Due to
Friction of Flow
E
G
B
C
C1

**Figure 5.15 Hydraulic Gradient Line With and Without Flow (Ref. 21)**

Under flowing conditions, the pressure is no longer the same, and the pressure at Point C or C1 is not sufficient to raise the water level to Points D or F. The height difference between Points D and E, or Points F and G, is the head loss due to friction in the pipeline. If the flow were stopped, the water level would return to Points D and F.

### 5.2.3 Factors Influencing Head Loss

The amount of head loss is influenced by the following factors:

a. The length of pipe.

The longer the pipeline, the greater the head loss. This loss is directly proportional to the length; i.e., the head loss for 200 meters of pipe would be twice that for 100 meters under the same conditions.

b. The diameter of the pipe.

The smaller the diameter of the pipeline, the greater the friction will be for the same flow of water. The differences are not proportional.

c. The velocity of water in the pipe.

The higher the flow rate of water in a given pipe, the greater the head loss due to friction. Friction increases as the square of the velocity.

d. The pipe material.

The smoother the inner surface of the pipe, the lower the head loss. Thus, since PVC pipe is smoother than steel or cast iron, it has a lower head loss for identical conditions.

e. The number of fittings or bends in the pipeline.

A straight pipeline would have a lower head loss than one of the same length with fittings or bends.

### 5.2.4 Pipe Design

In designing a gravity flow pipeline, several factors are of primary importance. The design flow is calculated by the designer to fit the needs. A pipe size is then chosen that will result in adequate flow and pressure at the discharge after head losses are accounted for. The following data are required as a minimum for a design:

- flow rate required,
- pressure or head required at outlet,
- length of pipeline,
- elevation profile of the land where the pipeline will be laid from source to discharge,
- availability and cost of materials,
- description of soils and terrain on which pipe will be laid and storage and inlet facilities located.

### 5.2.5 The Hydraulic Gradient Line (HGL)

The Hydraulic Gradient Line (HGL) is determined by subtracting the head loss in the pipeline from the static head. The difference between the ground profile and the HGL is the pressure in the pipeline while the water is flowing. If an opening were made in the pipeline and a tube connected to it, then the water would rise to the level of the HGL. The HGL should always lie above the profile. If it does not, the water may still flow but in sections where the profile lies above the gradient, a negative pressure ensues that can cause air or contaminants to enter the pipeline. Sections of the pipeline where negative pressures occur should be redesigned. Figures 5.16 and 5.17 illustrate redesign to eliminate negative pressure.

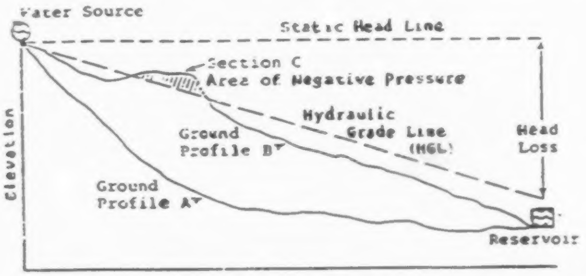

Water Source
Static Head Line
Section C
Area of Negative Pressure
Hydraulic Grade Line (HGL)
Ground Profile B
Head Loss
Elevation
Ground Profile A
Reservoir

**Figure 5.16 Hydraulic Gradient Line with Uniform Pipe Size (Ref. 21)**

In Figure 5.16, if the pipeline followed ground profile A, the choice of pipe with the given HGL would be acceptable. If the pipeline followed ground profile B, negative pressure would exist in section C, so the pipeline should be redesigned.

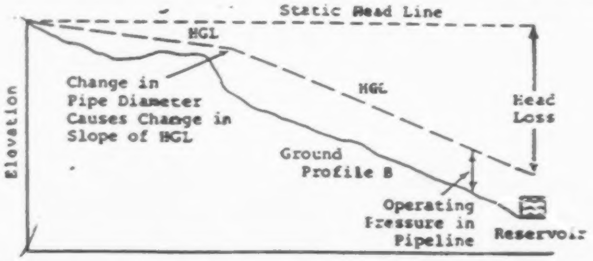

Static Head Line
HGL
Change in Pipe Diameter Causes Change in Slope of HGL
HGL
Head Loss
Elevation
Ground Profile B
Operating Pressure in Pipeline
Reservoir

**Figure 5.17 Hydraulic Gradient Line with Change in Pipe Diameter (Ref. 21)**

In Figure 5.17, the pipe diameters have been changed with larger pipe in the initial section (less head loss), thus changing the HGL. Use of a larger diameter pipe near the source ensures that the HGL lies entirely above the ground profile and is acceptable. Note that two pipe diameters are now used between the source and reservoir. For each diameter, the HGL has a different slope. The slope is directly dependent on the head loss, so a smaller diameter pipe has a steeper slope.

### 5.2.6 Pipeline Design Sample Problems

Plotting the pipeline profile is a process of trial and error. The calculated values for head losses from different sizes of pipe are compared to the available head on the profile drawing. The smallest diameter pipe that results in acceptable flow and pressure is chosen for each continuous section of the pipeline.

**Example 1:** A spring with a flow of 0.5 L/s is 1,000 meters from the farmer's field, and the available head is 20 meters. It is planned to convey the entire flow to a small reservoir. What size pipe is recommended?

Add 10% additional friction losses to the friction losses estimated from using Tables such as 5.3 and 5.4 or the Hazen-Williams equation (see section 5.2.8, "Calculating Friction Losses"). Using Table 5.4 with an additional 10% friction loss and assuming the use of galvanized iron pipe, a flow of 0.5 L/s, and a length of 1,000 meters, a 1.5-inch pipe results in a head loss of 11 meters. For 1.25-inch pipe, the head loss is 26 meters. Thus, the required flow will not be obtained with a 1.25-inch pipe. A 1.5-inch pipe could be used; however, the most economical solution is a combination of two pipe sizes. A 1.5-inch GI pipeline of 500 meter length with a flow of 0.5 L/s has a head loss of 6 meters, and 500 meters of 1.25-inch GI pipe has a head loss of 13 meters. Thus, the total head loss for the 1,000 meter pipeline is 19 meters, which closely matches the available head. The pipeline profile and HGL are plotted in Figure 5.18.

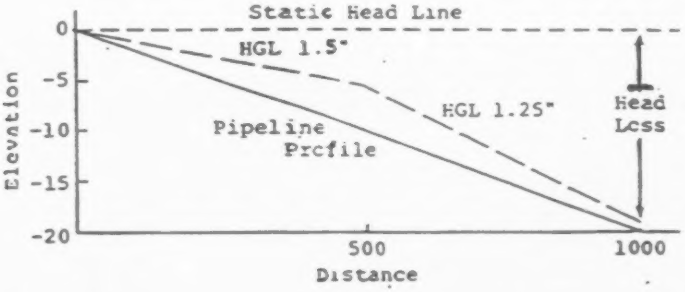


**Figure 5.18 Example: Sketch for Pipeline 1 (Ref. 21)**

**Table 5.3 Rigid PVC Frictional Head Loss Factors (Ref. 21)**

## RIGID PVC FRICTIONAL HEADLOSS FACTORS

These are the approximate headloss factors, in m/100m (%), for new rigid PVC pipe. Flows are in liters/second.

| FLOW | 1/2" | 3/4" | 1 | 1 1/4" | 1 1/2" | 2" | 2 1/2" | 3" | 4" |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0.1 | 4.2 | 1.0 | 0.25 | 0.08 | | | | | |
| 0.15 | 8.8 | 2.2 | 0.53 | 0.17 | 0.07 | | | | |
| 0.2 | 15.0 | 3.7 | 0.9 | 0.28 | 0.12 | | | | |
| 0.25 | 22.0 | 5.5 | 1.35 | 0.44 | 0.18 | | | | |
| 0.3 | 31.0 | 7.8 | 1.9 | 0.6 | 0.25 | | | | |
| 0.35 | 41.0 | 10.0 | 2.45 | 0.8 | 0.34 | | | | |
| 0.4 | 53.0 | 13.0 | 3.1 | 1.0 | 0.43 | | | | |
| 0.45 | 66.0 | 16.3 | 4.0 | 1.25 | 0.54 | 0.13 | | | |
| 0.5 | | 19.0 | 4.8 | 1.5 | 0.65 | 0.16 | | | |
| 0.55 | | 23.5 | 5.6 | 1.8 | 0.78 | 0.19 | | | |
| 0.6 | | 27.5 | 6.6 | 2.1 | 0.9 | 0.22 | | | |
| 0.65 | | 32.0 | 7.8 | 2.4 | 1.04 | 0.25 | | | |
| 0.7 | | 36.0 | 8.7 | 2.7 | 1.19 | 0.28 | | | |
| 0.75 | | 41.0 | 9.9 | 3.1 | 1.32 | 0.33 | 0.1 | | |
| 0.8 | | 45.0 | 11.0 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 0.37 | 0.12 | | |
| 0.85 | | 52.0 | 12.5 | 4.0 | 1.7 | 0.41 | 0.14 | | |
| 0.9 | | 57.0 | 14.0 | 4.5 | 1.9 | 0.45 | 0.15 | | |
| 0.95 | | 63.0 | 15.0 | 4.9 | 2.1 | 0.5 | 0.17 | | |
| 1.0 | | | 16.5 | 5.4 | 2.25 | 0.55 | 0.18 | 0.08 | |
| 1.05 | | | 18.0 | 5.8 | 2.5 | 0.6 | 0.20 | 0.09 | |
| 1.1 | | | 19.5 | 6.3 | 2.7 | 0.67 | 0.22 | 0.1 | |
| 1.15 | | | 21.5 | 6.9 | 2.95 | 0.71 | 0.24 | 0.11 | |
| 1.2 | | | 23.0 | 7.3 | 3.2 | 0.78 | 0.26 | 0.12 | |
| 1.3 | | | 26.5 | 8.6 | 3.75 | 0.9 | 0.29 | 0.13 | |
| 1.4 | | | 30.0 | 10.0 | 4.25 | 1.0 | 0.34 | 0.15 | |
| 1.5 | | | 35.0 | 11.2 | 4.9 | 1.15 | 0.39 | 0.17 | |
| 1.6 | | | 39.0 | 12.5 | 5.5 | 1.3 | 0.43 | 0.19 | |
| 1.7 | | | 44.0 | 14.2 | 6.05 | 1.45 | 0.49 | 0.21 | |
| 1.8 | | | 49.0 | 15.9 | 6.9 | 1.6 | 0.54 | 0.24 | |
| 1.9 | | | 55.0 | 17.4 | 7.5 | 1.8 | 0.6 | 0.26 | |
| 2.0 | | | 60.0 | 19.0 | 8.0 | 2.0 | 0.66 | 0.28 | |
| 2.2 | | | | 22.5 | 9.7 | 2.35 | 0.79 | 0.34 | |
| 2.4 | | | | 26.8 | 11.5 | 2.75 | 0.9 | 0.4 | |
| 2.6 | | | | 31.0 | 13.3 | 3.2 | 1.05 | 0.45 | |
| 2.8 | | | | 35.1 | 15.2 | 3.7 | 1.2 | 0.52 | |
| 3.0 | | | | 40.0 | 17.0 | 4.2 | 1.36 | 0.6 | |
| 3.2 | | | | 45.0 | 19.3 | 4.7 | 1.52 | 0.68 | |
| 3.4 | | | | 50.0 | 21.9 | 5.25 | 1.7 | 0.75 | |
| 3.6 | | | | 56.0 | 24.0 | 5.8 | 1.9 | 0.84 | 0.2 |
| 3.8 | | | | 62.0 | 26.0 | 6.3 | 2.1 | 0.9 | 0.22 |
| 4.0 | | | | 69.0 | 29.0 | 7.0 | 2.3 | 1.0 | 0.24 |
| 4.5 | | | | | 36.0 | 8.8 | 2.8 | 1.2 | 0.3 |
| 5.0 | | | | | 44.0 | 10.5 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 0.37 |
| 5.5 | | | | | 52.0 | 12.5 | 4.2 | 1.75 | 0.44 |
| 6.0 | | | | | | 14.7 | 4.9 | 2.1 | 0.52 |
| 6.5 | | | | | | 17.0 | 5.6 | 2.4 | 0.6 |
| 7.0 | | | | | | 19.5 | 6.5 | 2.8 | 0.7 |

378

**Table 5.4 GI Frictional Head Loss Factors (Ref. 21)**

## GI FRICTIONAL HEADLOSS FACTORS

These are the approximate headloss factors, in m/100m (%), for new GI pipe. Flows are in liters/second.

| FLOW | 1/2" | 3/4" | 1 | 1 1/4" | 1 1/2" | 2" | 2 1/2" | 3" | 4" |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0.1 | 5.9 | 1.58 | 0.38 | 0.12 | | | | | |
| 0.15 | 12.25 | 3.4 | 0.82 | 0.26 | | | | | |
| 0.2 | 21.45 | 5.65 | 1.4 | 0.44 | 0.19 | | | | |
| 0.25 | 31.65 | 8.5 | 2.1 | 0.68 | 0.28 | | | | |
| 0.3 | 44.91 | 11.9 | 2.9 | 0.92 | 0.4 | | | | |
| 0.35 | 58.2 | 15.8 | 3.8 | 1.2 | 0.52 | | | | |
| 0.4 | 75.5 | 19.9 | 4.8 | 1.55 | 0.67 | | | | |
| 0.45 | 91.9 | 25.0 | 6.0 | 1.93 | 0.84 | | | | |
| 0.5 | | 30.0 | 7.3 | 2.35 | 1.0 | 0.25 | | | |
| 0.55 | | 36.0 | 8.7 | 2.75 | 1.2 | 0.3 | | | |
| 0.6 | | 42.0 | 10.2 | 3.25 | 1.4 | 0.35 | | | |
| 0.65 | | 48.0 | 11.9 | 3.8 | 1.63 | 0.4 | | | |
| 0.7 | | 55.0 | 13.6 | 4.35 | 1.82 | 0.46 | | | |
| 0.75 | | 63.0 | 15.4 | 4.9 | 2.15 | 0.52 | 0.17 | | |
| 0.8 | | | 17.4 | 5.55 | 2.4 | 0.59 | 0.19 | | |
| 0.85 | | | 19.4 | 6.15 | 2.65 | 0.68 | 0.21 | | |
| 0.9 | | | 21.8 | 6.9 | 2.9 | 0.74 | 0.23 | | |
| 0.95 | | | 24.0 | 7.5 | 3.25 | 0.82 | 0.26 | | |
| 1.0 | | | 26.2 | 8.2 | 3.6 | 0.88 | 0.28 | 0.12 | |
| 1.1 | | | 31.0 | 9.8 | 4.2 | 1.05 | 0.34 | 0.15 | |
| 1.15 | | | 34.6 | 10.6 | 4.6 | 1.15 | 0.37 | 0.16 | |
| 1.2 | | | 36.0 | 11.5 | 5.0 | 1.25 | 0.39 | 0.17 | |
| 1.3 | | | 42.5 | 13.3 | 5.7 | 1.45 | 0.45 | 0.2 | |
| 1.4 | | | 48.0 | 15.3 | 6.6 | 1.65 | 0.52 | 0.23 | |
| 1.5 | | | 55.0 | 17.5 | 7.65 | 1.9 | 0.59 | 0.26 | |
| 1.6 | | | 62.0 | 19.5 | 8.45 | 2.1 | 0.67 | 0.29 | |
| 1.7 | | | 69.0 | 22.0 | 9.5 | 2.35 | 0.75 | 0.33 | |
| 1.8 | | | | 24.2 | 10.5 | 2.6 | 0.82 | 0.36 | |
| 1.9 | | | | 26.5 | 11.7 | 2.85 | 0.9 | 0.4 | |
| 2.0 | | | | 29.5 | 12.8 | 3.2 | 1.0 | 0.44 | |
| 2.2 | | | | 35.0 | 15.3 | 3.8 | 1.2 | 0.52 | |
| 2.4 | | | | 42.0 | 17.9 | 4.45 | 1.4 | 0.61 | |
| 2.6 | | | | 48.5 | 20.5 | 5.15 | 1.6 | 0.71 | 0.17 |
| 2.8 | | | | 55.0 | 24.0 | 5.95 | 1.85 | 0.82 | 0.2 |
| 3.0 | | | | 62.5 | 26.7 | 6.7 | 2.1 | 0.92 | 0.22 |
| 3.2 | | | | | 30.0 | 7.6 | 2.35 | 1.02 | 0.25 |
| 3.4 | | | | | 34.0 | 8.4 | 2.65 | 1.15 | 0.28 |
| 3.6 | | | | | 38.0 | 9.4 | 2.95 | 1.28 | 0.32 |
| 3.8 | | | | | 41.0 | 10.3 | 3.25 | 1.42 | 0.35 |
| 4.0 | | | | | 45.0 | 11.2 | 3.55 | 1.55 | 0.38 |
| 4.5 | | | | | 56.0 | 14.0 | 4.45 | 1.95 | 0.46 |
| 5.0 | | | | | | 17.0 | 5.45 | 2.25 | 0.56 |
| 5.5 | | | | | | 20.0 | 6.5 | 2.8 | 0.68 |
| 6.0 | | | | | | 24.0 | 7.5 | 3.35 | 0.8 |
| 6.5 | | | | | | 28.0 | 8.65 | 3.9 | 0.92 |
| 7.0 | | | | | | 32.0 | 10.0 | 4.45 | 1.05 |

**Example 2:** A water source is 1,000 meters from Farm A, and it is 1,000 meters farther to Farm B. The available head between the source and Farm A is 20 meters, and between Farm A and Farm B it is also 20 meters. The design flows are 2.0 L/s from the source to Farm A, and 0.5 L/s from Farm A to Farm B. What are suitable pipe diameters?

A suitable selection of GI pipe would be 2.5-inch pipe for the first 1,000 meters and 1.25-inch pipe for the second 1,000 meters. The total head loss is then 37 meters, which closely matches the total available head of 40 meters. Note that the second 1,000 meters has a head loss of 26 meters and an available head of only 20 meters. This deficit is allowable because there is excess head available from the first 1,000 meters of the pipeline, and the HGL is always above the pipeline profile. See Figure 5.19.

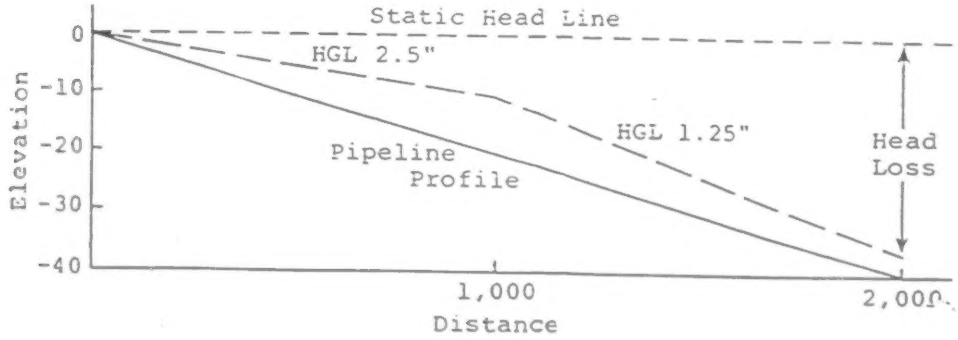


**Figure 5.19 Example: Sketch for Pipeline 2 (Ref. 21)**

### 5.2.7 Pipes and Pipeworking

#### Types of Pipe

The proper selection and use of pipe is a vital component of all gravity and pumped water systems. Therefore, it is important for all water technicians and engineers to be familiar with the characteristics of various types of pipe and learn the correct methods of working with pipes in the field. The three types of pipe that are widely distributed around the world and commonly used for piped water systems are discussed below.

> **Galvanized iron pipe (GI)** is regular iron pipe that is coated with a thin layer of zinc. The zinc greatly increases the life of the pipe by protecting it from rust and corrosion. GI usually comes in 6-meter (21-foot) lengths, and is joined together by threaded connections.

**Plastic polyethylene pipe (PE)** is black, lightweight, flexible pipe that comes in large coils 30 meters or more in length. The pipe varies in density and is joined by inserted fittings with clamps or heat fusion.

**Plastic polyvinyl chloride pipe (PVC)** is a rigid pipe, usually white or gray in color. It comes in 3 or 6 meter lengths and is joined primarily by solvent cement but can also be threaded. The pipe varies in density and, when buried, is extremely resistant to corrosion.

Table 5.5 lists some of the characteristics of the three types of pipe.

### 5.2.8 Working with Pipes

#### Galvanized Iron

Before the advent of plastic pipe, GI was the primary type of pipe used in water systems. Much of it is still in use today. GI has several advantages in a water system: it is very durable in the field, able to withstand high pressure heads, and resistant to water hammer. Leakage is also rare because the pipe is very hard to puncture, and the threaded joints tend to seal themselves over time. GI pipe may be laid above ground, under roads, or across streams, performing well under all these conditions. The threaded joints, however, can be broken much more easily than the solid pipe and, therefore, must always be well supported.

GI pipe also has a number of disadvantages: its weight makes it difficult to transport, threaded joints are difficult and time consuming to make, certain kinds of water can corrode and rust the pipe, and it is difficult to repair in the field or tap in new branch lines.

The tools necessary for working with GI pipe are costly. If such tools are properly maintained, however, they can last a lifetime. The basic tools for such work are: pipe vise or clamp, pipe threader, pipe reamer, cutting oil, pipe dope or Teflon tape, pipe cutter or hacksaw, steel file, wire brush, and large pipe wrenches (14", 18").

A variety of fittings are used to connect the pipe. Pipe threads are called "male" for outside threads, and "female" for inside threads. The pipes themselves usually come in 21-foot (6-meter) lengths and are factory threaded at both ends; usually one coupling is also provided. A variety of diameter sizes are available, from small (3/8", 1/2", and 1") to large (4" and 6"); these sizes always refer to the *inside* diameter of the pipe. The outside diameter would measure 1/4" larger because of the wall thickness. The typical procedure for cutting, threading, and joining GI pipe is as follows:

**Table 5.5 Characteristics of Different Pipe Materials (Ref. 21)**

| | GI | PE | PVC |
|---|---|---|---|
| Life Expectancy Resistance to Corrosion Underground | Very long life expectancy of 30 years or more. However, joints are subject to rust and may break if not properly supported. | Generally good life expectancy. However, has low stress resistance and poor rigidity. | Long life expectancy if properly laid and backfilled. |
| Resistance to Corrosion or Chemicals Inside Pipe | Will corrode in acid, alkaline, and hard water. | Very resistant. However, very soft or very hard water can corrode. | Very resistant. However, very soft or very hard water can corrode. |
| *Safe Working Pressures (PSI) | Adequate for all pressures found in small scale water systems. | Rating from 80-160 PSI. | Ratings from 80-600 PSI. |
| Resistance to Puncturing and Rodents | Very high resistance. | Low resistance. | Good resistance. |
| Effect of Sun and Weather | No effect; however, threaded ends may rust. | Weakens with exposure. | Weakens with exposure. |
| Ease of Joining, Laying, Bending | Difficult to join, lay and bend. Very heavy. | Easy to join and lay because of few joints and light weight. Bends readily, but will collapse on short bends. | Easy to join and lay. Rigid, but will bend on long radius. Can be bent by heating. |
| Cost | Very high cost, especially in larger diameters. | Low cost. | Moderate cost. |

*Always check pressure ratings with local manufacturer.

1. Clamp the pipe securely in the vise, with 6"-8" protruding from the vise jaws.

2. If the pipe needs cutting, cut with a pipe cutter or hacksaw. Make the cut straight, and clean all burrs with a pipe reamer or steel file. It is very important to remove all burrs.

3. Carefully place the pipe threader on the end of the pipe. Make sure that you are using the correct size pipe die, and that you have the teeth facing the correct way. The large end of the tapered teeth should go on first. Start the guide onto the pipe by firmly holding the die with one hand and turning the ratchet handle clockwise several turns with the other hand. Check to make sure that the threader is on straight and the die teeth are cutting properly. Squirt cutting oil generously onto the end of the pipe as you continue to rotate the threader. Every couple of turns, back off the threader a quarter turn to clear off the burr, especially if the teeth bind. Keep going one full turn past the point where the pipe emerges from the die. Stop, reverse the ratchet, and back the threader off the pipe. The threads should be clean, sharp, and continuous, with no broken points or burrs. Clean the threads with a wire brush and cloth rag.

4. At this point, you should *always* test the thread size by putting on a fitting. If you plan to install a fitting, start by applying pipe dope compound to the male thread, not the fitting itself. This will allow the fitting to be easily installed and, more importantly, removed at a later date if necessary. Teflon tape can be used instead of pipe dope. The tape is wrapped tightly, 1 1/2 layers around the threads in a clockwise direction.

5. Start the fitting with your hand by turning clockwise. Make sure that it is on straight and not cross-threaded. It should turn two or three rotations with your hand before it becomes tight. Now tighten with a pipe wrench, pulling the handle towards the open jaws, not away from the jaws. This will make the teeth bite and hold. Keep turning until the fitting is tight. Usually, the fitting is tight when two or three threads are *left exposed*. Be careful not to apply too much force. The threads are tapered and too much pressure can split the fitting. If you are using wrenches to install the fitting, place the second wrench facing in the opposite direction on the pipe, close to the fitting. You may turn either the pipe or the fitting, whichever is easier.

## Plastic Pipe

Plastic pipe has become the preferred type of pipe for small water systems around the world. It has several advantages when used in a water system: it is lightweight and easily transported; simple to join, cut, and lay; low in cost relative to GI pipe; very resistant to corrosion inside the pipe; and its smooth inner walls reduce friction loss factors. It also has some disadvantages, however: it is more easily punctured, will withstand only moderate pressure heads, weakens when exposed to weather, and must often be laid underground in a particular manner in order to perform satisfactorily.

The two most common types of plastic pipe are Polyethylene (PE) and Polyvinyl chloride (PVC).

### Polyethylene pipe

The tools necessary for working with PE pipe are few. The basic tools are: handsaw, file or rasp, pliers, and screwdriver. Fittings consist of adapters to inside and outside threads, couplings, elbows, and tees. They are made of either plastic or steel. The pipe comes in large coil rolls, and size is based on inside diameter. PE pipe also comes in various densities that correspond to the amount of pressure head that it will withstand. Its light weight and flexibility make it easy to work with and, because it comes in large rolls, very few joints are needed when laying the pipe. Of the three pipes discussed here, however, PE is the weakest. It has poor rigidity, is the most easily punctured, and handles the lowest pressure heads.

When joining PE, the pipe slips over serrated fittings and is clamped with stainless steel worm drive clamps or secured tightly with thin steel wire if clamps are not available. The typical procedure for cutting and joining PE pipe is as follows:

1. With a hand saw, make a straight cut on the pipe ends that are to be joined.
2. Remove all burrs with a file, rasp, or knife.
3. Slide the clamps onto the pipe ends.
4. Position the fitting on the pipes and join the ends together.
5. Tighten the clamps with a screwdriver, or securely wrap steel wire around the pipe and tighten with pliers.

## Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)

PVC is the most versatile pipe used in small rural water systems. The tools necessary for working with PVC are: handsaw or hacksaw, file or rasp, clean, dry rags, and PVC solvent cement and applicator. Fittings consist of couplings, reducers, elbows, adaptors, tees, and caps. They are joined together by the use of solvent cement. The pipe comes in 3- or 6-meter lengths and is usually gray or white. It also comes in various densities that correspond to the amount of pressure head that it will withstand. It is lightweight, but its rigidity makes it quite strong. It is very resistant to corrosion and, when properly laid in a trench, will last indefinitely. Cutting, joining, and laying PVC pipe is a simple process. The typical procedure is as follows:

1. With a hand or hacksaw, make a straight cut on the pipe ends that are to be joined.
2. Remove all burrs inside and out with a file, rasp, or knife.
3. Clean all pipe surfaces that will be joined. The pipe and fitting must be *clean and dry*. You may rough up the pipe surface with a file or rasp for better contact.
4. If available, apply pipe cleaner to the pipe and fitting.
5. Apply a liberal coating (it should not be dripping off, however) of solvent cement to the pipe surface and fitting. Coat all the way around the pipe and fitting. Work quickly because some types of solvent cement set up very quickly. Also, do not expose any cement to direct sunlight, if possible.
6. Join the two surfaces together firmly, making sure that the pipe is pushed all the way into the fitting.
7. Gently set the joint down and do not disturb it until it has reached its initial set. (This set time will vary with different types of solvent cement; check the label.)

## Trenching

Both PVC and PE should be buried underground to provide long and trouble free service. Therefore, it is necessary to dig a trench the entire length of the pipeline. Trenching is no easy job, even under the best of conditions; consequently, digging the trench is usually the most time consuming and labor intensive task in a water project. If trenching and pipe laying are done properly, the life span of the system will be greatly increased and maintenance problems greatly reduced.

The trench itself should be of uniform depth and gradation. The standard acceptable depth is one meter, but shallower depths are acceptable if only light traffic is expected and frost is not a problem. The trench should have no sharp corners nor run in a zigzag manner. The bottom should be relatively smooth and free of rocks or sharp objects that could damage the pipe.

Join and lay the pipe as described above. When backfilling, the pipe should first be completely covered with dirt alone (no rocks or sticks) up to 1/3 of the trench depth. This earth should be compacted to protect the pipe from surface pressures. The trench is then completely backfilled with the remaining soil. Rocks may be placed towards the top of the trench. Remember to compact the soil while backfilling - this will help stabilize the trench. Also, the top of the trench, when complete, should have a slight crown to allow water to run off the trench, rather than down it.

Once the pipe has been laid in the trench, the trench should be backfilled as soon as possible. Therefore, one should not lay more pipe in one day than can be backfilled in that same day. The pipe should be completely backfilled except for a 2- to 3-meter area at each joint. The joints should be only partially covered until the line has been tested for 24 hours with working pressure.

The course of the trench should follow, whenever possible, the route of the original survey. Some detours may be necessary to avoid such things as heavy erosion areas, extremely rocky areas, or steep gullies. If detours occur, however, care should be taken so that the route does not change the hydraulic gradient of the system.

At times, GI pipe may be needed to cross streams, roads, or other areas where trenching is impossible. These areas should be marked out when the original survey is conducted. In determining the rest of the route, the surveyor should select the easiest course for trenching.

## Calculating Friction Losses

The friction loss, $h_f$, in a pipeline may be estimated using Tables such as 5.3 and 5.4. If such tables are not available, however, the losses may be estimated based on the flow rate, size of pipe, type of pipe, and the types of fittings and valves used in the pipeline. The friction losses for a pipeline without fittings may be estimated by the use of the Hazen-Williams equation as follows:

$$h_f \text{ (m/100m)} = 1.19 \times 10^{12} \frac{Q^{1.85}}{c^{1.85}\ d^{4.8655}}$$

$$h_f \text{ (ft/100ft)} = \frac{1044\ \ Q^{1.5}}{c^{1.85}\ d^{4.8655}}$$

where:

Q is the flow rate in the pipe (Q=L/sec or gpm).
d is the inside diameter of the pipe (d=mm or in).
c is the roughness coefficient and is dependent on the material of the pipe. Approximate values are as follows:

| Material | c |
|---|---|
| PVC or polyethylene | 150 |
| new steel pipe | 135 |
| old steel pipe | 100 |

Friction losses in pipe fittings and valves may be computed by determining the equivalent length of pipe that will create the same loss. To obtain the equivalent length, we can multiply the nominal diameter by a factor. Some common fittings and their factors (Ref. 27) are:

| Fitting | Length Multiplier |
|---|---|
| Union | 7 |
| Elbow (90°, short radius) | 33 |
| Gate valve (fully open) | 7 |
| Free entrance | 29 |
| Tee (straight run) | 27 |
| Tee (90 degree side) | 68 |

For example, a 5 cm close radius elbow has the same loss as an equivalent length of pipe of 165 cm, i.e. (5x33).

For long pipelines normally used in irrigation, an increase of 10% in the friction losses calculated without fittings will account for fitting losses.

### 5.2.9 Water Hammer

Water hammer is the pressure pulsation that occurs in a pipe when a valve is suddenly opened or closed. The shock pressure, or water hammer, may be several times greater than the working pressure of the pipe. Water hammer is a frequent cause of failure in PVC lines when valves are closed suddenly. The effect is greater with longer pipelines, higher velocities, and rapid valve closing. The maximum pressure rise in PVC pipe that will result from rapid valve closure can be determined with the following equation:

metric: $P = 0.053 \frac{VL}{T}$ with P(kg/cm$^2$); V(m/sec); L(m); T(sec)

English: $P = 0.070 \frac{VL}{T}$ with P(psi); V(ft/sec); L(ft); T(sec)

where:

P = pressure rise above the static pressure.
V = liquid velocity in the pipe.
L = length of pipe ahead of valve causing the hammer.
T = time required to close the valve.

**Example:** Given a pipeline with a length of 61 m (200 ft); water velocity at 1.07m/sec (3.5 ft/sec); valve closure in 0.1 sec; static pressure of 1.4 kg/cm$^2$ (20 psi); then P = 34.6 kg/cm$^2$ or 490 psi from the equations presented. Next add 1.4 kg/cm$^2$ (20 psi) to 34.6 kg/cm$^2$ (490 psi) to get 36 kg/cm$^2$ (510 psi) as the instantaneous pressure under the selected service conditions.

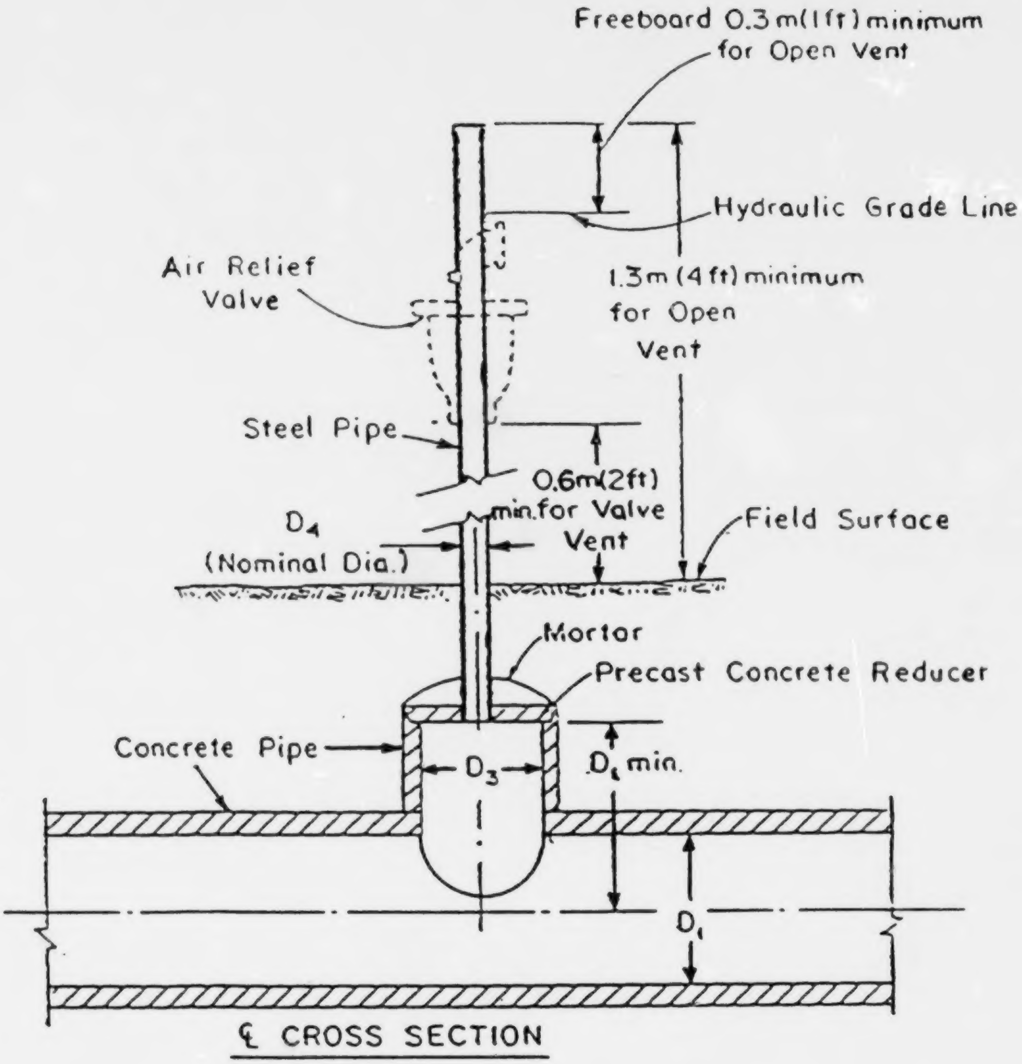
The water hammer analysis indicates how important it is to close valves slowly in long pipelines.

### 5.2.10 Air Relief, Vacuum Relief, and Pressure Relief

Air vents or air relief valves are necessary for allowing air to escape from pipelines as they fill with water, thus preventing air pockets, which restrict flow. Vacuum relief valves are necessary to prevent vacuum pressures (sub-atmospheric pressures) from collapsing pipelines (especially plastic lines) at times when pressures may fall below atmospheric.

Air and vacuum relief are often combined into one valve and are often called air/vacuum relief valves. Air and vacuum relief valves should be installed at the beginning and end of a pipeline, at high points or summits in a line where air could be entrapped, or periodically where air could otherwise be entrained by the water.

In low pressure lines, the air and vacuum relief can be accomplished simply with a stand pipe that is taller than the expected maximum operating pressure, expressed as the height of a column of water with a freeboard of 30 cm (1ft). (See Figure 5.20 for dimensions.) For higher pressures, a commercial valve for air/vacuum relief is available.


Freeboard 0.3 m (1 ft) minimum for Open Vent
Hydraulic Grade Line
Air Relief Valve
1.3 m (4 ft) minimum for Open Vent
Steel Pipe
0.6 m (2 ft) min. for Valve Vent
D4 (Nominal Dia.)
Field Surface
Mortar
Precast Concrete Reducer
Concrete Pipe
D3
D1 min.
D1
℄ CROSS SECTION

Note:

$D_1$ - Diameter of Underground Concrete Pipe

$D_3$ - Diameter of Concrete Vent Pipe $\geq 0.75\ D_1$

$D_4$ - Diameter (nominal) of Steel Vent Pipe $\geq 0.13\ D_1$

**Figure 5.20 Air Vent for Low Pressure Pipelines (Ref. 41)**

The sudden escape of large amounts of air from a pipeline as it fills can cause high momentary pressure rises - as high as 4 times the operating pressure - when automatic air relief valves close suddenly. Thus, it is important that pipelines be filled slowly. The velocity at which an empty pipeline should be filled should not exceed 0.7 m/sec, or 2 ft/sec. The orifice of a pressure/vacuum relief valve should be at least 1/2 inch for pipelines of 5 inches or less, and 1 inch for pipelines of 6 to 10 inches.

Pressure relief valves prevent pressures that would be significantly above normal operating pressures from building up. This helps to protect against breakages in the pipeline from pressure build-up due to blockages.

Open vent stands can be used for pressure relief; however, pressure relief valves are often used for pressurized systems. They are often made for a specific pressure, which should be marked on the valve.

Some pressure relief valves are adjustable and can be set for different pressures. The valves should be capable of discharging the design flow rate without elevating pipeline pressures by more than 50% above the working pressure. One valve at the lowest point in a pipeline, or the point of maximum expected pressure, is usually sufficient to provide necessary protection.

Pressure relief valves do not provide sufficient protection against water hammer. The Soil Conservation Service suggests that pressure relief valves be no smaller than 1/4 inch nominal size for each diameter inch of the pipeline. Pressure relief valves should be set to open at pressures no greater than 5 psi above the design working pressure of the pipe.

### 5.2.11 Other Pipeline Structures and Accessories

Pipelines require couplers to join pipeline sections together. Reducers are required when one size pipe is coupled to a pipe of a smaller diameter. Elbows are required for directional changes. Tees and crosses are required where the flow will be split. Globe, gate, and check valves are used to control the flow of water.

Valves should be capable of being closed slowly to prevent water hammer. Check valves are installed between the pump discharge and pipeline wherever necessary to prevent backflow. Foot valves are used with pumps to prevent the loss of prime in a pump or siphon. Hydrants are used to allow the withdrawal of water from a pipeline. Thrust blocks are used to prevent the pipe from coming apart at places where the flow velocity changes direction. Drain valves at low points in the system may be necessary to permit drainage. A valve at the very end of the system is often required to allow for flushing of sediment periodically from the lines.

### 5.2.12 Pipeline Materials

Aluminum, rubber, plastic, or metal pipelines are often used in irrigation pipelines. The pressure rating of a pipeline is an important aspect of pipeline design. The Soil Conservation Service suggests that the working pressure should not exceed 72% of the rated pipeline pressure, and the design flow velocity should not exceed 1.5 m/sec (5 ft/sec).

The most common type of materials used in small Peace Corps projects are PVC and polyethylene plastic. Pipe made from these materials is sold based on the IPS (Iron Pipe Size) or PIP (Plastic Irrigation Pipe) size. IPS pipe sizes start at 1/2 inch in diameter and can be used with iron fittings without special adapters. For example, a 3/4 inch plastic pipe can use 3/4 inch metal fittings. PIP plastic pipe is sold in diameters of 4 inches and greater.

To connect PIP pipe to other PIP pipe requires PIP fittings, and to connect to IPS pipe requires special adaptors. It is important to remember in pipeline design that a nominal size of pipe will have different I.D.'s (inside diameters) and O.D.'s (outside diameters) depending on the system used. Thus, it is important that the system be specified.

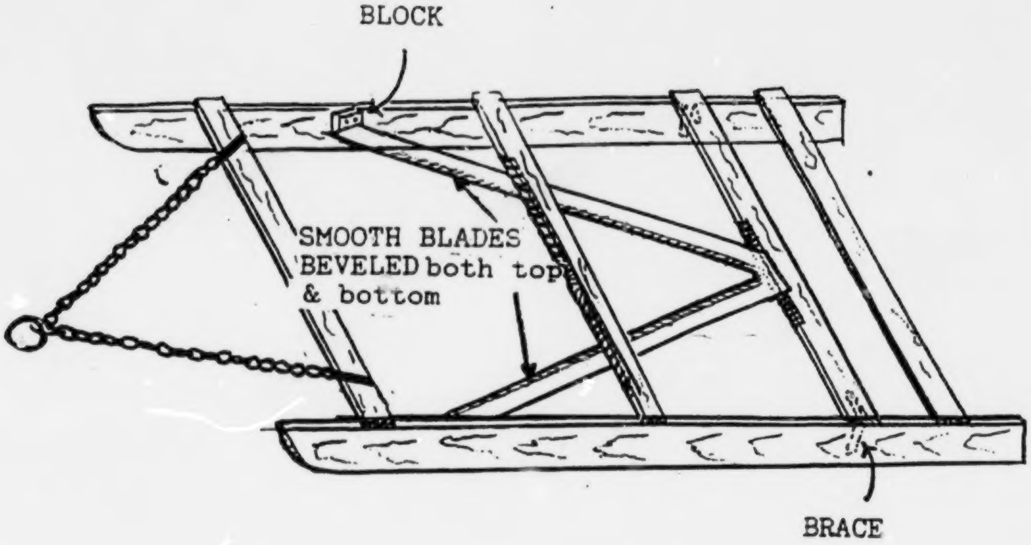
## 5.3 LAND LEVELING

Land leveling for irrigation is a process by which the surface relief of a field is modified to a desired grade to provide a more suitable surface for efficiently applying irrigation water. Land leveling requires moving a lot of soil and for practical purposes is not done on a large scale without special machinery. Land leveling is probably the most intensive practice that is applied to agricultural land and is very costly. Considering the high investment required for this activity, only deep and fertile soils should be considered for leveling. The land should already be fairly level to reduce construction costs and earth movement, which greatly increase with slope. Land smoothing, a rough grading, is less intensive than land leveling and much less expensive. It may result in dramatic improvements in the ability of water to spread evenly over the surface.

The factors that influence the design of a land-leveling project are land slope, depth of soil, topography, crops to be grown, and method of irrigation. A major problem with land leveling is the removal of the topsoil and the influence of that removal on plant growth. Therefore it is important to determine the soil depth of a field so that after the leveling is done, an adequate depth of topsoil covers the entire field.

Because of the high cost and need for heavy machinery, farmers on a small scale may be more inclined to rough grade their fields. This is the practice of removing knolls, mounds, or ridges and filling pockets and depressions. This requires less soil movement and simpler, less costly tools and implements can be used. Figure 5.21 shows a wooden land-smoothing implement and a buck scraper. They can easily be constructed in the field and revisions in the design and materials can be made to adapt to local conditions. The implements can be pulled by a team of oxen across the field. The back plank on the buck scraper is hinged to the box so the operator can make cuts or fills by lowering or lifting the handle. The rectangular box is filled when making cuts and emptied when making fills. The addition of rocks or some other heavy object on the implements often improve their cutting and carrying ability.

Before leveling a field, several different locations in the field should be checked to assure sufficient soil depth and good uniformity. A topographical map will provide a basis for planning the irrigation system. Lastly, the land should be plowed to loosen the soil. This will make the smoothing process easier and more effective.


BLOCK
SMOOTH BLADES
BEVELED both top
& bottom
BRACE

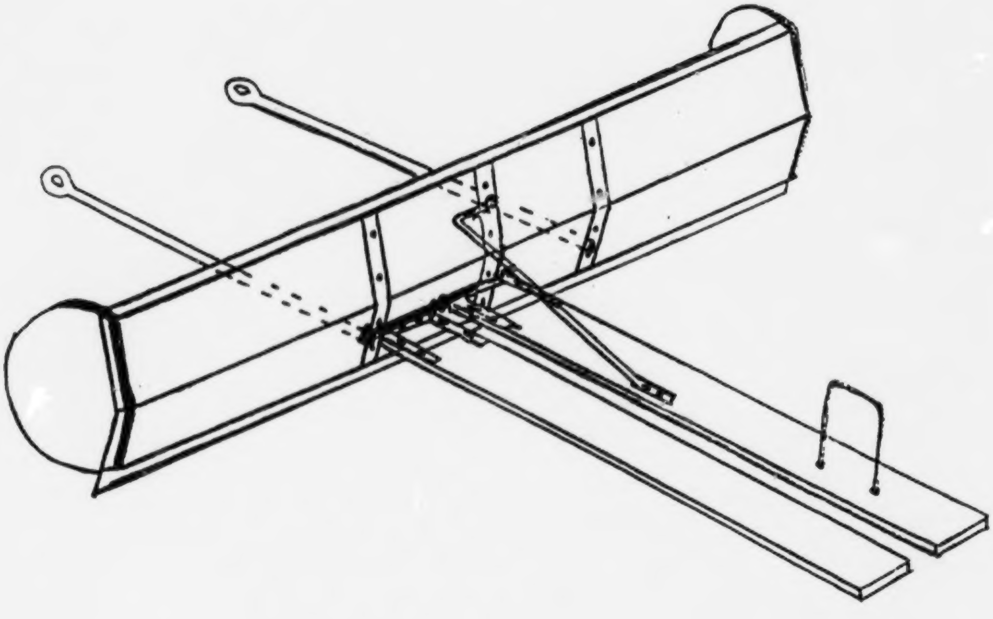


Figure 5.21 Land Smoother and Buckscraper

Using the buck scraper requires that several passes be made across the field. Elevation differences need to be checked periodically against a permanent benchmark. Remember that the grade must be taken into consideration when taking field elevation shots from a set point in the field. Rough grading is time consuming and may also require final touches done manually. This process can be accomplished over several years with the grade being refined with each planting season.

## 5.4 IRRIGATION METHODS

There are a number of irrigation methods in use throughout the world. They may be broadly classified as:

1. Surface - water is spread over the land surface;
2. Sprinkle, Drip, or Low Volume Irrigation - water is applied as artificial rainfall;
3. Localized - water is applied as droplets or very small streams of water to specific points on the surface; and
4. Sub-irrigation - water is supplied to the root zone of the crop by maintaining a high water table.

The methods may be broken down further. For example, surface methods include graded or level border, basin, graded furrow, level furrow, contour furrow, contour ditch, wild flood, or corrugation methods.

Factors to consider when selecting and planning an irrigation system are:

- slope and topography of the field;
- crops to be grown - water requirements, tolerance to salt, moisture stress, wetness of surface, waterlogging, value of the crop, crop height, and cultivation required;
- field size and shape;
- soil texture, structure, depth, infiltration characteristics, water-holding capacity, erosivity, and variability within a field;
- soil and water salinity;
- availability and quantity of water, and availability of time;
- amount and intensity of rainfall;
- economics - initial costs, amortized costs, operating costs (fuel, labor, water maintenance), availability of capital, marketability of crop, and net profitability; and
- farmer, social, and institutional constraints.

### 5.4.1 Characteristics of Irrigation Systems

(Adapted from Ref. 57)

A. Surface Irrigation (Figure 5.22) - level basins, level borders, and level furrows

   1. Water is ponded on an enclosed level field and allowed to infiltrate in basins, borders, or furrows.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

2. Advantages
   a. Management is very easy.
   b. Adapts easily to flat topography.
   c. Low cost required.
   d. Can function with no outlet drainage facilities.
   e. Allows easy leaching of salts.
   f. Allows full utilization of rainwater.
   g. High application efficiencies can be achieved.
   h. Adapts well to moderate to low infiltration rates.
   i. Works well with short-term water supplies.
   j. Adapts well to small land holdings.

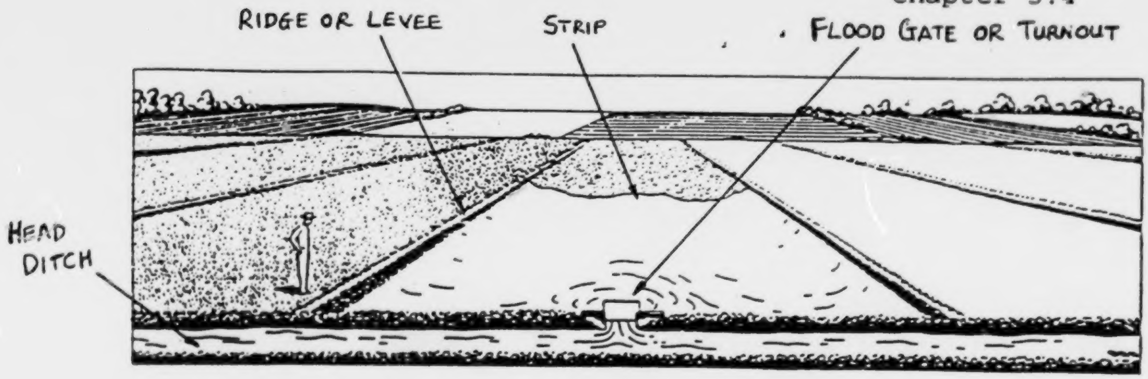
3. Disadvantages

   a. Requires level land to achieve high efficiencies (maximum land elevation fluctuation shouldn't be greater than half the applied irrigation depth).
   b. Soils with high infiltration rates require small field sizes, which interferes with mechanization.
   c. It is difficult to remove excess water, particularly during times of excess rainfall.
   d. Plants are partly covered with water sometimes ofr extended periods (in low infiltration rate soils).
   e. It is difficult to apply small irrigations.
   f. Small basins require extensive delivery channels.
   g. Small basins are not easily adaptable to tractor mechanization.

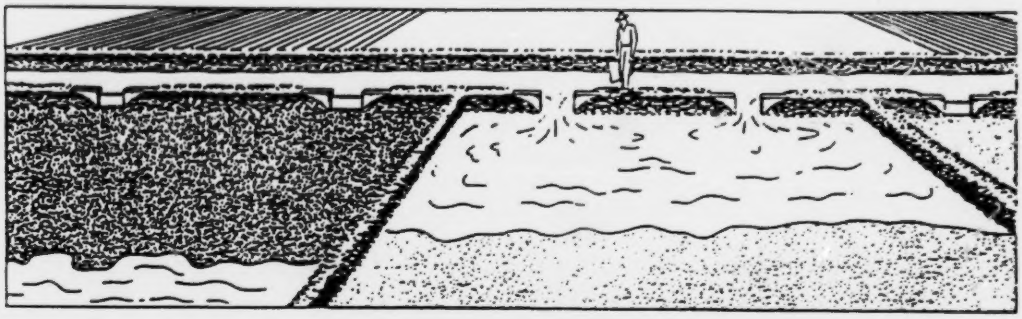
B. Surface Irrigation (Figures 5.22 and 5.23) - graded systems.

1. Water is put on the high end of a field and allowed to run slowly to the low end. Types of graded surface irrigation are:

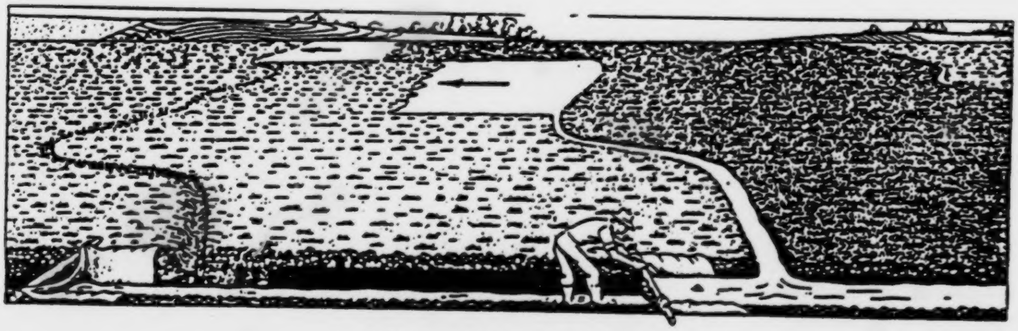
   a. furrows --
      straight on medium slopes,
      contour on steep slopes;
   b. borders;
   c. corrugations; and
   d. unguided (wild flooding).


RIDGE OR LEVEE
STRIP
FLOOD GATE OR TURNOUT
HEAD DITCH

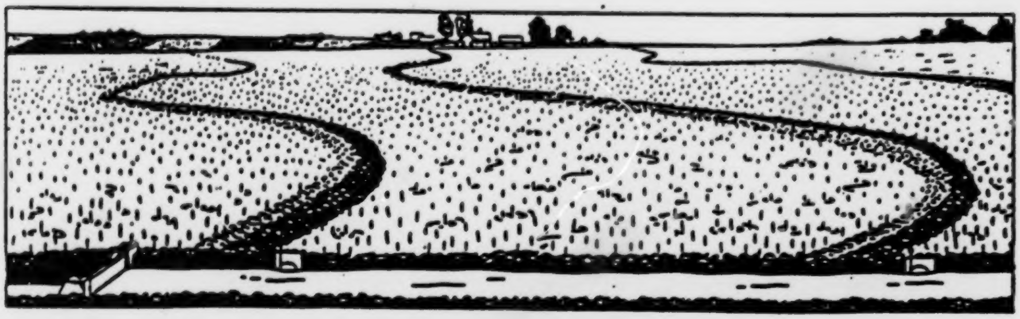
Level border (basin) irrigation



Graded border irrigation



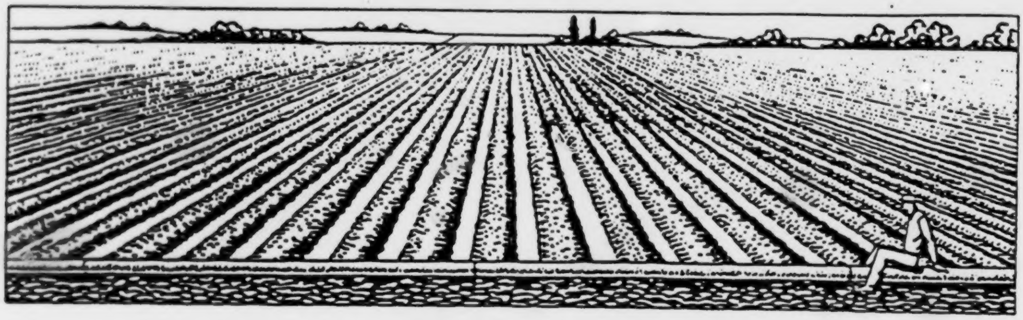
Contour ditch irrigation



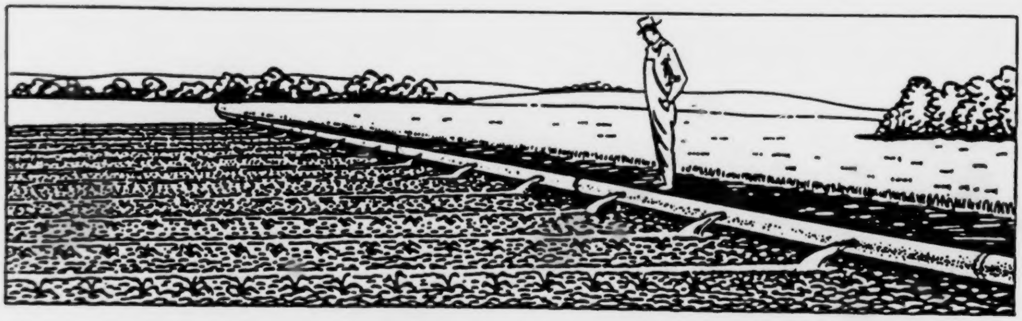
Contour levee irrigation

**Figure 5.22 Surface Irrigation Methods 1 (Ref. 10)**

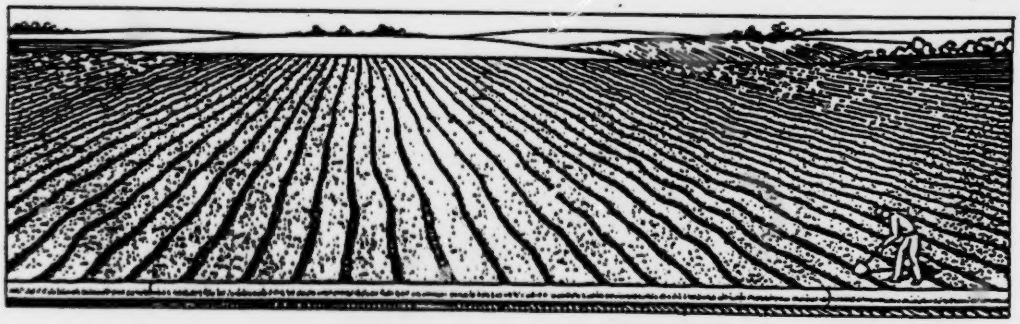
BEST COPY AVAILABLE



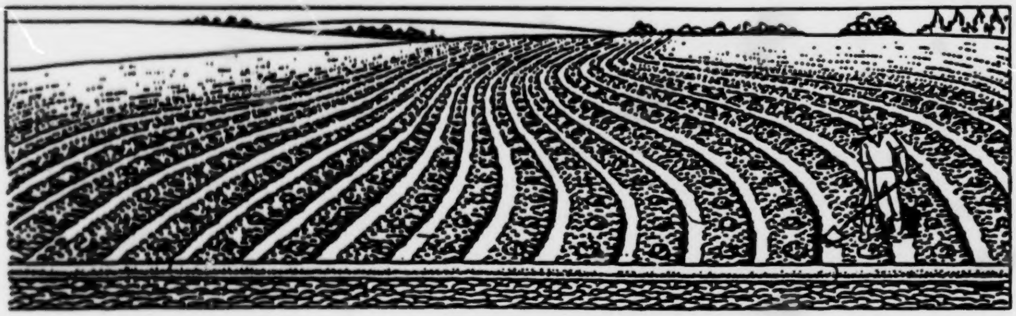
Level furrow irrigation



Graded furrow irrigation



Corrugation irrigation



Contour furrow irrigation

**Figure 5.23 Surface Irrigation Methods 2 (Ref. 10)**

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

2. Advantages

   a. Requires low capital and energy costs.
   b. Allows irrigation on sloping land (as is found in many irrigated areas).
   c. Allows irrigation of long fields with relatively small flows.
   d. Is applicable to soils with moderate to fairly high intake rates.
   e. Field drainage of excess rain is made possible.

3. Disadvantages

   a. To get relatively high efficiencies, a high degree of management and water control is required.
   b. To get relatively high efficiencies, the land must be uniformly graded and shaped.
   c. With moderate to slow infiltration rates, long irrigation times are required. Irrigation time must be close to the required intake opportunity time.
   d. Except for soils with high infiltration rates, a drainage outlet must be available from every field to dispose of tailwater and rainwater.
   e. Is labor intensive.

C. Sprinkler Irrigation

1. Pressurized water flows through pipes to outlets that spray the water over the area to be irrigated.

2. Types of sprinkler systems:

   a. permanent,
   b. semi-permanent, and
   c. movable.

3. Advantages

   a. Can achieve high efficiencies.
   b. Applicable to most terrains - land leveling not required.
   c. Applicable to soils of all infiltration rates.
   d. Can have low labor requirements.

4. Disadvantages

   a. Requires high capital and energy costs.
   b. Requires moderately high technology.

D. Localized Irrigation

1. Water is constantly applied at very low rates through small holes in plastic tubing or from emitters to points or small areas in the field. Only part of the field is wetted.

2. Advantages

   Has many of the same advantages as sprinklers, plus very high water efficiencies can be achieved, and it can be successfully utilized with highly saline waters.

3. Disadvantages

   a. Requires high capital costs.
   b. Requires high technology level.
   c. Salinity may cause problems.

# 5.5 SURFACE IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

Surface irrigation is the predominant method of irrigation throughout the world and has been used for thousands of years to irrigate a wide range of crops. Through the years, great improvements have been made to the wild flooding practice. Today there are a wide range of surface irrigation practices that allow the farmer an opportunity to select the practice that best fits conditions in the field.

Since the distribution of water with a surface system is dependent on the natural flow of water over the area to be irrigated, the land slope becomes very important. Some types of systems are for level land while other types are for land with some slope.

## 5.5.1 Criteria for Design and Operation

1. Factors that are important in designing surface irrigation systems include:

   a. flow rates available,
   b. soil and topography,
   c. length water must run on given plot of irrigated land,
   d. depth of water application,
   e. slope of the land surface in the direction of the flow,
   f. uniformity of the land (relief),
   g. erodibility of the soils to be irrigated,
   h. form of distribution of water from the conveyance ditch to the cultivated land (e.g turnout, siphon)
   i. area and geometry of the land, and
   j. system management with regard to the design and operation.

2. Criteria for the efficient use of irrigation water are:

   a. Storing the required amount of water in the root zone. This amount depends primarily on the water-holding capacity of the soil and the root depth of the grown crop.
   b. Obtaining a relatively uniform application of water. This requires that the amount of time the water remains on different parts of the field does not vary appreciably. Generally, the variation in depth infiltrated should not vary by more than 25%.
   c. Minimizing erosion. Although erosion cannot be totally eliminated, it should be minimized as much

as possible. This requires good management and adjustments made in the field.

d. Minimizing runoff. One efficient method to reduce losses in furrows is to reduce the flow when it has arrived, or is about to arrive, at the end of the furrow. This reduction is not as important when the runoff water can be reused in another plot.

e. Minimizing overwatering and percolation losses, with the exception of the need to leach salts.

f. Minimizing the land surface occupied by ditches, paths, and other components of the irrigation system.

g. Adapting the system to the geometry and dimensions of the field. When the physical, social, and legal factors permit, plots can be combined to eliminate boundaries, which allows design and management of the entire system with greater efficiency.

h. Adapting the system to the soils, topography, crop, and other physical factors that influence and determine the best design.

## 5.5.2 Description of Different Surface Irrigation Methods

(See Figures 5.22 and 5.23)

### Wild Flooding

Wild flooding is a system used primarily for low income crops on steep land where the uniformity of water distribution is not an important factor. Water is delivered at several points along a head ditch that runs along the upper edge of a sloping field. The water advances on to the field without any attempt to control or restrict flow. The distribution is generally not uniform, with too much water applied on some parts of the field and inadequate amounts on others.

The converging of water on irregular topography can create concentrations of flow that can initiate erosive forces, and this must be monitored and controlled. This type of irrigation is used in places where there is an abundance of water and water costs are low. It is most suitable for close-growing perennial forage grasses and low value permanent pasture crops that will protect the soil from erosion. The spacing between the supply ditches is usually between 15 to 45 m, depending on the land slope, water flow rate, texture and depth of soil, and the crop grown. The minimum amount of land preparation and low cost of the system installation are the main advantages.

## Level Basin Irrigation

The basin method of irrigation involves dividing a field into small, level plots. It is, therefore, most suited to flat lands but can be used on sloping land, provided that the soil is deep enough to allow leveling without exposing the subsurface. Small ridges or dikes of earth 30 to 50 cm high are constructed around the area to form the basin. The basins are filled with the amount of water required to fill the .i.pond and infiltrate into the soil. Basins may be square, rectangular, or irregular in shape, and may vary in size.

The size of basins depends primarily on the flow rates available and the texture of the soil. The practice involves flooding the plot as rapidly as possible so that all parts are uniformly covered with water. Therefore, for a given flow rate, basins in sandy soils will be smaller than basins in heavy clay. Table 5.6 gives suitable areas for basins with relation to flow rates and types of soils.

**TABLE 5.6 Suitable Areas for Basins ($m^2$) (Ref. 47)**

| Flow | **Soil Type** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Liters/sec | Sand | Sandy Loam | Clay Loam | Clay |
| 10 | 65 | 200 | 400 | 700 |
| 20 | 130 | 400 | 800 | 1,400 |
| 50 | 325 | 1,000 | 2,000 | 3,500 |
| 100 | 650 | 2,000 | 4,000 | 7,000 |

When land is sloping, basins should be constructed in steps or terraces following the contour of the slope. Normally, the width of the terraces will depend on the depth of topsoil. A minimum topsoil depth of 30 cm is recommended to ensure good plant growth. Where soils are shallow and slopes are steep, very little land levelling can be done, and terraces will be narrow.

Basins adapt well to pre-irrigation or water harvesting that diverts stream flow during rainfall to the plots to store moisture in the soil profile. In areas of intensive rainfall, it may be necessary to provide for some means of drainage to prevent overtopping of the levee.

This type of irrigation is used with crops that can withstand contact with water for long periods of time (such as rice and cotton), with close-growing crops with deep rooting (such as alfalfa), and with some types of orchards, where each tree may have its own basin.

Border Irrigation

The layout of graded borders is similar to that of basin, except that the irrigated surface has a slight slope to it. The method is designed so that a sheet of water advances down the border and covers all the plot uniformly. A field is divided by borders into a series of strips 3 to 30 m wide and generally from 60 to 800 m long. See Table 5.7 for suitable dimensions for border strips.

Cross slopes should be eliminated whenever possible. This allows the water to spread evenly over the entire surface.

The levees or ridges forming the borders to the strips should be 20 to 25 cm high. When irrigating, each strip is flooded at the upper end. The amount of flow must be sufficient to reach the end of the strip. When the sheet of water has advanced 80%-85% of the length, the supply flow can be reduced. Several field tests, with variations in the flow rate and time of irrigation, may be necessary to determine the optimum combination that assures a uniform distribution with minimum runoff losses. A tail ditch is generally needed to remove the excess water at the end of the border.

This type of irrigation is best suited for close growing crops, such as small grains, alfalfa, and grasses.

**TABLE 5.7 Suitable Dimensions for Border Strips (Ref. 47)**

| Type | Soil Infiltration Rate (mm/hr) | Slope % | Width m | Length m | Flow liters/sec |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sands | 25 and over | 0.2 | 15-30 | 60-90 | 220-450 |
| | | 0.4 | 10-12 | 60-90 | 100-120 |
| | | 0.8 | 5-10 | 75 | 30-70 |
| Loams | 7 to 25 | 0.2 | 15-30 | 250-300 | 70-140 |
| | | 0.4 | 10-12 | 90-180 | 40-50 |
| | | 0.8 | 5-10 | 90 | 12-25 |
| Clays | 2.5 to 7 | 0.2 | 15-30 | 350-800 | 45-90 |
| | | 0.4 | 10-12 | 180-300 | 30-40 |

## 5.5.3 Contour Ditch

This method of irrigation utilizes a system of contour ditches that are laid out over the entire field, and which divide the land into several strips. The water from the head ditch is directed into one ditch at a time and fills the entire ditch.

The overflow spills over the ditch edge and flood- irrigates the strip of land below. There are no ridges or dikes to restrict the water flow. The water flows across the strip of land to the next contour ditch. Any excess water is collected in the next lower ditch to be used on the next strip. This process is repeated until the entire field is irrigated. The field ditches must be placed closely together to keep the water distribution even throughout the field. The spacing depends on the slope, intake rate of the soil, and the amount of water needed to irrigate each area.

The contour ditch method is often used for close-growing crops in pastures on sloping and rolling land that cannot be easily levelled for other methods of irrigation.

### 5.5.4 Contour Levee

The contour levee type of surface irrigation is similar to the level border method, except it is adapted to sloping land. The strips have been graded until they are level, and instead of rectangular fields bordered by ridges, the fields are bounded on the contour by levees at the lower edge of the strip.

This method of irrigation is often used on fields where the slope is greater than 0.2% but less than 4%, and where land leveling would be impractical or too expensive. The distance between levees depends on the slope and crop to be irrigated, but typically the difference in elevation between levees should not exceed 10 cm; therefore, the distance between levees varies between 3 to 15 m.

When irrigating, the procedure is the same as for the level border system. Water is applied from a head ditch, and it spreads rapidly over the area where it infiltrates into the soil. Since contour levee systems consist of leveled areas on the side of a slope, there are more strips below the highest one. Therefore, water can be reused from the higher strips to the lower strips. The excess water from a strip is directed into the one immediately below. Good drainage must be provided at the lowest strip to remove all excess water. This type of irrigation is well suited to rice cultivation and can be used with crops that can tolerate being submerged in water for long periods of time, such as cotton and some forage grasses.

### 5.5.5 Furrow Irrigation

With this type of irrigation, the water is applied to small channels, known as furrows, that are between the rows of plants. Furrow irrigation adapts better than any other method to crops that are grown in rows with more than a 30 cm spacing, such as vegetables, tomatoes, maize, and potatoes. In contrast to basin and border irrigations, furrow irrigation wets only part of the ground surface. This reduces evaporation losses, improves aeration of the root zone, and permits earlier cultivation after irrigation.

Furrows are usually V-shaped in cross section, 25-30 cm wide at the top, and 15-20 cm deep. Wider, U-shaped furrows with a greater wetted area are sometimes used on soils with slower water intake rates.

There are three different types of furrow irrigation:

- level furrow,
- graded furrow, and
- contour furrow. (The furrows are laid out across the slope on a uniform grade. This type of furrow irrigation can be used on hillside slopes of up to 25%.)

Table 5.8 suggests maximum furrow lengths for different soils, slopes, and water applications.

**TABLE 5.8 Suggested Maximum Furrow Lengths (meters) (Ref. 47)**

| Furrow Slope % | Clays | Loams | Sands |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0.05 | ≤400 | 270 - 400 | 90 - 190 |
| 0.10 | 450 - 500 | 340 - 470 | 120 - 220 |
| 0.20 | 510 - 620 | 370 - 530 | 190 - 300 |
| 0.30 | 570 - 800 | 400 - 600 | 220 - 400 |
| 0.50 | 540 - 750 | 370 - 530 | 190 - 300 |
| 1.00 | 450 - 600 | 300 - 470 | 150 - 250 |
| 1.50 | 400 - 500 | 280 - 400 | 120 - 220 |
| 2.00 | 320 - 400 | 250 - 340 | 90 - 190 |

Water is admitted to the head of each furrow, and the rate of flow is adjusted so that the furrow flows full without overtopping. As the water reaches the end of the furrow, the required amount of water has infiltrated into the soil to satisfy the irrigation requirements. The rate of flow into the furrow depends primarily on the intake rate of the soil and the length of the furrow. Table 5.9 gives infiltration rates for various soils textures and suitable furrow flow rates per 100 m length of furrow.

To determine the correct flow rate per furrow requires testing in the field. A simple advance and recession test can be done. To do this, the irrigationist marks off three points along the furrow - a point near the beginning, the midway point, and a meter from the end of the furrow. The water is directed into the furrow at the desired operating flow rate, and the times when the water passes the three markers are noted. At the end of the irrigation, the irrigationist, using the same points along the furrow, notes the time that it takes the water to infiltrate and regress from the end of the furrow to the beginning. With these two sets of data, the irrigationist plots the advance and recession curves for the flow rate in the furrow (x-y axis graph: x-axis is length of furrow and corresponding marks; y-axis is time) on the same graph paper. If the two curves are more or less parallel, this indicates that the flow and time for the length of furrow gave a good water distribution. If this is not the case, the flow rate and/or time of irrigation should be changed. This test should be done for each alteration until the desired results are achieved. This field test is easy to perform and should be done regularly to assure a good water distribution application.

**Table 5.9 Soil Infiltration Rates and Suitable Furrow Inflows per 100 Meters of Furrow Length. (Furrow spacing 1 meter)**
**(Ref. 47)**

| Soil | Infiltration Rate mm/hour | Furrow Inflow L/sec/100 m length |
|---|---|---|
| Clay | 1-5 | 0.03-0.15 |
| Clay loam | 5-10 | 0.15-0.30 |
| Silt loam | 10-20 | 0.30-0.50 |
| Sandy loam | 20-30 | 0.50-0.80 |
| Sand | 30-100 | 0.80-2.70 |

### 5.5.6 Corrugation Irrigation

This method of irrigation is very similar to graded furrows, except that the furrows are much smaller in size. The corrugations or rills are evenly spaced in the field. The spacing and size of the corrugations vary with different soil textures. The method is generally more applicable on fine-textured soils that intake water slowly. The more porous the soil, the closer spaced the corrugation should be because of the lateral movement of water. This method is also used on soils that seal over and crust when other types of flood irrigation are used.

Table 5.10 gives suggested maximum lengths and spacings for corrugations for different slopes, and for deep and shallow soils.

**TABLE 5.10 Length and Spacing of Corrugations (Ref. 47)**

| | | CLAYS | | LOAMS | | SANDS | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Slope % | Length m | Spacing m | Length m | Spacing m | Length m | Spacing m |
| Deep soils | 2 | 180 | 0.75 | 130 | 0.75 | 70 | 0.60 |
| | 4 | 120 | 0.65 | 90 | 0.75 | 45 | 0.55 |
| | 6 | 90 | 0.55 | 75 | 0.65 | 40 | 0.50 |
| | 8 | 85 | 0.55 | 60 | 0.55 | 30 | 0.45 |
| | 10 | 75 | 0.50 | 50 | 0.50 | -- | -- |
| Shallow Soils | 2 | 120 | 0.60 | 90 | 0.60 | 45 | 0.45 |
| | 4 | 85 | 0.55 | 60 | 0.55 | 30 | 0.45 |
| | 6 | 70 | 0.55 | 50 | 0.50 | -- | -- |
| | 8 | 60 | 0.50 | 45 | 0.45 | -- | -- |
| | 10 | 55 | 0.45 | 40 | 0.45 | -- | -- |

### 5.5.7 Operation and Maintenance of Farm Surface Irrigation Systems

1. Clear the head ditch and conveyance canal of weeds and debris on a regular basis. Obstructions greatly influence the flow rate.
2. Check for washouts around the edges of all control structures along the conveyance system to the field.
3. Conduct micro-levelling in the border or basin: the need will become evident after the first couple of irrigations.
4. Regulate the flood gate or other means of turning in the water so that the water advances across the plot(s) as quickly as possible without creating erosion.
5. Make sure the operator knows how much water is being placed on the field.
6. Reform the ridges, levees, or furrows when necessary. Conduct land smoothing often.
7. Keep animals off of field.
8. Fill in or plug any rodent or ant holes.

9 If it is necessary to slow down velocity in canals, place heavy objects (e.g. rocks) in the canal to form a small check.

10. Pre-irrigate land before transplanting on to furrow beds.
11. Check field one to two days after irrigation with shovel or soil auger to assure uniform distribution of water.

## 5.6 SPRINKLER IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

In the 1980s, the use of sprinkler irrigation in developing countries increased greatly as new technology and equipment were introduced. This large jump in technology (from not irrigating to sprinkler irrigation) has led to many problems for small-scale farmers in applying new technology correctly and efficiently. To address these problems, this section will expand upon the operation, evaluation, and maintenance factors involved in sprinkler irrigation practices and, to a much lesser extent, design procedures. As more farmers use sprinkler irrigation, understanding of system operation and methods for applying water more efficiently will become more important for the irrigationist.

Sprinkler irrigation is applicable in a wide range of circumstances. It can be used on steeper slopes than most surface systems. It is usually the most efficient irrigation method for shallow, permeable, and uneven ground. The greatest limitation of this practice with small-scale farmers is the large initial investment for the equipment. Other limitations include high energy costs for pumping stations (if required), the effects high winds have on water distribution patterns, and the need for water that is free of any debris (e.g. sand, leaves, sticks) that clog or damage the system.

### 5.6.1 Principal Components

As shown by Figure 5.24 the main components of a sprinkler system are:

- pumping station (if required - in a gravity flow system, nopump is needed),
- main line pipe,
- lateral pipe,
- riser,
- sprinkler, and
- accessories.

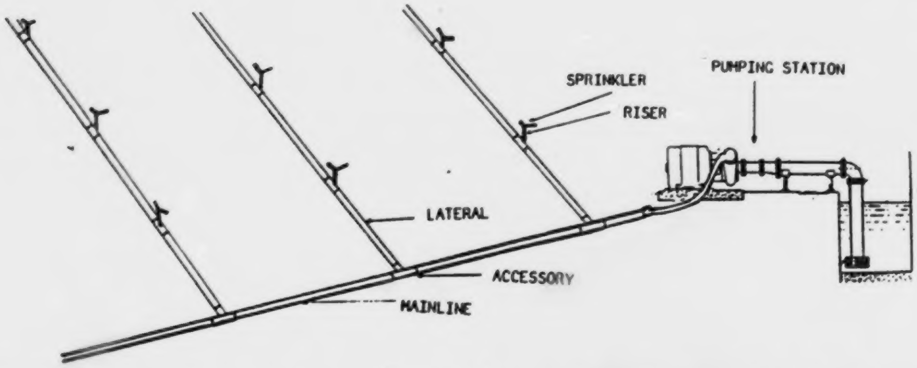


**Figure 5.24 Typical Sprinkler Irrigation System Components**

- The pumping station is located at the water source, and the pump lifts the water and makes it available under pressure to the system. The pump is required to overcome elevational differences between the water source and the field, counteract frictional losses within the system, and provide adequate pressure at the nozzle for good water distribution. A gravity flow system uses the potential energy in an elevational drop to create pressure for its operation.

- The main line delivers water from the water source to the field. It may be either permanent or movable.

- The lateral pipe delivers the water from the main line to different sections of the field. The lateral line is usually movable.

- The riser delivers the water from the lateral line to the sprinkler. The length of the riser depends on the crop, although a minimum value of 30 cm is recommended to assure a good distribution pattern.

- The sprinkler is the unit that sprays the pressurized water through an orifice and rotates to distribute water on to the field.

- The accessories are parts of the system that generally connect all of the other units together to form a watertight system. These parts are very important to an efficient system and should be installed whenever possible. Examples of accessories are tees, unions, elbows, and reducers.

### 5.6.2 Pipe Specifications

1. Types of materials are:
    - galvanized steel,
    - aluminum,
    - polyvinyl chloride (PVC),
    - polyethylene, and
    - soft plastic (e.g. garden hose).

2. Pressure limits are:
    a. PVC Standard Dimension Ratio (SDR): pressure rating
        - 51:80 psi
        - 41:100 psi
        - 32.5:125 psi
        - 26:160 psi

    (above ratings are for PVC tubing 1120, 1220 or 2120; other materials will have lower pressure ratings.)

    b. polyethylene - 30 to 100 psi for SDR 41 to 17 depending on material.

### 5.6.3 Sprinkler Heads and Nozzles

Types of materials

- metal (generally brass)
- plastic
- combination metal and plastic

Types of Sprinkler

- microjets - a mist-type sprinkler used primarily in seedbeds and underneath foliage of certain crops;
- one-nozzle sprinkler -- components include hammer, range nozzle;
- two-nozzle sprinkler -- components include hammer, range nozzle, and spreader nozzle.

> NOTE: One-nozzle sprinklers are notorious for poor water distribution. They create a doughnut of wetted soil because they don't have a spreader nozzle. Therefore, a special effort must be made in their installation so that they overlap properly to compensate for unwetted areas.

General Sprinkler Specifications

| Type | Class | Pressure Range | Capacity | Wetted Diameter |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Microjet | Low pressure | 5-15 psi | 5-30 gpm | 2-6 m |
| One-nozzle | Medium pressure | 15-45 psi | 1-3 gpm | 8-12 m |
| Two-nozzle | High pressure | 45-95 psi | 3-8 gpm | 12-60 m |

Nozzle Sizes

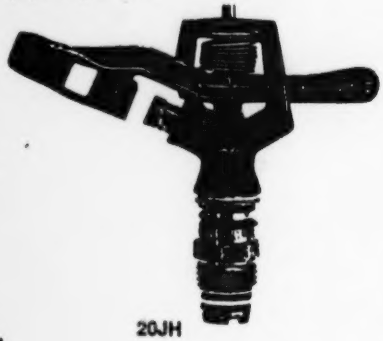
Nozzle size, pressure, and type affect application rates, size of wetted diameter, and water droplet size. Higher pressures and smaller nozzle size result in smaller water droplet sizes. Certain nozzle sizes are difficult to find or simply not available in developing countries Frequently, sprinklers are sold with the nozzle already in place. In this case, the irrigation system capacity must be designed around a specific sprinkler. See Figures 5.25 and 5.26.
The manufacturer will give specifications for the sprinkler for different applied pressures.

## 1/2 in (15 mm) FULL CIRCLE IMPACT SPRINKLERS

RAIN BIRD

### )JH / 20EJH
1/2 in (15mm) Full Circle Impact Sprinklers

- Full circle brass impact sprinklers
- Standard trajectory angle for maximum distance of throw
- Small nozzle sizes; low flow rates
- Low water application rate; ideal for heavy soils and slopes
- "E" model has non-clog vane in nozzle for greater distance of throw
- Durable brass construction; excellent for many types of field applications
- Superior "H" bearing for longer life
- New die cast spoon drive for greater durability on portable pipe systems



20JH

**Applications:**

- Undertree
- Overtree
- Overvine
- Field Crops
- Row Crops
- Permanent Systems
- Solid Set Systems
- Portable Systems
- Vegetables
- Nurseries

**Common Spacings Range:**

20 x 35 ft to 40 x 50 ft
6 x 9 m to 12 x 15 m

**Models:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sprinklers - | 20JH | 20EJH |
| Nozzles - | SB | RFN-1 |

**Specifications:**

Bearing Size/Type - 1/2 in (15mm) male NPT
Body trajectory - 23 °

**Materials:**

Body: Cast Bronze
Arm: Cast Bronze
Bearing Sleeve: Brass
Bearing Nipple: Brass
All Springs: Stainless Steel
All Washers: Chemically resistant

### 20JH / ST. BORE NOZZLES

**Stream Height 6 ft*** **U.S. UNITS**

| PSI @ Nozzle | Nozzle 7/64" ** | | Nozzle 1/8" | | Nozzle 9/64" | | Nozzle 5/32" | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Dia. | GPM | Dia. | GPM | Dia. | GPM | Dia. | GPM |
| 35 | 76 | 2.05 | 77 | 2.68 | 79 | 3.39 | 79 | 4.19 |
| 40 | 77 | 2.19 | 78 | 2.86 | 80 | 3.62 | 79 | 4.47 |
| 45 | 78 | 2.32 | 79 | 3.03 | 80 | 3.84 | 80 | 4.73 |
| 50 | 78 | 2.45 | 79 | 3.20 | 81 | 4.05 | 81 | 5.00 |
| 55 | 78 | 2.57 | 80 | 3.35 | 81 | 4.24 | 81 | 5.23 |
| 60 | 79 | 2.68 | 80 | 3.50 | 82 | 4.43 | 82 | 5.47 |

**Stream Height 1,8m*** **METRIC UNITS**

| Bars | Nozzle 2,78mm ** 7/64" | | | Nozzle 3,18mm 1/8" | | | Nozzle 3,57mm 9/64" | | | Nozzle 3,97mm 5/32" | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s |
| 2.5 | 11.6 | 0,47 | 0,13 | 11,8 | 0,62 | 0,17 | 12,0 | 0,78 | 0,22 | 12.0 | 0,97 | 0,27 |
| 3.0 | 11,8 | 0,52 | 0,14 | 12.0 | 0,68 | 0,19 | 12,2 | 0,86 | 0,24 | 12,2 | 1,06 | 0,29 |
| 3.5 | 11,9 | 0,56 | 0,16 | 12,1 | 0,73 | 0,20 | 12,3 | 0,93 | 0,26 | 12,3 | 1,14 | 0,32 |
| 4.0 | 12.0 | 0,60 | 0,17 | 12,2 | 0,78 | 0,22 | 12,4 | 0,99 | 0,27 | 12,5 | 1,22 | 0,34 |

### 20EJH / ST. BORE NOZZLES

**Stream Height 7 ft*** **U.S. UNITS**

| PSI @ Nozzle | Nozzle 7/64" ** | | Nozzle 1/8" | | Nozzle 9/64" | | Nozzle 5/32" | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Dia. | GPM | Dia. | GPM | Dia. | GPM | Dia. | GPM |
| 35 | 77 | 2.05 | 79 | 2.68 | 82 | 3.39 | 84 | 4.19 |
| 40 | 78 | 2.19 | 80 | 2.86 | 83 | 3.62 | 85 | 4.47 |
| 45 | 79 | 2.32 | 81 | 3.03 | 84 | 3.84 | 85 | 4.73 |
| 50 | 80 | 2.45 | 82 | 3.20 | 85 | 4.05 | 86 | 5.00 |
| 55 | 81 | 2.57 | 82 | 3.35 | 86 | 4.24 | 87 | 5.23 |
| 60 | 81 | 2.68 | 82 | 3.50 | 87 | 4.43 | 88 | 5.47 |

**Stream Height 2,1m*** **METRIC UNITS**

| Bars | Nozzle 2,78mm ** 7/64" | | | Nozzle 3,18mm 1/8" | | | Nozzle 3,57mm 9/64" | | | Nozzle 3,97mm 5/32" | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s |
| 2.5 | 11,8 | 0,47 | 0,13 | 12,1 | 0,62 | 0,17 | 12.5 | 0,78 | 0,22 | 12,8 | 0,97 | 0,27 |
| 3.0 | 12,0 | 0,52 | 0,14 | 12,3 | 0,68 | 0,19 | 12,8 | 0,86 | 0,24 | 13,0 | 1,06 | 0,29 |
| 3.5 | 12.2 | 0,56 | 0,16 | 12,5 | 0,73 | 0,20 | 13,0 | 0,93 | 0,26 | 13,1 | 1,14 | 0,32 |
| 4.0 | 12.4 | 0,60 | 0,17 | 12,5 | 0,78 | 0,22 | 13,2 | 0,99 | 0,27 | 13,3 | 1,22 | 0,34 |

1 bar = approx. 100 kPa.
GENERAL NOTE: Performance data are obtained under ideal test conditions and may be adversely affected by wind, hydraulic conditions, and other factors.
SHADED AREAS: Nozzle/pressure combinations in shaded area of charts result in marginal water distribution.
* Shown for standard nozzle at mid-range operating pressure
** Standard nozzle
NOTE A: Distance of throw data are based on a 30 in (76 cm) riser height.
NOTE B: For performance data on Rain Flow (RFN-1) nozzles, see pages 20-21.

**Figure 5.25 Example 1 of Sprinkler Characteristics**

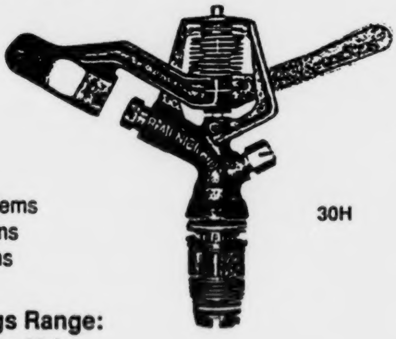
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

**RAIN BIRD** 3/4 in (20 mm) & 1 in (25 mm)
FULL CIRCLE IMPACT SPRINKLERS

## 30H / 30WH / 30WSH / 30EH / 30EWH

3/4 in (20mm) Full Circle Impact Sprinklers

- Full circle brass impact sprinklers
- Standard trajectory angle for maximum distance of throw
- Durable brass construction; excellent for many types of field applications
- "H" models have rear spreader nozzle; "WH" models have plugged spreader outlet; "WSH" model has single nozzle body
- "E" models have non-clog vane in nozzle for greater distance of throw



30H

**Applications:**

- Overtree
- Field Crops
- Row Crops
- Vegetables
- Nurseries
- Permanent Systems
- Solid Set Systems
- Portable Systems
- Wheel Lines

**nmon Spacings Range:**

30 x 50 ft to 60 x 60 ft
12 x 15 m to 18 x 18 m

**Models:**

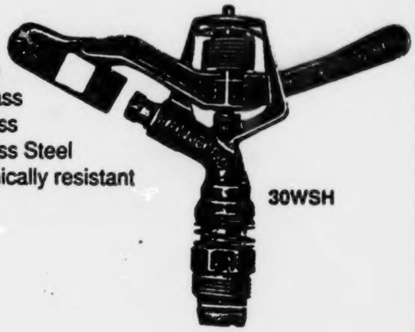
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sprinklers - | 30H<br>30WH | 30WSH<br>30EH | 30EWH |
| Drive nozzles - | SB | LPN-3 | RFN-3 |
| Spreader nozzles - | slotted (7° or 20°) | | |

**Specifications:**

Bearing Size/Type - 3/4 in (20 mm) male NPT
Body trajectory - 27 °

**Materials:**

Body: Cast Bronze
Arm: Cast Bronze
Bearing Sleeve: Brass
Bearing Nipple: Brass
All Springs: Stainless Steel
All Washers: Chemically resistant



30WSH

### 30H / ST. BORE DRIVE NOZZLE
### 3/32 in (2,38 mm) 7° SPREADER

**Stream Height 9 ft*** *U.S. UNITS*

| PSI @ Nozzle | Nozzle 9/64" x 3/32" - 7° Dia. | GPM | Nozzle 5/32" x 3/32" - 7° Dia. | GPM | Nozzle ** 11/64" x 3/32" - 7° Dia. | GPM | Nozzle 3/16" x 3/32" - 7° Dia. | GPM |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 25 | 80 | 4.2 | 82 | 4.8 | 83 | 5.6 | 85 | 6.4 |
| 30 | 81 | 4.6 | 85 | 5.3 | 88 | 6.1 | 91 | 7.0 |
| 35 | 82 | 4.9 | 87 | 5.7 | 90 | 6.6 | 94 | 7.5 |
| 40 | 83 | 5.2 | 88 | 6.1 | 92 | 7.0 | 96 | 8.1 |
| 45 | 84 | 5.6 | 89 | 6.5 | 93 | 7.4 | 98 | 8.5 |
| 50 | 85 | 5.9 | 90 | 6.8 | 95 | 7.9 | 100 | 9.0 |
| 55 | 86 | 6.1 | 91 | 7.1 | 96 | 8.2 | 101 | 9.4 |
| 60 | 87 | 6.4 | 92 | 7.4 | 97 | 8.6 | 102 | 9.9 |
| 65 | 88 | 6.7 | 93 | 7.8 | 98 | 8.9 | 103 | 10.2 |
| 70 | 89 | 6.9 | 94 | 8.1 | 99 | 9.3 | 104 | 10.7 |
| 75 | 90 | 7.2 | 95 | 8.3 | 100 | 9.6 | 105 | 11.0 |
| 80 | 91 | 7.5 | 96 | 8.7 | 101 | 10.0 | 106 | 11.5 |

**Stream Height 2,7m*** *METRIC UNITS*

| Bars | Nozzle 3,57 x 2,38mm 9/64" x 3/32" 7° | | | Nozzle 3,97 x 2,38mm 5/32" x 3/32" 7° | | | Nozzle 4,37 x 2,38mm ** 11/64" x 3/32" 7° | | | Nozzle 4,76 x 2,38mm 3/16" x 3/32" 7° | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s |
| 2,0 | 12,3 | 1,02 | 0,28 | 12,7 | 1,18 | 0,33 | 13,3 | 1,36 | 0,38 | 13,5 | 1,56 | 0,43 |
| 2,5 | 12,6 | 1,14 | 0,32 | 13,1 | 1,32 | 0,37 | 13,9 | 1,52 | 0,42 | 14,2 | 1,74 | 0,48 |
| 3,0 | 12,8 | 1,24 | 0,35 | 13,4 | 1,44 | 0,40 | 14,4 | 1,66 | 0,46 | 14,7 | 1,90 | 0,53 |
| 3,5 | 13,0 | 1,34 | 0,37 | 13,6 | 1,56 | 0,43 | 14,8 | 1,79 | 0,50 | 15,1 | 2,05 | 0,57 |
| 4,0 | 13,2 | 1,43 | 0,40 | 13,9 | 1,66 | 0,46 | 15,1 | 1,91 | 0,53 | 15,4 | 2,19 | 0,61 |
| 4,5 | 13,4 | 1,52 | 0,42 | 14,1 | 1,76 | 0,49 | 15,3 | 2,03 | 0,56 | 15,6 | 2,32 | 0,65 |
| 5,0 | 13,6 | 1,60 | 0,45 | 14,2 | 1,86 | 0,52 | 15,5 | 2,14 | 0,60 | 15,7 | 2,45 | 0,68 |
| 5,5 | 13,9 | 1,68 | 0,47 | 14,4 | 1,95 | 0,54 | 15,7 | 2,25 | 0,63 | 15,8 | 2,57 | 0,72 |

### 30H / ST. BORE DRIVE NOZZLE
### 1/8 in (3,18 mm) 20° SPREADER

**Stream Height 9 ft*** *U.S. UNITS*

| PSI @ Nozzle | Nozzle 9/64" x 1/8" - 20° Dia. | GPM | Nozzle 5/32" x 1/8" - 20° Dia. | GPM | Nozzle ** 11/64" x 1/8" - 20° Dia. | GPM | Nozzle 3/16" x 1/8" - 20° Dia. | GPM |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 25 | 80 | 5.2 | 82 | 5.8 | 83 | 6.6 | 85 | 7.4 |
| 30 | 81 | 5.6 | 85 | 6.4 | 88 | 7.2 | 91 | 8.1 |
| 35 | 82 | 6.1 | 87 | 6.9 | 90 | 7.7 | 94 | 8.7 |
| 40 | 83 | 6.5 | 88 | 7.3 | 92 | 8.3 | 96 | 9.3 |
| 45 | 84 | 6.9 | 89 | 7.9 | 93 | 8.8 | 98 | 9.9 |
| 50 | 85 | 7.3 | 90 | 8.2 | 95 | 9.3 | 100 | 10.4 |
| 55 | 86 | 7.6 | 91 | 8.6 | 96 | 9.7 | 101 | 10.9 |
| 60 | 87 | 7.9 | 92 | 9.0 | 97 | 10.1 | 102 | 11.4 |
| 65 | 88 | 8.2 | 93 | 9.4 | 98 | 10.5 | 103 | 11.8 |
| 70 | 89 | 8.5 | 94 | 9.7 | 99 | 10.9 | 104 | 12.3 |
| 75 | 90 | 8.8 | 95 | 10.0 | 100 | 11.3 | 105 | 12.7 |
| 80 | 91 | 9.1 | 96 | 10.3 | 101 | 11.6 | 106 | 13.1 |

**Stream Height 2,7m*** *METRIC UNITS*

| Bars | Nozzle 3,57 x 3,18mm 9/64" x 1/8" 20° | | | Nozzle 3,97 x 3,18mm 5/32" x 1/8" 20° | | | Nozzle 4,37 x 3,18mm ** 11/64" x 1/8" 20° | | | Nozzle 4,76 x 3,18mm 3/16" x 1/8" 20° | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s | Rad. M | Flow M³/h | Flow L/s |
| 2,0 | 12,3 | 1,27 | 0,35 | 12,8 | 1,42 | 0,40 | 13,1 | 1,61 | 0,45 | 13,5 | 1,81 | 0,50 |
| 2,5 | 12,5 | 1,41 | 0,39 | 12,9 | 1,60 | 0,44 | 13,7 | 1,79 | 0,50 | 14,5 | 2,02 | 0,56 |
| 3,0 | 12,8 | 1,54 | 0,43 | 13,0 | 1,75 | 0,49 | 14,1 | 1,96 | 0,54 | 14,9 | 2,21 | 0,61 |
| 3,5 | 13,0 | 1,66 | 0,46 | 13,3 | 1,89 | 0,53 | 14,5 | 2,11 | 0,59 | 15,3 | 2,38 | 0,66 |
| 4,0 | 13,2 | 1,77 | 0,49 | 13,5 | 2,02 | 0,56 | 14,8 | 2,26 | 0,63 | 15,6 | 2,54 | 0,71 |
| 4,5 | 13,4 | 1,87 | 0,52 | 13,9 | 2,13 | 0,59 | 15,0 | 2,39 | 0,66 | 15,8 | 2,69 | 0,75 |
| 5,0 | 13,6 | 1,97 | 0,55 | 14,2 | 2,24 | 0,62 | 15,2 | 2,52 | 0,70 | 15,9 | 2,83 | 0,79 |
| 5,5 | 13,9 | 2,06 | 0,57 | 14,6 | 2,33 | 0,65 | 15,3 | 2,65 | 0,74 | 16,0 | 2,97 | 0,83 |

**Figure 5.26 Example 2 of Sprinkler Characteristics**

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Angle of Nozzle Flow

Generally, water flows out of a sprinkler at different angles relative to the horizontal plane. This angle depends on the particular sprinkler, and the range of angles are 0° to 23°. The lower angles will result in a smaller wetted diameter, the water droplets will be larger, and the impact force withwhich the droplets strike the foliage or the ground surface is greater. Generally, the higher angle sprinklers are used in vegetable or cash crop irrigation because the droplet impact is less damaging to the leaf or fruit. Lower angle sprinklers are used under trees in orchards because their almost flat trajectory avoidwetting the foliage and gives better water distribution in windy areas.

## 5.6.4 Sprinkler System Design

### Preliminary Study

1. Topographical study.
2. Soil
   - texture,
   - water-holding capacity,
   - intake rate, and
   - density/compaction or tilth.
3. Crop
   - density of planting,
   - depth of rooting, and
   - height of growth.
4. Climatic conditions
   - precipitation,
   - temperature, and
   - consumptive use/hydraulic balance.
5. Available materials and equipment.
6. Quality of water
   - salts and
   - contaminants

### Design Parameters

1. Maximum daily requirement for peak crop water use.
2. The system application efficiency (65%-85%).
3. Peak use/efficiency = the depth of water that the design of the system must achieve.
4. Frequency of irrigation. This is determined by the amount of available water in the root zone. When water in the root zone is depleted by 50% by plant consumption, it needs to be replenished by irrigation. The amount of water applied should bring the soil at rooting depth tofield capacity. Applying more water than is needed is not recommended because the excess water passes through the root zone and leaches plant nutrients downward out of reach of the plant. (See Table 5.11)

5. Time required to irrigate. The time required to irrigate is directly related to the rate of water infiltration into the soil. (See Table 5.12) To design an efficient application time, the rate of application should be as close as possible to the soil infiltration rate without exceeding it (this would cause run-off and possible erosion). The required irrigation time is then minimized. The amount of time to irrigate varies with plant water needs during different stages of growth.

**TABLE 5.11 Available Water-Holding Capacities for Various Soil Textures (Ref. 10)**

| Texture | Available Water-Holding Capacities cm of Water/Meter of Soil |
|---|---|
| Coarse sand and gravel | 2 to 6 |
| Sands | 4 to 9 |
| Loamy sands | 6 to 12 |
| Sandy loams | 11 to 15 |
| Fine sandy loams | 14 to 18 |
| Loams and silt loams | 17 to 23 |
| Clay loams and silty clay loams | 14 to 21 |
| Silty clay and clays | 13 to 18 |

**TABLE 5.12 Infiltration Rates and Associated Soil Textures (Ref. 10)**

| Final Infiltration Rate | Cm per Hour | Probable Soil Texture |
|---|---|---|
| High | 3.0 to 8.0 | Sandy loam, sandy clay loam |
| Medium High | 1.5 to 3.0 | Loam, silt loam |
| Medium Low | 0.5 to 1.5 | Clay loam, clay, silty clay loam |
| Low | 0.2 to 0.5 | Clay, adobe clay |

Area and Geometric Shape of Field

Farmers will often want to irrigate much larger areas than are economically, socially, or technically feasible. The factors that determine the area that can be irrigated by a small-scale system are the application rate, how many hours it takes to restore the field to field capacity during peak consumptive use, and how many times the farmer is willing and able to rotate the system to different plots for the determined irrigation interval during peak water use of the plant. The majority of sprinkler systems adapt well to fields that are either square or rectangular in shape because the lateral lines rotate well within these shapes and give a uniform water distribution to the entire field.

### 5.6.5 Lateral Design

It is recommended that the total pressure variance in the lateral should not exceed 20% of the operating system pressure. This standard maintains a uniform water application efficiency along the entire lateral. The total allowable pressure variance must also take into account elevational differences along the lateral sprinkler settings. For this reason, the lateral should be placed at the contour or on a slightly decreasing slope to compensate for the friction loss (when possible). Such placement will maintain acceptable uniform sprinkler applications. If there is too much variance in the design of a lateral, the diameter of the pipe will have to be increased to lower frictional loss.

The Hazen-Williams equation is used to compute frictional losses in pipes. The formula is:

$$h_f = KF \frac{Q^{1.85}}{c^{1.85}\ d^{4.866}}$$

where $h_f$ = frictional loss per 100 m of pipe (m per 100 m).
$c$ = coefficient of friction based on the pipe material (see Table 5.13).
$Q$ = the flow of water in the line (L/sec).
$d$ = the pipe diameter.
If d is in inches then $KF = 1.76 \times 10^5$.
If d is in mm then $KF = 1.19 \times 10^{12}$.

**TABLE 5.13 C Values for Given Pipe Materials**

| | |
|---|---|
| 15-year-old steel pipe | C = 100 |
| Aluminum pipe with couplers | C = 120 |
| Polyethylene | C = 140 |
| PVC (polyvinyl chloride) | C = 150 |

To calculate the frictional loss in the lateral:

1. determine the length of pipe in the lateral and the number of outlets for the lateral;

2. calculate the frictional loss using the Hazen-Williams equation as if the lateral carried the full flow through its length; and

416

3. multiply the calculated frictional loss by the factor (F), which is a function of the number of outlets (Table 5.14).

**TABLE 5.14 Friction Factor (F) for Multiple Outlets (Approximate)**

| No. of Outlets | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| F1 | 1.0 | .63 | .53 | .48 | .45 | .43 | .41 | .40 |
| F2 | 1.0 | .51 | .43 | .41 | .39 | .38 | .37 | .36 |

NOTE: Use F1 when the first sprinkler on the lateral is one full sprinkler spacing from the beginning of the lateral. Use F2 when the first sprinkler on the lateral is 1/2 of one normal sprinkler spacing from the beginning.

The slide rule calculator for frictional losses also calculates the losses in lateral pipes and can be used without the calculations performed above. If the slide rule calculators are available, they are quick and easy to use.

Sprinklers should generally be spaced closer than 65% of the wetted diameter to achieve adequate uniformity. Lateral spacings, or the spacings between successive positions of the sprinkler, should take into account wind conditions. The following are recommended spacings:

| Wind Conditions | Lateral Spacing as a % of Wetted Diameter |
|---|---|
| No wind | 65% |
| 8 Km/hr or 5 mi/hr | 60% |
| 8-16 Km/hr or 5-10 mi/hr | 50% |
| Above 16 Km/hr or 10 mi/hr | 30% |

Sprinkler spacings along the lateral should generally be less than 50% of the wetted diameter for adequate coverage.

### 5.6.6 Sprinkler System Installation

At the Water Source

A check dam or diversion should be constructed in the stream to pond water where the pump suction line or gravity flow inlet will be placed. The ponded water should be non-turbulent so that the majority of air from the turbulent flow in the stream will be released. Also, sediment and debris should either float to the top or sink in the ponded area so that the water will be clean of debris. It is recommended that the suction line be suspended by tying it to an airtight container (e.g. motor oil container) and weighing the container to the bottom with a rock or heavy object. Suspending the suction line assures that it is not taking water off the bottom, where sediment and debris settle. In the case of the gravity flow inlet, it is recommended the end of the pipe be submerged at least 50 cm deep in the pond to create a head of water. This head will then actually push water into the tube. The inlet should be placed at least 20 cm off the bottom so that debris does not enter. A metal or plastic screen can be tied over the entrance so that no large particles that would clog the sprinkler nozzles enter.

## Main line Placement

The main line should be placed on a continually ascending path from the pumping station to the field (a descending path for gravity flow systems), with as many depressions and rises eliminated as possible. The pipe can be tied to stakes or gauged wire to cross difficult areas. The main line should also be placed on a shortest distance path from the water source to the field to reduce the length of the main line and frictional losses.

If the main line will be stationary, the possibility of burying it should be discussed with the farmer. Burying helps protect the main line from sunlight, vehicle or animal traction damage, or sabotage. The pipe should be buried at least 50 cm deep. It is important to use all needed accessories, in particular unions, if burying the main line, so that there are no leaks in the line. Check for leaks before burying the line.

## Installation of Gate Valve

A gate valve should be installed at the end of the main line if economically feasible. This valve is used to shut off the water flow if there is any break in the lateral line so that the operator does not have to go to the water source to shut off the pump or stop flow into the inlet pipe. It should be noted that closing the valve should be done slowly so that water hammer does not occur and break unions in the main line. The gate valve is also the easiest place to make a reduction in pipe diameter size from main line to lateral line.

## Installation of Lateral Line

To ensure adequate uniformity, the lateral line should be placed on the contour so that water pressure does not vary by more than 20%. Lateral line placement greatly affects the water distribution of the system. If possible, lateral lines should be installed perpendicular to the expected wind direction.

## Placement of Risers

The sprinklers should be adjusted so that they are perpendicular to the ground surface to assure correct water distribution. Taller risers may need to be tied to well-anchored vertical poles to keep sprinklers perpendicular and reduce vibration.

## Accessories

All required accessories should be installed with the system if they can be found and purchased. Although a very minimum part of the system, accessories are imperative to high operational efficiency. They should be securely installed in the system with pressure clamps or by some other mechanical means. Inner tube or strips of plastic bags can be used to wrap nipples that are inserted into the pipe for a snug fit.

## Water Distribution Test

Once all parts of the sprinkler system are properly installed, a water distribution check should be conducted to assure that the designed sprinkler spacings give a uniform distribution. Perform this test during a calm time of the day or observe the wind direction to better interpret data. Stake out a rectangular grid about the same size as your riser x lateral spacings. Set cans in a square grid 3 to 4 meters apart; containers should be weighed down or anchored so that they do not tip over. Turn on the irrigation system until the cans have an average of 1.5 cm or 0.5 inch of water in them. Afterward, with a ruler or graduated cylinder (a syringe works well also), measure the depth of water (or volume) in each container and record the data. Arrange the data from smallest to largest values. Determine the average depth of water in the lowest 25% of the cans, and the average in all the cans and determine the distribution uniformity.

The Distribution Uniformity (DU) is the ratio (expressed as a percent) between the depth of water applied by sprinkler irrigation in the low quarter (lowest 25%) to the mean depth applied.

$$DU = \frac{\text{mean depth applied to low quarter}}{\text{mean depth applied}} \times 100$$

**Example:** A farmer has sprinklers set up on a 40' x 40' (12 m x 12 m) grid. He or she sets up 16 cans in a grid at 10 feet (3 m) apart. The values in the cans are as follows:

| Can: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Depth: | 20 | 16 | 17 | 22 | 25 | 22 | 18 | 26 |
| Ordered depth: | 15 | 16 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 20 | 20 | 21 |

| Can: | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Depth: | 28 | 23 | 21 | 23 | 22 | 16 | 15 | 20 |
| Ordered depth: | 22 | 22 | 22 | 23 | 23 | 25 | 26 | 28 |

The average water measured in the 4 cans (1/4 of all the cans) with the lowest water application was 16 mm. The average water applied in all the cans is 20.9 mm. The DU is then:

$$DU = \frac{16\ \text{mm}}{20.9\ \text{mm}} \times 100 = 77\%$$

This uniformity is very acceptable in most cases.

In sprinkler irrigation, the infiltrated depths may be represented by applied depths. Acceptable DU values depend on the value of the irrigation water, crop, energy costs, and labor. Generally, DU values below 67% are unacceptable; however, with low value water and crops, a 50% DU may be acceptable. With high value, moisture sensitive crops and high water costs, DU values of 80% or higher may be considered acceptable.

### 5.6.7 System Operation and Maintenance

1. Sprinklers must always have nozzles. Often farmers will remove nozzles because they can see more water exiting sprinklers without nozzles. Removing nozzles greatly affects the water distribution and water droplet size, and frequently the sprinkler will not even rotate without the nozzle, since the flapper arm is not hitting pressurized water.

2. Move the irrigation system as a unit to irrigate plots. Attempt to irrigate fields in geometric patterns of rectangles or squares. Squares and rectangles will give a more uniform water distribution over the entire field, and crops will also grow and mature uniformly.

3. Remove the suction line or inlet pipe from the stream if there are chances of rain. The stream flow will often rise considerably with rainfall and will wash out any equipment on or near the banks.

4. Operate the system when there are no high winds in order to reduce droplet drift and pattern distortion.

5. Operate the system before fumigating so the pesticide is not washed off.

6. Operate the system after fertilizing to move the fertilizer nutrients into the root zone.

7. In areas where plant fungus is a problem, it is preferable to irrigate in the morning hours so that the plant leaves can thoroughly dry during the day hours.

8. Maintain the sprinklers so that they rotate properly. Water is the lubricating medium in the majority of sprinklers, so do not apply oil based lubricants. Frequently, the rotation problem arises from malfunction of the bearing washer, which has to be cleaned of sand or grit regularly.

9. The screen tied over the entrance of the inlet pipe in gravity systems should be checked and cleaned frequently. Large particles can be sucked into the screen. Particles plug sprinkler nozzles and create more frictional losses in the system.

## 5.7 LOCALIZED IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

Localized irrigation is a method of applying water that results in wetting only a small area of the soil surface and sometimes only part of the root zone. Water is applied near the base of the plant so that the application is concentrated in the root zone. Water is generally applied at a low flow rate, in small amounts, and frequently. The application devices may be small tubes, orifices, nozzles, or perforated pipes. The water may either be applied above or below the soil surface. The main components of a localized irrigation system are the water supply (including flow and pressure regulators), the filtration system, main lines, sub-main lines, laterals, and distributors. Figure 5.27 shows some basic components of a localized irrigation system.

The primary advantages of localized irrigation systems are the high efficiency rates that can be achieved, sometimes as high as 90%. High efficiency may result in very significant water savings. Often a localized irrigation system will allow a farmer to irrigate twice the area possible with surface irrigation. Precise control of water and nutrient application often results in much higher yields and quality. Control of weeds and pests may be better as the entire soil surface is not wetted nor is the foliage. A localized irrigation system may allow the use of more saline water, and can be used effectively with low infiltration soils that cannot be sprinkler irrigated. Some disadvantages are the higher initial costs of the systems, salinity buildups, more limited root development, and higher technology requirements. Later savings may be offset by higher maintenance costs. There are low cost methods, however, for irrigating garden sized plots with localized irrigation.

Drip or trickle irrigation is a localized irrigation method that applies water in very low flow rates. Pressures required in drip irrigation are typically between .7 and 1.4 $kg/cm^2$ (10 and 20 psi). Drip irrigation is suitable for most soil types and most types of topography. It is very well suited to situations of limited water supplies or high water costs. Its high cost ($2,000-$5,000/hectare) can be justified only in orchard crops or other high-value crops.

There are two basic methods of drip or trickle application - line source (used mainly for row crops) and point source (used primarily for tree crops). The line source method consists of one- or two-chamber polyethylene-type plastic tubing, 4-15 mm thick, and with small holes (usually laser cut) every 20 to 60 cm. The single outlet type uses emitters, usually a button-type plastic device with a barbed fitting that attaches to a polyethylene lateral hose having a diameter of 1/2" to 1".

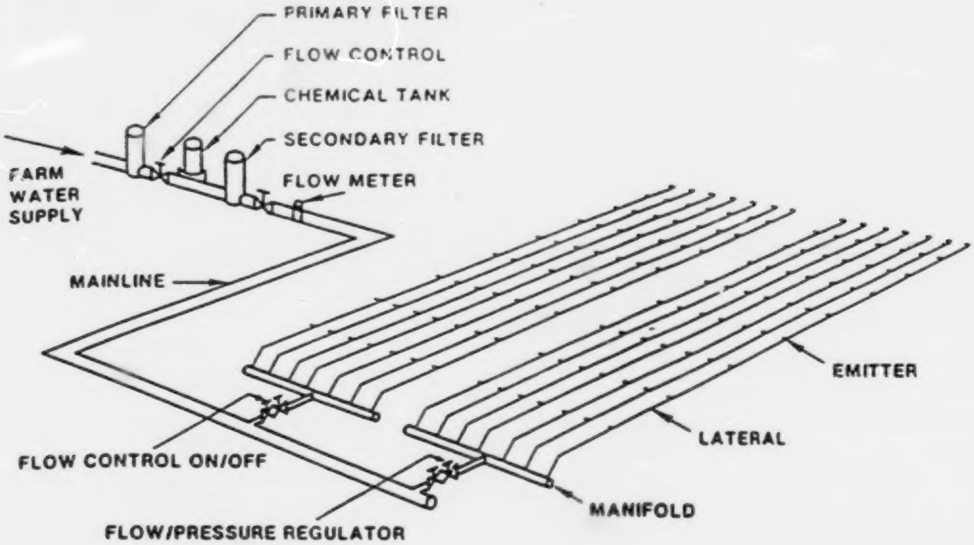

PRIMARY FILTER
FLOW CONTROL
CHEMICAL TANK
SECONDARY FILTER
FARM WATER SUPPLY
FLOW METER
MAINLINE
EMITTER
LATERAL
FLOW CONTROL ON/OFF
MANIFOLD
FLOW/PRESSURE REGULATOR

**Figure 5.27 Basic Components of a Localised Irrigation System**

Potential clogging or mineral deposition are significant disadvantages because of the very small water passages and the slow water velocities. Filtration and clean water is, therefore, a very important consideration. Periodic maintenance to prevent clogging is required. Thus, more operator knowledge is required than for most other types of irrigation.

A typical soil-wetting pattern under a single emitter is shown in Figure 5.28. Inadequate wetting of the root zone can seriously limit crop growth of crops such as avocados or bananas, which have a shallow, expansive root system. For this reason, a minimum of 33% wetting of the total surface area is required. Line source systems will usually wet about 70% of the surface area.

### 5.7.1 Characteristics

Field slope can significantly affect the uniformity of performance due to the fairly low operating pressures. Some design characteristics for drip or trickle systems are listed below.

1. Emitters should be spaced so that at least 33% of the total field area is wetted.

2. Commonly used emitter flow rates are 4 to 8 L/hr (1 to 2 gal/hr).

3. Depending on the tree crop layout, use one or two lateral lines per tree row.

4. For the line source method, one line per row of crop is usually sufficient. Wider, raised beds of strawberries or carrots may require two lines.

5. Try to run line source or lateral line for emitters on contour or slightly downhill slopes in order to maintain a high degree of uniformity.

6. Manifolds should be strategically located to reduce lateral lengths; therefore, smaller line sizes can be used, resulting in lower costs and better long-term operation. Typically, on flat ground the lateral lines would be split in half by placing the manifold in the center of the field.

7. Allow for shrinkage and expansion of PE lines. The smaller diameter lines used for laterals will absorb the sun's heat, causing considerable expansion and contraction. Therefore, leave some slack (at least 3%) in the laterals as they are laid out; otherwise, the emitters will not stay where they are placed. Such displacement can lead to quite a disappointment.

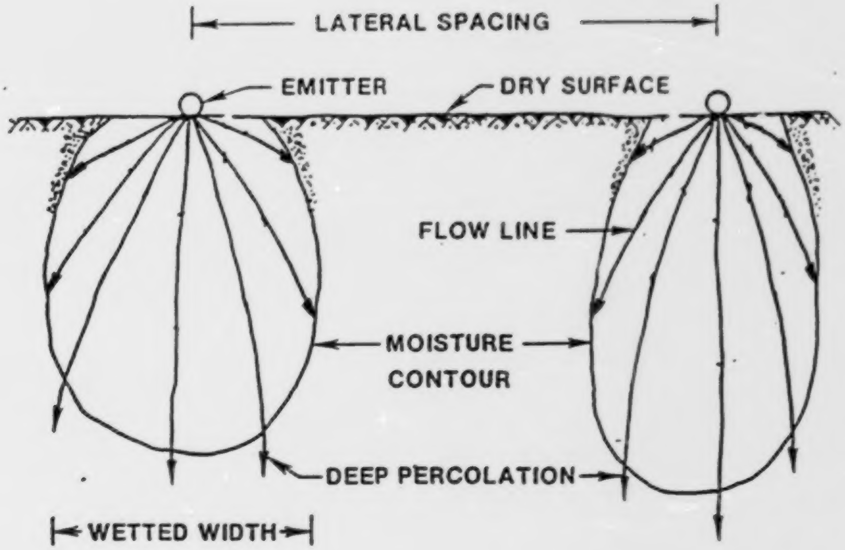

LATERAL SPACING
EMITTER
DRY SURFACE
FLOW LINE
MOISTURE CONTOUR
DEEP PERCOLATION
WETTED WIDTH

**Figure 5.28 Typical Pattern of Soil Wetting Under Trickle Irrigation**

8. Provide for flushing: make allowance at the ends of the laterals or line sources to facilitate occasional flushing. Flushing is imperative immediately after installation. Flushing can be done easily by folding or doubling the end of the line 4-5" back on to itself, and then either slipping a piece of PVC pipe (approximately 4-5") over the folded end or tying the folded end with wire or string. When the system needs flushing, simply pull off the PVC pipe or untie the wire/string and run water through the open line until all debris is flushed out of the system. This should be done on a regular basis.

9. Operating pressure differentials between the maximum and minimum pressure emitters should not exceed 20%-25%, if at all possible.

Low cost localized irrigation methods that incorporate some of the advantages and avoid some of the clogging problems of drip irrigation have been used in developing countries for small garden plots. These systems may operate with pressures as low as 0.1 to 0.2 meters. One such low flow rate system uses a small 1/2" to 3/4" diameter hose with 2 to 4 mm holes drilled in the wall next to the location of the trees to be irrigated. Small basins constructed around the tree are filled every few days with this system. The larger orifice sizes do not plug easily and can easily be cleaned. However, a sedimentation basin and a screen at the inlet are required to keep out bigger particles that could plug the orifices if surface supplies are used.

### 5.7.2 Operation and Maintenance

1. Maintain clean water through periodic checking and cleaning of the filters.

2. Flush after installation and every few months, or more often if source water is fairly dirty.

3. Check pressures periodically to ensure that they are close to the design pressure.

4. If algae growth within the lines is a problem (typical with stream or pond water), chlorine should be used during flushing.

5. Irrigation times should be long enough to refill the root zone and achieve at least 33% wetting of the entire area, unless the orchard is young.

6. Walk the lateral lines weekly or biweekly to ensure good emitter operation and that none have plugged up or popped out.

# CHAPTER 6

# FARM WATER MANAGEMENT

6.1 Farm Water Management
6.2 Farm Irrigation Scheduling
6.3 Evaluation of Existing Irrigation Systems
6.4 Training Small Scale Farmers in Irrigation Management

References - Primary: (11), (42), (44)
Other: (12), (22), (34), (43), (51)

# 6.1 FARM WATER MANAGEMENT

## 6.1.1 General Concepts

On-farm irrigation water management involves the manipulation of such factors as the timing and amounts of irrigation applied to the crop, the flow rates to be used, and the methods of controlling the water. These and other parameters can be modified to achieve desired crop production goals within the restrictions imposed by soils, crop, climate, water supply, and economics, as well as social and other constraints.

The benefits of good on-farm water management are many. A good on-farm water management program generally helps to maximize or optimize yields and crop quality. It can help reduce water and energy consumption, thus making these supplies available for irrigating more land, as well as decreasing the cost for a given irrigation system. It can reduce the loss of fertilizer which is leached out with excess water application, which in turn decreases the amount of fertilizer necessary to achieve desired yield goals. A good management program ensures that root zone salinity is controlled at desired levels and that waterlogging of soils and excess deep percolation losses are either diminished or eliminated. It can help to eliminate problems such as erosion and control crop diseases related to excessive or deficient water application. Water control can reduce machine and labor time. A good farm water management program takes the guess work out of irrigation so that the farmers can consistently make the best use of their water resources.

In setting up an effective irrigation water management program, the engineer, technician, or farmer must first be intimately familiar with the irrigation system. He or she must be aware of the different possible modifications in design and management and must know how changing one or more design or management factors will affect the crop and soil system and other operational characteristics. For example, it may be possible to change the control structures in order to ensure a more flexible and responsive system. It may also be possible to change the rotation and supply of water so that the availability is more in tune with crop requirements.

On-farm design and management factors that should be considered for modification are: irrigation method, irrigation system geometry (width, length, depth, spacing), slope and topography, crop, tillage practices, flow rates, and irrigation timing and duration. Changes in the tools used for irrigation, such as the use of siphons, can ensure the ability to apply uniform, non-erosive irrigations. In sprinkler and trickle irrigation, it may be possible to change pressures, pipe sizes, or other system components.

In all cases, a good maintenance and monitoring program is essential to good management. Before undertaking any modifications or setting up a management program, certain data must be obtained and analyzed. These include crop data such as varieties, length of growing seasons, crop water requirements, and acceptable soil moisture levels at different stages of growth. For a given crop and area, the manager must know when the crop will reach certain stages of growth, when the critical periods for moisture stress are, how stress or excessively high moisture levels affect the crop in terms of yield and quality, and how moisture levels and irrigation frequency affect the resistance to disease or the propagation of diseases. Also important is how the roots develop through the season and what the moisture extraction pattern is. In the case of poor drainage, saline soil, or saline water, it is necessary to know how yield and quality will be affected by different management practices. For example, maintaining a high moisture level may dilute salts enough so that they will not affect yield significantly. Leaching to control salt levels in the soil profile can minimize the effect on the crop.

Soil data that must be known include the soil(s) water-holding capacity, depth(s) of the different soil layers, and the infiltration characteristics of the soil. Knowledge of soil texture, structure, and organic matter content will also help to determine whether the moisture-holding capacities or the intake rate can be improved. Knowledge of soil salinity and how to control the salt levels is essential. Drainage conditions such as depth to water table and capillary rise of water to the root system should be known. Topography (slope and relief) and soil erosivity must also be known if changes in the irrigation system, land leveling, or even changes in the flow rates in furrows, borders, or basins are contemplated.

Irrigation system data, such as conveyance and application efficiencies and uniformity of water application and penetration in the present system, are necessary, as well as the effects of wind, evaporation, and infiltration rate on these. The geometry of the irrigation system, control structures, system flexibility, energy requirements, water availability and cost, the cost of system design (or redesign) and construction, and the return on investment are all essential data. The quality of the irrigation water may be important in determining proper system capacity. If the system is also going to be used for crop cooling or heating, these requirements must be accounted for.

Climatic data on the time and space distribution of precipitation, solar radiation, temperature, and wind are necessary in determining crop irrigation requirements, and even in determining what crops are suitable to a given set of conditions. Hydrologic data, including stream flows, reservoir capacities, and water supply data, are necessary for determining the amount of irrigable area, possible crops and planting dates, and how the water supply will be distributed to that irrigated area.

Of course, we must not forget the very important data on the farmer. We must know their preferences and schedules, educational and economic level, and progressiveness, as well as the restrictions imposed by the community, religion, irrigation district, or any of the institutions that must be dealt with.

Those in charge of developing the water management program should be critically aware of the consequences that changing the management in any given area may have on the other areas. They should consider how the management in one area will impact on other water users downstream or in low-lying areas. For example, the more efficient use of water in a project upstream may mean that more land can be irrigated in that area. Users downstream, however, may need to count on the return flows from upstream users to continue irrigating.

The implementation of a successful on-farm water management program is a very definite and deliberate process consisting of certain steps. Typically, the person(s) setting up such a program will need to:

1. Conduct an evaluation of the farming system, including soils, crops, and irrigation methods. This helps identify major problems associated with the present management system and the constraints imposed by soil, crop, irrigation system, water supply, and social considerations. The evaluation also helps estimate what the benefits of implementing the required changes will be.

2. Determine the design, redesign, and management alternatives for the system and select the best alternative(s).

3. Ensure that the system is modified according to the selected design and/or redesign.

4. Set up a detailed management program for the system; it should include irrigation schedules, maintenance, and other management parameters.

5. Train the technicians and farmers so that they are capable of implementing the program that was set up.

6. Monitor the system in order to make necessary changes through the season(s) and change the management program to reflect changing conditions. The system monitoring phase is an essential part of good water management. Initially, after the program is implemented, monitoring is conducted both by technical personnel and by the farmer. After a good working program is in place, howevere, the farmer does the day-to-day monitoring of his or her own irrigation system, with perhaps occasional technical assistance.

A good water management program requires that the technical personnel who design and monitor the program, and the farmer who ultimately implements the program, be well trained. Those technical personnel who conduct the training, as well as those who set up the water management programs, should have extensive field experience in working with people and irrigation at the farm level, or they should be given the opportunity to acquire this experience before they are allowed to conduct training or develop the programs. These personnel should be selected for their knowledge of irrigation, as well as their ability to understand the farmer and his or her system and develop rapport with farmers.

The training itself should consist of some classroom instruction, with extensive hands-on field exercises. The types of subjects to be covered would include:

- Irrigation control structures and tools (selection, construction, and maintenance).
- Basic irrigation concepts: crop water requirements, water-holding capacities, infiltration, uniformities, efficiencies, runoff, and erosion.
- Irrigation methods: advantages, disadvantages, selection, construction, and maintenance of irrigation systems.
- Design and redesign of existing irrigation systems for better management.
- Management of new or existing systems: how to determine correct flow rates and timing and amount of each irrigation; evaluate uniformities and efficiencies in an irrigation system; monitor the soil profile and the crop to ensure good irrigations; minimize runoff; detect simple visual indicators of poor or good irrigations; evaluate the impact of changing one or more management parameters on the soil (erosion, infiltration characteristics, and water-holding capacities), the crop, or the overall distribution of water in the field (uniformities, efficiencies, and amount of deep percolation and/or runoff).

The training of both the technical personnel and farmer can cover essentially the same subjects, but the farmer training will be on a more basic level. The training should, however, give farmers enough fundamentals so that he or she can monitor the system well and make changes in timing, duration, flow rates, and other operational characteristics as needed. The farmer should also have the ability and motivation to perform the necessary maintenance.

Extensive hands-on field training is a must. Classroom exercises, slide shows, videotapes, training bulletins, and classroom instructors are important, but they are no substitute for hands-on training.

This chapter summarizes technical information and procedures for developing farm water management programs. It avoids theoretical developments and presents primarily methods that are compatible with data and equipment available to Volunteers working in small farm situations in developing countries. It includes a section of a training manual, "Water Management on Small Farms," which has been used successfully in a number of countries for training small-scale farmers and the technicians who assist them.

## 6.2 FARM IRRIGATION SCHEDULING

The questions of when to irrigate and how much water to apply cannot be answered simply in a textbook approach with a series of equations. To provide guidelines for answering these questions, however, we do resort to equations whose results must be tempered with experience and knowledge of the field situation. To avoid oversimplification, we begin with a discussion of the factors that farmers should consider when they determine the irrigation schedule.

### 6.2.1 Factors Affecting Irrigation Scheduling

Outside the growing season, a farmer's need to irrigate will depend on several factors. The farmer must consider irrigation requirements for tillage and leaching of salts or to ensure adequate moisture for planting. He or she may consider filling the soil profile to avoid having to irrigate early in the growing season or to ensure an adequate soil water reservoir in times of drought or insufficient water availability during the growing season. A farmer may also irrigate to germinate weeds that can then be removed through cultivation before planting.

After planting and during germination, irrigation requirements are a function of the soil moisture around the seed. Shallow or variable planting depths may require several light irrigations to obtain a good stand while deeper planted crops may require one irrigation or possibly no irrigations, if good moisture is available at planting. Other factors, such as the need to push salts below the seed and seedling, may influence the number of irrigations and amounts of irrigation water to be applied. Crusting of the soil surface may inhibit plant emergence, thus one or two irrigations specifically for the purpose of softening the soil to allow uniform seedling emergence may be required.

After emergence and during the vegetative development of the crop, the irrigation schedule is a function of the rate of crop water use (evapotranspiration), the soil water reservoir available to the roots, the specific crop, and the flexibility of the system. As the crop grows and the rooting system develops, the soil water reservoir accessible to the plant increases. As the plants grow, however, they require higher moisture levels in the root zone. Thus, during vegetative development, the schedule should take into account the change in the soil water reservoir, water use, and crop sensitivity. In addition, factors such as the unevenness of the soil surface, surface methods of irrigation, intake characteristics, and water control may limit the maximum or minimum efficient depth of application. Thus, a farmer may increase or decrease irrigation intervals and application depths to avoid deep percolation or runoff with less concern for the level of soil moisture at which yield decreases begin.

433

Irrigation intervals may be increased to avoid leaching of nutrients at this stage. Soil salinity considerations may require greater depths of application for leaching, or closer intervals to dilute the salts in the root zone. Other factors such as the need to germinate weeds, prevent wind erosion, and modify soil temperatures may be important.

During mid-season, the soil water reservoir is fully or almost fully developed. Most crops are especially sensitive to moisture stresses at this time, and their potential to use water is greatest. The irrigation schedule during this part of the season can often be a constant if weather conditions are constant. It could, however, vary with changes in crop water use or the amount of effective precipitation. The same factors (previously mentioned) that influence the maximum or minimum application depths should be considered. Nutrient leaching and soil salinity may be considerations. Disease or pest problems that result from frequent irrigations or wet conditions are often reasons for lengthening irrigation intervals. Crop cooling and frost protection may also be factors influencing a schedule, especially in sprinkler irrigation. In irrigation systems that are used for application of fertilizers, pesticides, or other chemicals, the timing of these may be the overriding consideration for certain irrigations. The fruit formation stage of many crops occurs sometime during mid-season. This is usually the most sensitive period of the whole crop season; thus, proper irrigation scheduling during mid-season is a key to good production.

Late in the growing season, irrigation schedules are influenced by the same factors as during vegetative and mid-season periods. During this time, however, crop yields are not as easily affected as during mid-season. The soil water reservoir in the root zone is developed to a maximum, water use is decreasing, and the crop is less sensitive to high soil moisture depletions. As a result, irrigations can typically be less frequent and of greater depths. The quality of the crop can often be greatly influenced by the irrigation schedule during this time. The protein content in grains can be increased, potato storage ability is improved, and the sugar content of cane is increased by withholding water as these crops mature. The color of some crops can be altered. Harvest moisture is a definite consideration, since the last irrigation usually must be scheduled with enough time to allow the soil and crop to dry for harvesting. For root and tops, however, sufficient soil moisture to allow harvesting must be assured. Post-harvest tillage moisture requirements may also be considered at this time.

For any irrigation, the availability of water and the flexibility of the delivery and farm system are often the most important factors in scheduling. The importance of a farmer's personal preferences, religious and social obligations, and other cultural aspects should also be taken into account.

### 6.2.2 The Practice of Irrigation Scheduling

In theory, farmers should be able to apply irrigation water when they consider their soils to have reached an acceptable soil water depletion, or Management Allowed Deficit (MAD). At that time, the farmer should be able to apply an amount of water that will either fully or partially refill the soil profile. The farmer may opt to only partially fill the soil profile if the water supply is limited, if he or she wants to avoid deep percolation and leaching, or if he or she wants to leave room for precipitation storage.

MAD may be equal to the depletion at which crop yields begin to decrease, or it may be greater or lesser than this depth. It is also common to allow a lower MAD on trickle irrigation systems as labor and flexibility do not pose a problem, or to insure adequate down time during system malfunctions. Sprinkler systems may require a smaller MAD and application amounts to avoid runoff problems or to allow for application of chemicals. Irrigating with a lesser MAD may also be practiced if the water is delivered frequently, but in small amounts. On the other hand, a farmer may select a MAD that corresponds to significant crop stress. The farmer may do this to increase his or her irrigation efficiencies by building up larger deficits before irrigating, or by spreading the water over a greater area, thus maximizing yield over the farm.

### 6.2.3 Techniques for Preparing Irrigation Schedules

Determinations on the timing and amounts of water to apply are made by the farmer in a variety of ways. Farmers may visually inspect the crop for signs of stress and then apply an amount of water consistent with their experience, availability of the supply, or by other means. The farmer may inspect the soil in the root zone by feel and by visual methods to determine timing and/or amounts. Another farmer may use moisture sensing or stress sensing devices such as tensiometers, neutron probes, or infrared sensors. Still others may rely on soil water budget models that use soil, crop, climate, and irrigation system factors. Many will use combinations of the different methods, and many will use no method but irrigate when water is available.

A good scheduling technique should be able to predict with some anticipation the timing and amount of irrigation required so that the farmer can plan water deliveries. In the following sections, two common and useful scheduling techniques are presented.

### 6.2.4 Useful Relationships in Irrigation Scheduling

Knowledge of the soil, crop, climate, and system parameters can be integrated into useful relationships for irrigation scheduling. Irrigation intervals, net application and gross application depths, volume of water required for irrigation, and irrigation duration versus flow rate are some of the essential results that can be derived by using the following basic relationships:

1. Net Irrigation Requirement

$$Irn = ET - Pe - Gw - Wb,$$

where:

| | |
|---|---|
| Irn | is the net irrigation requirement for the time period under consideration for a given crop. |
| ET | is evapotranspiration for the crop being considered. For non-stressed conditions, ET = ETc. |
| Pe | is the effective precipitation, or that portion of precipitation that provides water for the ET requirements of the crop or for tillage and other beneficial uses related to crop growth. |
| Gw | is the ground water contribution to the crop requirements. Gw is generally negligible if water tables are not within a meter of the surface. |
| Wb | is that portion of stored soil water at the beginning of the period that can be used to satisfy ET requirements of the crop. With shallow soils and shallow rooted crops this is usually negligible. |

2. Management Allowed Depletion

$$MAD = p' \times AW \times D$$

where:

| | |
|---|---|
| p' | is the allowable depletion of the soil water that will not result in unacceptable yield reduction, expressed as a fraction of the moisture that a soil can hold between field capacity (fc) and percent wilting point (pwp). For example, a value commonly used is 0.5, although for a farm with moisture-sensitive crops and high water availability, lower values usually around .35 would be appropriate. For stress-tolerant crops and limited water availability, higher values (0.6 to 0.7) may be better. |

AW is the amount (depth) of water that a soil can hold between field capacity (fc) and percent wilting point (pwp) per unit depth of soil.

D is the root zone depth, which varies with crop, stage of development and soils.

**Example:** A sandy loam soil holds 140 mm/m between fc and pwp. The root depth is 30 cm, and the depletion not resulting in yield decrease is 35%. What is the allowed depletion if moisture stress is to be avoided?

Solution: MAD = 0.35 x 140 mm/m x 0.3 m = 14.7 mm

### 3. Typical Irrigation Interval Required

Assume the soil is filled at least to field capacity at each irrigation.

$$I = MAD/(ETc - Pe - Gw) + Ts$$

where:

I is the allowable interval between irrigations if the crop is irrigated when the management allowable depletion has been reached.

ETc is the daily crop water use, assuming that the crop is kept at near optimum moisture conditions.

Pe is the mean daily effective rainfall.

Gw is the mean daily contribution of the ground water or saturated zone below the root system to crop requirements. Neglect this component unless water tables are within one meter of the surface.

Ts is time (days) for soil to drain from saturation to field capacity after an irrigation if more water than that required to fill the soil to field capacity is applied. (Use 1 day for sandy soils, 2 days for sandy loams, and 3 days for loams, clay loams, and other heavy soils.)

**Example:** The daily crop water use of the lettuce crop in the previous examples is approximately 5 mm/day. What is a desired frequency, assuming that the soil will be filled above capacity at each irrigation to allow for a longer interval between irrigations? Assume no rainfall or ground water contribution.

Solution: $$I = \frac{14.7\ \text{mm}}{5\ \text{mm/day}} + Ts = 3\ \text{days} + 1\ \text{day} = 4\ \text{days}$$

Comment: Coarse-textured soils can retain saturation moisture in the root zone approximately 1 day after irrigation, medium-textured soils 2 days, and fine- textured soils 3 to 4 days. Thus, the 4-day interval should be conservative.

## 4. Net Application Depth Desired (dn)

For a known irrigation interval and ET, assume the profile was filled to field capacity at the previous irrigation and will be filled again with the present irrigation.

$$dn = I(ET - Pe - Gw)$$

where:

I is irrigation interval.

ET is average daily evapotranspiration over the period.

Pe is the average daily effective rainfall contribution.

Gw is the average daily ground water contribution.

Comment: With I = 4 days of previous example, then:

$$dn = 4 \text{ days} \times 5 \text{ mm/day} = 20 \text{ mm}$$

In the case of limited water availability when the deficit will not be totally replenished, dn will be diminished by the amount of deficit allowed after irrigation.

## 5. Gross Application Depth

$$dg = dn/Ea$$

where:

dg is the gross depth to be applied at each irrigation in order to apply net dn.

Ea is expected application efficiency (fraction).

**Example:** We want to a apply net depth of 20 mm. The application efficiency with furrow irrigation is 40%, and with sprinkler irrigation is 65%. How much water do we need with furrow irrigation? With sprinklers?

Solution (sprinkler irrigation):

$$dg = 20/0.65 = 30.8 \text{ mm}$$

Solution (surface irrigation):

$$dg = 20/0.40 = 50 \text{ mm}$$

6. Continuity Equation

$$Va = Qt = dg \times A$$

where:

| | |
|---|---|
| Va | is the gross volume applied. |
| Q | is the discharge or flow rate. |
| t | is the irrigation duration. |
| A | is the area over which water is applied. |
| dg | is the gross applied depth. |

**Example:** With a 28 liter per second (28 liters/sec) flow rate, how long will it take to irrigate a 1/2 hectare surface irrigated plot from the previous example?

Solution: 28 liters/sec = 101 $m^3$/hr

$$dg = 20/0.4 = 50 \text{ mm} = 0.050 \text{ m}$$

$$Va = 0.050 \text{ m} \times 5{,}000 \text{ m}^2 = 250 \text{ m}^3$$

$$t = Va/Q = 250 \text{ m}^3/101 \text{ m}^3/\text{hr} = 2.5 \text{ hours}$$

### 6.2.5 The Soil Water Budget Approach

To schedule individual irrigations by the soil water budget approach, estimates of the net irrigation requirements during an interval are estimated with Equation 1 or similar equations. The depletions are then compared with MAD (Equation 2). Irrigation is effected when Irn is approximately equal to MAD. Equation 3 is used to estimate the desired irrigation interval. Equation 4 may be used for estimating net application depths when the irrigation interval is known. Equation 5 is used in establishing gross irrigation. Equation 6 is used to determine required flow rates or irrigation duration once the gross depth and area to be irrigated are known.

The depletion at the start of the season must be estimated or measured. Usually, excess rainfall or irrigation is assumed to be lost to deep percolation. Saturation moisture, however, is usable by plants (1 to 4 days after irrigation). Especially in heavier soils, saturation moisture should be considered by the scheduler. If water tables are deeper than 40 cm below the root zone, then ground water contributions may be neglected for scheduling purposes.

The ETc estimates are usually provided by private or public agencies or can be estimated from knowledge of weather and crop conditions. The budgets (balance) can be updated by hand, by computer, or hand programmable calculators.

Typical schedules based on normal climatic conditions, crop development, soils, and other considerations may be developed as an aid to irrigators.

Efficiencies may vary through the irrigation season. Predictions are affected by the accuracy of inputs. Because of this, the predictions of water balance techniques should be field verified periodically.

### 6.2.6 The Feel and Appearance Method

The Feel and Appearance Method correlates the "when" and "how much" of irrigation to the feel and appearance of the soil (Table 6.1). This method is rapid and simple and, when used by experienced personnel, can be quite accurate. It permits a large number of samples to be analyzed quickly in the field. It requires only the use of a soil probe or shovel to obtain the samples. Proper location for sampling and correct depth of sampling are important in obtaining a true status of moisture in a field. Some considerations are:

1. Where are the critical soils, i.e., which soils have the greatest and the least moisture retentivity, which have the fastest and slowest infiltration rates? Keep in mind the proportion of the field that has these critical soils in order to determine whether or not it would be economical or practical to base the irrigation schedule on conditions at those locations.

2. Where is the application (or penetration) of water the least? For example, with sprinkler irrigation, this could be where the pressures in the system are the least. In border strip irrigation, it could be where the contact time of the water on the soil is the least (the head or the tail of the strip). In furrows, it is usually at the end of the furrow if the water has not ponded there.

3. In which part of the field is irrigation initiated, and where is it terminated? These two points generally show the greatest differences in moisture content if the soils are uniform in other aspects.

4. Where are plant population and development representative? Generally, where the plants have greater foliar area and where the foliar development is more active, is where the plants utilize more water. With other conditions being uniform, this will be where the soil will become the driest until full plant coverage is reached.

5. Where are different crops, or varieties of the same crop, planted? Even within different varieties of the same crop, there can be great differences of water use.

6. In which part of the field is access convenient for the farmer or a technician to take readings?

7. What is the root depth of the crop and what is the critical depth for moisture monitoring? For example, at effective cover, small grains have rooting depths of a meter or more if roots do not encounter obstacles. If the soil is uniform and deep, it is important to periodically verify the moisture status in the entire profile. However, if the good soil is very superficial (say 30 cm) and below is only coarse gravel, it is important to monitor in the top 30 cm. Critical depth may be quite different from total rooting depth. For example:

    > Potatoes can have roots to one meter. During tuber enlargement, however, it is very important to monitor the top 45 cm, especially the first 30 cm. Therefore, the soil moisture monitoring is conducted to 45 cm of depth. The root depth changes from the time of planting, so the important zone for monitoring also varies from planting time until about the effective cover stage.

8. Where is the greatest root concentration? In potatoes, for example, root development initiates at the seed tuber and the greatest water use begins there. Therefore, it is important to place the sensors near the planted tuber in the initial growth stage.

### 6.2.7 Summary of Scheduling Techniques

Many types of moisture sensors and scheduling techniques have been developed. Because of the limited technical background of many farmers, however, the acceptability of a scheduling technique by farmers may hinge on the simplicity of the method. An acceptable scheduling technique for them may consist simply of field probing and use of the feel method for determining when to irrigate and whether the irrigations are adequate. In spite of its simplicity, monitoring of root zone moisture by this technique may result in dramatic improvements in efficiencies and crop yields.

**Table 6.1 Guide for Judging How Much Moisture is Available for Crops (Ref. 51)**

| Available soil moisture remaining | Feel or appearance of soil and moisture deficiency | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Loamy Sand<br>Course Texture | Sandy Loam<br>Moderately Course Texture | Loam and Silt Loam<br>Medium Texture | Clay Loam or Silty Clay Loam<br>Fine and Very Fine Texture |
| 0 to 25 percent | Dry, loose, single grained, flows through fingers | Dry, loose, flows through fingers | Powdery dry, sometimes slightly crusted but easily broken down into powdery condition. | Hard baked, cracked, sometimes has loose curmbs on surface. |
| 25 to 50 percent | Appears to be dry, will not from a ball with pressure. 1/ | Appears to be dry, will not form a ball.1/ | Somewhat crumbly but holds together from pressure. | Somewhat pliable, will ball under pressure.1/ |
| 50 to 75 percent | Appears to be dry, will not form a ball with pressure. | Tends to ball under pressure but seldon holds together. | Forms a ball somewhat plastic, will sometimes slick slightly with pressure. | Forms a ball, ribbons out between thumb and forefinger. |
| 75 percent to field capacity (100 percent). | Tends to stick together slightly, sometimes forms a very weak ball under pressure. | Forms weak ball, breaks easily, will not slick. | Forms a ball, is very pliable, slicks readily, is relatively high in clay. | Easily ribbons out between fingers, has slick feeling. |
| At field capacity (100 percent). | Upon squeezing, no free water appears on soil but wet outline of ball is left on hand. | Upon squeezing, no free water appears on soil but wet outline of ball is left on hand. | Upon squeezing, no free water appears on soil but wet outline of ball is lef on hand. | Upon squeezing, no free water appears on soil but wet outline of ball is left on hand. |

1/ Ball is formed by squeezing a handful of soil very firmly.

## 6.2.8 A Comparison of Scheduling Criteria for Surface, Sprinkler, and Drip Irrigation

### Surface Irrigation Scheduling

The inability of many surface irrigation systems to apply small amounts of water efficiently, and the inflexibility sometimes associated with them, often requires a different scheduling criteria than is associated with sprinkler or drip irrigation.

A farmer typically irrigates to fill the soil profile on the higher parts of his or her field or at the tail end of his or her runs. Unless a surface irrigation system is well designed, levelled and managed, it is difficult for farmers to irrigate with less than 8 or 10 cm of water application. Net irrigation requirements (deficits) of 2 to 4 cm at the time of irrigation can result in extremely wasteful and inefficient irrigations. Thus, even though yields may decrease due to water stress, a much higher MAD (perhaps 4 or 5 cm) might be most economical. With greater MAD, irrigation efficiency is often increased, leaching of fertilizers decreases, and total irrigated area often increases. Thus, yield per unit of water may increase significantly. For sensitive crops or light soils, or heavy soils with infiltration problems, the economically allowed MAD may be only 2, 3, or 4 cm. In this case, it may be necessary to consider well levelled basins or graded furrows that can be operated to apply 3 to 6 cm of water uniformly and efficiently.

Once MAD and irrigation interval are determined for a surface system, the task is to determine how to apply the desired net depth of application. Intake rates, surface roughness, geometry of furrows, and required net application depths may change from one irrigation to the next and from season to season. Thus, advising the irrigator on the flow rates and durations of irrigation requires a very good understanding of the hydraulics of the system and its variability, or monitoring and experience by the farmer. In the absence of technical help, the farmer may experiment with various flow rates and durations that are possible and convenient. Probing the soil one, two, or three days after irrigation, he or she can determine whether irrigation depth was adequate in the critical parts of the field (tail, heavier or lighter soils, high spots, etc.). The farmer can then make adjustments in future irrigations.

### Sprinkler Irrigation Scheduling

Well-designed sprinkler systems can be managed to apply water with a minimum of runoff and deep percolation. Proper management can result in application efficiencies of 70% to 90%. Infiltration rates, soil surface storage, labor availability, automation, and various factors other than rooting depth, water-holding capacities, and crop type are important in determining MAD.

With hand move systems (and others requiring significant labor), it is often economically desirable to make the MAD as high as possible and develop 8, 12 or 24-hour sets to minimize labor costs and maximize convenience.

## Drip Irrigation Scheduling

Net irrigation requirements may be less with drip irrigation than with surface or sprinkler irrigation, primarily because the area wetted is reduced and evaporation is decreased. This reduction in water requirement usually occurs early in the growth stage of plants when the soil surface is bare. Once the ground is 50% to 75% shaded, the difference in water requirements is minimal. As most ET estimating methods assume a significant evaporation component early in crop growth, estimates of ET may need to be reduced in relation to the soil surface area wetted by the drip system. On the other hand, frequent irrigations associated with drip irrigation may increase ET of the wetted area; thus ET may not necessarily be much less than on surface or sprinkler irrigation. Observation of the wetted area, soil moisture levels, and plant response will provide the experience necessary for making such adjustments.

Crop water requirements are often converted from units of depth per unit time, to units of water volume per unit land area per unit time, e.g., liters/ha/day. Application rates are often expressed as units of water volume per plant per unit time.

In drip irrigation systems, the wetted volume of the root zone is usually only a portion of that wetted by other methods. The system is usually designed for continuous, or nearly continuous, operation during peak use periods. Cost factors do not allow for significant oversizing of the system. In addition, flexibility due to control and automation permit the crops to be maintained at high moisture levels conducive to maximum yields while maintaining high irrigation efficiencies. Thus, the concept of drip irrigation implies a high frequency (short irrigation intervals) and small amounts of application (small MAD) at each irrigation as compared with conventional methods.

Because of the limited wetted volume, the concept of MAD applies to that portion of the root zone that is wetted by the drip system. The scheduling process is simple. MAD is usually selected to be less than or equal to RAW (see Chapter 2.4) in the wetted volume. The wetted volume is replenished daily, or at the preselected MAD. A slight excess (10% to 20%) above that required to eliminate the deficit is applied to account for non-uniformities to application.

For a well-managed system, the efficiencies are a function of emitter flow variations caused by hydraulic design and manufacturing variations, as well as whether or not the entire system will be replenished to capacity or some deficit will be allowed in areas of least water application. Efficiencies of 85% to 90% can usually be used in well-designed and managed systems for scheduling without noticeable yield effects.

### 6.2.9 Rice Irrigation Scheduling

The water use (Et) by a non-stressed rice crop can vary between 450 and 700 mm per day, depending on climate and variety. Kc for the initial 2 months varies from 1.1 to 1.15, depending on the wetness of the soil surface. Mid-season Kc varies from 1.1 to 1.3 and, for the final month, it varies from 0.95 to 1.05.

Saturation or near saturation conditions must be maintained during most of the growing season. After transplanting, saturation is maintained by a film of water (about 10 cm) over the surface. Flowering and head formation are most sensitive to a lack of water. Some scheduling approaches for rice follow.

> In continual saturation scheduling, water is maintained at approximately 10 cm depth for about one week after transplanting. Through tillering, a maximum depth of about 3 cm is maintained. From 30 days before head formation and flowering to the start of maturity, soil is covered with water often to a depth of 8 or 10 cm. A continual flow of water is frequently maintained. The fields should be drained completely 30 to 45 days before harvest to ensure that they will be dry enough for harvest. This method generally results in maximum potential yield.
>
> Intermittent irrigation is another scheduling approach used on rice when water is more scarce. Irrigations are applied periodically to maintain the crops at near-saturation level when possible. Yield may be reduced significantly with this method if moisture cannot be maintained at saturation from heading to flowering.
>
> In the controlled water savings method of irrigation, the field is maintained as close to saturation as possible, except that the field is flooded at transplanting and then for about 30 days (from heading through flowering). Maximum yields can be achieved with this method.

Rice is an aquatic plant and thrives on saturation conditions. Total submersion of the rice plant for extended periods of time, however, decreases yields. Thus, it is important that both the supply and the drainage be closely controlled. As rice is usually irrigated in basins, the basin bottoms should be well levelled to prevent excessive submergence in places and inadequate wetting in others.

### 6.2.10 Scheduling and Management Strategies for Limited Water Supplies

Intentional under-irrigation is the practice of deliberately applying less than the soil moisture deficit (SMD) over all or part of the field. This may be done to conserve water during peak use periods through less percolation and runoff losses. Application efficiencies are generally higher. It is sometimes done to allow for precipitation storage in the root zone. This practice does not necessarily reduce yield, but makes more effective use of water. It also makes good use of the total moisture stored in the root zone.

Stress irrigation or deficit irrigation is the practice of extending the interval between irrigations to the point that crop water use is limited below potential or peak use. Thus, MAD is selected at values that will limit crop production. This practice may reduce system capacity requirements and obtain maximum yields per unit of water or unit of capital cost. With a limited but flexible water supply, it may be possible to stress a crop at periods other than critical periods and still obtain near-peak yields. This practice may result in better root development and better ability to use deep moisture storage. Where a significant drying of the soil in the lower root zone develops, the nutrients may not be available for plant growth; thus, the whole root zone should be wetted periodically. In addition, a limited supply will cause less stress if applied in enough depth that soil surface evaporation is limited and the lower root zone reservoir is filled or almost filled. A smaller concentration of roots in the deeper root zone will result in slower moisture extraction and less severe stress than application of small amounts that are quickly withdrawn from the upper root zone by the plant.

During periods of short water supply, a choice needs to be made between conducting deficit irrigation (in which the crops will be stressed) or reducing the area to be irrigated. The choice may be made at the project level if the administration is capable of enforcing the decision or at the farm level if the farmer can foresee the extent of the shortage. In some areas, water supply forecasts published by different agencies may help in making the decision.

If there is significant water storage in project or farm reservoirs, the time of water delivery can be controlled. Each crop has critical periods during which water stress has maximum effect on the reduction of crop yields. This period is usually during the flowering, fruit setting, or yield formation stages. Thus, short water supplies might be best distributed by holding back on the normal irrigation supplies except during these critical periods.

When water is scarce, the various irrigation efficiencies should be evaluated. Much water is frequently lost in the conveyance system. Observational evaluations of losses at turnouts and other distribution points on the canal system, and of vegetation in and along the canal that may be using water and increasing seepage losses, should be conducted. Seepage losses in sandy soils or permeable stretches of canal can be evaluated to determine what parts of the canal have greater losses and what the magnitude of these losses are. The value of water lost, as compared with production losses, may provide the economic basis of whether or not to line parts of the canal or pursue other measures to reduce the losses.

Increasing irrigation efficiencies through evaluation and improvement may lessen the impact of shortages. Land leveling, reuse of runoff water, use of better water control devices, and use of management techniques are important. Continual evaluation and monitoring of the irrigation system to determine frequency and amounts of irrigation, along with necessary operational changes, are of great importance.

Techniques such as runoff interception by ridges on the contour or contour seepage furrows permit more water to be absorbed by the soil. Mulching to reduce evaporation from the soil can significantly improve moisture availability for plant use. Plant residues and even thin gravel layers have been used. Proper tillage of the soil for moisture conservation leaves the soil loose so that the upper soil layer becomes a mulch that impedes capillary movement. Filling the soil during periods of high water availability may provide necessary moisture for crops during shortages, especially on deep soils with good water-holding capacities.

If the irrigation supply depends on stream flows that are partially sustained by ground water contributions, then water infiltration needs to be promoted during years of excess. The same holds true when ground water provides a major supply of irrigation water through pumping. In both cases, the water tables can be raised; therefore, the water stored for future use can be enhanced by water spreading on idle lands, ponding in gravel beds, areas of permeable materials, ditches, and drains, and recharging wells directly.

Excess water availability for irrigation tends to result in over-irrigation by farmers and can be as detrimental as a water shortage. Proper timing and amounts of irrigation and drainage of excess rain and irrigation water is necessary for maintaining high yields. Thus, it is of primary importance that farmers recognize that good management is necessary even in times of excess.

Some of the key elements in setting up acceptable irrigation scheduling programs are as follows:

1. The schedules must be compatible with the farmer's other schedules (e.g. cultivation, herbigation).
2. The scheduling techniques must be simple and reliable and must not make a great demand on the farmer's time.
3. The scheduling program must be economically attractive.
4. To be most successful at the farm level, water supplies must be flexible in terms of timing and quantity.

### 6.2.11 Delivery System Schedules

In irrigation projects where several users are served from the same water supply, it is often economically unfeasible to supply each irrigator according to optimal timing and amount. In such cases, the delivery system may be scheduled to meet the needs (timing and amount) of the major crops of the area.

The distribution of water within the delivery system is accomplished in different ways. The main methods are:

**On-Demand:** The farmer takes water at any time up to the capacity of his or her outlet or at a predetermined discharge.

**Semi-Demand:** The farmer generally requests water within 2 to 7 days before delivery.

**Canal Rotation and Free Demand:** The secondary canals receive water by turns, and when the canal is receiving water the farmers can take how much they need when they need it.

**Rotational System:** The canals receive water by turns and the farmers under each canal also receive water by turns when it is available in the canal.

**Continuous Flow:** The farmer receives a continuous supply of water sufficient to cover evapotranspiration needs of his or her crop.

Demand systems generally require higher level technology, very good communication, large design capacities, high initial costs, and a high degree of flexible operational control.

Rotation supply schedules are the most common methods for distributing water in irrigation projects. There are several ways in which a rotational supply may be scheduled:

1. **Fixed interval-fixed depth** (amount). The farmer receives water at a fixed interval (e.g. every 7, 10, 14, 21 days) with the same amount (usually same discharge and duration) at each irrigation of the season. The amount may be proportional to land holdings or cropped area.

2. **Fixed interval-variable depth** (amount). The farmer is given less water per turn early and late in the season when crop water use is less.

3. **Variable interval-fixed depth** (amount). The same amount of water is given at each irrigation, but the interval is varied (shorter during high water use periods and longer during low water use periods).

4. **Variable frequency-variable depth** (amount). Both irrigation intervals and amounts are varied as the root zone water reservoir expands and the water use of the crop varies through the season.

Method 1 is the simplest to manage and administer but is the least in tune with crop requirements and has the highest potential for inefficiency. Method 4 is most in tune with crop requirements and would theoretically result in higher efficiencies. However, standardization of crops, varieties, plantings, dates, are seldom possible. A more in depth discussion of each rotation method follows.

Fixed depth-fixed interval scheduling typically results in inefficient irrigation during initial stages when roots are shallow and water use is low and late growth stages when water use is low. This sheduling may result in reduced yields on shallower soils due to leaching and moisture stress, or waterlogging problems on heavier, deeper soils.

Fixed interval-variable depth schedules typically have problems because present design and construction of irrigation systems do not permit application of small amounts. For example, unless a field is well designed and well levelled, farmers may need to apply 8 cm or more per irrigation to cover the high and dry areas. Cropping patterns and sowing dates would need to be standardized for each project area; systems would need to be redesigned and reconstructed; land levelling would be essential; and farmer training would necessary if the farmer is to be able to apply varying doses uniformly. Unless the farmer is able to adjust flow rate and duration on border and furrow systems, then uniform depths with various doses are impossible. Uniform application of different doses is much more easily accomplished with level basins by simply varying irrigation duration.

A variable interval-fixed depth schedule based on applying water each time a given net deficit developed would result in stress early in the season when applications may need to be light and frequent to assure germination and initial development when roots are shallow. As most surface irrigation systems are efficient when designed and constructed for a given net depth of application, this could be a very efficiently operated system. If crops, varieties, and planting dates were standardized, this system could be made very useful as long as some flexibility were allowed during germination and initial development, i.e. the first two or three irrigations. A change in irrigation interval will require good communication between project managers and farmers as irrigators will not receive water on the same day of the week each time. If systems are modified to allow smaller but uniform application depths, the fixed depth-variable interval schedule could be adapted to soils with significant variability without creating problems, i.e. a net depth of depletion allowed at each irrigation (MAD) could be selected that would not stress crops or leach nutrients on shallow soils orwaterlog heavier soils.

Implementation of a variable interval-variable depth schedule usually has several major constraints. A flexible water supply would be needed, such as that available to well irrigators. Water would need to be available at all times in the canal to satisfy a mix of crops, varieties, planting dates, and soils. Farm irrigation systems are not designed and constructed to allow variable application depths. Farmers would need to account for changes in the water needs of crops and other aspects of soil, plant, water, and irrigation system interrelationships to apply the variable doses efficiently.

This schedule requires great accuracy in management and more skilled labor. Communication between farmers and administrators would have to be excellent. Farmers are accustomed to receiving water on the same day each week. Additionally, since some farmers are unable to read, they may have problems measuring depths.

Although difficult, it may be possible to:

- standardize crops (i.e. block farming) and varieties;
- standardize planting dates within 10-14 days;
- redesign farm systems, including leveling and use of level basins, sprinklers, alternate furrow irrigations, contour furrows or other means of allowing variable doses;
- train farmers in adjustment of flow rates and duration, depth measurement in basins, and other aspects of management;
- standardize irrigation blocks in areas of similar soils; and
- improve communication between project and farm levels.

It may be possible to adjust doses and/or intervals once or twice during the season as climatic, crop, and other conditions change. It may also be possible to shorten intervals or increase amounts during critical growth periods with a minimum of administrative difficulty.

### 6.2.12 Project Scheduling: A Summary

Some attempts at improved project irrigation scheduling have succeeded and others have failed to produce the desired results. A careful evaluation of ET requirements does not ensure that water will be made available at the right time, in the right place, and in the right amount. Poor land preparation and uneven surface topography often make satisfactory uniformity of surface irrigation impossible. Inflexibility and lack of capacity often form a major constraint. Training of all persons involved in water management from project level to farm level is often nonexistent. Failure to monitor the conditions adequately and adjust the schedule accordingly can lead to either excessive or deficit irrigation.

The flexibility of irrigation systems can often be improved through better communications, addition of regulating reservoirs, and modified canal structures, among other means. Uniform project- wide scheduling can be altered to increase flexibility by considering the differences in soils, crops, and flexibilities of the delivery system in various areas. The most flexible schedule possible should be used in each canal command area. For example, canals closer to the water supply source may be provided with greater flexibility than canals farther away. Rigid schedules may be considered for the peak season, with more flexibility being allowed during off-peak periods.

Generally, increased flexibility at the project level increases the cost of the system but allows the farmer to maximize his or her yields. Rigid (rotational) systems minimize capital costs and can be scheduled in various ways to increase efficiencies and improve the productivity of water. As water is often in limited supply, it is often necessary to consider scheduling strategies for maximizing yield per unit of water or for objectives other than the farmer's own objectives.

# 6.3 EVALUATION OF EXISTING IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

## 6.3.1 Strategies for Farm Management

Good farm irrigation management assures:

- correct frequency of irrigations,
- correct application depth,
- uniform irrigation,
- minimum runoff,
- minimum deep percolation except for that required for salt management,
- minimum erosion, and
- optimal return on irrigation investment.

Proper design, construction, and management are essential for achieving high efficiencies. A key to good management is the periodic evaluation of the irrigation system. System evaluation provides information on the actual operation and management of existing systems and potential improvements. Improvements can result in water, labor, soil, and fertility conservation, decreased drainage and salinity problems, and increased yields or profitability.

Detailed evaluation criteria for evaluating and managing most farm irrigation systems is presented in Reference 34. It is often impossible due to economic and other constraints, however, to evaluate systems in great detail. Thus, simple evaluation criteria that can help determine the magnitude of on-farm management problems and possible solutions are presented here.

Properly conducted evaluations provide answers to the following questions:

1. Is the system properly designed? In other words, are lengths, widths, flow rates, pressures, slopes, and other design factors within acceptable ranges to permit good irrigation when the system is properly managed?

2. Are the irrigations conducted at the right time and in the right amount? If not, what is the proper timing and amounts of typical irrigation applications?

3. Are the irrigations acceptably uniform? If not, how do we improve them?

4. Are runoff losses acceptable? If not, how do we lower these losses?

5. Is soil erosion a problem? If so, then how can the problem be eliminated?

In recommending modifications for a given crop, climate, soil, and irrigation system through the irrigation season, the following information is required:

- Planting dates, crop development data, and climatic data;
- Typical irrigation frequencies and amounts of water applied or flow rates and irrigation durations;
- Water availability through the season from rainfall and irrigation;
- Irrigation water quality and soil salinity;
- Soil textures, water-holding capacities, and intake rates;
- Climatic, crop, soil, and ground water data that will permit development of typical good management models;
- A physical system inventory including irrigation structures and tools and their condition;
- Maintenance programs, available labor, and capital;
- Social and economic constraints to system modification.

For furrow, border strip, or basin irrigation the types of design or management modifications that may be considered for improved irrigation include:

1. Flow rate adjustment: to increase or decrease advance rates, minimize runoff after the advance phase, or minimize erosion.

2. Frequency of irrigation: to achieve better yields or quality or permit higher efficiencies due to adjustment in MAD.

3. Duration of irrigation and depth of irrigation: to ensure adequate infiltration depths but minimize runoff and leaching losses.

4. Dimensions of space, length, width and geometry: to match soil types, flow rates, and topography.

5. Land leveling and smoothing.

6 Orientation or slope of furrows and borders (e.g., contour furrows).

7. Tillage and cultural practices: to change soil characteristics such as infiltration, soil surface storage, and erosion.

8. Return flow or tail water reuse systems: to eliminate runoff losses.

9. Storage and regulating reservoirs: to provide a more flexible and stable water supply and sometimes permit adjustments in flow rates.
10. Maintenance program: frequency and types of maintenance should be clearly defined.
11. Crop selection and planting dates: to be compatible with water availability over time and to take into account the rooting and moisture extraction patterns of crops. For example, deeper rooted crops develop a much greater moisture reservoir than shallow rooted crops and can be irrigated more efficiently on coarse soils. Deeper rooted crops are also less affected by micro uniformity problems as they have a more extensive rooting system.

Sprinkler irrigation systems may require the same type of adjustments as surface systems. However, modifications of the following should also be considered:

1. Operating pressure: to assure adequate drop breakup, wind fighting ability, uniformity, and actual rotation of the sprinkler heads throughout the system.
2. Riser height: to assure clearance of stream above crop and adequate coverage.
3. Sprinkler and lateral spacings: to provide uniformity.
4. Lateral orientation: to minimize terrain effects on uniformity.
5. Pipe sizes: to assure sufficient capacity and economy of operation.
6. Trash elimination: to prevent sprinkler plugging.
7. Alternate set sequencing: to improve uniformity and water penetration.
8. Operation during low evaporative conditions, i.e., nighttime or non-windy conditions.

Trickle irrigation may require the same types of modifications as sprinklers. In addition, the density of emitters and wetted volume should be considered to ensure adequate capacity for down time and adequate nutrient storage. The selection of the proper type of emitters, pressure regulators, and filtering and chemical purification systems and the maintenance of these is essential to adequate, trouble free operation.

### 6.3.2 Rapid On-Site Evaluations

A very basic evaluation to determine the adequacy of a specific irrigation requires only that simple observations and measurements be made before, during, and after irrigation. A soil probe or auger for sampling, along with experience in judging soil texture and moisture, are basic requirements. The following simple steps can be followed:

1. Observe the uniformity of crop growth, soil surface relief, and soil texture variation. Obviously stressed (stunted, wilted, yellow) crops can indicate location and extent of over or under watering, while observations of relief, texture variation, and patterns of non-uniformity can help determine the cause.

2. Determine the SMD by probing the soil in different parts of the field. Comparison of SMD with the MAD for that crop, soil, climate, and irrigation system indicates whether the irrigation interval is approximately correct or not.

   In trickle irrigation the wetted volume is taken as the point of reference. Thus SMD and MAD are both determined for this volume.

   The percent of wetted area, P is defined as:
   P = wetted area at the surface (30 cm below the surface) divided by the total cropped area.

   The area wet by each emission point is small at the surface. The volume of the root zone under this point is the wetted volume.

   Usually, 1/3 to 1/2 of the area is wetted. In areas with substantial rainfall the most economical P might be only 20 percent while in arid areas 50 percent may be more appropriate so that a greater volume of soil moisture and nutrient reservoir are brought into action.

3. Establish any magnitude of uniformity problems. Observations of the advance and recession rates in surface irrigation during irrigation can indicate the magnitude of uniformity problems if soil variations are not extreme. The time between when water first reaches a point in the field until the water recedes from that point is the intake opportunity time (To). Noting To at the beginning, middle and end of the field provides a uniformity indicator. If the times that water remains over different parts of the field are within 25 to 30 percent of each other on coarse soils and 40 percent on fine soils, the uniformities are usually acceptable.

Some simple empirical criteria useful in rapid evaluation of uniformities in specific system follow:

1. In basin irrigation systems where the surface is not continuously flooded the total volume of water should be introduced into the basin in 0.2 to 0.4 times the time that is required for the required amount of water to infiltrate. If erosion would occur with high flow rates, the number of inlets may need to be increased or the size of the basin and flow rate reduced.

2. With graded furrow systems, the water should advance the length of the furrow in 1/3 (heavy soils) to 1/4 (coarse soils) the time of the total irrigation duration.

3. With border systems, the water should advance to 2/3 to 4/5 of the border length before being turned off. Recession time should be about equal to advance time.

4. In sprinkler irrigation, 20 percent differentials in operating pressure at extreme points in the system will provide adequate discharge uniformity through the system. Spacing of sprinklers closer than the wetted radius and lateral spacings up to 50 percent greater than the sprinkler radius of throw provide adequate uniformities. With winds in excess of 5 mph, the lateral should be placed more closely. For better uniformities the laterals are usually placed vertical to the direction of prevailing winds.

5. The emission uniformity (EU) in trickle irrigation is a measure of the distribution uniformity. It is defined as the discharge per plant in the low quarter (of emitters) divided by the average rate of discharge of the emitters. It is affected by the manufacturing and pressure variations as well as condition of the emitters.

   Emission uniformity values greater than 90 are considered excellent, 80 to 90 good, 70 to 80 fair, and less than 70 poor. Generally about 10 percent more water than the SMD or evapotranspiration is applied to the least watered areas. The potential efficiency of the low quarter can thus be estimated as PELQ = 0.9 x EU.

   After irrigation, simple probing of the soil in different parts of the field (and laterally into the bed with furrows) will provide a measure of uniformity.

6. Determine whether optimum and actual schedules coincide. Use the equation presented in the scheduling section (6.2) to determine desired irrigation intervals, depth of water application, etc. Then, compare what the optimal would be with what the farmer is actually doing.

7. Conduct additional observations on erosion, unevenness of spread of the water over the surface, fluctuations in the water supply, lateral penetration of water into the furrow bed during an irrigation event. Check pressure to ensure that sprinkler heads are operating within recommended ranges. Check for puddling of water, which would indicate incompatibility of the sprinkler and soil system.

8. Evaluate the adequacy of irrigation. The extent to which a soil profile is filled can be assessed 1, 2, or 3 days after an irrigation on coarse, medium, or fine-textured soils, respectively, by probing the soil to determine if any dry layers remain.

   In evaluating irrigation systems and management alternatives at the farm level, it is imperative that the constraints beyond the farmer's control be carefully weighed. The irrigation district delivery schedules, and availability of power, machinery, and irrigation equipment may make many alternatives infeasible.

### 6.3.3 Evaluation of Multiple Farm Irrigation Systems

Rapid observational evaluations by experienced engineers and technicians along with a quick analysis of available or easily obtainable data can permit the development of useful management programs for a group of farms within an irrigation project. Such a procedure could encompass the following phases.

1. Compile information on
   - soils, crops, and climate;
   - seasonal, monthly, and weekly water delivery schedules;
   - inventories of the typical irrigated area: number, size, condition, and location of canals, drains, reservoirs, and farm structures;
   - administrative control of water;
   - typical farmer management practices -- irrigation, cultural, and fertility;
   - availability of power, machinery, and irrigation equipment;
   - farmer progressiveness and sociological aspects; and
   - typical yields of irrigated vs. non-irrigated land and well-irrigated vs. poorly irrigated lands.

2. Conduct observational evaluations of typical areas:
   - maintenance and condition of canals and structures;
   - uniformity of crop growth in irrigated fields -- signs of excess or deficit watering; amd
   - indicators of high water tables, salinity problems, and erosion.

3. Determine water requirements and availability through the season.

4. Determine typical optimal irrigation schedules and compare with existing irrigation schedules.

5. Compare system designs and management with typical well-designed systems.

6. Determine possible changes within the constraints of the system to improve potential efficiencies. Improvements may involve changes in irrigation district management or changes in irrigation method, delivery and storage systems, adjustments in crops and irrigated acreages, or improved scheduling in the delivery system. Changes in fertility and other aspects of farm management may bring about on-farm improvements. Some changes will necessitate farmer training programs.

7. Select the better alternatives based on short and long-term economic, environmental, and social benefits.

## 6.4 TRAINING SMALL SCALE FARMERS IN IRRIGATION MANAGEMENT

The following section is taken from the Water Management Synthesis Publication, "Water Management on Small Farms: A Training Manual for Farmers in Hill Areas" (Ref. 42). The manual resulted from work with small-scale farmers in the Peruvian highlands. Much of the agriculture in Peru takes place on steep slopes, shallow soils, and small farm plots. Extension personnel found the bulletin to be useful in training literate and semi-literate farmers and technicians.

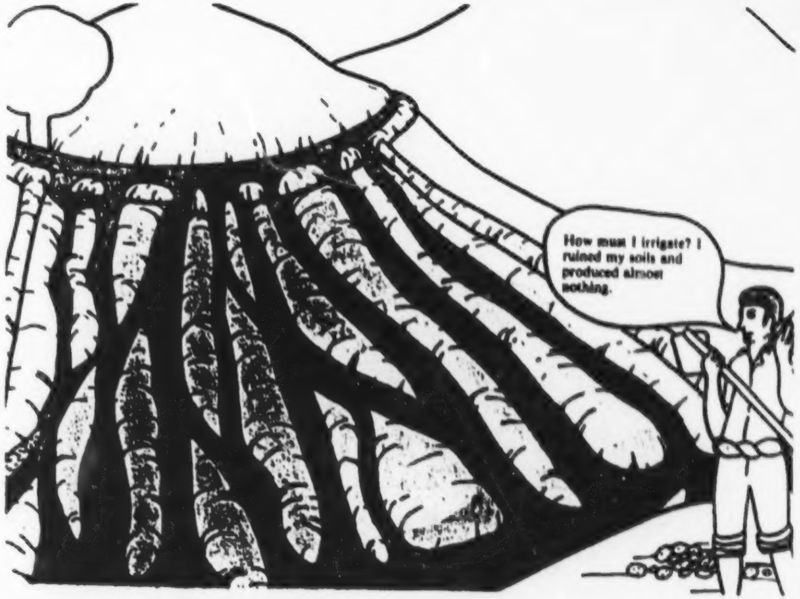
The irrigation workshops conducted in Peru consisted of:

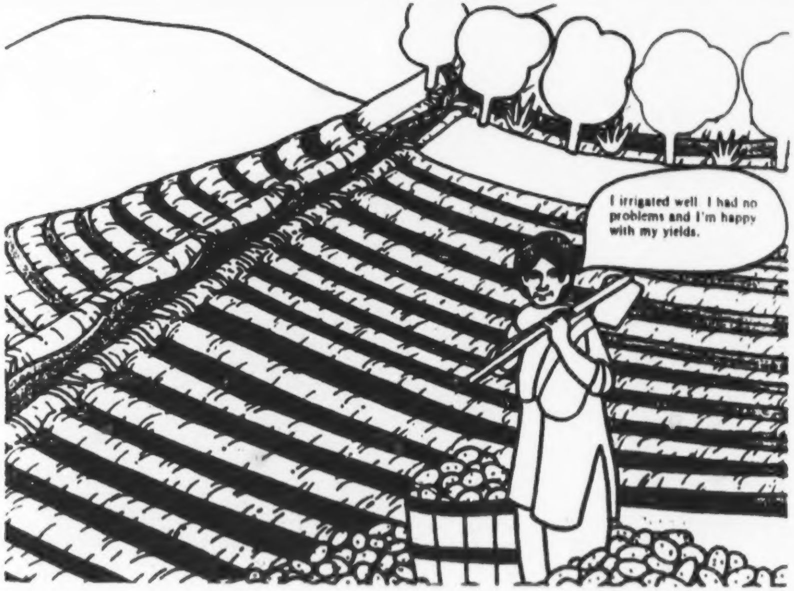
1. An audiovisual presentation (slides) that interpreted pertinent parts of the bulletin.
2. Extensive, practical hands-on training in which the farmers learned to use the material presented.
3. Field days during which farmers could observe the techniques taught to them "in action" on demonstration sites.
4. An evaluation of the farmers' new skills with such tools as simple levels and siphons and in evaluating and improving their management practices.
5. The bulletin was given to the farmers for reference.

This material should serve as a source from which basic concepts can be taken and applied to specific situations such as those encountered in developing countries.

An instructor guide (Ref. 42) is a companion to this manual.

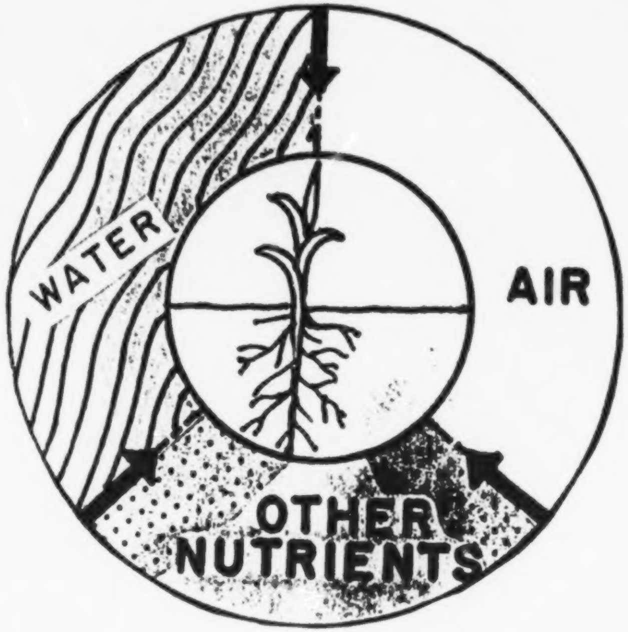
## THE IMPORTANCE OF IRRIGATION WATER AND ITS MANAGEMENT IN CROP PRODUCTION AND SOIL CONSERVATION


How must I irrigate? I ruined my soils and produced almost nothing.


I irrigated well. I had no problems and I'm happy with my yields.

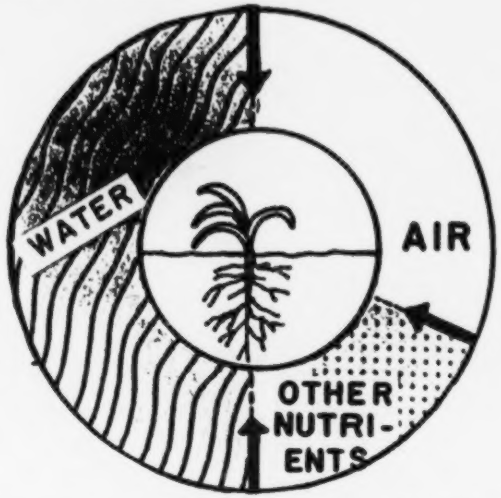
## The Role of Water in Plant Development

Growing plants need water, sun, air and nutrients to form roots, stems, leaves, fruits and seeds.

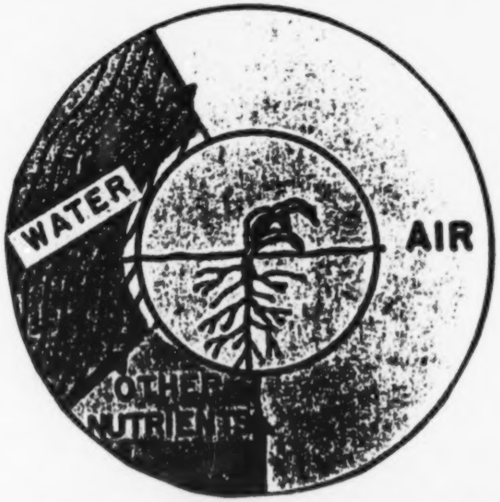

WATER
AIR
OTHER NUTRIENTS

Water is a large part of the plant's structure. It carries food through the plant and it cools the crop during hot weather.

Roots can't get enough air if there is an excess of water.

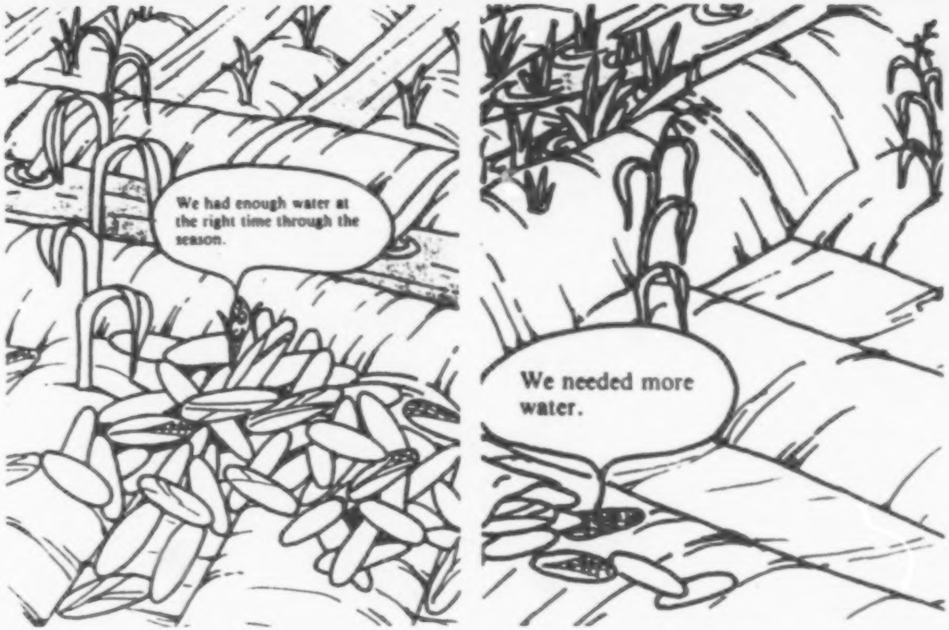

WATER
AIR
OTHER NUTRI-ENTS

A lack of water makes plants unable to draw needed nutrients (food) from the soil.

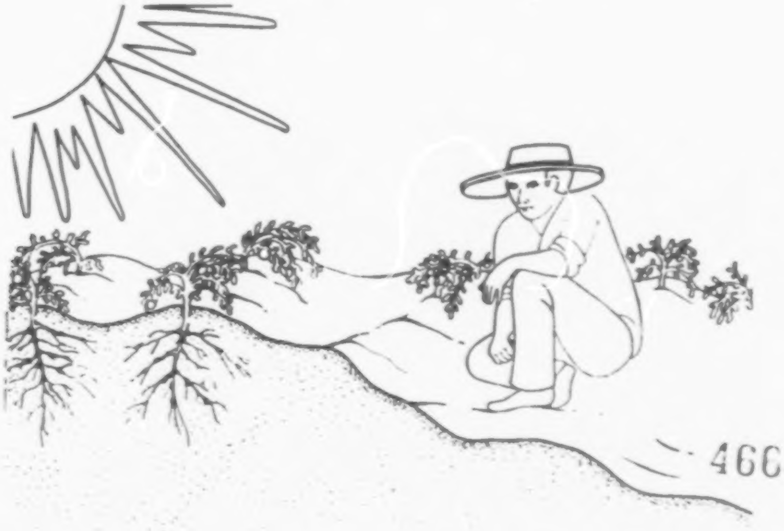

WATER
AIR
OTHER NUTRIENTS

Too much or too little water results in lower

For good production, crops need the right amount of water throughout their development.


We had enough water at the right time through the season.
We needed more water.

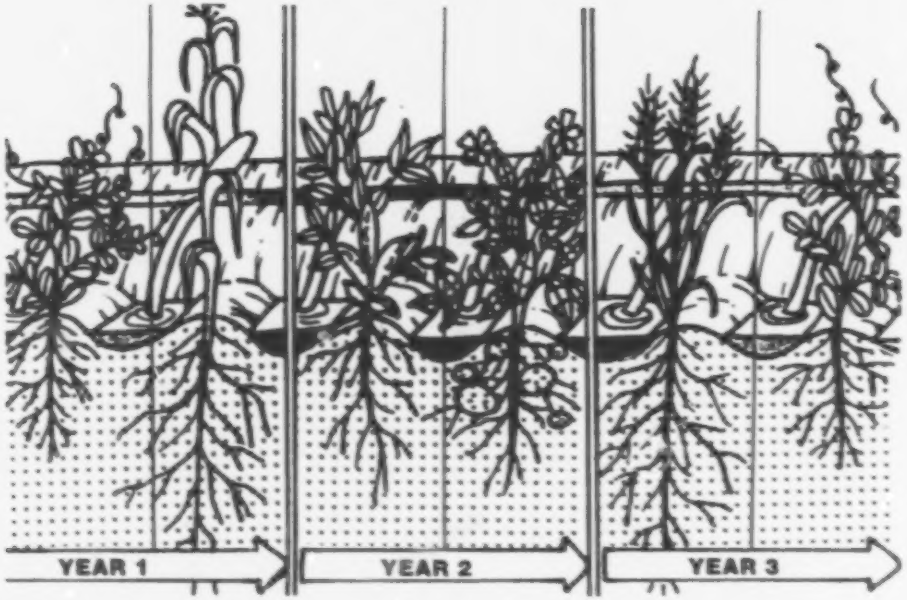
Irrigation can insure a good yield even during drought if we have provided the crop with its other needs.



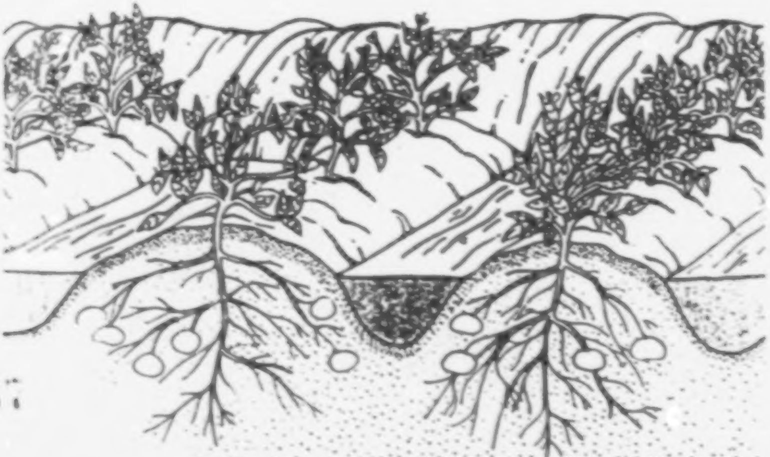
465

466

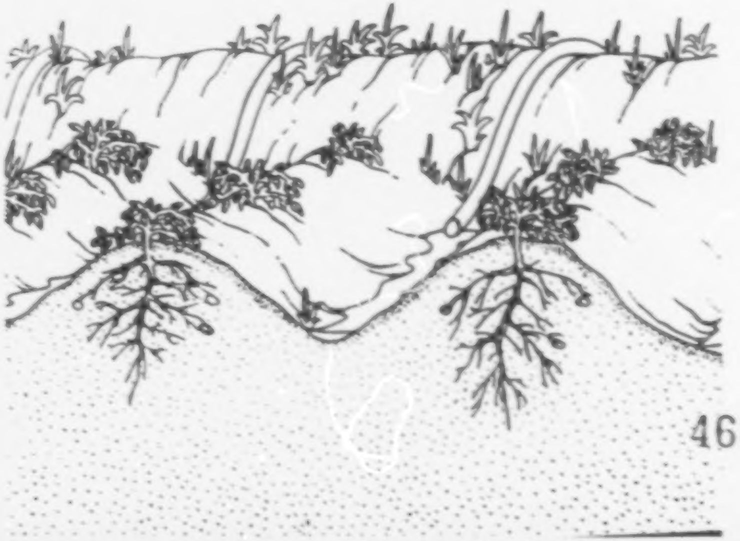
In many parts of the world irrigation allows the harvest of two or more crops each year



Sufficient water throughout the growing season helps insure healthy crops, thus enabling the plants to resist insects and disease better.



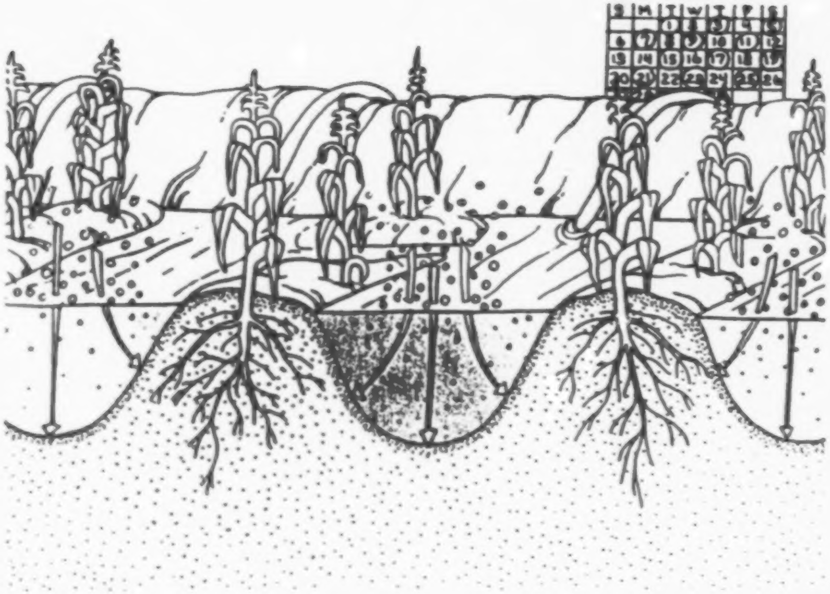
467



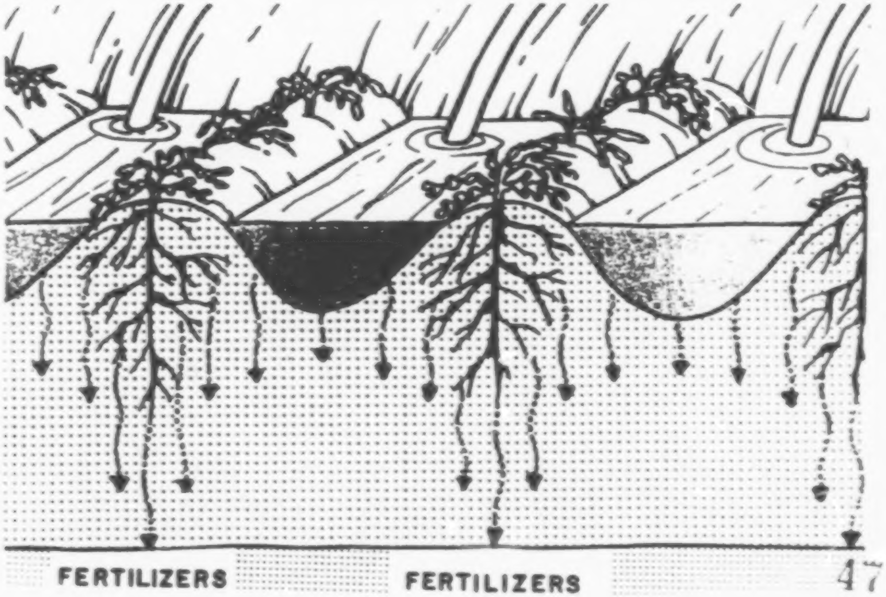
468

## Irrigation Can Have Harmful Effects

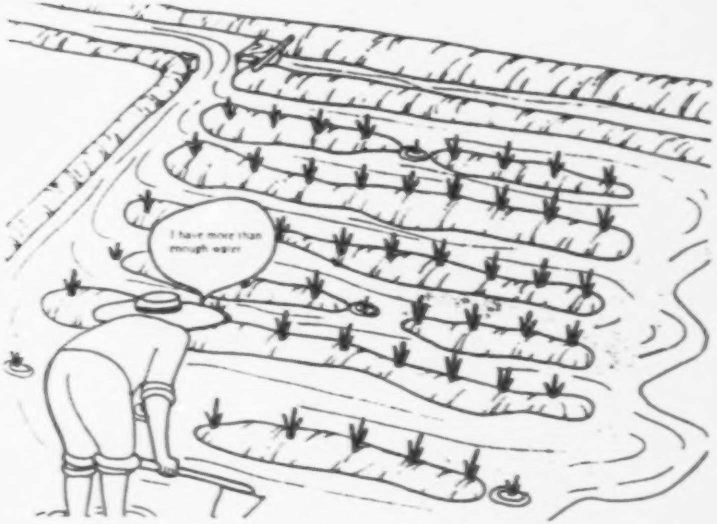
1. More frequent irrigations than necessary result in a root zone which stays too wet for too long. Insufficient aeration and root rot may result.

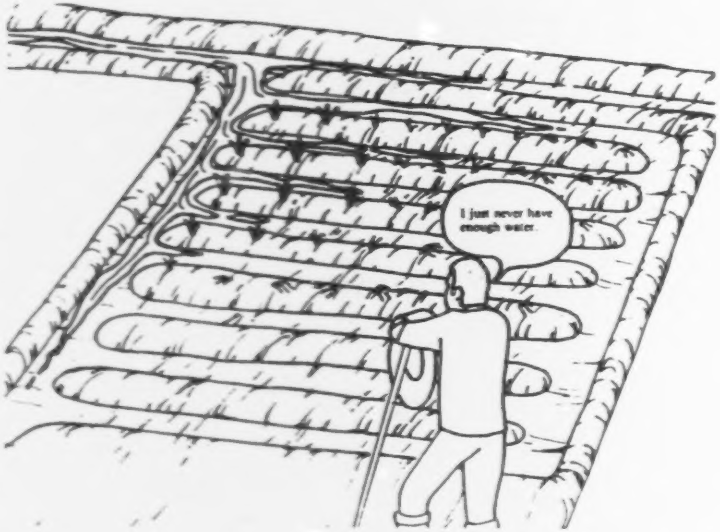


2. Excessively heavy water applications may wash fertilizers and other nutrients away from the root zone.

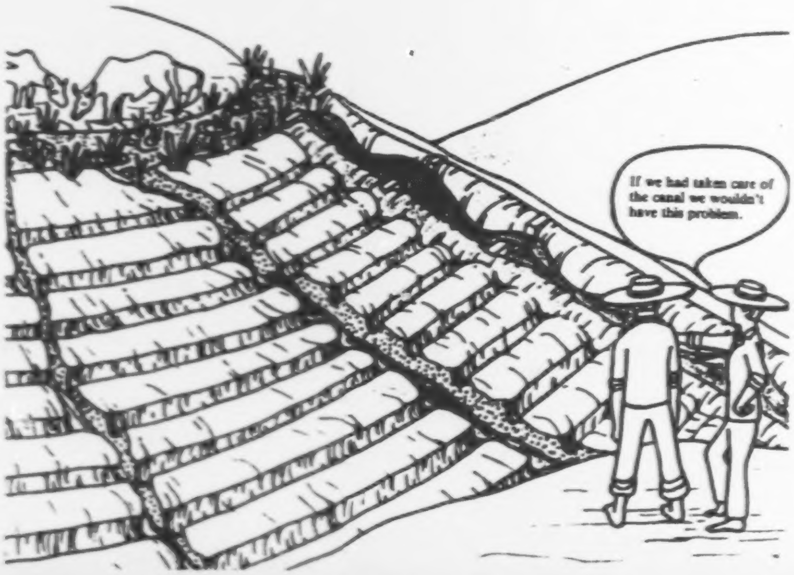


3. Some farmers waste water when they irrigate, which means that other farmers may not have enough water for their fields.

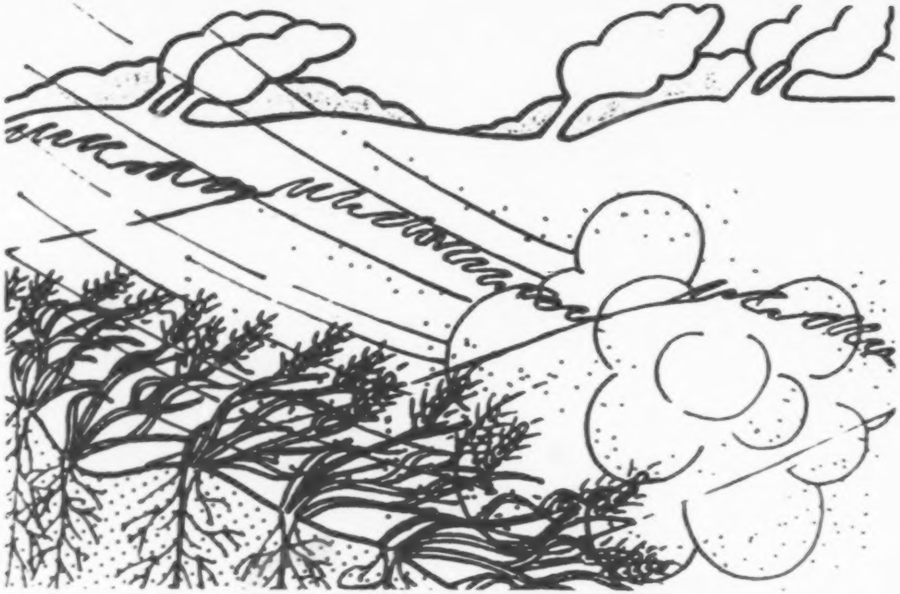

I have more than enough water


I just never have enough water.

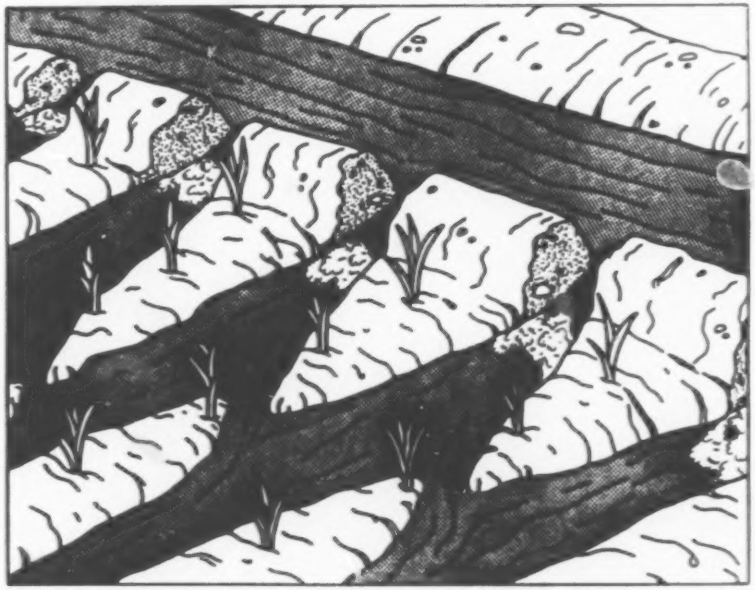
4. Careless maintenance of canals can result in weed, silt, or erosion problems, and not having water where it is needed.


If we had taken care of the canal we wouldn't have this problem.

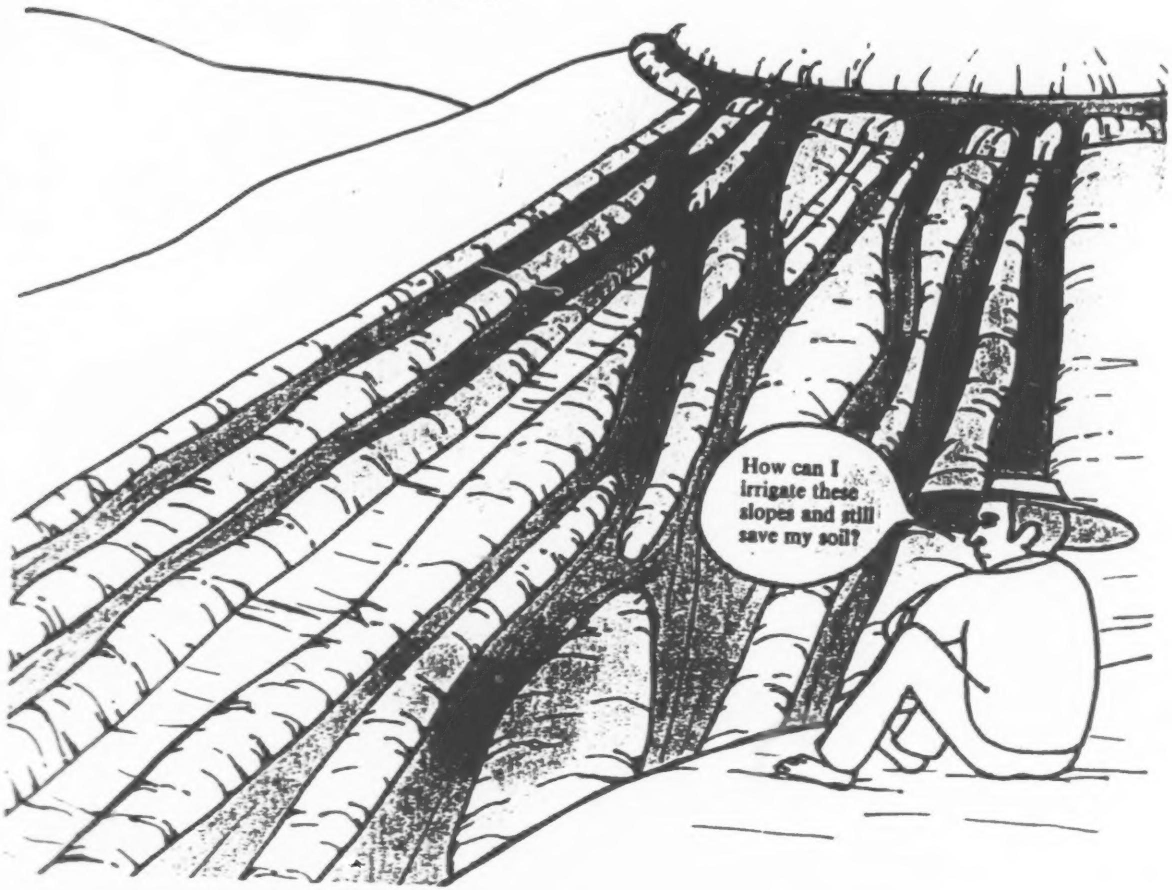
Erosion is the loss of soil through the action of water and wind.



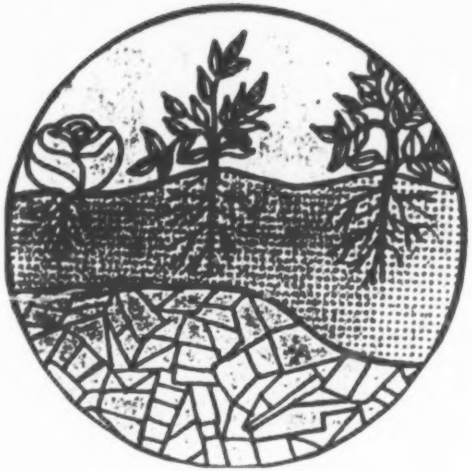
5. Uncontrolled irrigation water can be a primary cause of erosion.

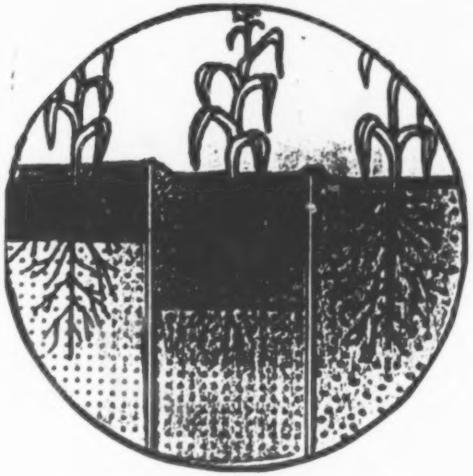


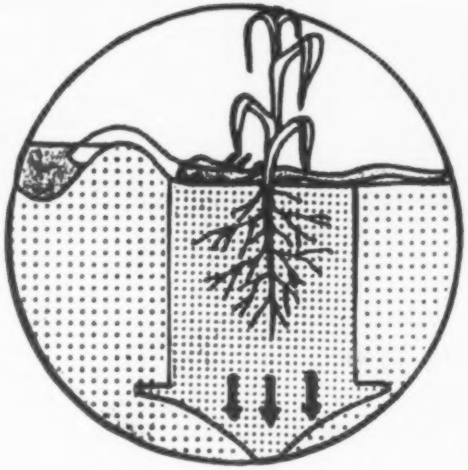
On steep slopes there is greater danger of erosion than on flat land.

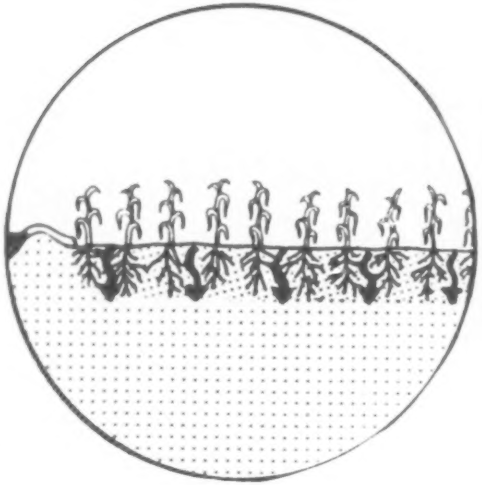

How can I irrigate these slopes and still save my soil?

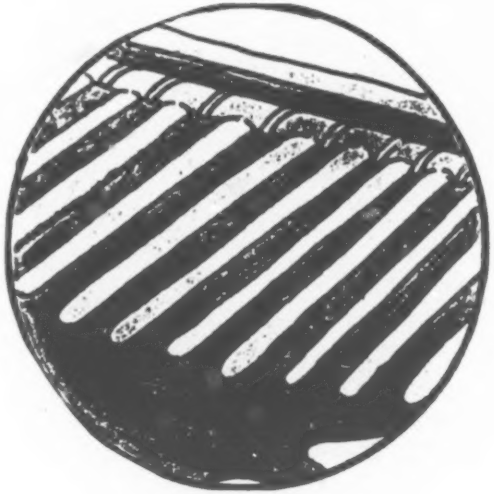
# BASIC IRRIGATION CONCEPTS

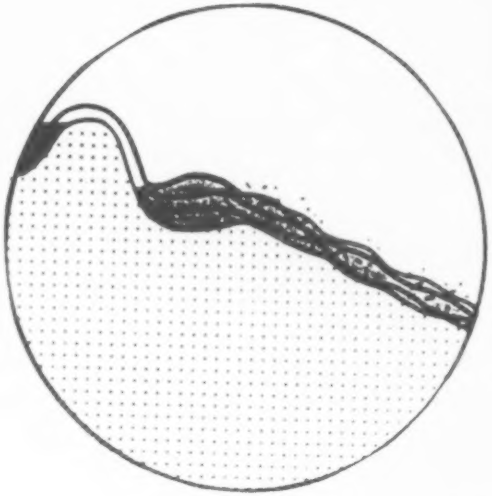

1. Water holding capacity


2. Water entry into soil


3. Deep percolation


4. Uniformity of water penetration


5. Runoff

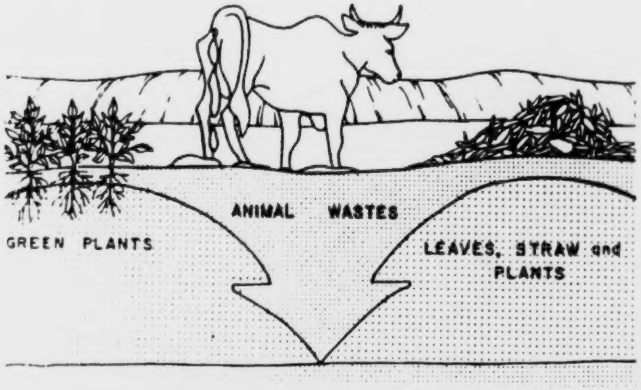

6. Erosion

### Concept 1.

## WATER HOLDING CAPACITY

The soil in which the crop's roots grow is the reservoir from which plants can take their water. The amount of water which a soil can store within reach of the plant depends on the texture and structure of the soil and the depth to which the roots grow.

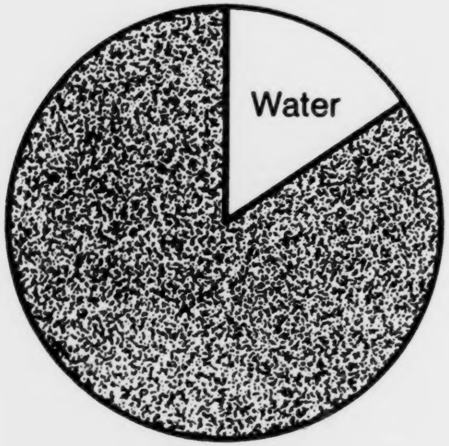
Organic matter within the soil helps increase the soil's capacity to store water. The best plants and plant residue for improving a soil are green legumes such as alfalfa, clover, peas and beans.



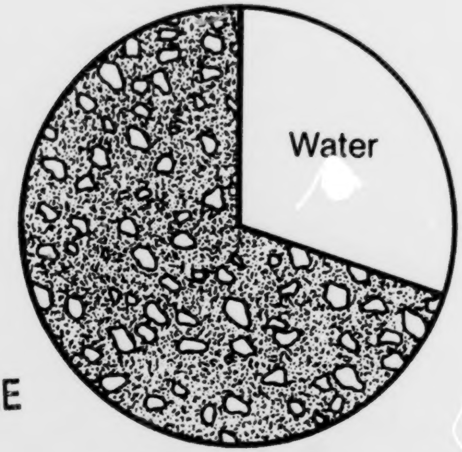
Sources of Organic Matter

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

## WATER HOLDING CAPACITY



Soils low in organic matter



Soils high in

# The Effect of Soil Texture and Structure on Water Holding Capacity

## SOIL TEXTURE

*Sandy or Coarse-Textured Soils*

- contain much sand
- are rough when rubbed between the fingers
- are easy to plow and till
- do not form clods when dry
- generally these soils have ***low*** water holding capacity

*Medium-Textured Soils*

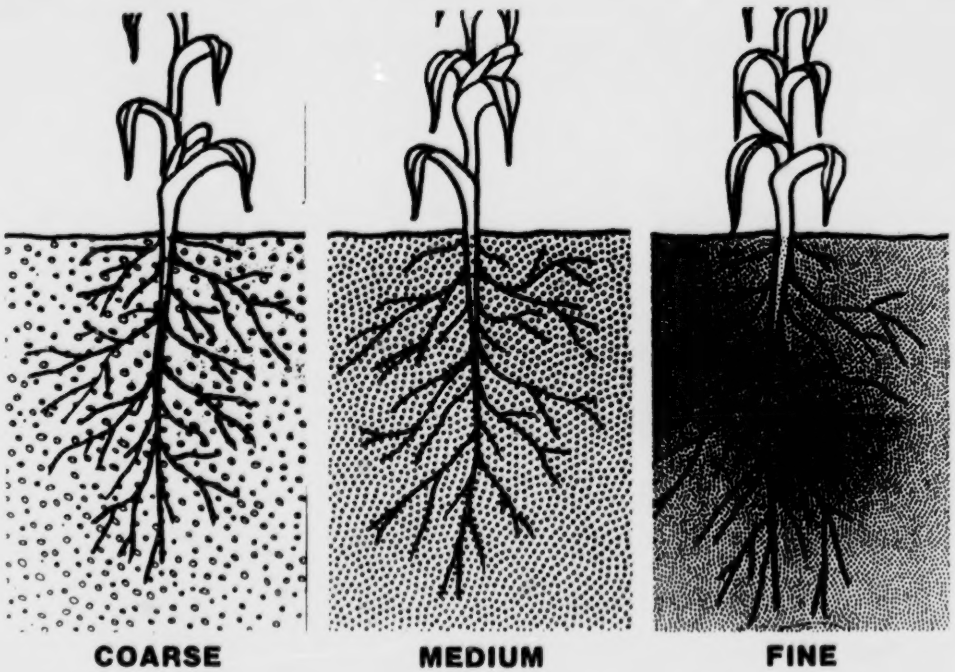
- contain coarse, medium and fine (clay) particles in almost even amounts
- form clods when dry which are easily broken with a pick, shovel, disc or other tillage equipment
- generally these soils have ***good*** water holding capacities.

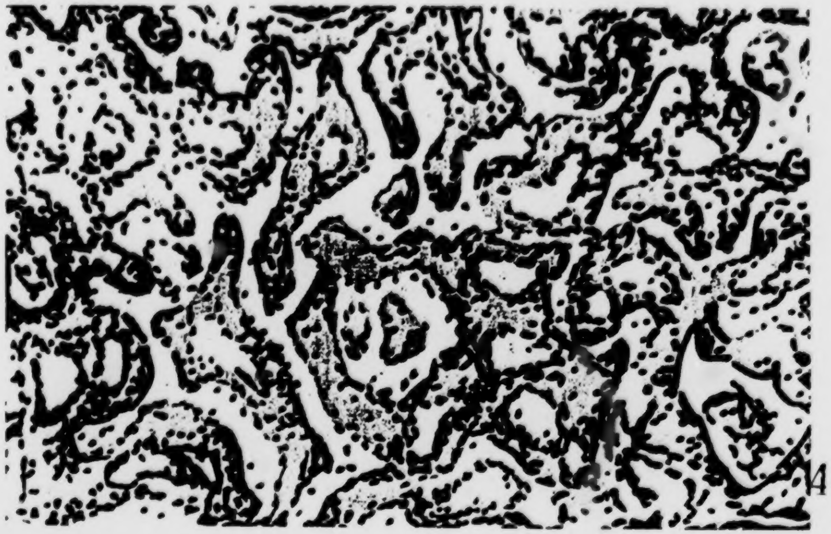
*Clayey or Fine-Textured Soils*

- contain many fine particles
- are hard to plow if they are not wet
- form cracks on soil surface when the soil dries
- form very hard clods when dry
- these soils have ***high*** water holding capacity

## SOIL STRUCTURE

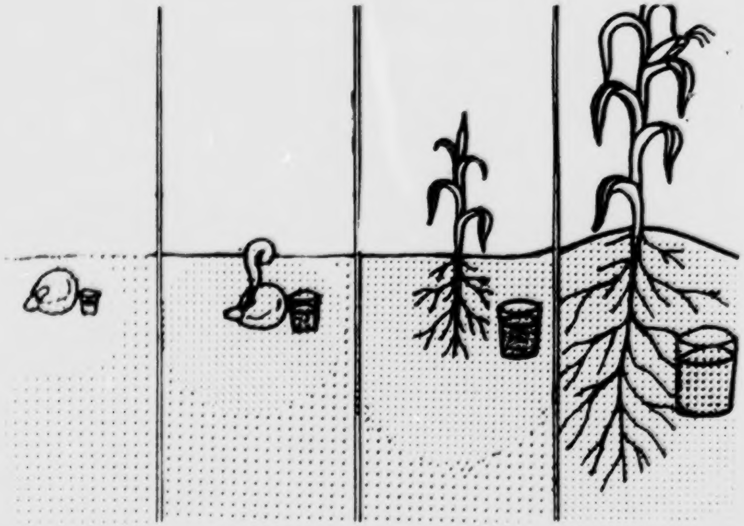
Structure is the way soil particles are held together. Soils with good structure have different sized clumps of soil particles held together by decomposed organic matter. Well-structured soils can hold more water and air for plants to use.



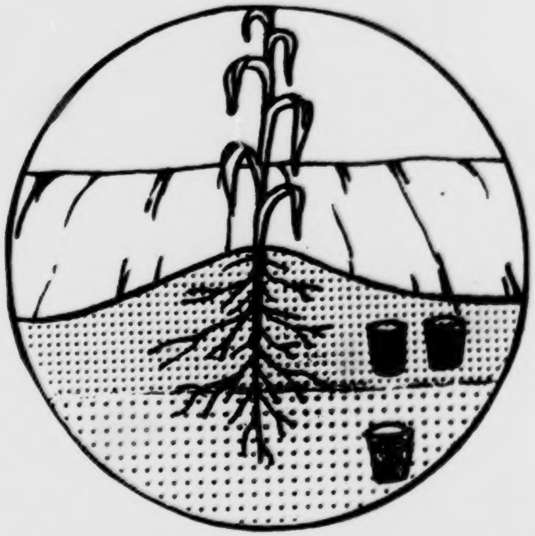


## ROOT DEPTH

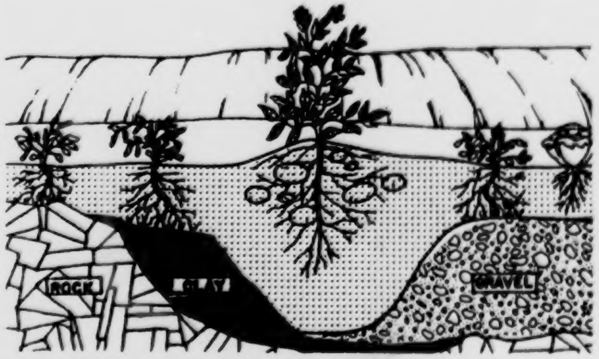
Root depth increases with plant development until the plant is full grown unless the plant roots encounter obstacles. Thus, the moisture reservoir available to the plants expands as the root depth increases.



The area where roots are present is called the root zone.

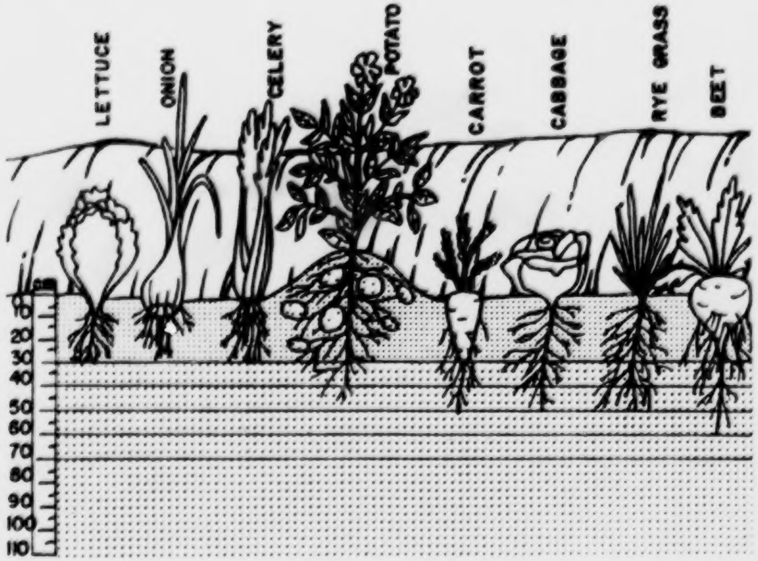


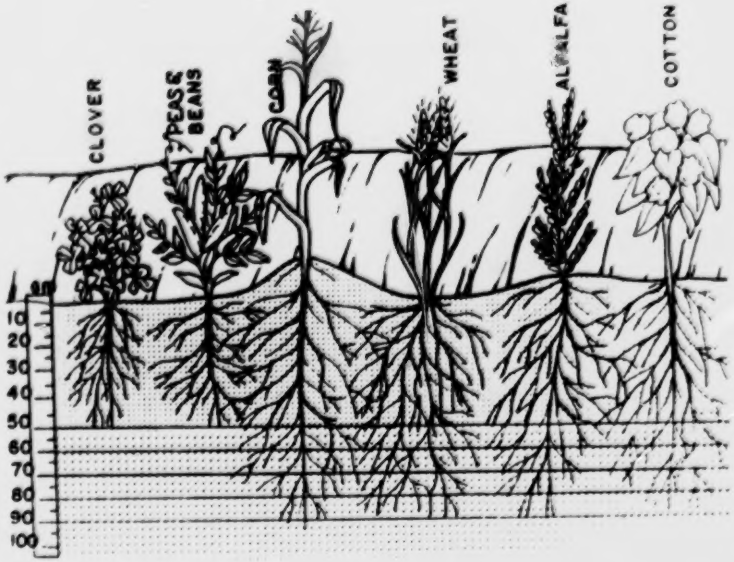
Plants use more water from the upper part of the root zone because that is where they have more roots.



The maximum depth of roots depends on the crop and on the depth of good soil.... Layers of rock, hard soil, gravel, salts or other obstacles limit the reservoir capacity

Where roots do not encounter obstacles in soils, they will reach to at least the following depths when they are fully developed.


LETTUCE
ONION
CELERY
POTATO
CARROT
CABBAGE
RYE GRASS
BEET
cm
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
90
100
110


CLOVER
PEAS & BEANS
CORN
WHEAT
ALFALFA
COTTON
cm
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
90
100

### *Concept 2.*

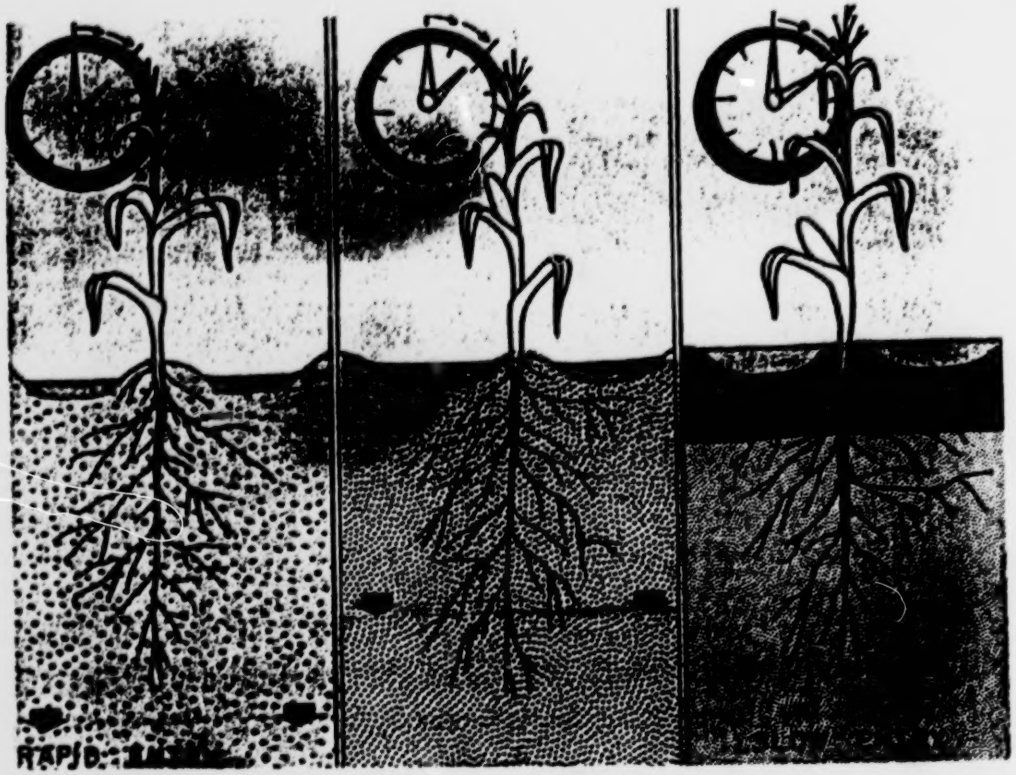
## RATE OF WATER ENTRY INTO SOIL

(infiltration or intake rate)

How quickly water can penetrate into a soil varies with the kind of soil, the amount of moisture already present in the soil and the condition of the soil surface.

Water penetrates faster

- through sandy soil than clay soil
- through dry soil than wet soil
- through well-structured soil than compacted soil
- early in the irrigation season than later.

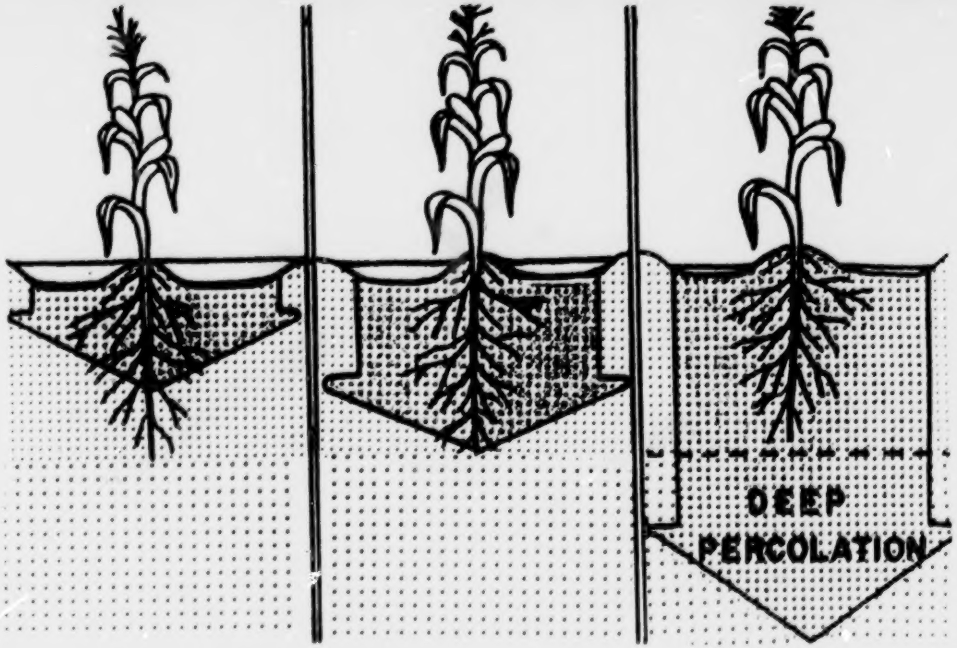


### *Concept 3.*

## DEEP PERCOLATION

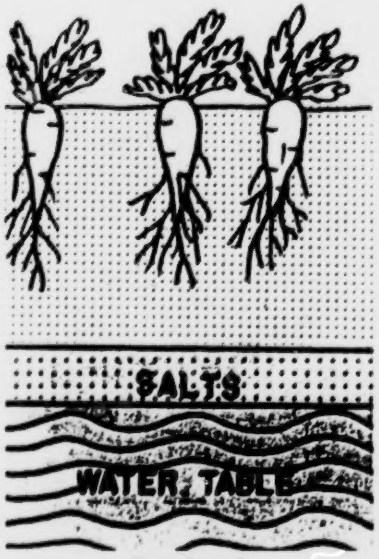
The penetration of water below the root zone is called deep percolation. Sometimes it is necessary to apply excess water so accumulated salts can be washed from the root zone.

This excess water may be costly, and it carries nutrients away. Thus, it should be limited to the amount necessary to eliminate harmful salts from the root zone.

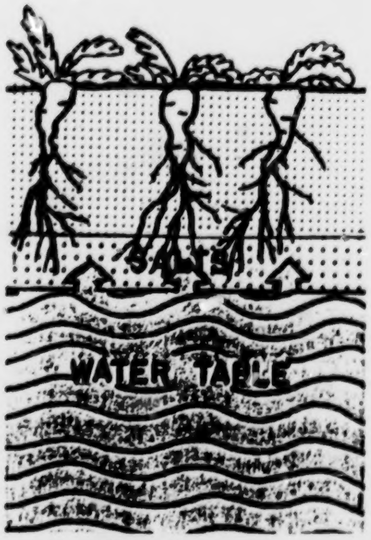


Soils with flat, impermeable layers or high water tables will have their drainage problems compounded by deep percolation in the following ways.

- soils can become waterlogged
- a rising water table can bring more harmful salts into the root zone

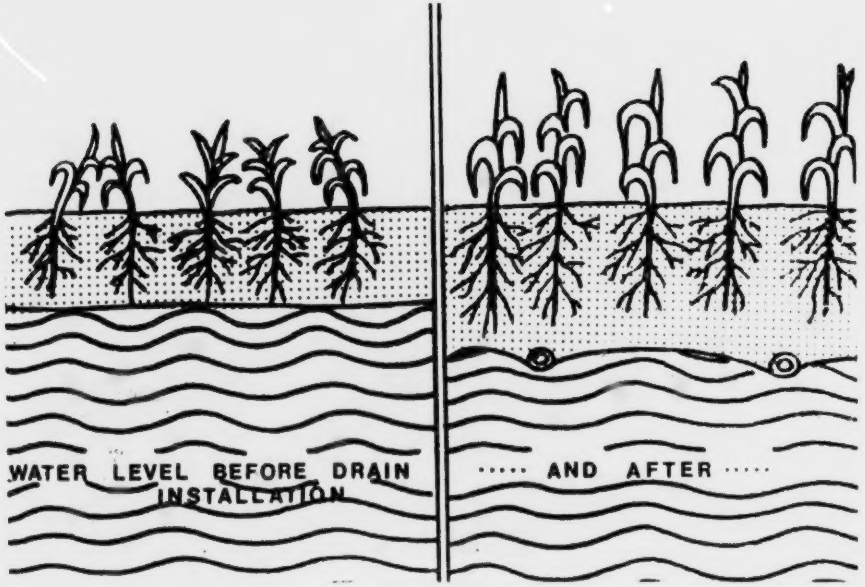


**Desired**

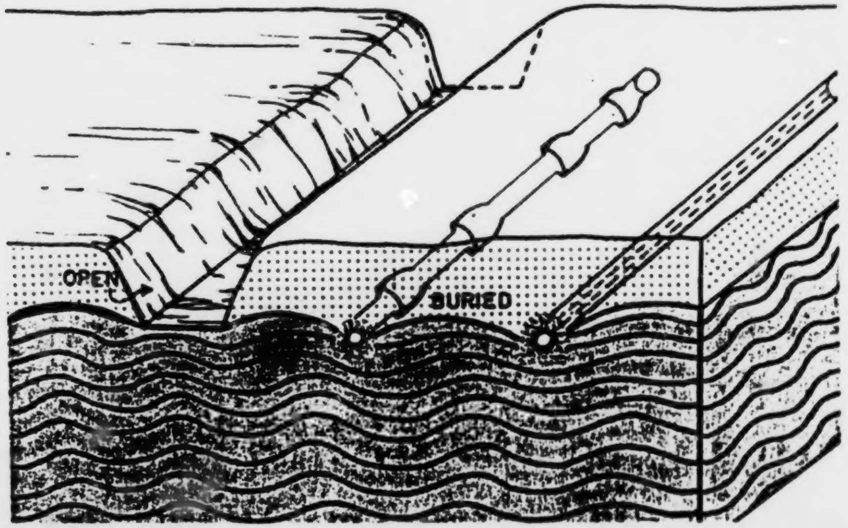


**Undesired**

When the water table rises to the point where crop production declines, the resulting drainage problem will have to be eliminated by constructing a costly drainage system.


WATER LEVEL BEFORE DRAIN INSTALLATION
····· AND AFTER ·····

The drainage system may consist of open drains or buried drains. The design and construction of these generally require technical assistance.

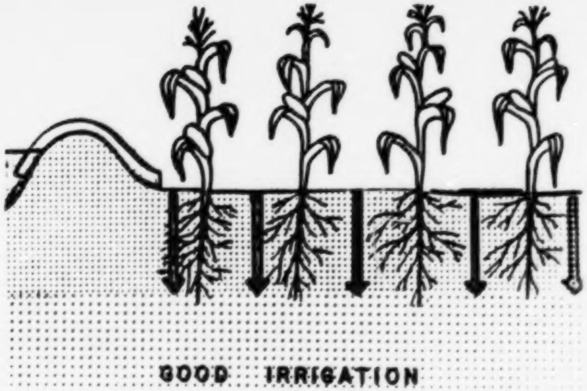

OPEN
BURIED

### Concept 4.

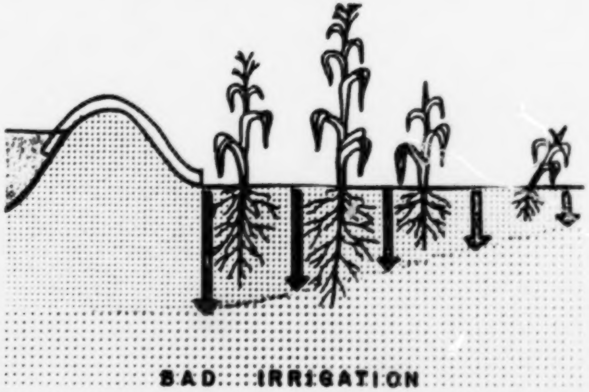
## UNIFORMITY OF WATER PENETRATION

In a uniform irrigation, water penetrates to the same depth or about the same depth over the entire field.

Uniform penetration of water results in a uniform crop.

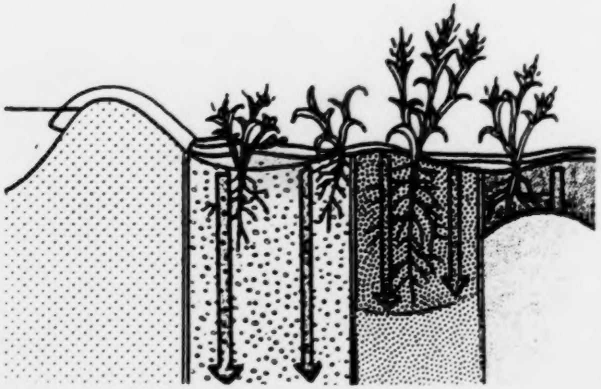


Non-uniform penetration of water creates uneven growth and yield.



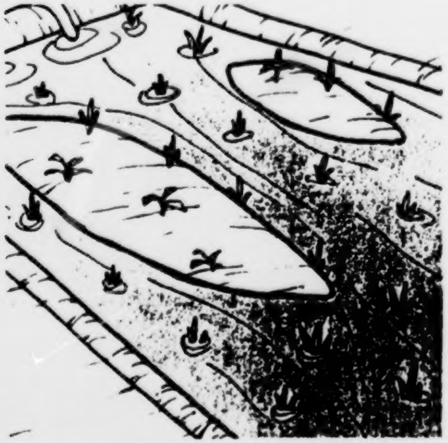
Causes of non-uniform penetration:

- variations of texture within the field
- uneven soil surface
- improper water management

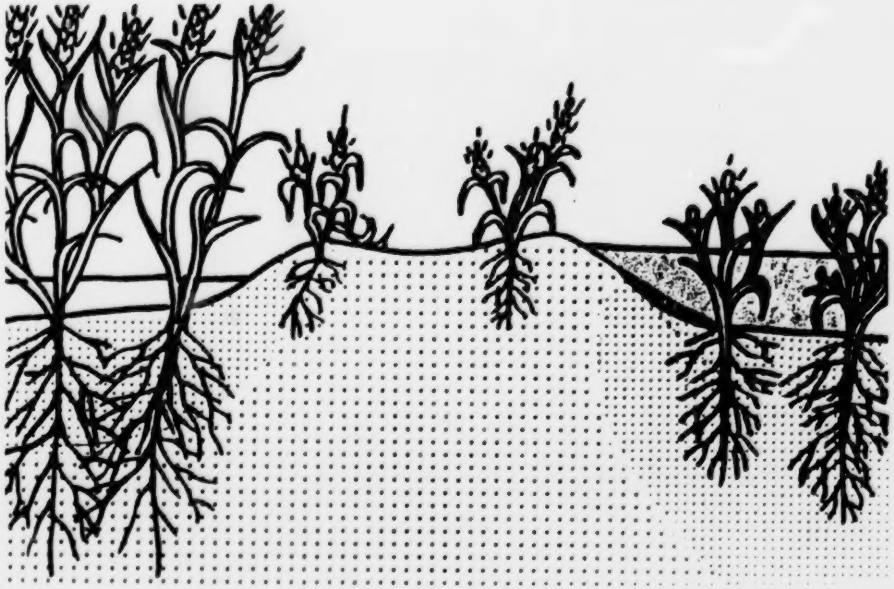


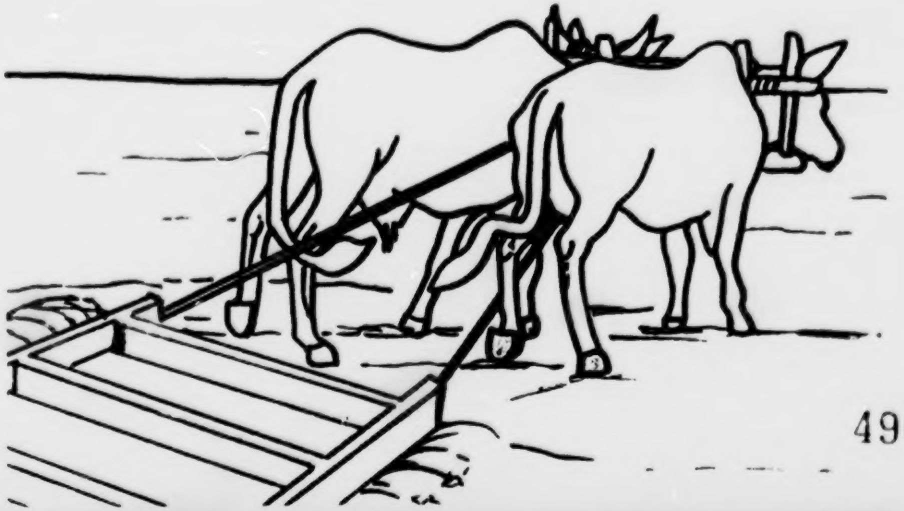
When the terrain is very uneven

- low spots receive too much water
- high spots remain dry
- water flowing through low areas can quickly erode the soils



Planing or leveling the field can eliminate problems of uneven water distribution due to uneven terrain, but technical assistance should be used when precision land leveling is required.





### *Concept 5.*

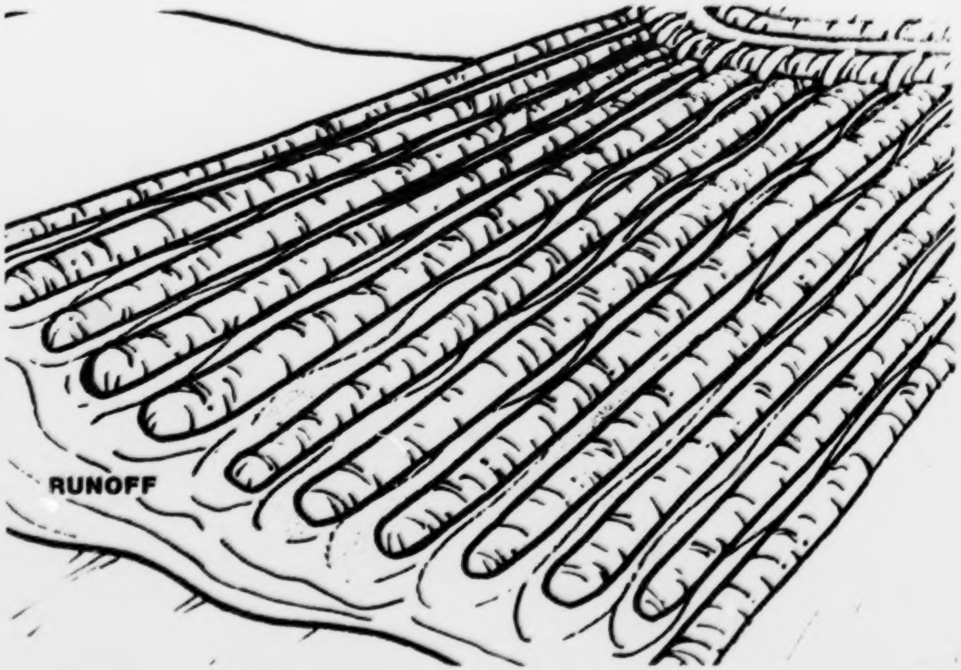
## RUNOFF

Runoff is water that does not penetrate the soil and flows out of the irrigated field, or water which runs off of the high spots in a field and accumulates in the low areas.

On steep slopes runoff can erode fields and drains.

If irrigation water is scarce, runoff may be an unnecessary loss of precious water.

There are ways, discussed later, to reduce or eliminate these losses.



### *Concept 6.*

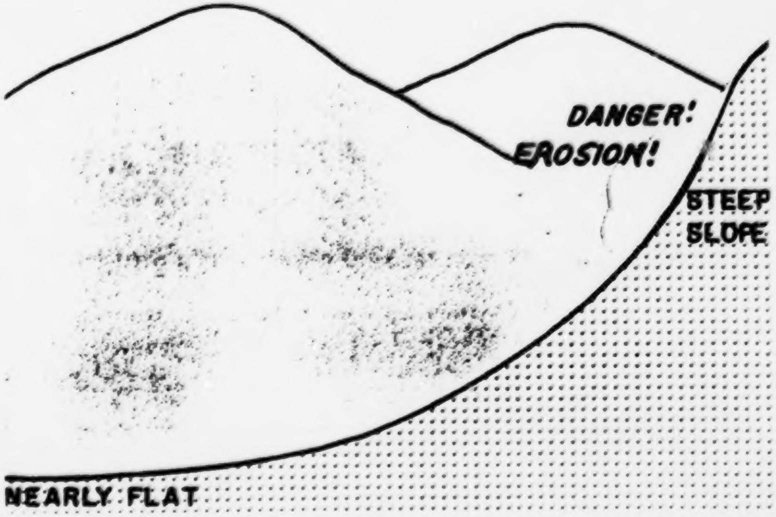
## EROSION

Erosion due to irrigation occurs when water moves so fast over the soil surface that it begins to move soil particles. Slope, crop type, and water control together determine the amount of soil loss.

Slope is the steepness, grade, or inclination of a field.

Slope is a factor which determines what irrigation system to use and what methods or structures of water control are necessary for avoiding erosion.

Nearly flat terrain has very little slope.


DANGER!
EROSION!
STEEP SLOPE
NEARLY FLAT

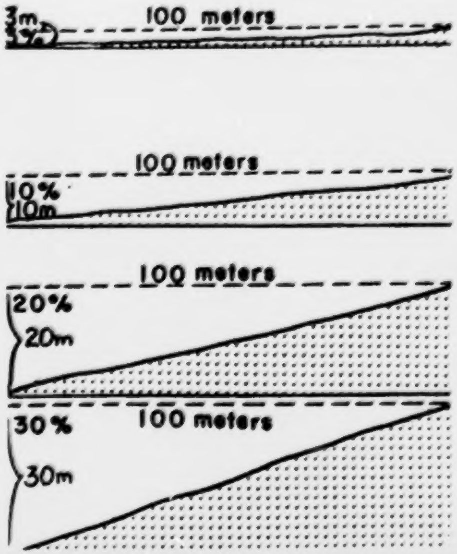
**SLOPE:** The slope of a field is measured in percent.

**3%** Terrain rises or falls 3 meters in 100 meters.

**10%** Terrain rises or falls 10 meters in 100 meters.

**20%** Terrain rises or falls 20 meters in 100 meters.

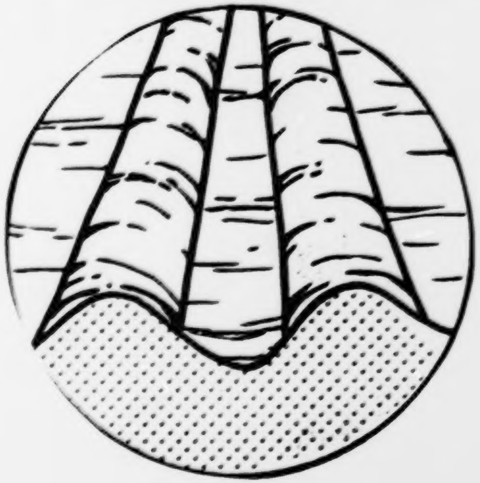
**30%** Terrain rises or falls 30 meters in 100 meters.


3m
3%
100 meters
100 meters
10%
10m
100 meters
20%
20m
30%
100 meters
30m

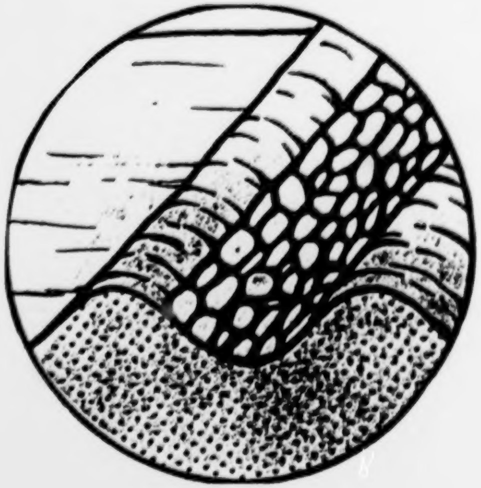
**As slope increases, the danger of erosion increases.**

## Canals, Drains and Other Farm Installations

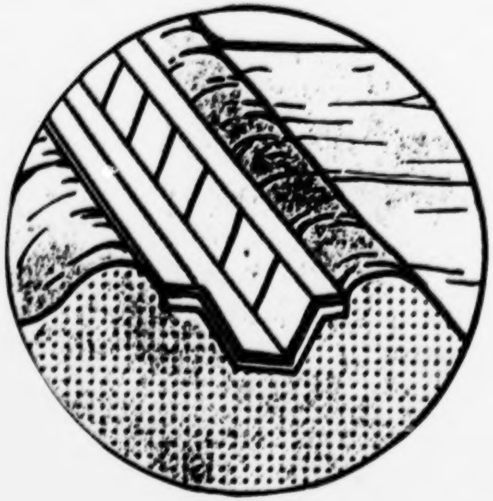
1. Canals and drains transport water.



**Unlined**

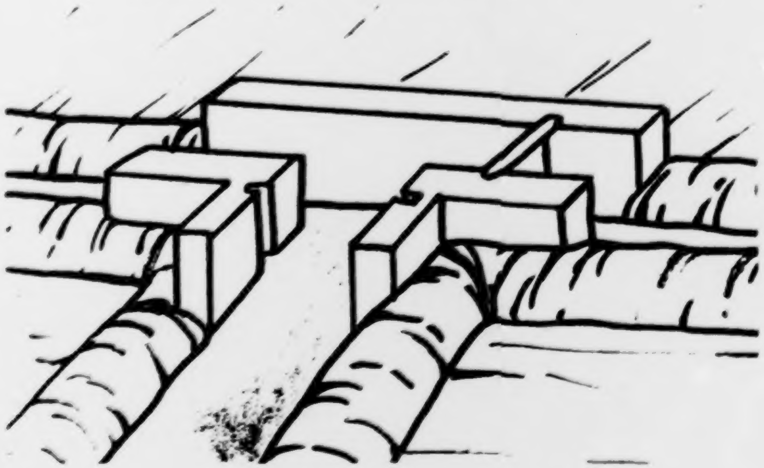


**Rock masonry**

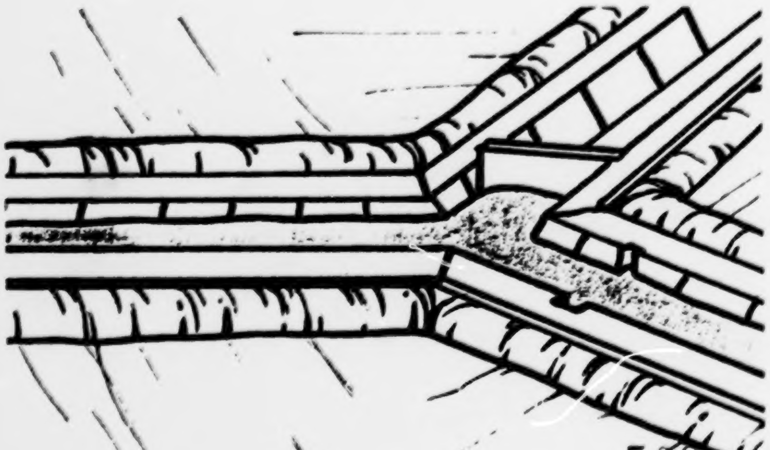


**Concrete**

2. Flow division structures proportion the required water to the irrigated areas.

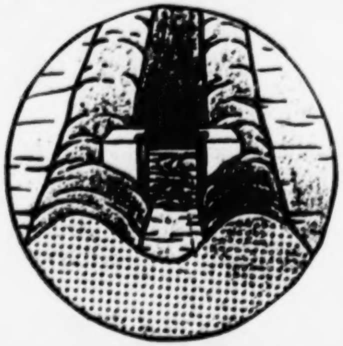


501

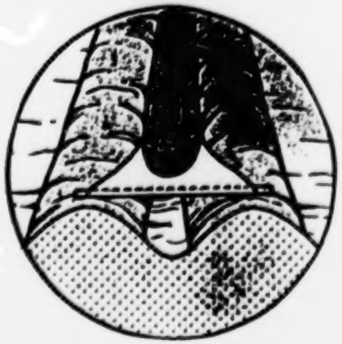


502

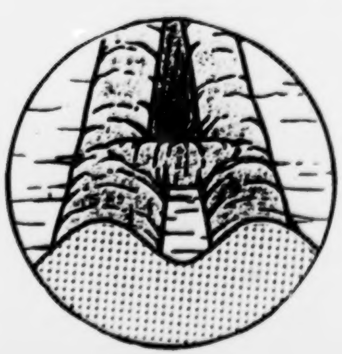
3. Check dams raise the water in the canal for distribution to other canals and to the field.



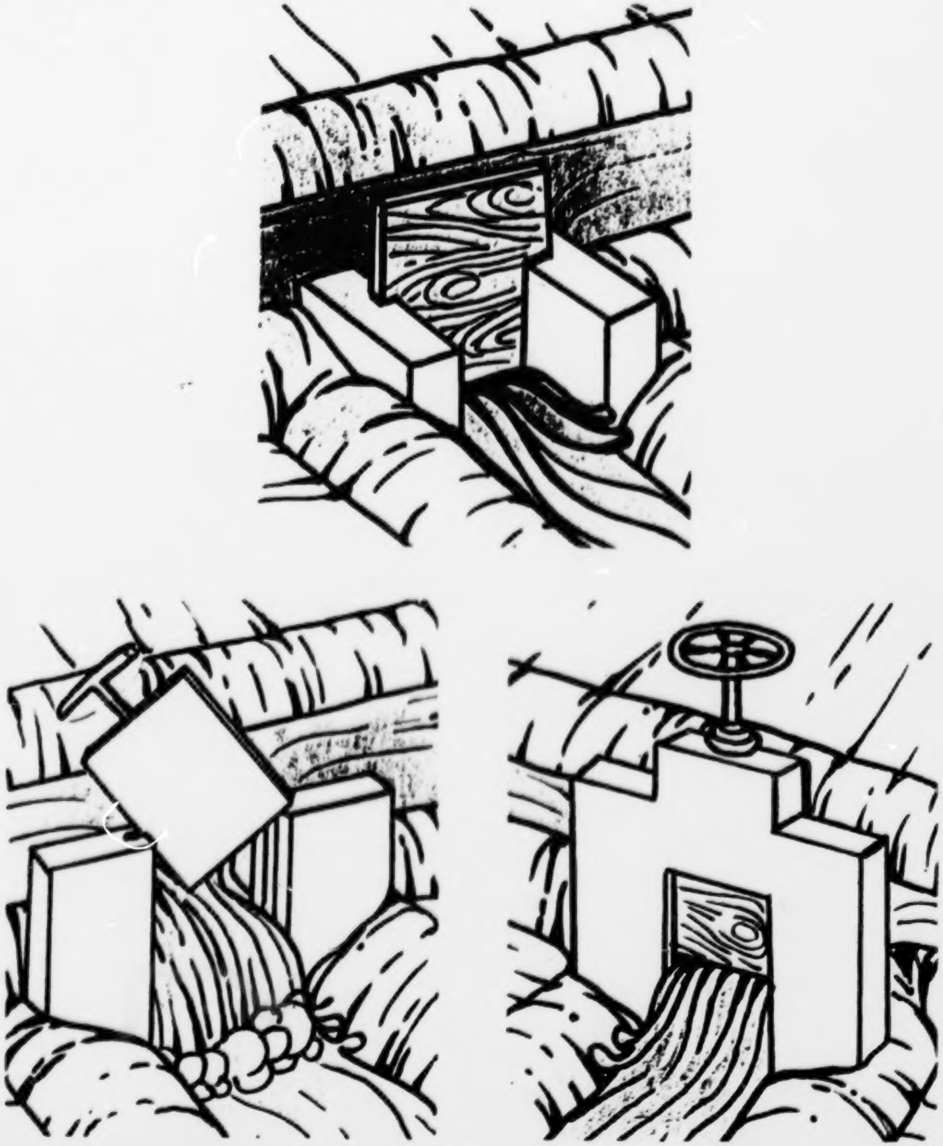
***Wood, rock masonry, concrete***



***Canvas or plastic***



4. Headgates control the flow of water from the canals.



## Conservation and Maintenance of Canals, Drains, and Other Installations

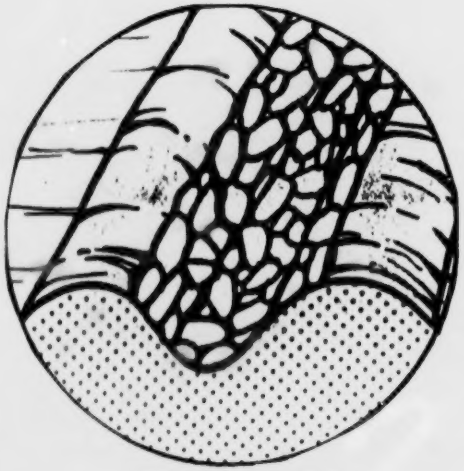
Canals can be eroded very easily, especially on steep slopes. The following methods can help prevent canal erosion.

1. Construct your canals with very little slope — usually with a slope of one-half-percent or less (50 cm/100 m or less).

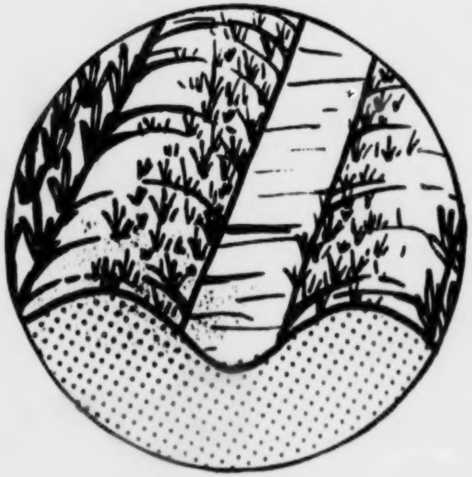
2. You may consider using the following:

   - rock masonry or concrete lining
   - grasses of a suitable kind to hold the soil in place.
   - on steeper slopes, drop structures to bring the water down in steps. Be sure to protect the downstream side of the structure.

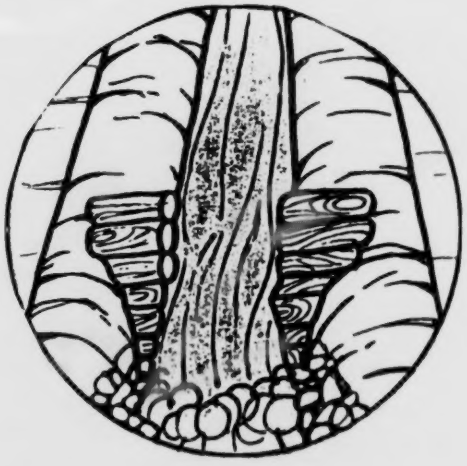
   Do not build drop structures that allow water to fall more than 30 cm without technical help.



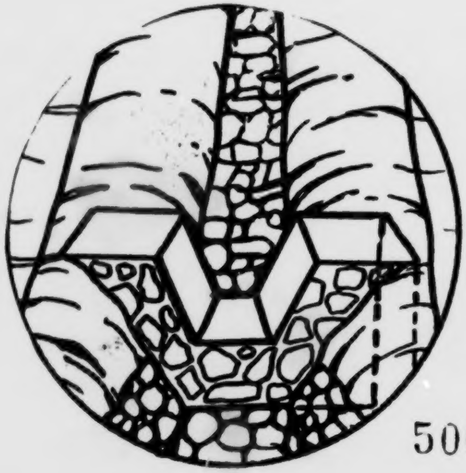
**Rock masonry**



**Grass**



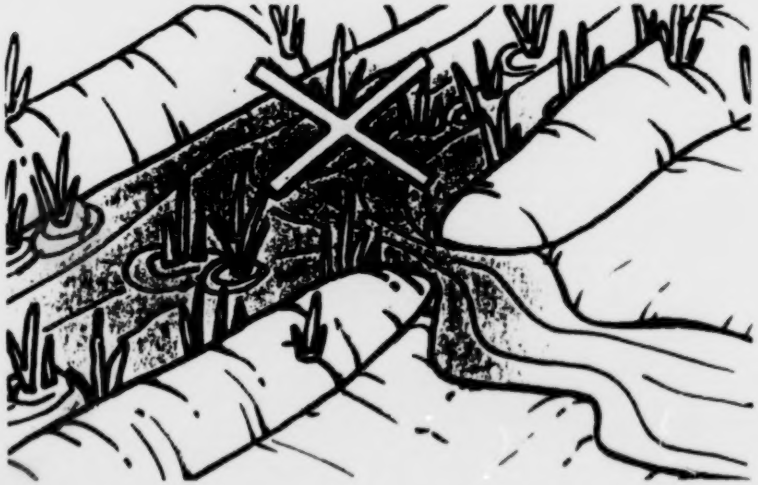
**Wood**



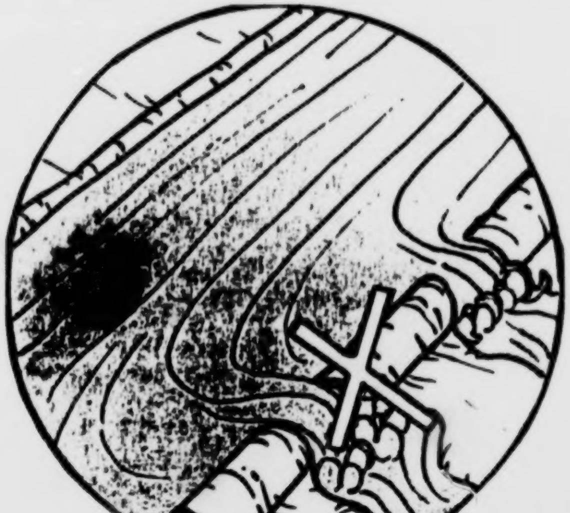
**Rock or concrete**

All water control structures must be periodically checked and maintained. Follow these recommendations:

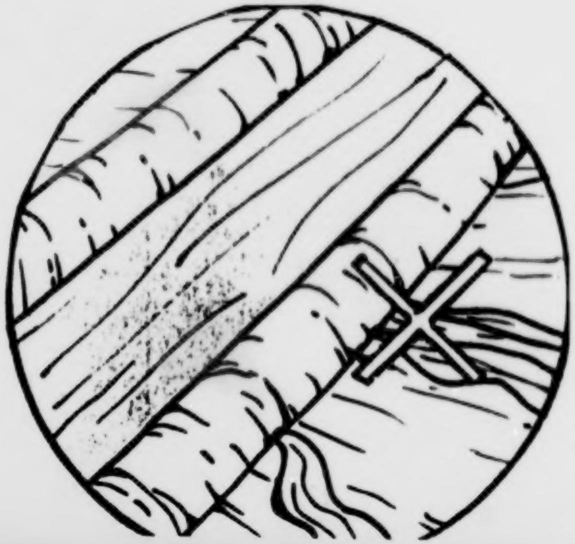
1. Don't let weeds and trash restrict the flow of water. Clean the canals and raise their banks when necessary.



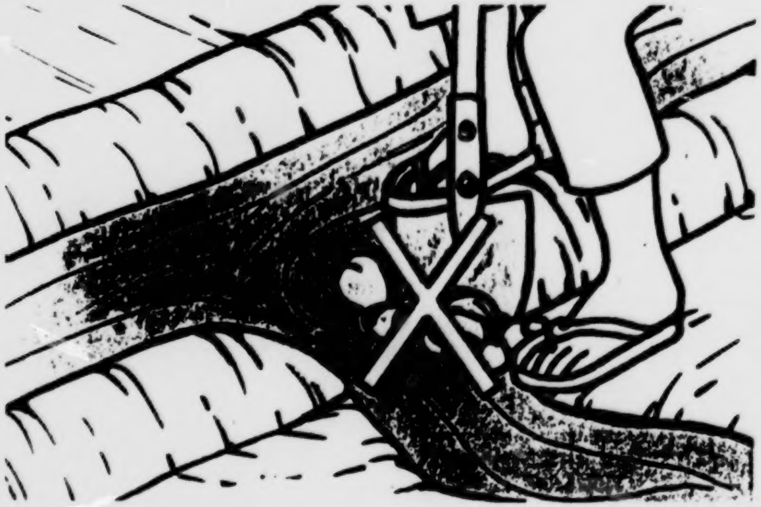
2. Don't put more water in the canal than it can carry.



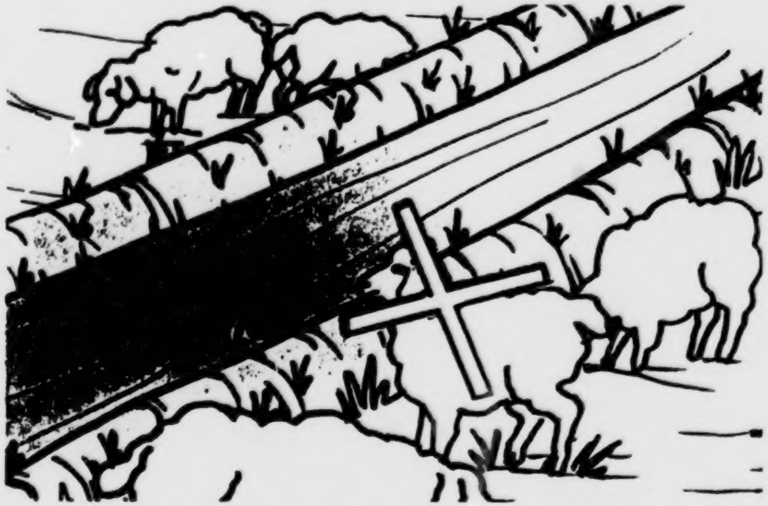
3. Don't let water seep through the canal banks. This usually occurs over fractured rock, sandy soil, or where animals have dug holes in the banks. Line the canals with concrete or clay in places where they would lose much water through seepage.



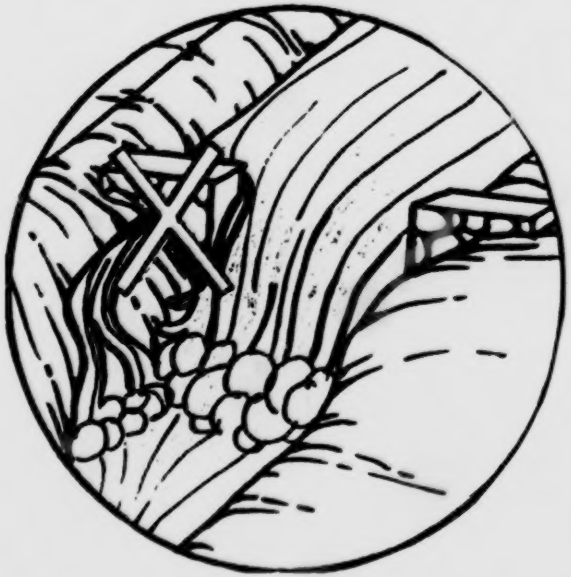
4. Don't cut ditchbanks just anyplace when water is needed. Select a few places and use the appropriate outlet structure.



5. Don't pasture animals in the canal or on its banks. They destroy the banks and protective vegetation.

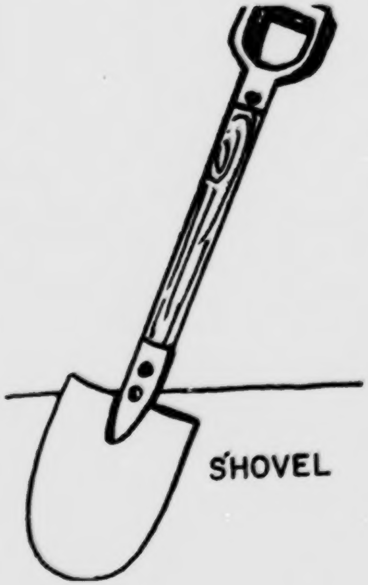


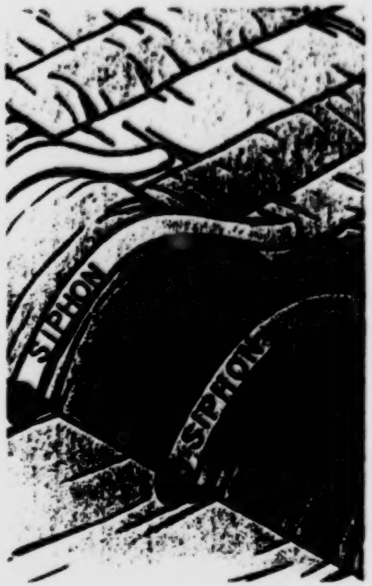
6. Don't let breaks in the structures go unrepaired. Fix them before they become serious.

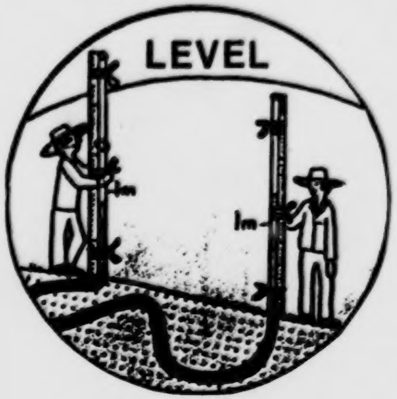


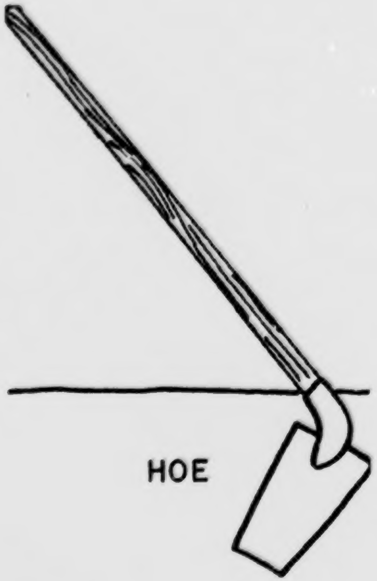
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

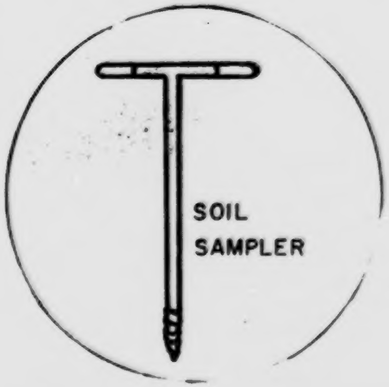
# IRRIGATION TOOLS

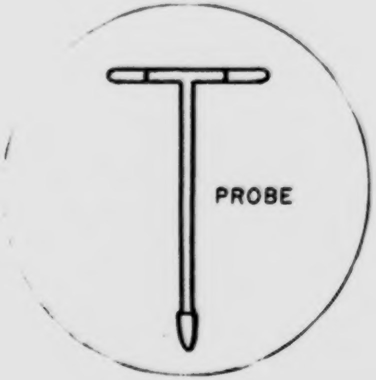

SHOVEL

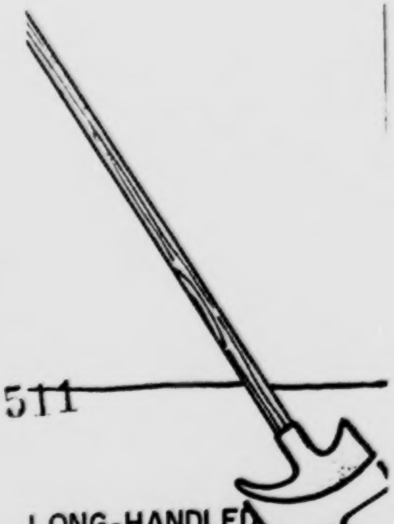

SIPHON
SIPHON

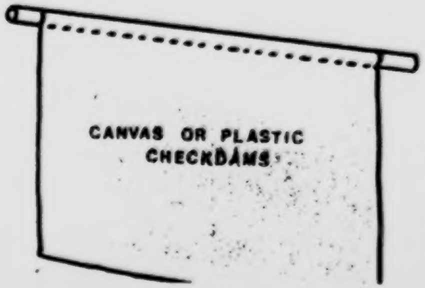


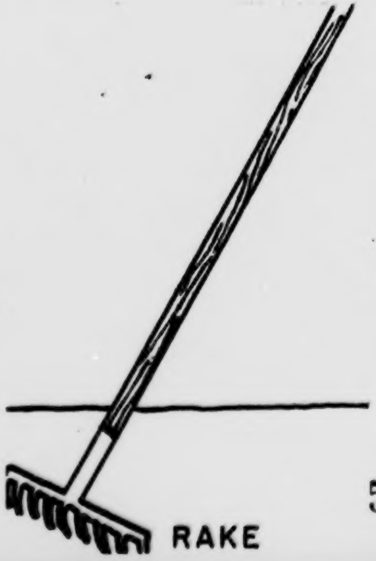

HOE


SOIL SAMPLER


PROBE


LONG-HANDLED PICK


CANVAS OR PLASTIC CHECKDAMS


RAKE

Because the construction and use of siphons, soil probes and soil samplers are not known to many farmers, these simple and effective irrigating tools are explained here.

## SIPHONS

Siphons are curved tubes used to take water from a canal into a field.

WITH SIPHONS

- it is easy to control the amount of water going into furrows, borders and basins,
- water can be distributed fast, evenly, and without damaging the canal banks.

To use a siphon, the water must be higher in the canal than at the outlet of the siphon.

*Siphon sizes for different uses:*

1.9 cm — very short furrows

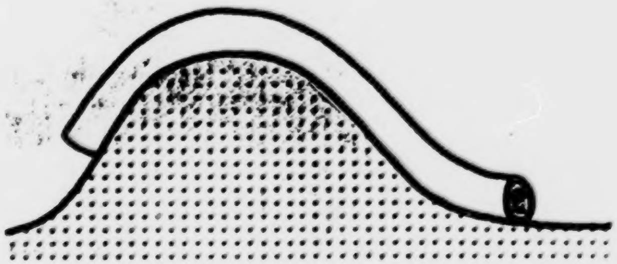
2.5 cm — longer furrows

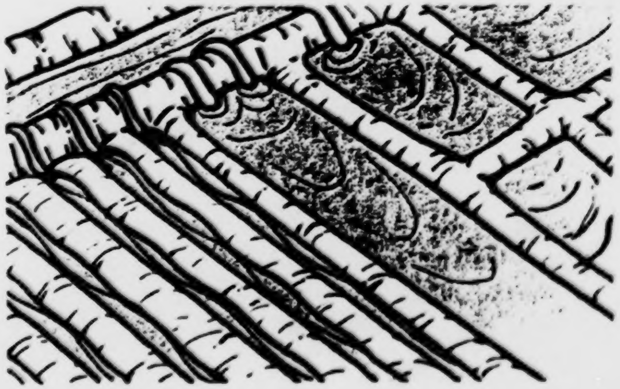
3.8 cm — long furrows or very sandy soils

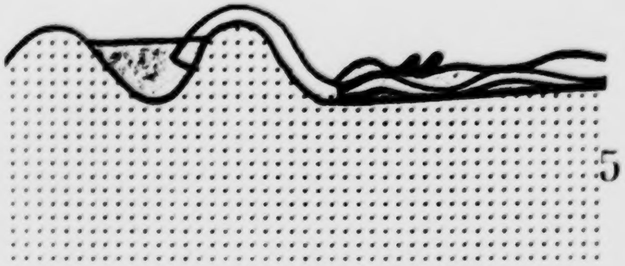
5 cm — very large, long furrows or small borders and basins

7.5 to 10 cm — small borders and basins

12.5 to 15 cm — large borders or basins

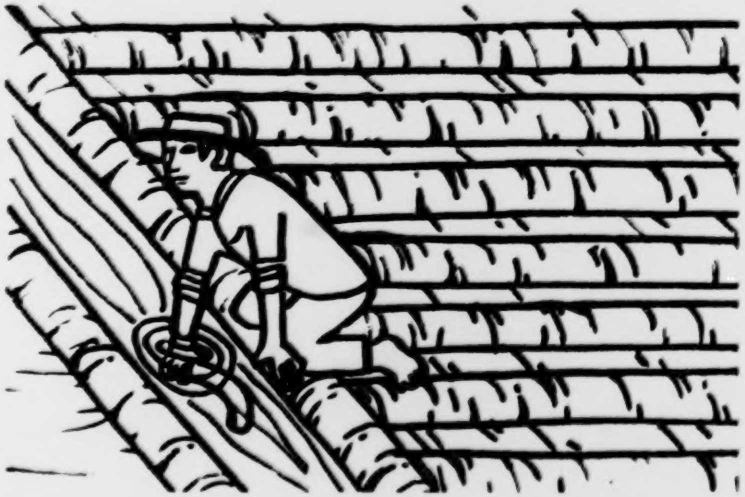




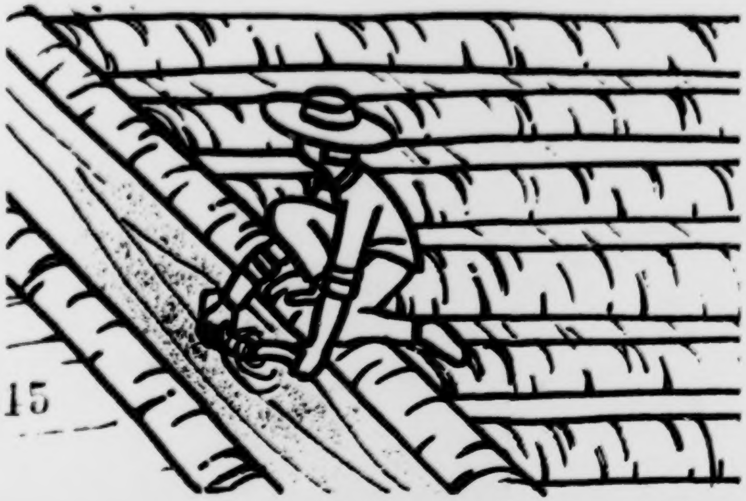


**How Are Siphons Used?**

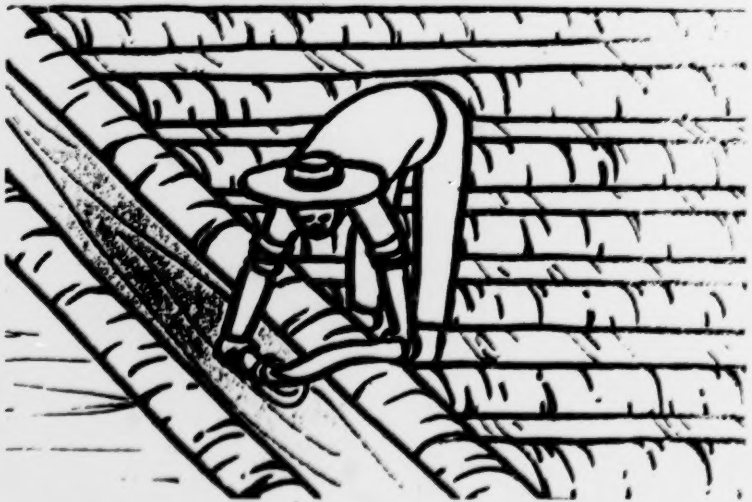
1. Completely submerge the siphon in the water, with the curve lower than the ends so that the air escapes...



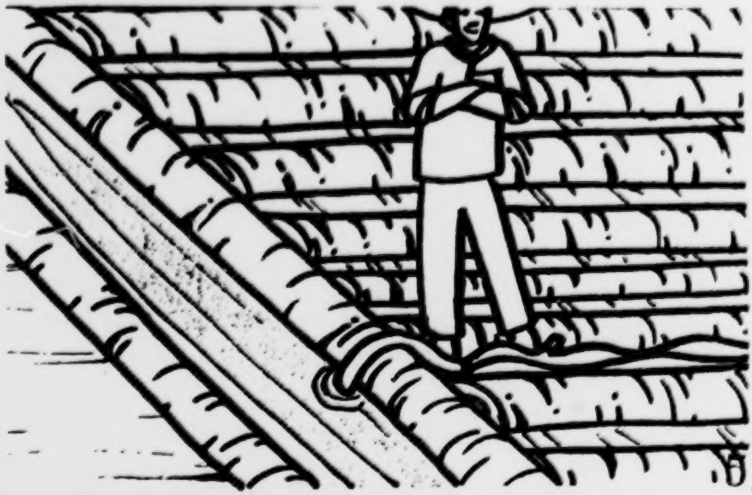
2. Place your hand over the outlet side of the siphon.



3. Take the outlet side of the siphon out of the water, keeping it covered. Leaving the other end in the water, place the outlet end of the siphon tube in the bottom of the furrow or border.

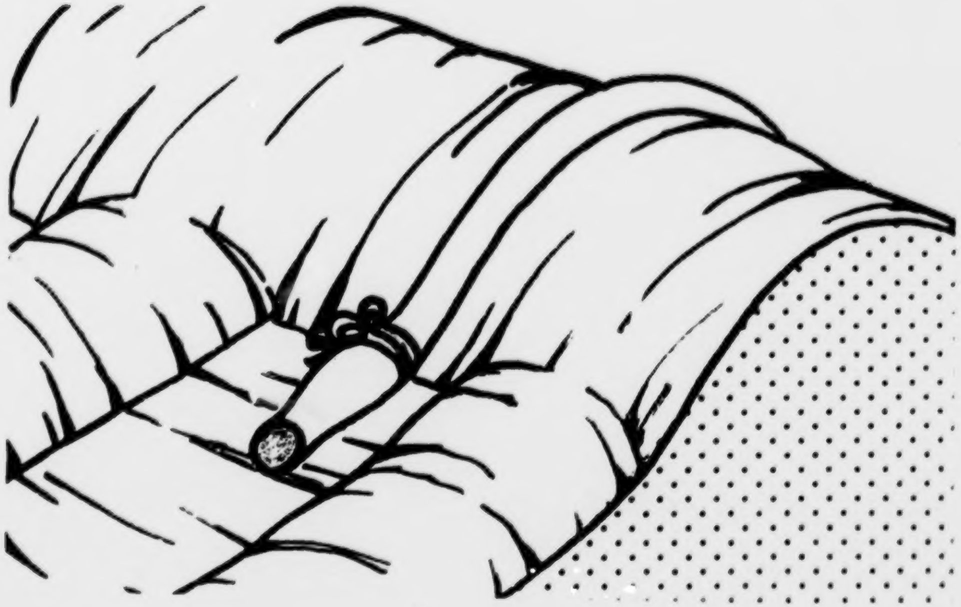


4. Take hands off the siphon, and water will flow by itself!



There are easier ways of priming siphons, but they require experience.

To get water to flow in 7.5 to 15 cm diameter siphons (3, 4 and 5 inches), use a piece of rubber inner tube fastened over the outlet of the siphon. When the tube is full (primed), it can be twisted with one hand so that the tube stays full while the siphon outlet is pulled out of the water.

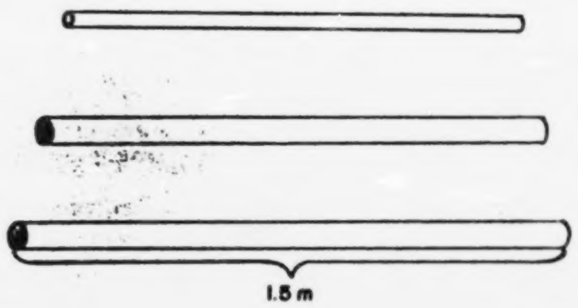


## You Can Make Your Own Siphon

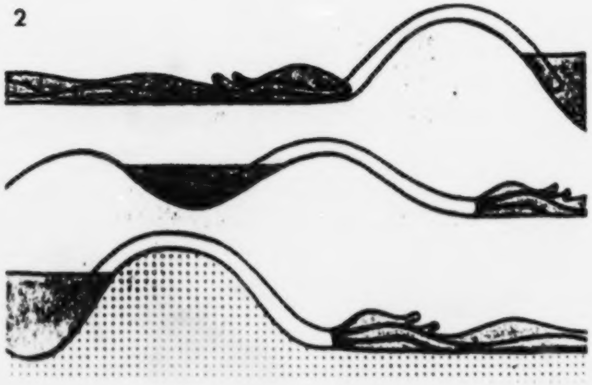
1. Buy as much plastic conduit of the correct size as you need at a hardware store. Conduit for electrical installations works very well. Cut the conduit to the proper lengths. 1.2 meters is usually adequate for 1 to 1½ inch siphons; 1.5 meters for 2-inch siphons.
2. Observe the form of the farm ditch banks.
3. Make a mold with nails on a board, according to your observations.
4. Fill a tube with sand and compact it.
5. Heat parts of the tube over a fire or in a very hot water (at least 92°C) or in hot sand.
6. Press the heated tube against the nails on the mold to give it shape. Continue the procedure until the tube has the desired form. Then remove the sand; the siphon is ready for use.

Siphons larger than 5 cm (two inches) are harder to make. They are usually made of metal and can be bought in irrigation equipment stores.

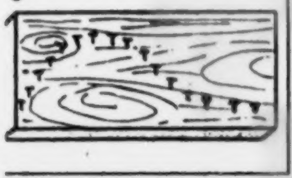
1

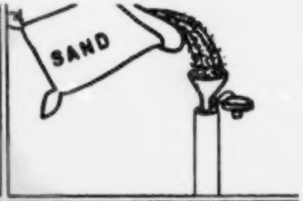


2

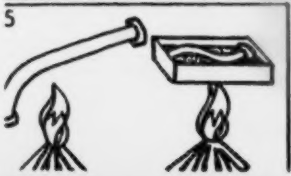


3

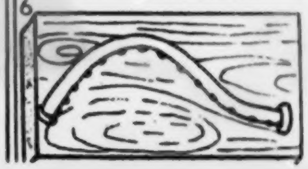




5



6



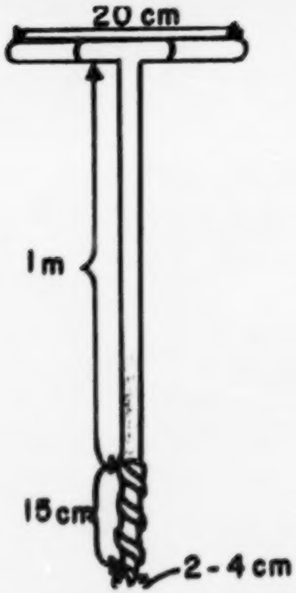
## SOIL SAMPLER AND PROBE

The tools described on this page are very useful for sampling a soil to determine its moisture condition.

An auger-type soil sampler can be made easily from two metal rods welded into a 'T' and a 1¼ or 1½ inch drill bit as indicated in the drawing.

Weld the drill bit to the 'T' handle.

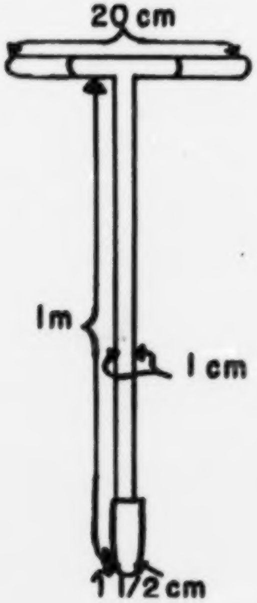
The sampler can then be introduced into the soil to obtain a soil sample from the depth desired.

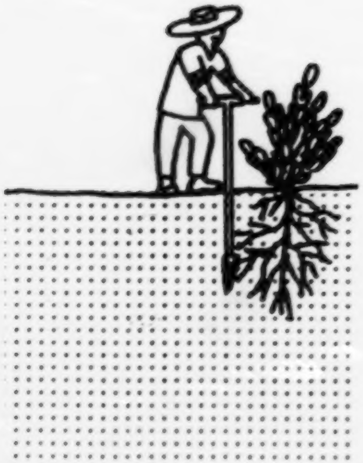


To determine how deep the water penetrates during an irrigation, construct a simple tool:

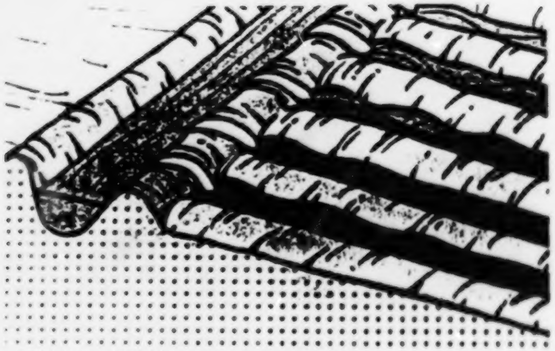
Weld a smooth round bulb to a 'T' handle.

The depth at which the round-tipped probe becomes significantly harder to push into the soil is the depth that the water penetrated during irrigation. The probe may not work on soils which are rocky or which have hardpans. Use a shovel or auger-type soil sampler instead.

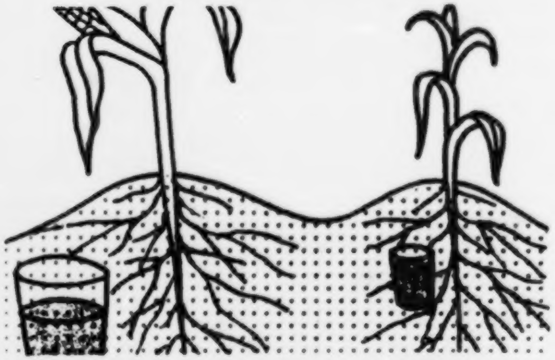




# FARM WATER MANAGEMENT



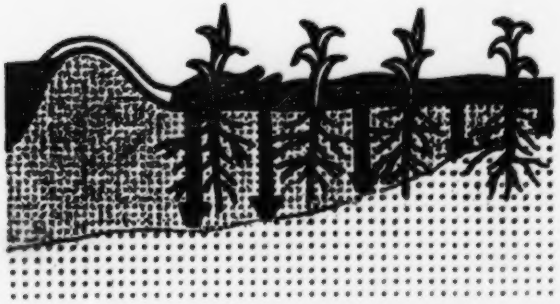
What is a Good Irrigation?



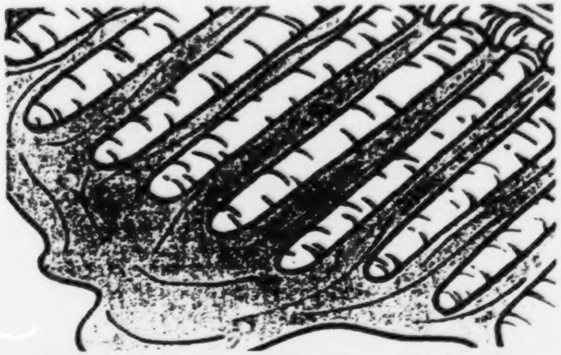
What are Crop Water Needs?

| S | M | T | W | T | F | S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
| 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 |
| 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 |
| 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | | |

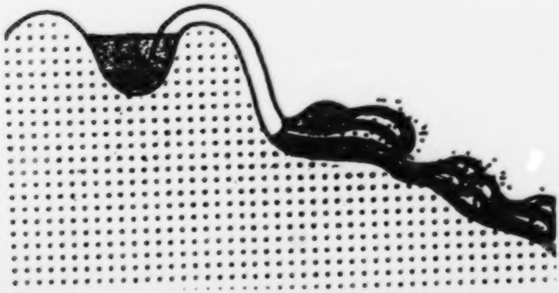
How Do I Know When to Irrigate?



How Do I Keep My Irrigations Uniform?



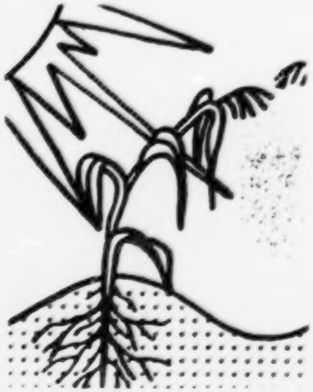
How Can I Keep My Runoff Losses Down?



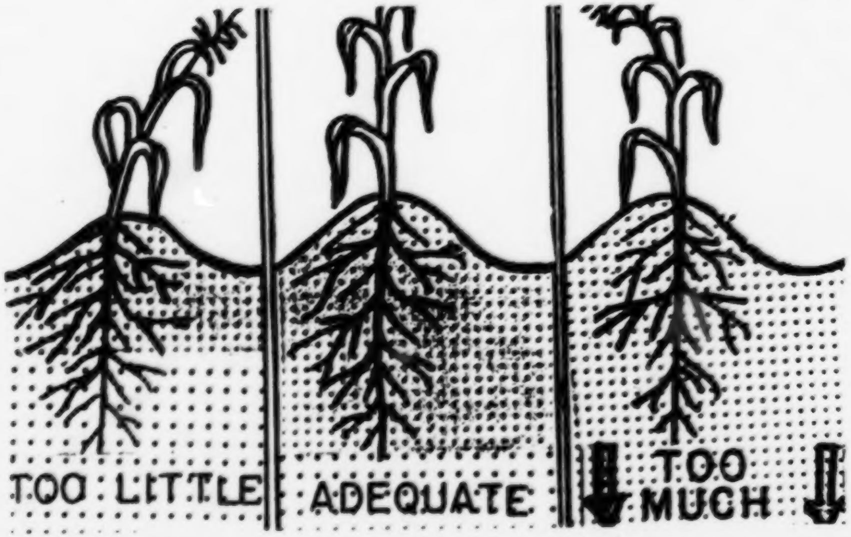
# WHAT IS A GOOD IRRIGATION?

A good irrigation is when:

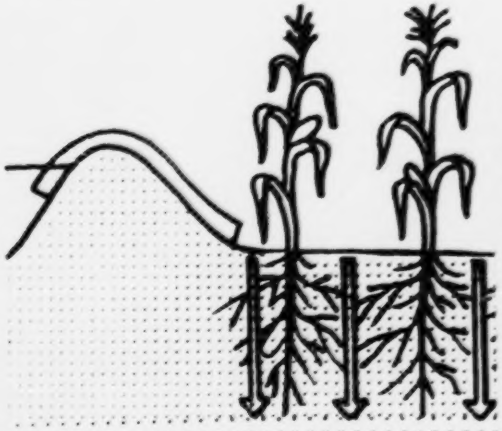
1. water is applied when the crop needs it...not when the plants look like this...



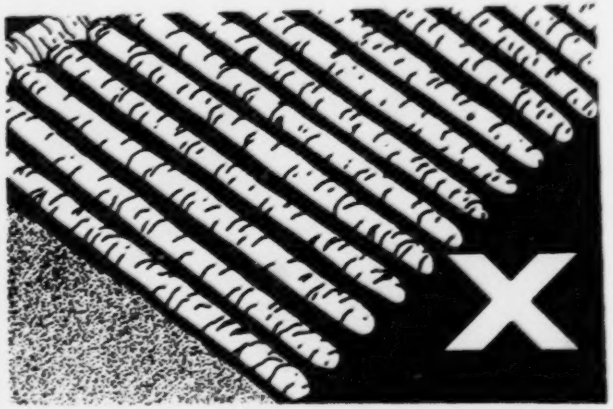
2. the right amount of water is applied to the root zone.



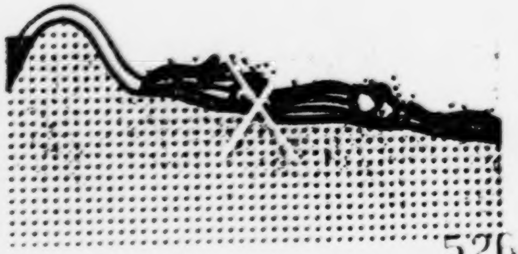
3. the penetration is uniform or almost uniform.



4. Irrigation does not result in excessive runoff and wasted water.

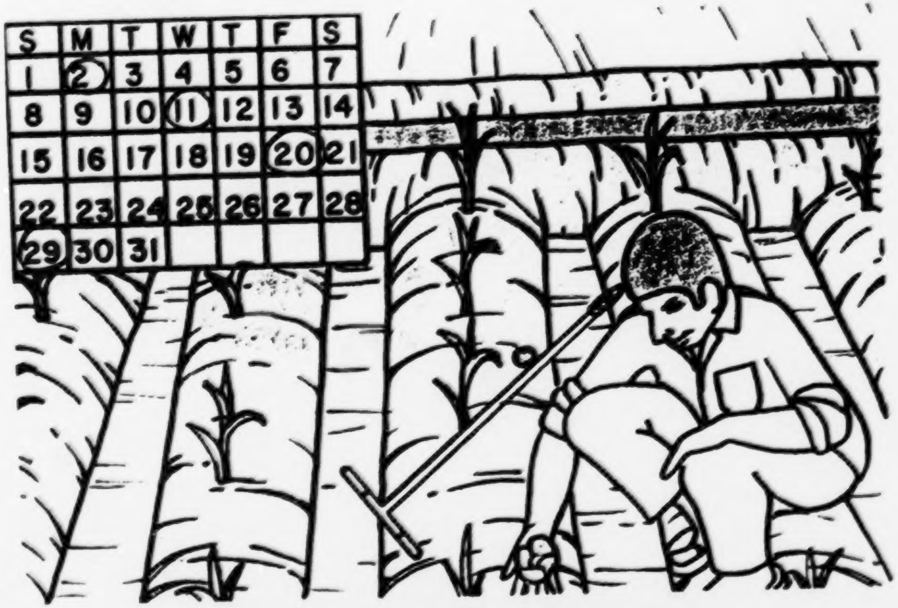


5. The water does not erode the soils.

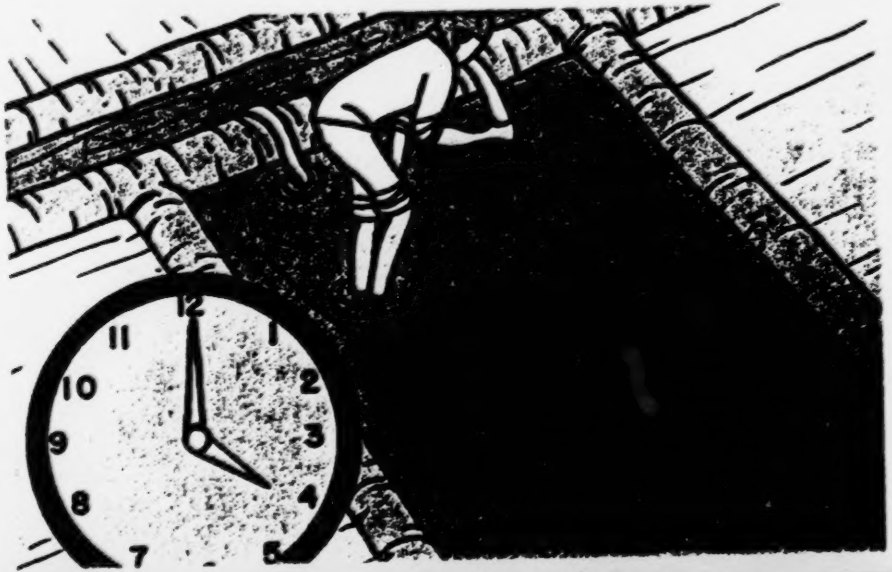


To irrigate well, the farmer must know:

1. The water needs of the crops.
2. The approximate time that should elapse between irrigations; how to tell with certainty if it is time to irrigate crops.

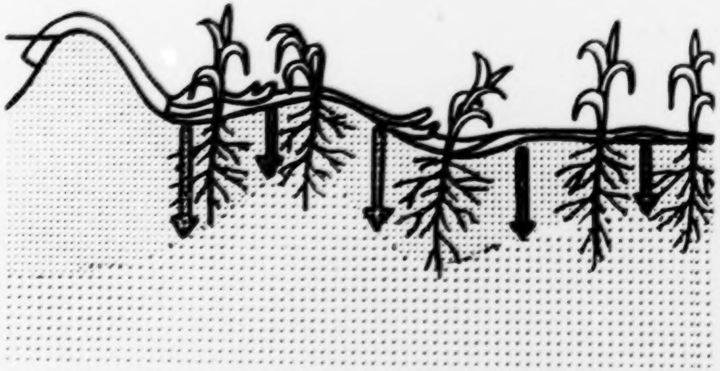

S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
8 9 10 11 12 13 14
15 16 17 18 19 20 21
22 23 24 25 26 27 28
29 30 31

3. When to cut off the water.

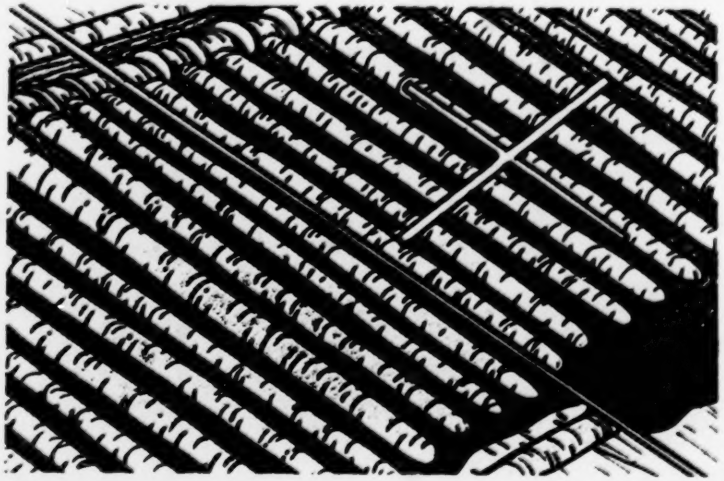

12
1
2
3
4
5
7
8
9
10
11

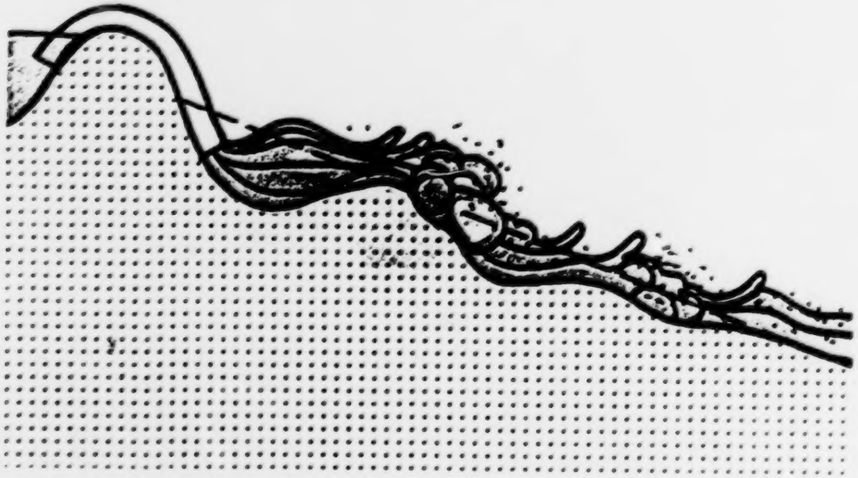
528

4. If the irrigations are uniform. If not, how to improve them.



5. How to keep runoff losses low.

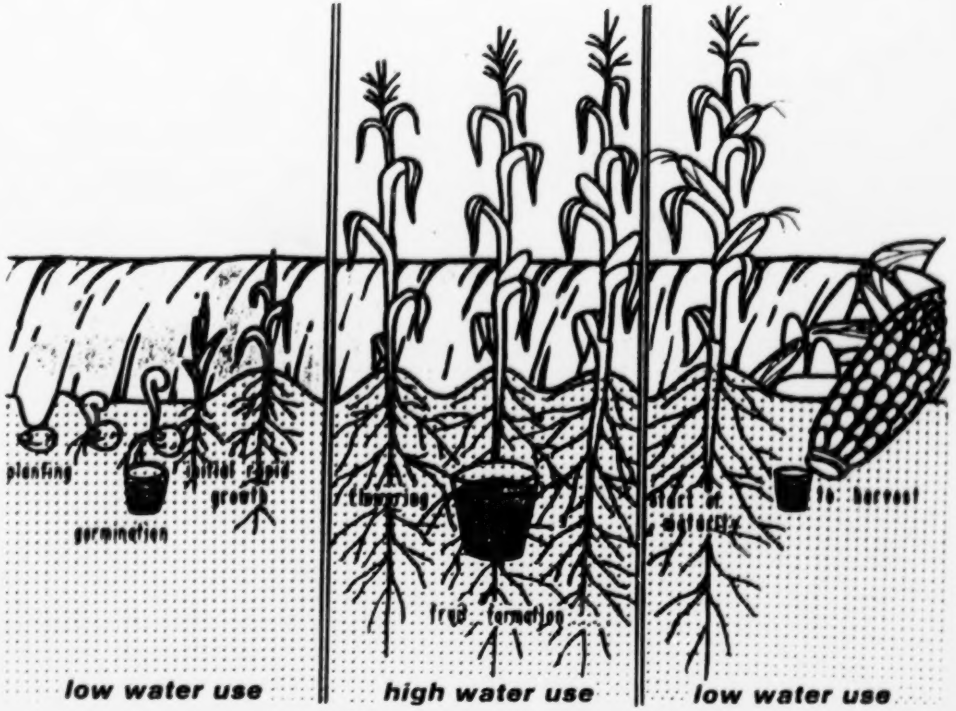




6. How to identify erosion problems and eliminate them.

## WHAT ARE CROP WATER NEEDS?

Water requirements vary as the crop develops, but in general:


planting
germination
initial rapid growth
flowering
fruit formation
start of maturity
to harvest
low water use
high water use
low water use

Some crops with

moist

- spinach
- celery
- strawberries

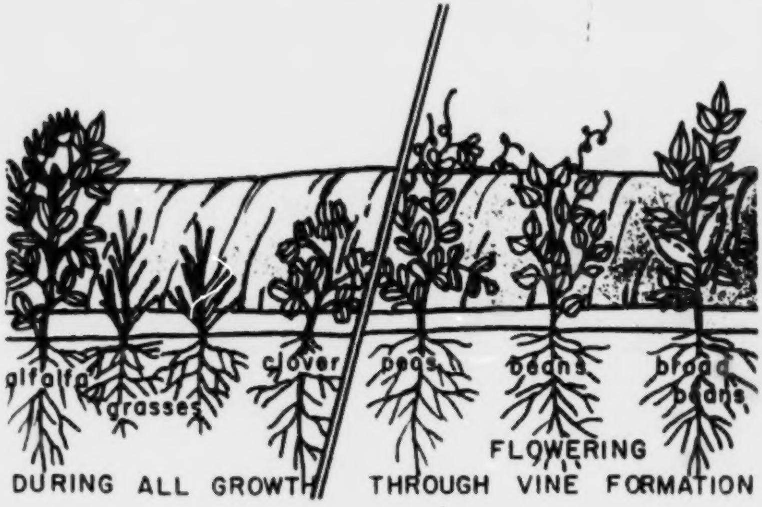
- beets

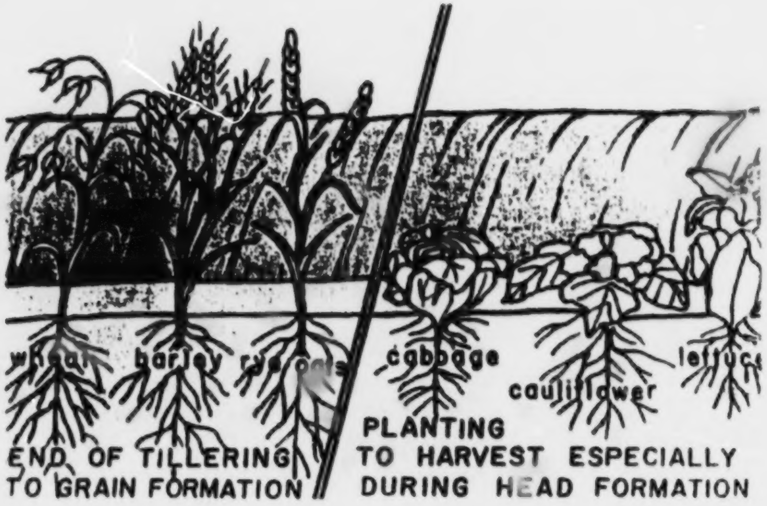
**MOST TOLERANT** to low moisture

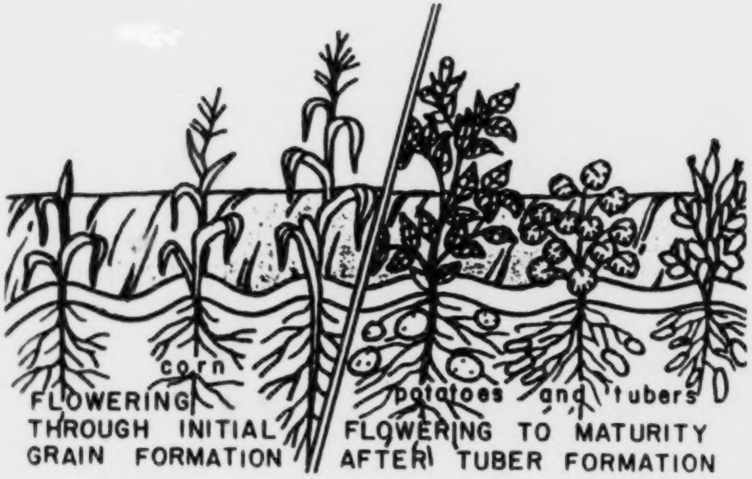
Maintain high moisture levels from flowering through grain formation on cereal crops so that yield is not affected.

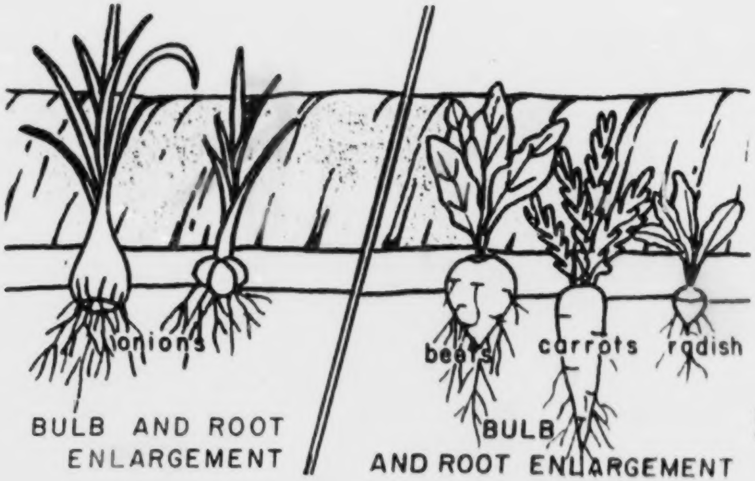
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Most crops have periods when a lack of water results in great reductions in yield. Make adequate moisture available, especially during these stages!!


alfalfa
grasses
clover
peas
beans
broad beans
DURING ALL GROWTH
FLOWERING
THROUGH VINE FORMATION


wheat
barley
rye
oats
cabbage
cauliflower
lettuc
END OF TILLERING
TO GRAIN FORMATION
PLANTING
TO HARVEST ESPECIALLY
DURING HEAD FORMATION


corn
FLOWERING
THROUGH INITIAL
GRAIN FORMATION
potatoes and tubers
FLOWERING TO MATURITY
AFTER TUBER FORMATION

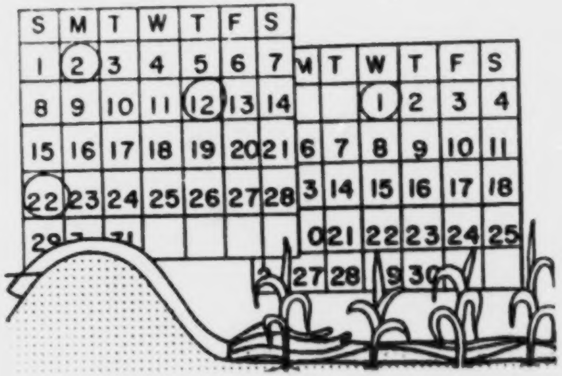

onions
BULB AND ROOT
ENLARGEMENT
beets
carrots
radish
BULB
AND ROOT ENLARGEMENT

## HOW DO I KNOW WHEN TO IRRIGATE?

The frequency of irrigation depends on the amount of water used by the crop and the amount of water which can be removed from the soil by the crop without stress to the plant.

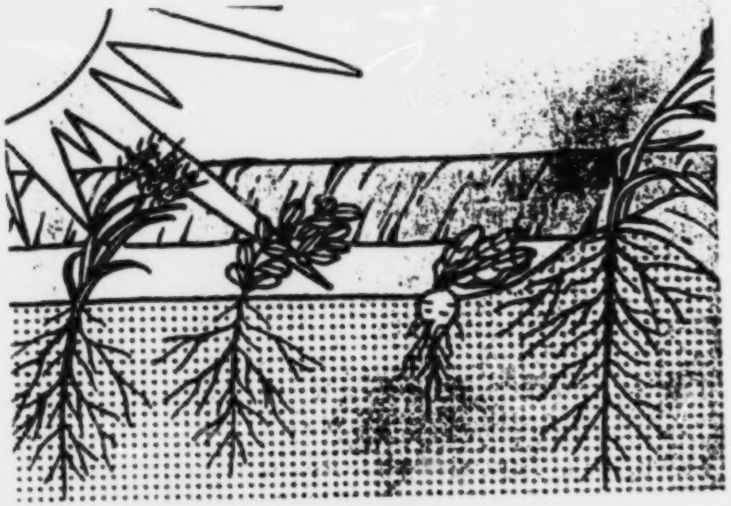
Consider the same crop and the same soil depth.

Sandy soils hold less water, so irrigations must be more frequent than on fine soils but less water should be applied at each irrigation.


S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
8 9 10 11 12 13 14
15 16 17 18 19 20 21
22 23 24 25 26 27 28
29 30 31
M T W T F S
1 2 3 4
6 7 8 9 10 11
13 14 15 16 17 18
20 21 22 23 24 25
27 28 29 30

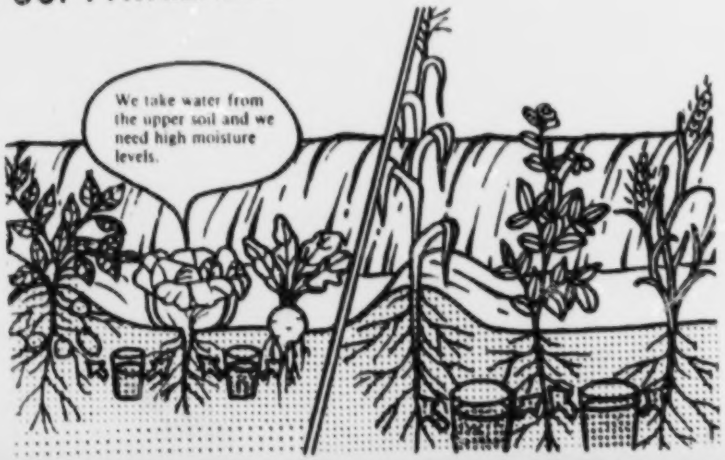
Consider the same soil and different crops:

Crops with shallow roots have less water within their reach, so the irrigations should be more frequent and lighter (less depth per irrigation) than deeper rooted crops.



On sunny, hot days, crops use more water than on cool, cloudy days and irrigations must be more frequent.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

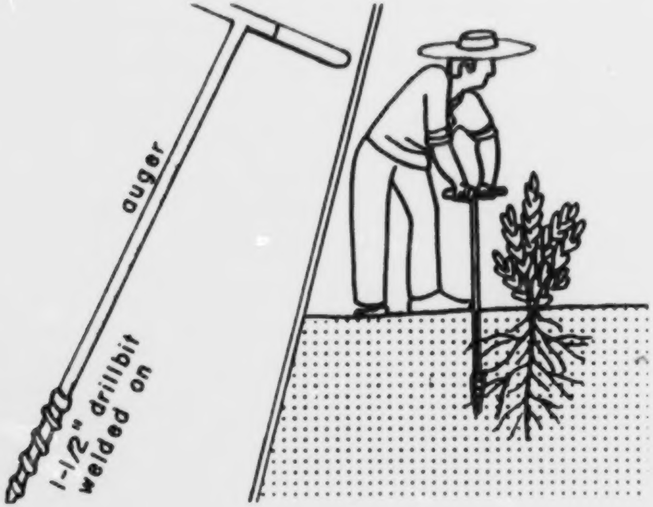

We take water from the upper soil and we need high moisture levels.

Apply only light irrigations during germination; just enough to wet the seed bed. Heavy irrigations wash the nutrients down from the upper part of the soil where they are needed for initial development.

Fill the soil profile with moisture early in the season so that you will have a reservoir for your plants to draw water from when the supply becomes deficient.

Use the following procedure to determine if it is time to irrigate.

1. Take some soil from the root zone area.
   - if the crop has 12 inches of roots, check at least to six inches, and sometimes to 12.
   - if the crop has 24 inches of roots, check to at least 12 inches, and sometimes to 24, etc.
2. Squeeze the soil in your hand.



3. Open your hand and observe the soil. Irrigate most crops when the soil gets to the following state:

*Coarse or sandy soil:*

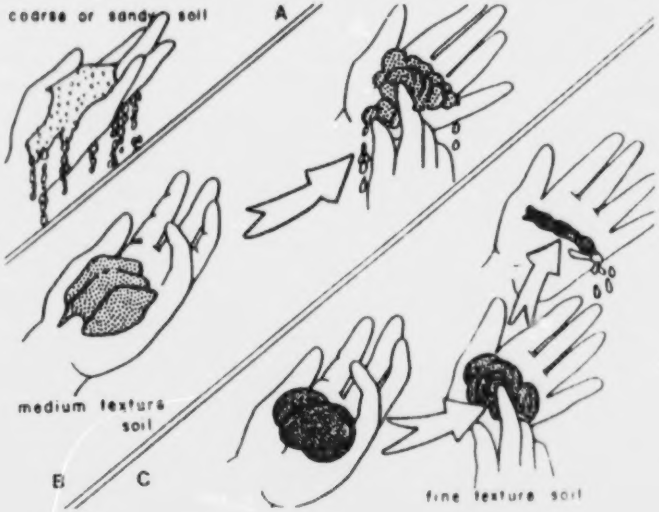
The soil falls apart (crumbles) when the hand is opened. **(A)**

*Medium textured soil:*

The soil retains the form of the compressed hand when opened, but crumbles when pressed by the finger. **(B)**

*Fine textured soils:*

The soil retains its form when the hand is opened. The ball will not crumble when pressed by the finger. However a thin cylinder cannot be formed with the soil. **(C)**



**Crops which are not tolerant to stress should be irrigated BEFORE they get to the conditions indicated above.**

You can determine if the irrigation has removed the moisture deficit from the root zone.

1. Dig down to the root depth:

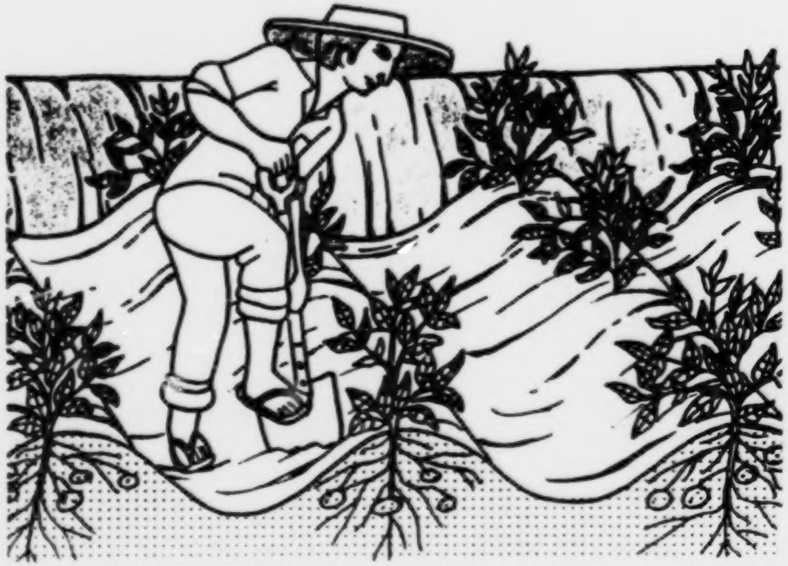
   1 day after irrigating coarse-textured soils

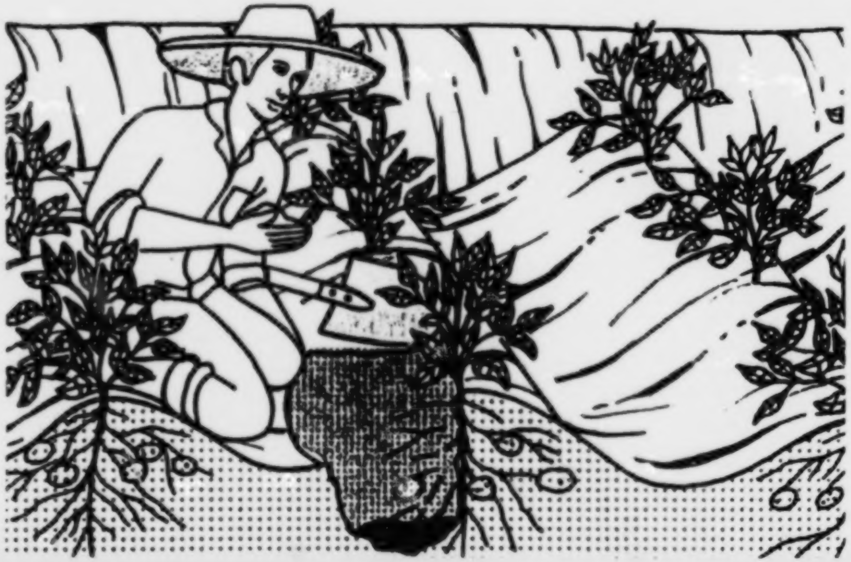
   2 days after irrigating medium-textured soils

   3 days after irrigating fine-textured soils

2. Check the moisture depth.

   A change in moisture will usually be obvious if the water has not penetrated enough.



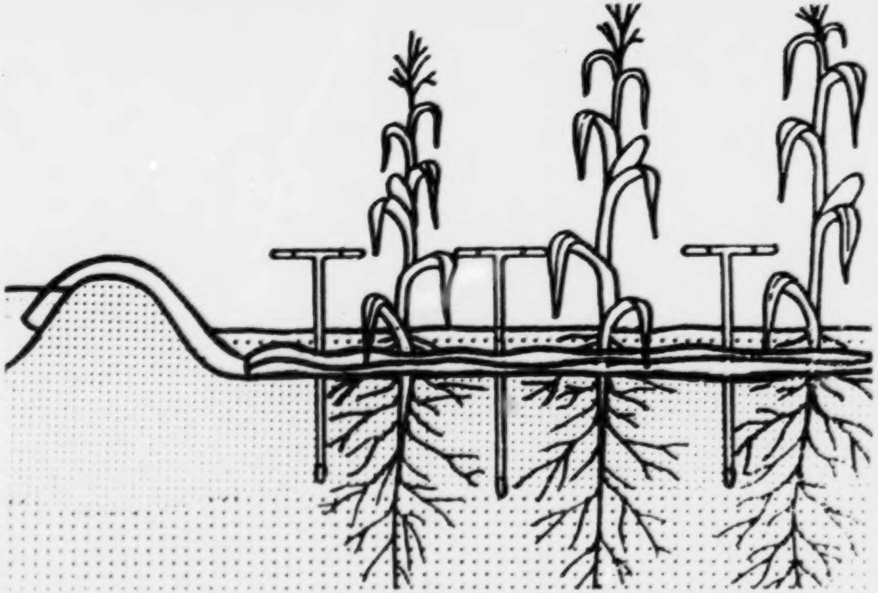


## WHEN CAN THE WATER BE CUT OFF?

### *In furrows:*

Cut the water off when the round-tipped probe (see tool section) penetrates easily ½ to ¾ of the root depth along the whole run.

Water will penetrate the soil for a significant time after an irrigation. This is why it does not need to penetrate to root depth during the irrigation.

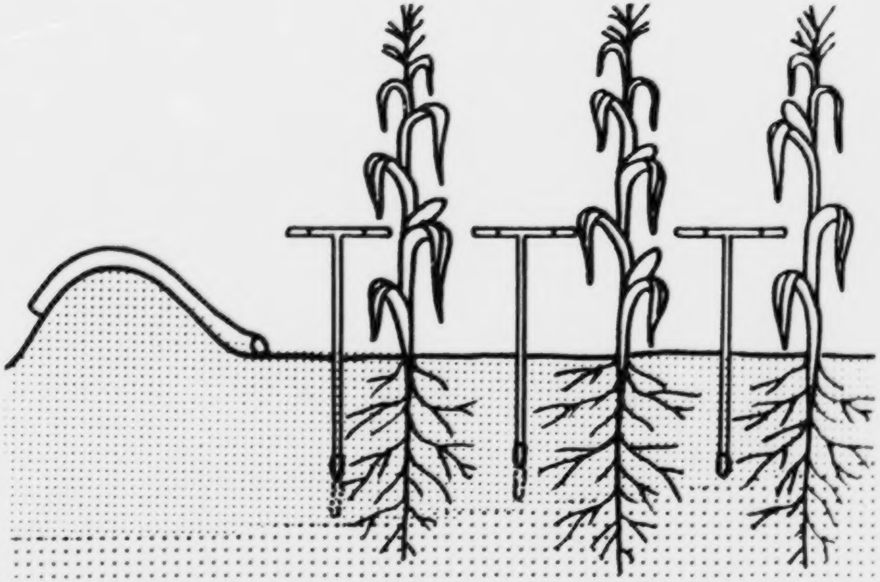


### *In borders or basins:*

The round-tipped probe should penetrate from ½ to ¾ of the root depth, after the water disappears from the surface.

Adjust the irrigation duration, stream size, and how far it must travel along the surface before being cut off.

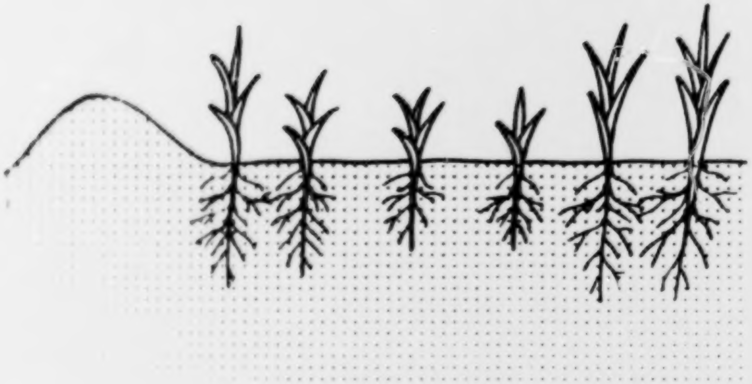
In border irrigation, the stream usually proceeds ⅔ to ¾ of the border length before being cut off.

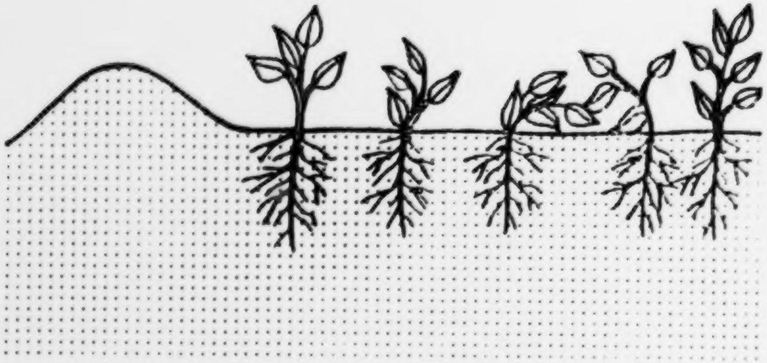


## HOW DO I MAKE SURE THAT MY IRRIGATIONS ARE UNIFORM?

First, look for any of the following indicators of non-uniformity

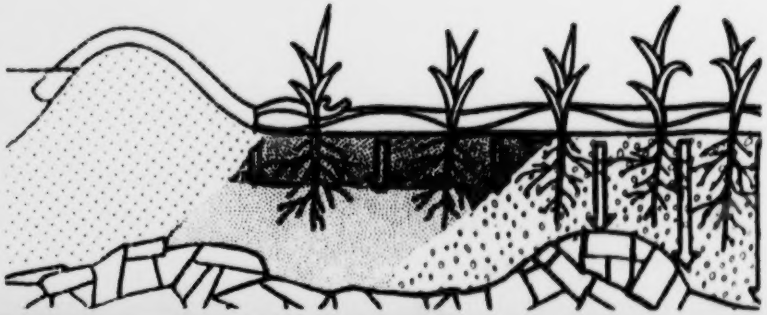
1. Variation in plant height through the field





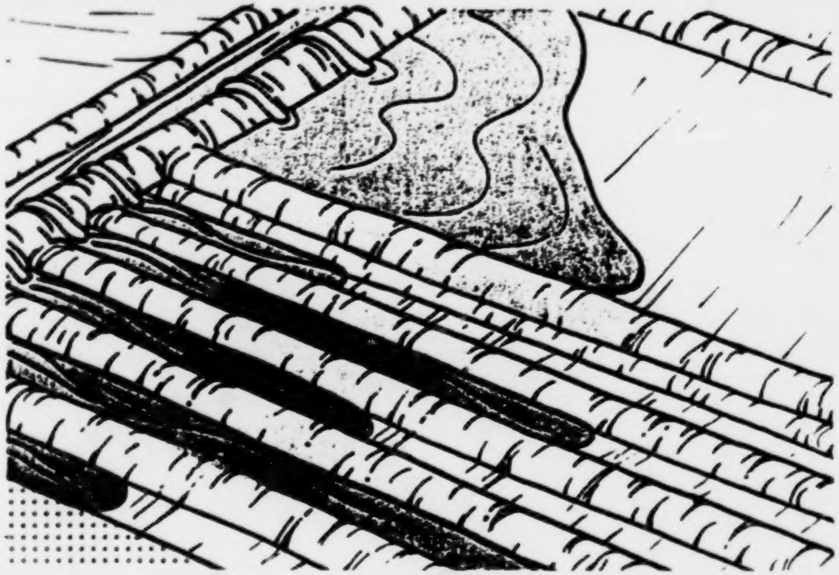
2. Plants wilting in some parts of the field and not in others.

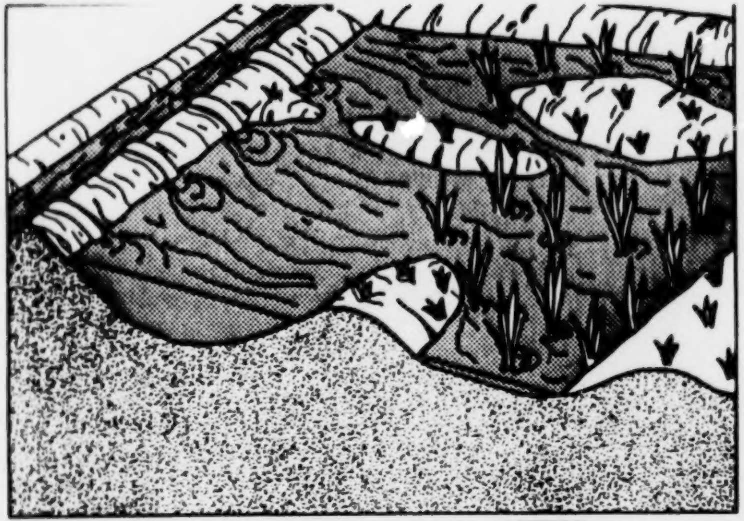
3. Large differences in texture and depth of soil along the field



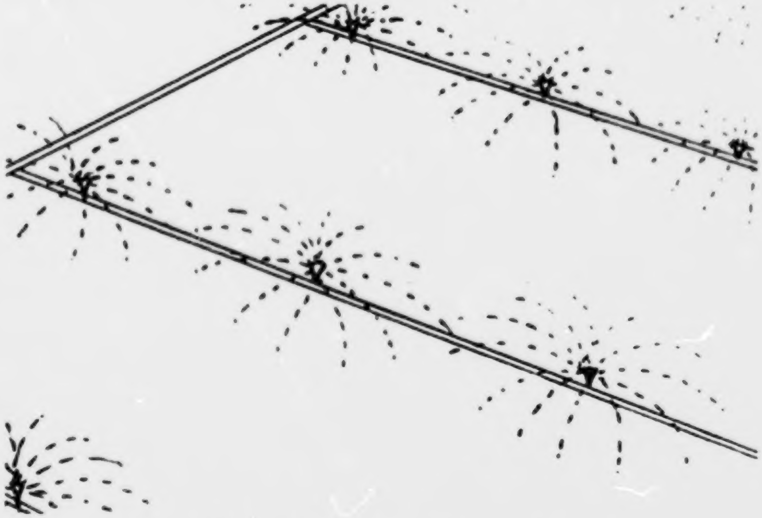
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

4. Large variations in the time that water remains on different parts of the field. (For example, if the water advances slowly over the field and disappears at almost the same time over the whole field, the water may have penetrated more at the head than at the tail end of the field.)





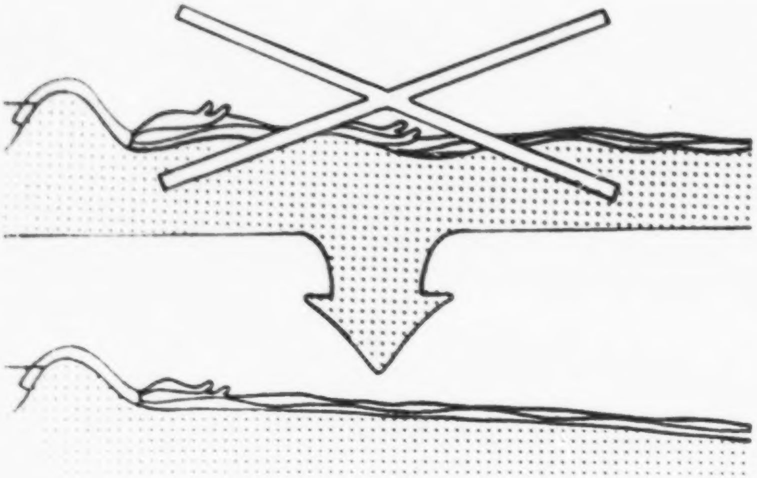
5. Fields with uneven surfaces...water ponds in low spots and high spots remain dry.



6. Sprinklers spaced so far apart that the water from one does not overlap with that of another, or does so very little.

There are usually solutions to the problem of non-uniformity.

1. An uneven soil surface can be leveled or planed



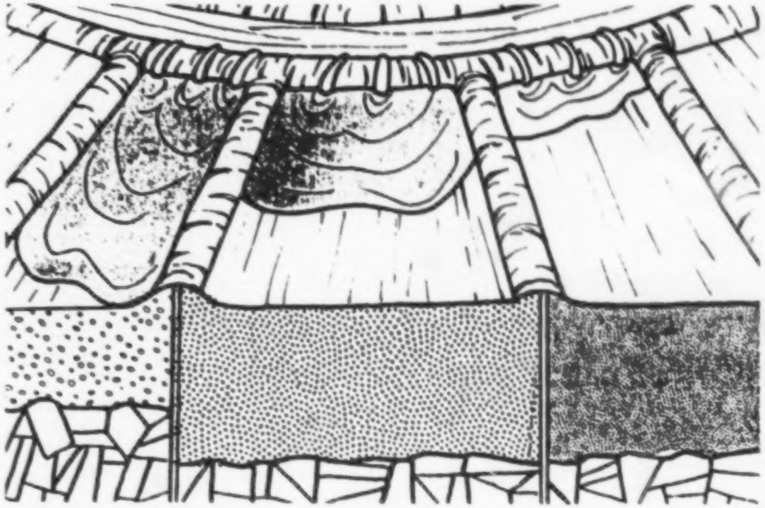
3. If the difference in time that water stands on the surface at the head and tail end of the system is great, we may be able to:

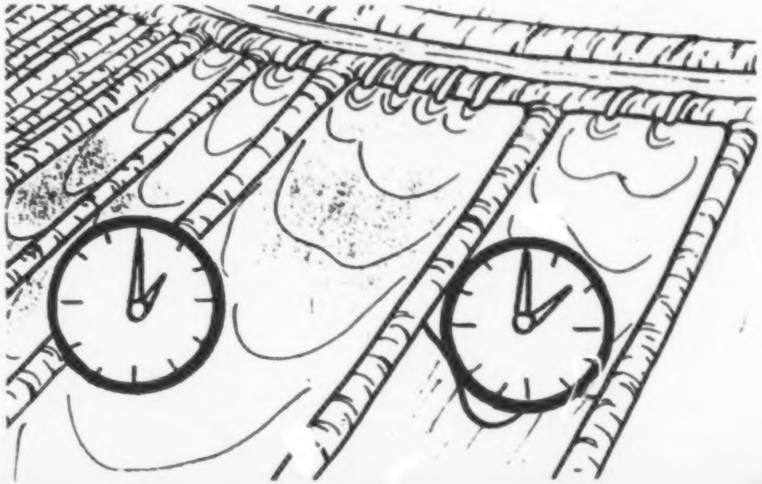
   a. cut down the length or width of furrows, borders, or basins

   b. increase the size of stream at the inlet of the furrow, border, or basin.

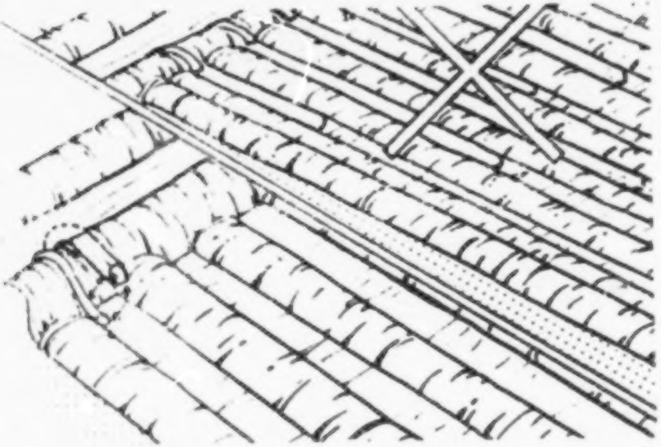
   c. increase the irrigation duration.

2. Soils of different textures or structures and depths may be irrigated separately.

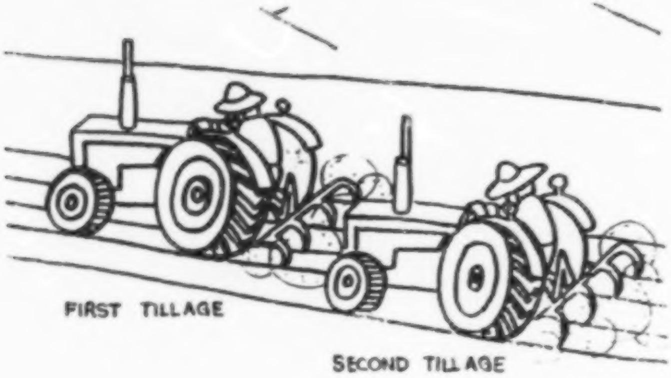




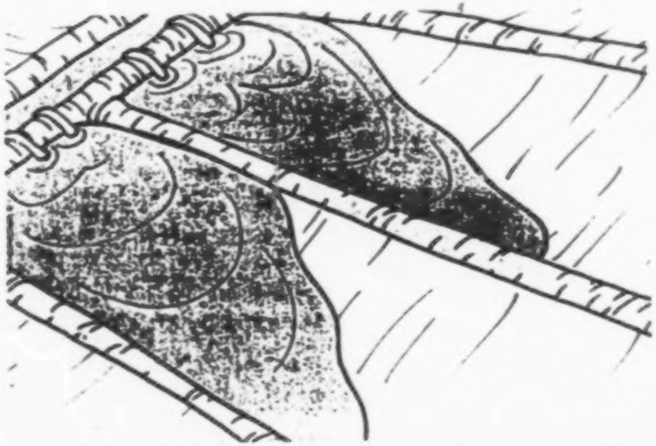
4. If the water does not advance evenly in all the furrows, you might change your irrigating tools. Use siphons and adjust them so that the necessary amount goes into each furrow.



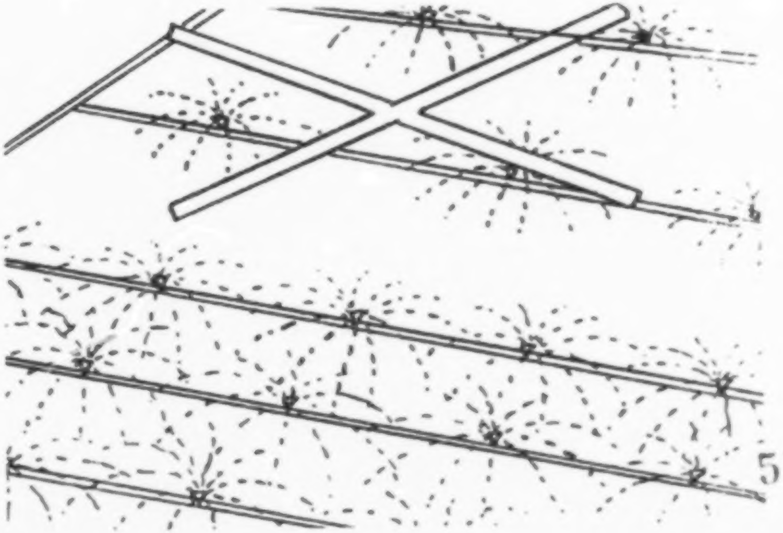
5. [illegible] other [illegible] of tillage practice change so that each furrow gets the same amount of tillage traffic.



6. When water in a border tends to flow along one side, there is too much cross slope. Change the direction of the borders to that of the primary slope, or level or plane each border to eliminate cross slope.



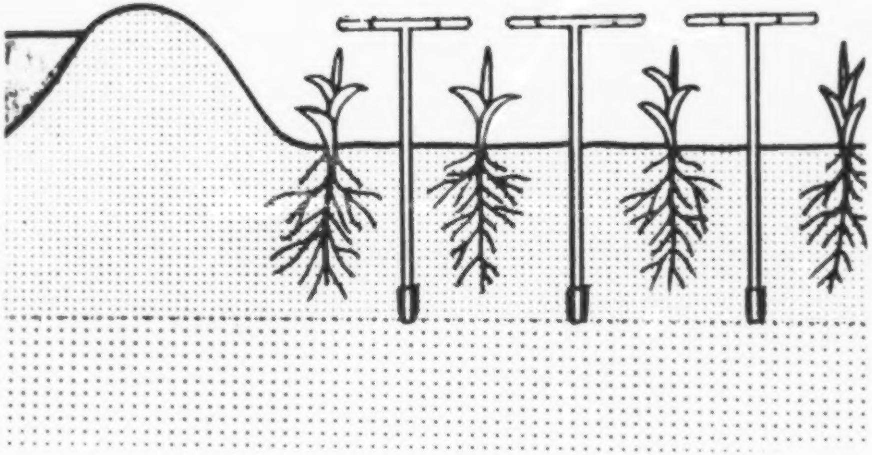
7. Decrease sprinkler spacing and/or increase pressure.



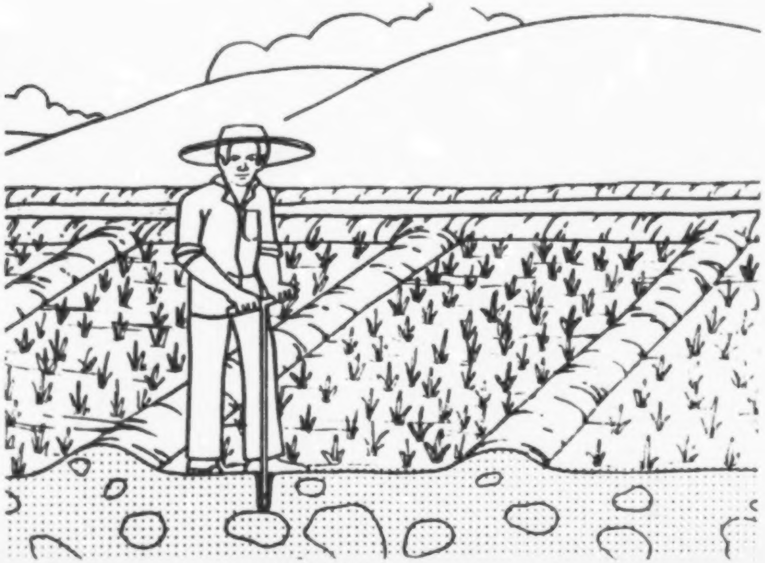
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

To determine definitely if the irrigation was uniform or not:

1. Introduce the long, round-tipped probe into the soil along the irrigation run after an irrigation and note at what depth it meets significant change in resistance. This is the depth the water penetrated to. Check the depth of penetration in different parts of the field and compare.

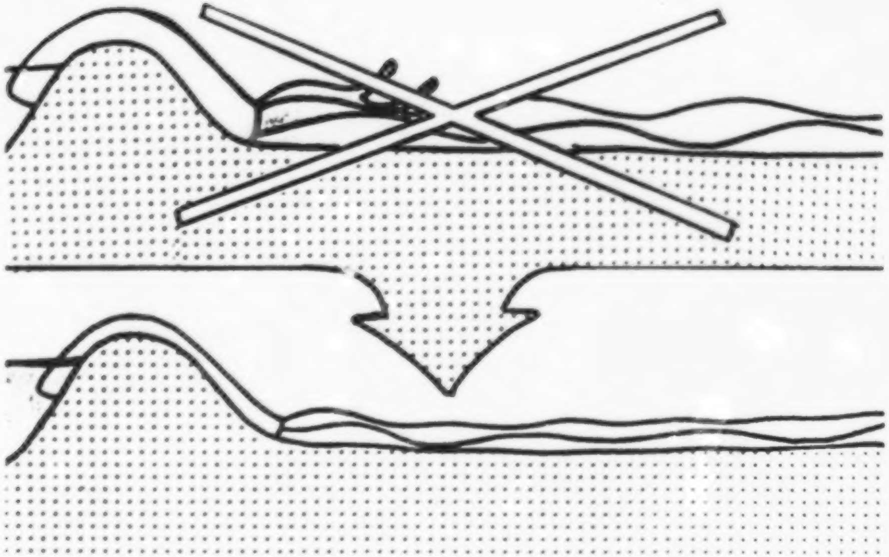


On rocky soils this probe will not work. Excavate with a shovel, soil auger or other instrument to observe the depth of penetration.



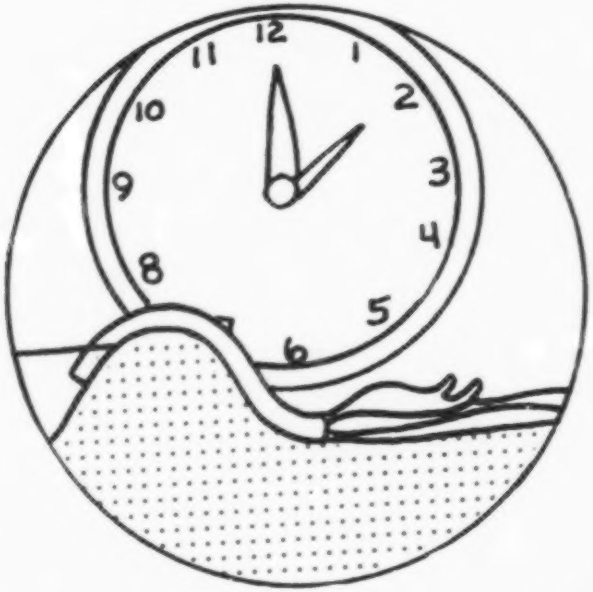
## HOW CAN I KEEP MY RUNOFF LOSSES DOWN?

1. Decrease the size of the stream into the furrows, borders, and basins.

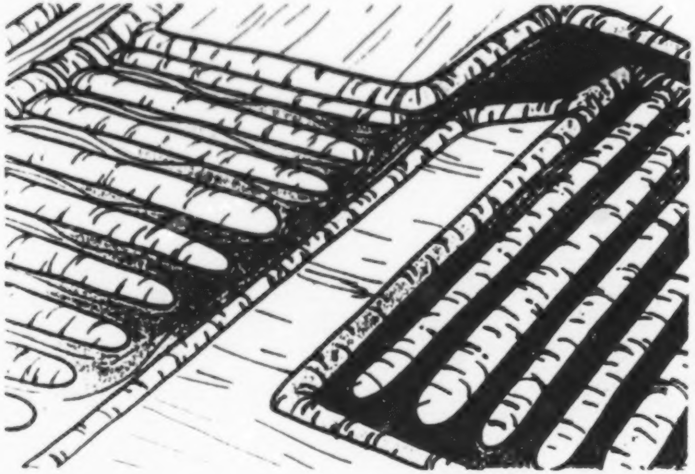


2. Decrease the duration of each irrigation. Give lighter, more frequent irrigations.

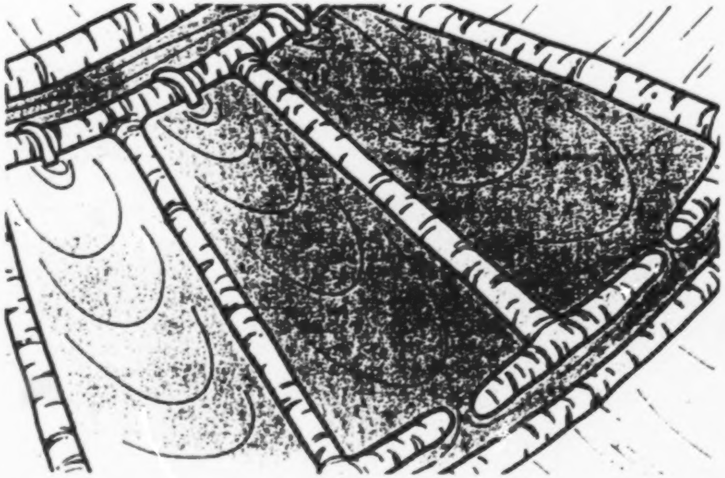
3. Reduce the inflow into the furrows when the water reaches the end.



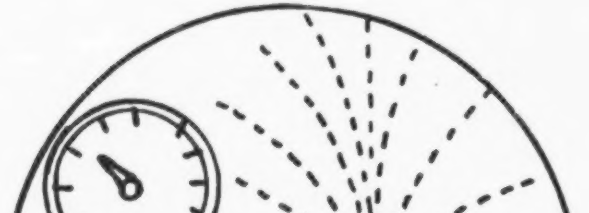
4. Gather the runoff water in reservoirs and pump it back to the head or take it to other fields.



5. With borders, build small dikes at the end (outlet) to hold some of the water back.



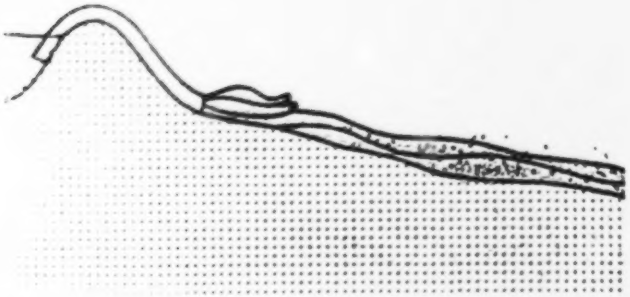
6. Increase sprinkler pressure to break up drops so the water penetrates more easily.



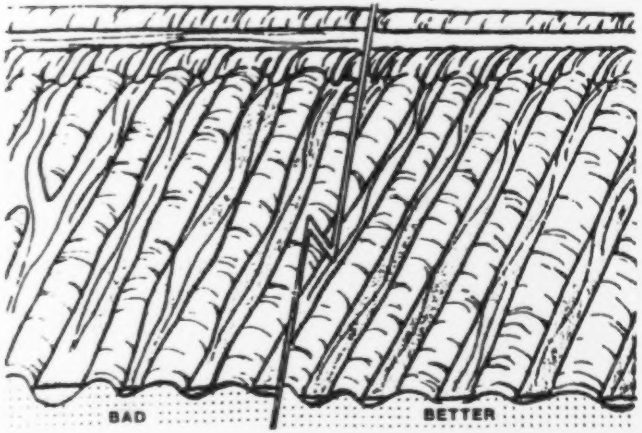
## HOW CAN I STOP EROSION?

First of all observe:

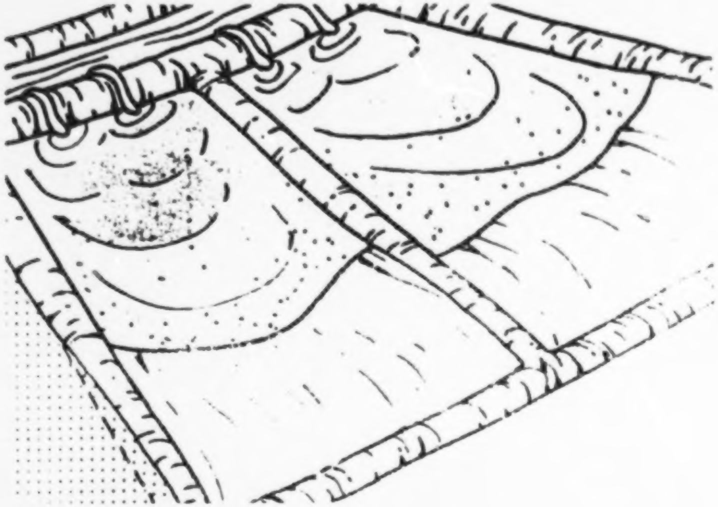
1. Does water enter the field, furrow, border or basin clear and come out looking muddy?

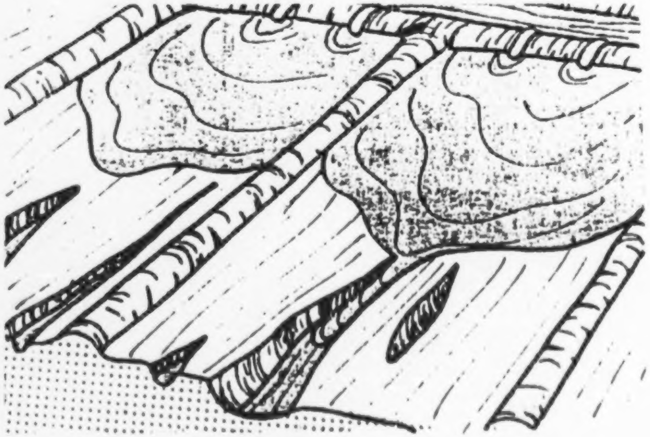


2. Do the shape of the furrows change? Are there gulleys in the fields, furrows, borders or basins?



3. Is soil being deposited at the end of the furrow, border, basin, drain or outlet of the field?

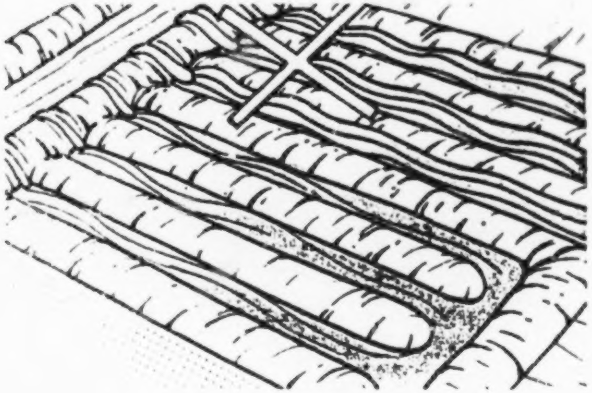




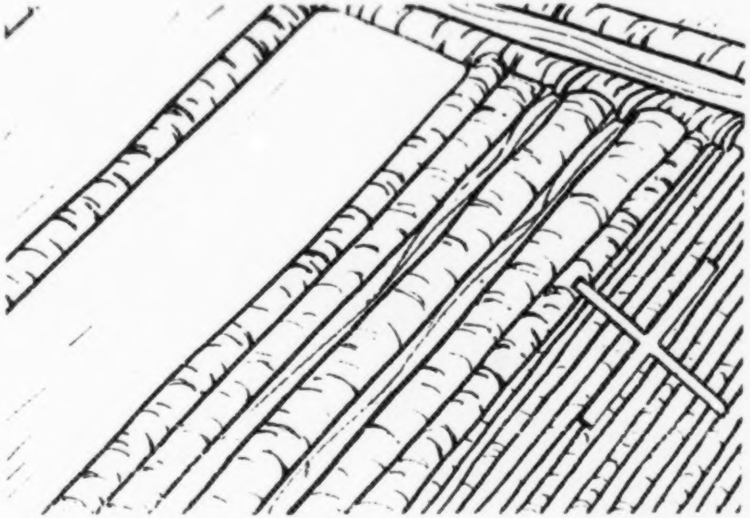
**ALL OF THESE ARE SIGNS OF EROSION.**

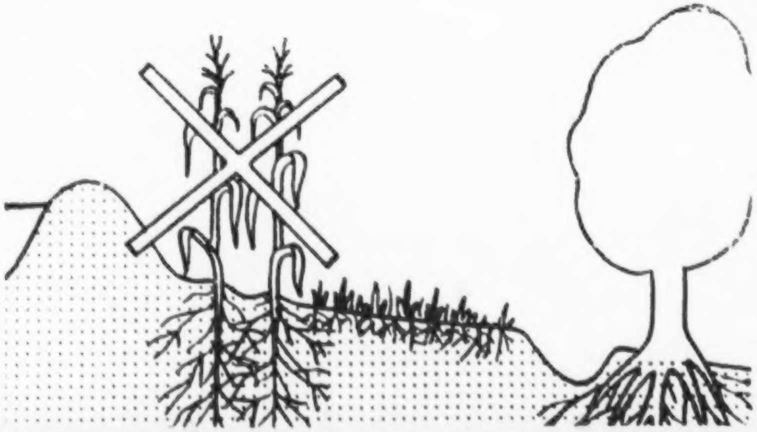
To control erosion, consider one or more of the following.

1. Reduce stream size into the furrow border or basin. You may need to cut run lengths when you cut stream size to maintain uniform irrigation.



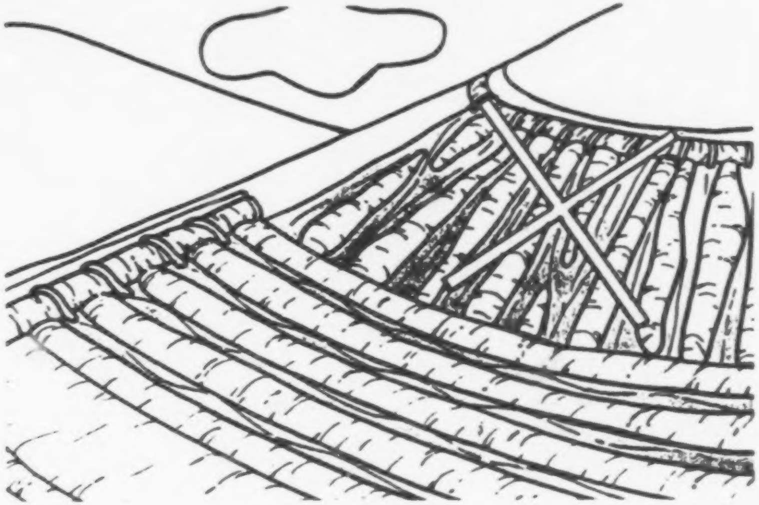
2. Make wider borders or furrows so that the stream will not be as concentrated.



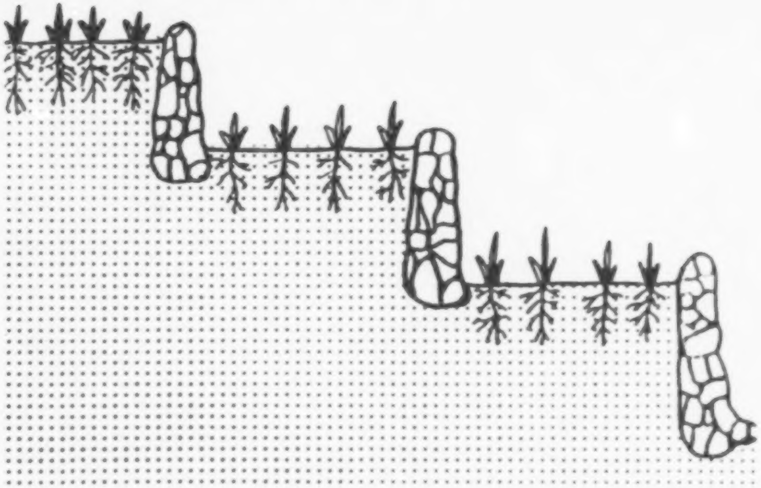


3. Plant crops which will hold the soil in place--permanent pastures, etc.

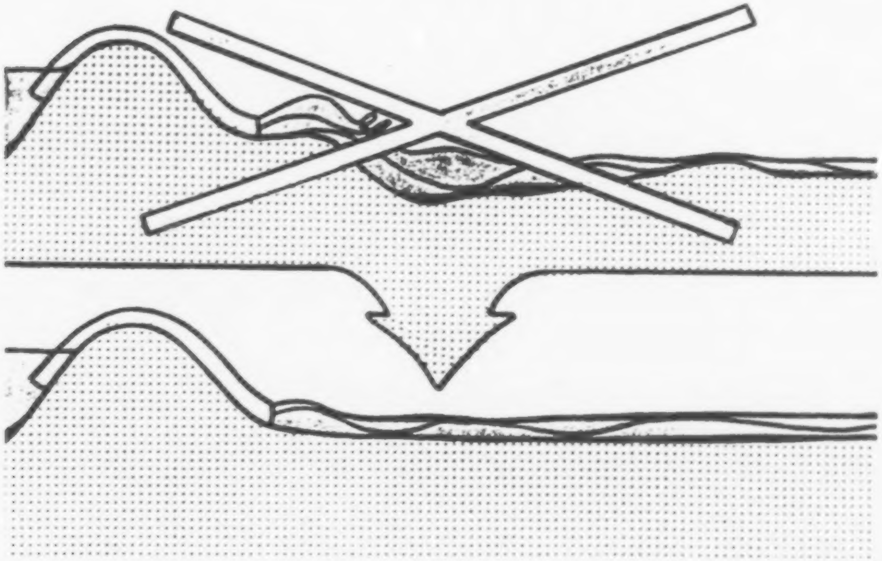
4. Change furrow slopes.



5. Construct terraces.



6. Level or plane the soils.



Especially on steep slopes, always guard against the dangers of erosion.

1. Plant crops which will fix the soil in place--permanent pastures, shrubs, trees, etc.

2. Don't pasture the hillsides constantly, as this destroys the vegetation that protects your sod. Rotate your livestock from one pasture to another.

3. If gullies start to form, eliminate pasturing totally. Plant protective shrubs and trees. You may have to place erosion barriers in the gullies.

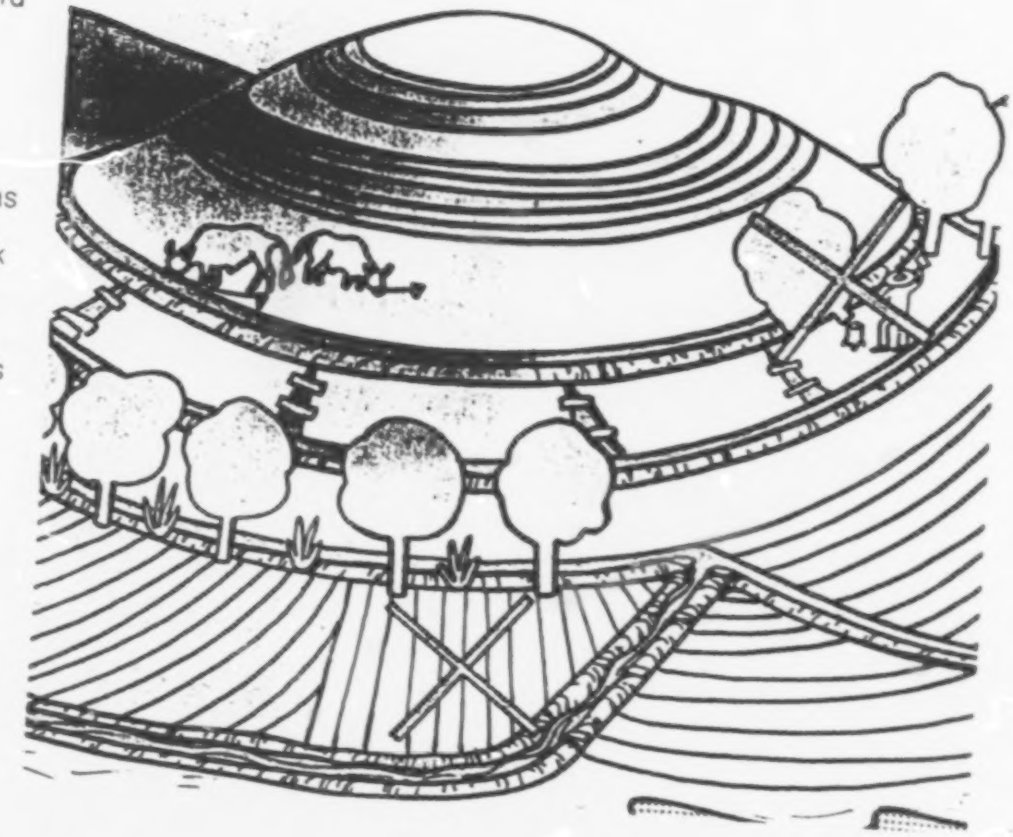
4. If you must plant the hillsides, leave strips of permanent grasses and vegetation between cultivated plots.

5. Don't plant to the edge of steep banks. Leave strips of permanent vegetation.

6. Make sure excess water from irrigation and rain is taken away to adequately protected canals and drains.

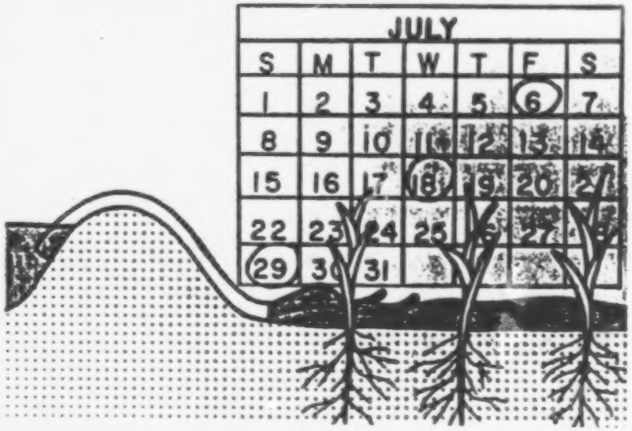
7. Do not destroy existing protective vegetation.

Take care of your soils and insure food for your children!

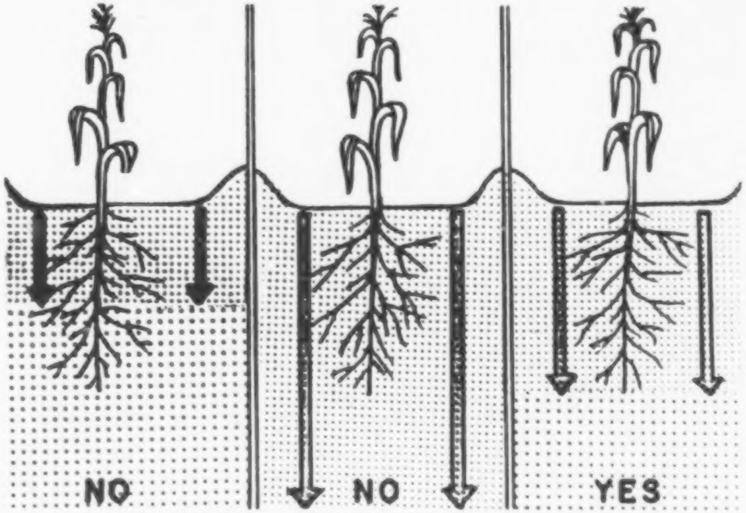


We repeat these recommendations for insuring good irrigation management.

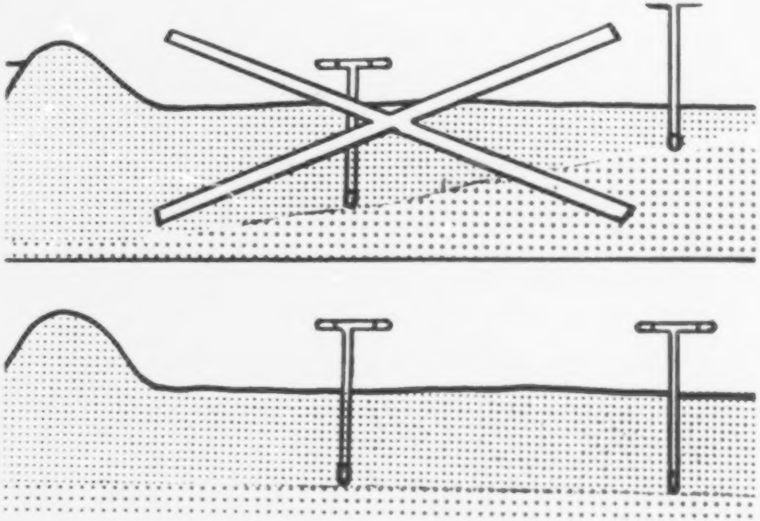
**Irrigate frequently enough so that you do not hurt your crop.**


JULY
S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
8 9 10 11 12 13 14
15 16 17 18 19 20 21
22 23 24 25 26 27 28
29 30 31

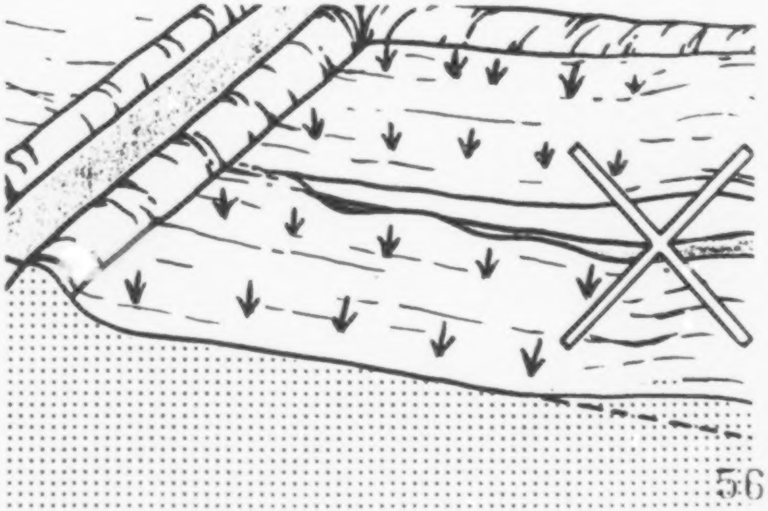
**Add enough water to your soil moisture reservoir, but don't over-irrigate.**



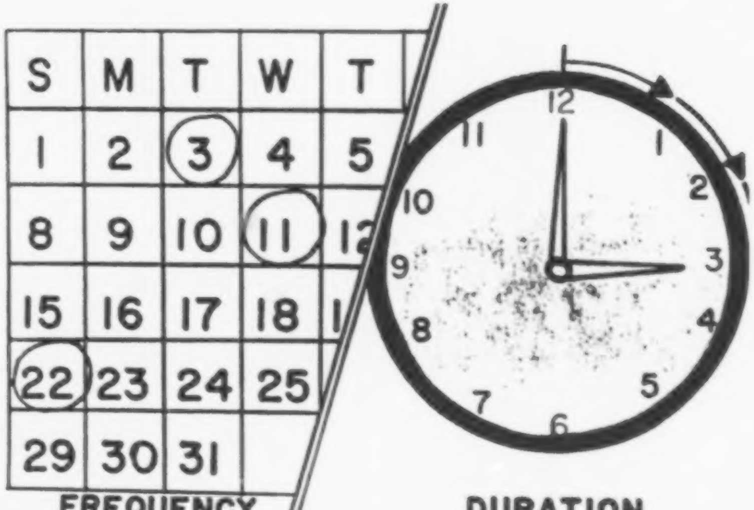
**Make sure your irrigations are uniform.**



**Don't erode your soils.**



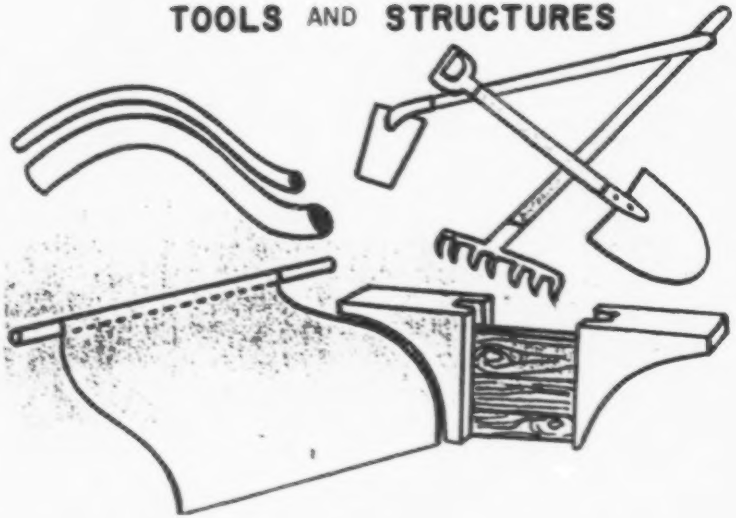
To obtain good irrigations you can control many factors.

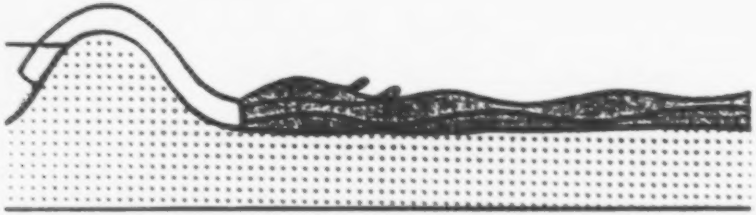

S
M
T
W
T
1
2
3
4
5
8
9
10
11
12
15
16
17
18
22
23
24
25
29
30
31
12
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11

FREQUENCY

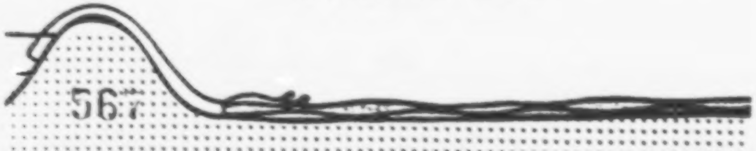
DURATION

TOOLS AND STRUCTURES

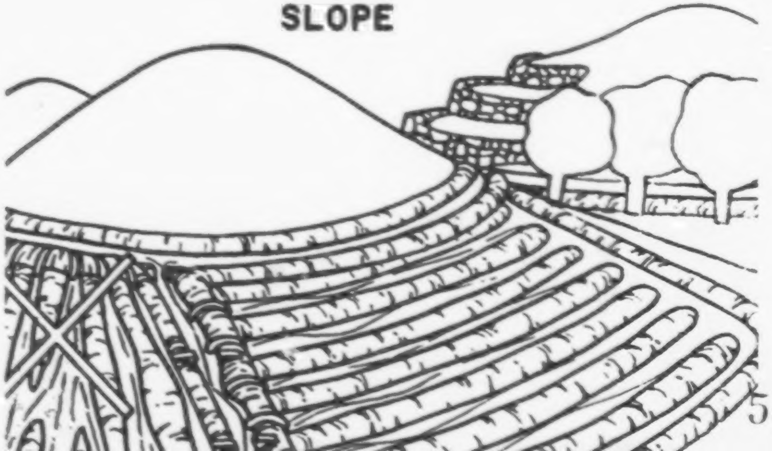


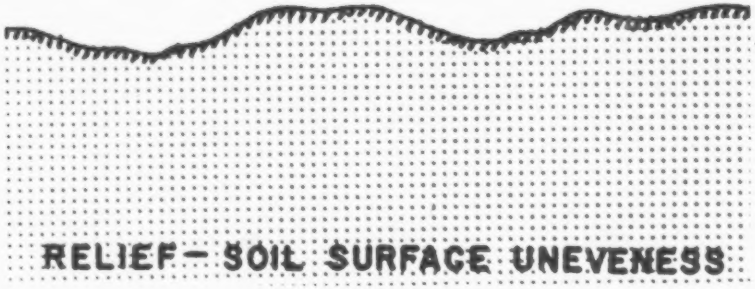


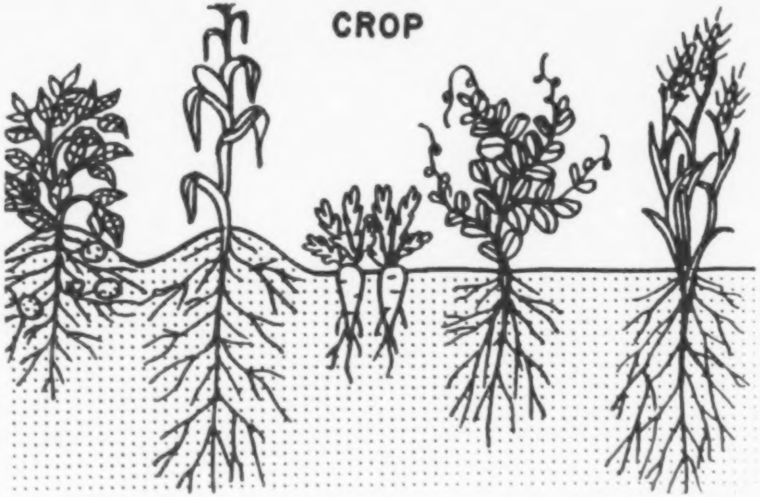
STREAM SIZE

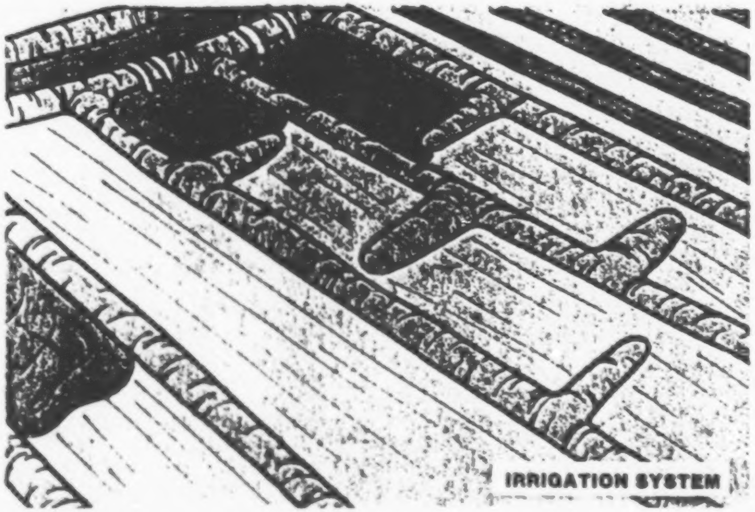


SLOPE




RELIEF — SOIL SURFACE UNEVENESS




IRRIGATION SYSTEM

But remember, when you change one aspect of the operation to eliminate a problem, you may cause other problems. So be careful and make sure everything contributes to "good" irrigation.

# CHAPTER 7

# WATERLOGGING AND SALINITY

7.1 Basic Concepts in Waterlogging and Salinity
7.2 Control of Waterlogging and Salinity Problems
7.3 Irrigation Water Quality

References - Primary: (1), (53)

# 7.1 BASIC CONCEPTS IN WATERLOGGING AND SALINITY

Excess water in the plant root zone restricts the aeration required for optimum plant growth. It also may affect the availability of several nutrients by changing the environment around the roots.

Excess salts in the root zone inhibit water uptake by plants, affect nutrient uptake, and may result in toxicities due to individual salts in the soil solution. Excess exchangeable sodium in the soil may destroy the soil structure to a point where water penetration and aeration of the roots become impossible. Sodium is also toxic to many plants.

Waterlogging and salinity in the soil profile are most often the result of high water tables resulting from inadequate drainage or poor quality irrigation water. Adequate surface drainage allows excess irrigation and rainwater to be evacuated before excess soil saturation occurs or before the water is added to the water table. Adequate subsurface drainage insures that water tables are maintained at a sufficient depth below the soil surface to prevent waterlogging and salt accumulation in the root zone. Salinization of the soil profile is prevented because upward capillary movement of water and salts from the water table does not reach the root zone. Adequate subsurface drainage also allows salts to be removed from the soil profile through the application of excess irrigation water (leaching).

To understand how we may prevent, eliminate, or otherwise deal with a waterlogging or salinity problem, we must first understand how crops and soils respond to excess water and salts.

## 7.1.1 Waterlogging and High Ground water Tables

The growth of most crops is affected when ground water is shallow enough to maintain the soil profile in the root zone wetter than field capacity. This excess water and the resulting continuously wet root zone can lead to some serious and fatal diseases of the root and stem. Working the soil when overly wet can destroy soil structure and thus restrict root growth and drainage further. The chemistry and microbiology of waterlogged soils is changed due to the absence of oxygen. These changes can affect the availability of many nutrients. For example, nitrogen can undergo denitrification more readily and be lost to the atmosphere as a gas. The anaerobic (reducing) environment results in changes to metals and other cations that can result in deficiencies or toxicities. For example, sulfide, and ferrous and manganese ions will accumulate in waterlogged soils.

Crops vary in their tolerances to waterlogging and high water tables. Some crops, such as rice, are adapted to these

572

conditions and can thrive. Table 7.1 presents the different tolerances of some crops.

**TABLE 7.1 Tolerance Levels of Crops to High Ground water Tables and Waterlogging (Ref. 12)**

| | GROUND WATER AT 50 CM | WATERLOGGING |
|---|---|---|
| HIGH TOLERANCE | sugarcane, potatoes, broad beans | rice, willow, plum, strawberries, some grasses |
| MEDIUM TOLERANCE | sugarbeet, wheat, oats, barley, peas, cotton | citrus, bananas, apple,pears, blackberries, onion |
| SENSITIVE | maize, tobacco, | peaches, cherries, olives, peas, beans, date palm |

The capillary fringe is a saturated zone that extends some distance above the water table. Water moves into this zone by capillary movement. The roots on many crops do not generally penetrate closer than 30 cm above the water table. The capillary fringe is thinner in sandy soils than in loam or clay soils. Thus the following depths to ground water are suggested as a minimum for most crops:

Sandy Soils ----------- Rooting Depth + 20 cm
Clay Soils ------------ Rooting Depth + 40 cm
Loam Soils ------------ Rooting Depth + 80 cm

### 7.1.2 Soil and Water Salinity

Crop yields decrease linearly with increasing salt levels above a given threshold level. This threshold level will vary according to the tolerance of the crop. Yield decreases in the presence of toxic salts such as boron are mainly due to the difficulties the crop has in taking up water when concentrations of salt in the soil solution are high. Often crops have a droughty or dry appearance in high salt soils.

Table 7.2 presents the tolerance of different crops to soil and water salinity levels and the effect that increasing salinity levels has on yield. In this table, the ECe (Electrical Conductivity of the Saturated Paste Extract) is a measure of soil salinity, and ECw (Electrical

**TABLE 7.2** Crop Salt Tolerance Levels for Different Crops as Influenced by Irrigation Water or Soil Salinity (Ref. 12)

| **FIELD** | **YIELD POTENTIAL** | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **CROPS** | **100%** | | **90%** | | **75%** | | **50%** | | **0%** | |
| | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ |
| Barley | 8.0 | 5.3 | 10 | 6.7 | 13 | 8.7 | 18 | 12 | 28 | 19 |
| Cotton | 7.7 | 5.1 | 9.6 | 6.4 | 13 | 8.4 | 17 | 12 | 27 | 18 |
| Sugarbeet | 7.0 | 4.7 | 8.7 | 5.8 | 11 | 7.5 | 15 | 10 | 24 | 16 |
| Sorghum | 6.8 | 4.5 | 7.4 | 5.0 | 8.4 | 5.6 | 9.9 | 6.7 | 13 | 8.7 |
| Wheat | 6.0 | 4.0 | 7.4 | 4.9 | 9.5 | 6.3 | 13 | 8.7 | 20 | 13 |
| Wheat, Durum | 5.7 | 3.8 | 7.6 | 5.0 | 10 | 6.9 | 15 | 10 | 24 | 16 |
| Soybean | 5.0 | 3.3 | 5.5 | 3.7 | 6.3 | 4.2 | 7.5 | 5.0 | 10 | 6.7 |
| Cowpea | 4.9 | 3.3 | 5.7 | 3.8 | 7.0 | 4.7 | 9.1 | 6.0 | 13 | 8.8 |
| Peanut | 3.2 | 2.1 | 3.5 | 2.4 | 4.1 | 2.7 | 4.9 | 3.3 | 6.6 | 4.4 |
| Paddy Rice | 3.0 | 2.0 | 3.8 | 2.6 | 5.1 | 3.4 | 7.2 | 4.8 | 11 | 7.6 |
| Sugarcane | 1.7 | 1.1 | 3.4 | 2.3 | 5.9 | 4.0 | 10 | 6.8 | 19 | 12 |
| Corn (Maize) | 1.7 | 1.1 | 3.4 | 2.3 | 5.9 | 4.0 | 10 | 6.8 | 19 | 12 |
| Flax | 1.7 | 1.1 | 3.4 | 2.3 | 5.9 | 4.0 | 10 | 6.8 | 19 | 12 |
| Broadbean | 1.5 | 1.1 | 2.6 | 1.8 | 4.2 | 2.0 | 6.8 | 4.5 | 12 | 8.0 |
| Bean | 1.0 | 0.7 | 1.5 | 1.0 | 2.3 | 1.5 | 3.6 | 2.4 | 6.3 | 4.2 |
| **VEGETABLE CROPS** | | | | | | | | | | |
| Zucchini | 4.7 | 3.1 | 5.8 | 3.8 | 7.4 | 4.9 | 10 | 6.7 | 15 | 10 |
| Beet, Red | 4.0 | 2.7 | 5.1 | 3.4 | 6.8 | 4.5 | 9.6 | 6.4 | 15 | 10 |
| Squash | 3.2 | 2.1 | 3.8 | 2.6 | 4.8 | 3.2 | 6.3 | 4.2 | 9.4 | 6.3 |
| Broccoli | 2.8 | 1.9 | 3.9 | 2.6 | 5.5 | 3.7 | 8.2 | 5.5 | 14 | 9.1 |
| Tomato | 2.5 | 1.7 | 3.5 | 2.3 | 5.0 | 3.4 | 7.6 | 5.0 | 13 | 8.4 |
| Cucumber | 2.5 | 1.7 | 3.3 | 2.2 | 4.4 | 2.9 | 6.3 | 4.2 | 10 | 6.8 |
| Spinach | 2.0 | 1.3 | 3.3 | 2.2 | 5.3 | 3.5 | 8.6 | 5.7 | 15 | 10 |
| Celery | 1.8 | 1.2 | 3.4 | 2.3 | 5.8 | 3.9 | 9.9 | 6.6 | 18 | 12 |
| Cabbage | 1.8 | 1.2 | 2.8 | 1.9 | 4.4 | 2.9 | 7.0 | 4.6 | 12 | 8.1 |
| Potato | 1.7 | 1.1 | 2.5 | 1.7 | 3.8 | 2.5 | 5.9 | 3.9 | 10 | 6.7 |
| Sweet Potato | 1.5 | 1.0 | 2.4 | 1.6 | 3.8 | 2.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 | 11 | 7.1 |
| Pepper | 1.5 | 1.0 | 2.2 | 1.5 | 3.3 | 2.2 | 5.1 | 3.4 | 8.6 | 5.8 |
| Lettuce | 1.3 | 0.9 | 2.1 | 1.4 | 3.2 | 2.1 | 5.1 | 3.4 | 9.0 | 6.0 |
| Radish | 1.2 | 0.8 | 2.0 | 1.3 | 3.1 | 2.1 | 5.0 | 3.4 | 8.9 | 5.9 |
| Onion | 1.2 | 0.8 | 1.8 | 1.2 | 2.8 | 1.8 | 4.3 | 2.9 | 7.4 | 5.0 |
| Carrot | 1.0 | 0.7 | 1.7 | 1.1 | 2.8 | 1.9 | 4.6 | 3.0 | 8.1 | 5.4 |
| Turnip | 0.9 | 0.6 | 2.0 | 1.3 | 3.7 | 2.5 | 6.5 | 4.3 | 12 | 8.0 |
| **FORAGE CROPS** | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ryegrass,per. | 5.6 | 3.7 | 6.9 | 4.6 | 8.9 | 5.9 | 12 | 8.1 | 19 | 13 |
| Vetch,Common | 3.0 | 2.0 | 3.9 | 2.6 | 5.3 | 3.5 | 7.6 | 5.0 | 12 | 8.1 |
| Sudan Grass | 2.8 | 1.9 | 5.1 | 3.4 | 8.6 | 5.7 | 14 | 9.6 | 26 | 17 |
| Forage Cowpea | 2.5 | 1.7 | 3.4 | 2.3 | 4.8 | 3.2 | 7.1 | 4.8 | 12 | 7.8 |
| Alfalfa | 2.0 | 1.3 | 3.4 | 2.2 | 5.4 | 3.6 | 8.8 | 5.9 | 16 | 10 |
| Clover, Berseem | 1.5 | 1.0 | 3.2 | 2.2 | 5.9 | 3.9 | 10 | 6.8 | 19 | 13 |
| Other Clover | 1.5 | 1.0 | 2.3 | 1.6 | 3.6 | 2.4 | 5.7 | 3.8 | 9.8 | 6.6 |

**(Table 7.2 Continued)**

| **FIELD CROPS** | 100% | | 90% | | 75% | | 50% | | 0% | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **YIELD POTENTIAL** | | | | | | | | | |
| | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ | $EC_e$ | $EC_w$ |
| **FRUIT CROPS** | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date Palm | 4.0 | 2.7 | 6.8 | 4.5 | 11 | 7.3 | 18 | 12 | 32 | 21 |
| Grapefruit | 1.8 | 1.2 | 2.4 | 1.6 | 3.4 | 2.2 | 4.9 | 3.3 | 8.0 | 5.4 |
| Orange | 1.7 | 1.1 | 2.3 | 1.6 | 3.3 | 2.2 | 4.8 | 3.2 | 8.0 | 5.3 |
| Peach | 1.7 | 1.1 | 2.2 | 1.5 | 2.9 | 1.9 | 4.1 | 2.7 | 6.5 | 4.3 |
| Apricot | 1.6 | 1.1 | 2.0 | 1.3 | 2.6 | 1.8 | 3.7 | 2.5 | 5.8 | 3.8 |
| Grape | 1.5 | 1.0 | 2.5 | 1.7 | 4.1 | 2.7 | 6.7 | 4.5 | 12 | 7.9 |
| Almond | 1.5 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 1.4 | 2.8 | 1.9 | 4.1 | 2.8 | 6.8 | 4.5 |
| Plum, Prune | 1.5 | 1.0 | 2.1 | 1.4 | 2.9 | 1.9 | 4.3 | 2.9 | 7.1 | 4.7 |
| Blackberry | 1.5 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 1.3 | 2.6 | 1.8 | 3.8 | 2.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 |
| Strawberry | 1.0 | 0.7 | 1.3 | 0.9 | 1.8 | 1.2 | 2.5 | 1.7 | 4.0 | 2.7 |

Conductivity of the Irrigation Water) a measure of water salinity. The Max ECe is the highest ECe that the plant can tolerate. "Yield Potential" is the percent of an optimum yield that can be attained under given growing conditions.Table 7.2 is used as follows: A farmer can produce 50 kg per hectare of corn on good soil. The farmer has a field with an ECe of 3.8, which gives him or her many problems. Using the table, an estimate can be made of an expected yield of roughly 37 kg per hectare (i.e. a 75% Yield Potential) for this field.

Table 7.2 includes general information about relative tolerances to salt, but varietal differences are also very important. Much effort has been put into developing salt tolerant varieties of many crops because of the worldwide salinity problem. In some cases, minor problems can be alleviated by selecting the correct variety.

**Electrical Conductivity (EC)** is the reciprocal of resistance (1/ohms) and is measured in mmhos/cm or in dS/m (dS/m = mmhos/cm). EC is measured with a salinity or conductivity meter, which is a standard piece of equipment in all soil labs and can often be purchased at a reasonable price for field use. $EC_w$ (salinity of water) is measured by simply inserting the conductivity meter in the irrigation water and adjusting for temperature. Measuring $EC_e$ (soil salinity) is a little more complicated, requiring a saturated paste of the soil from which the water is then extracted and the salts measured.

Exchangeable sodium in the soil becomes a problem when the predominant salts in irrigation water or in the soil solution are sodium salts. Soil constituents that determine soil structure, such as clays and organic matter (**soil colloids**), have negative charges (**exchange sites**) on their outer surface that loosely attach to positive ions and molecules (**cations**),

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

such as calcium ($Ca^{++}$), ammonium ($NH_4^+$), and sodium ($Na^+$) (see Figure 7.1). These cations can readily be replaced by other cations (they are **exchangeable**). If there is excessive sodium in the soil solution, it will occupy most of the exchange sites. Sodium is a small cation, so when present in large quantities on the exchange sites, it destroys the separation between soil particles. Then the clay or organic matter collapses on itself, leaving no air spaces or pores (**deflocculation**)(See Figure 7.1). In some cases, the structureless organic matter is dispersed and can be lost in the drainage water, hence the old-fashioned term for these soils is **Black alkali soils.**

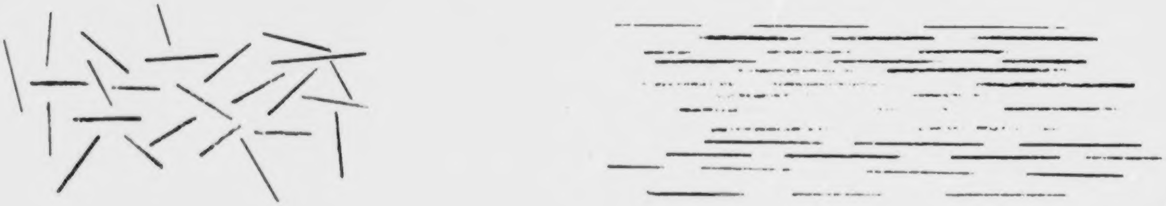


**Figure 7.1 "Normal" and "Sodium" Affected Clay Particles**

Sodium is measured as the **Exchangeable Sodium Percent (ESP)** or as the **Sodium Absorption Ratio (SAR)**. The ESP is simply the percent of all the exchange sites in the soil occupied by sodium. The SAR is more complicated and is merely an index of the extent of the problem.

Very high sodium levels not only affect soil structure but are toxic to many crops.

### 7.1.3 Classification of Salt Affected Soils

Saline Soils

These soils contain sufficient amounts of soluble salts to interfere with germination, growth, and yield of most crop plants. They do not contain enough exchangeable sodium to alter soil characteristics. Technically, a saline soil is defined as a soil with an ECe greater than or equal to 4 mmhos/cm and an Exchangeable Sodium Percent (ESP) less than 15. The soil pH is usually less than 8.5. These soils may have a white crust or white salt crystal accumulation on the surface (salt blooms) so they are sometimes called "white alkali soils." Excess soluble salts can be removed by leaching if drainage permits, as will be discussed.

Saline-Sodic Soils

These soils contain soluble salts and exchangeable sodium in sufficient quantities to interfere with the growth of most crops. Technically, a saline-sodic soil is defined as a soil having an ESP greater than 15 and an ECe greater than or equal to 4 mmhos/cm. The soil colloids (charged particles) are collapsed (deflocculated), and drainage and aeration are very poor. pH is usually in the range of 8-10.

Sodic Soils
These soils contain sufficient exchangeable sodium to interfere with the growth of most crops but do not contain appreciable quantities of soluble salts. Technically, they are soils with an ESP greater than 15 and an ECe of less than 4 mmhos/cm. Drainage and aeration are very poor because soil colloids are very dispersed. The pH is generally above 8.5. These soils are sometimes called "black alkali soils." High pH values generally can be used as a indicator of possible sodium problems, but this is not always true.

### 7.1.4 Evaluating Waterlogging and Salinity Problems

The evaluation of the extent of waterlogging and salinity problems can usually be conducted through simple observation, communication, and possibly some soil analysis. The following steps can be followed:

1) Interview local agronomists, agricultural technicians, and agribusiness personnel. Ask them questions about water table depths, and salinity problems. If such problems exist, how are local farmers taking care of them?

2) Conduct a field reconnaissance to find out if the problem exists in your area. Wells, gravel pits, and deep channels that show the depth to ground water should be observed. If there are few of these, then install pits or auger small observation wells into the soil to depths of 30 to 80 cm below the expected rooting depths (30 cm for sandy soils, 80 cm for loams and fine-textured soils). If soil horizons are reached that are grey, wet, and possibly contain black or red mottles, you have hit "gleyed" or waterlogged horizons. You can assume at this point that soils are poorly drained at this level.

As part of the reconnaissance, observe fields for signs of excess water or salinity, such as:

a) White crusts on the soil surface. There may be a problem even when these are not present.

b) Plants that are stunted, appear droughty, or irregular even though the soil is fairly moist. In cases of high salinity, the leaves may be curled up and yellow. The margins of the leaves may burn, a reddish color is often seen and in some cases the plant may actually die during or shortly after germination and emergence.

c) Use of drainage water, tailwater, or water that has been used extensively for washing, irrigation, or industrial purposes before reaching the field. This problem may exist when the farmer is a tail end user on a major irrigation system. The water can accumulate salts.

d) Soils with poor structure, which appear sticky and plastic when wet and which do not grow a crop. Hard, structureless soil pans can develop at different depths in sodic soils.

e) Standing water or wet spots in parts of the field where crops grow poorly. Standing water in spots after a prolonged drying period are also useful indicators.

f) Soil that is dry and smooth or has slicked over areas without vegetation, sometimes with a thin peeled up skin, can indicate infiltration and sodic soil problems.

g) Absence of field drains for removing excess water.

h) Condition of field drains: Are surface drains full of vegetation or otherwise plugged? Are surface and subsurface drains operating properly?

i) If the opportunity presents itself, take soil samples and have them analyzed if you suspect a salinity problem or look at past samples if any are available.

# 7.2 CONTROL OF WATERLOGGING AND SALINITY PROBLEMS

## 7.2.1 Surface and Subsurface Drains

The first requisite in the prevention or elimination of waterlogging and salinity problems is an adequate drainage system. Very often the natural drainage in an area, along with good water management, is sufficient to eliminate excess water and preclude the need for expensive subsurface drainage systems. Almost every farmer who applies water by surface irrigation, however, or who deals with significant rainfall, should have adequate surface drainage facilities to remove excess water. This will allow the farmer to avoid waterlogging and possible salinity problems at the tail end of borders, furrows, or basins after irrigation or intense rainstorms. Drainage facilities will also allow the prevention of erosion associated with natural movement of excess water over the soil surface.

Surface drains are open channels that collect water as it runs off or into irrigated fields. These drains convey water to a stream or channel where it can be carried safely. The design procedures for these drains are the same as for any open channel (see Chapter 5). The main requirement is that they are able to convey the maximum expected flow rate without erosion. At the tail end of irrigated fields, these drains are often broad and shallow to allow farm machinery to operate efficiently.

Subsurface drainage may be accomplished either through the construction of open trenches or through buried clay or concrete tiles or perforated pipe. Subsurface drainage systems can be classified as **Natural**, **Herringbone**, **Gridiron** or **Interceptor (Cutoff)** types.

**Natural systems** are used in fields where there are small and isolated wet areas. The buried drain lines follow natural draws or depressions.

**Herringbone systems** are useful in situations where the land slopes toward a draw on either side. The main line follows the draw, and the laterals empty into this from both sides.

**Gridiron systems** are similar to the Herringbone except that they enter the main drain from only one side.

**Interceptor drains** are installed across a slope to intercept the passage from higher ground. These drains can prevent the waterlogging of soils below irrigation ditches, springs, or at the foot of a hill. They can be useful in collecting water for recycling into the irrigation system.

The design, drain size, spacing, and depth of these drainage systems are a function of the water table depth desired, the soil permeability (hydraulic conductivity), amount of water to be drained, and economics of construction. Generally, the deeper the drains are installed, the wider the spacing between drains can be. In humid regions, drain spacings of 10 to 50 meters (30 to 150 feet) are common. The closer spacing is used in heavier soils with higher value crops and greater rainfall. In more arid irrigated areas, spacings of 50 to 200 meters (150 to 600 feet) are common.

Tile drain is common in 10, 13, and 15 cm (4, 5, and 6 inch) sizes but can be obtained in greater sizes as can corrugated drainage pipe. Minimum grades are sometimes based on a minimum velocity of 0.45 m/s (1.5 feet per second) at full flow. Surface inlets, outlets and cleanouts, envelope filters, and other structures must be properly designed if the drain system is to operate correctly.

The design of subsurface drains is generally more complex than for surface drains and requires significant knowledge of ground water hydrology. Thus the reader should seek the assistance of a drainage engineer before undertaking the design of expensive subsurface drains. The one possible exception is the Interceptor drain, which can be installed as an open channel below the level of an irrigation canal to provide drainage to land that would otherwise be waterlogged by the canal.

### 7.2.2 Reclamation of Salt Affected Soils

The chemical and physical analysis of soils provides a basis for the diagnosis, treatment, and management of salt affected soils. After diagnosing the problem but before actual reclamation, two steps must be observed.

1. Establish adequate drainage in the area. The water table should be lowered if it is high, and water should be at least 3 to 4 meters below the surface.

2. The land should be level or contour farmed so that the surface of the soil will be covered uniformly by water.

Saline Soil

If the soil is only saline, it can be reclaimed simply by leaching the excess salts below the root zone. The quantity of water required depends on the texture of the soils, the concentration of salts in the soil and in the leaching water (the higher, the more water needed), and the amount of salts to be leached. On the average, 0.5 to 1.25 meters of water are required.

580

Saline Sodic Soil and Sodic soil

If leaching is conducted on a saline-sodic soil, the soil will become sodic and could present more problems than it would have originally. Saline-sodic soils require the leaching process to be accompanied by the application of amendments. The amendments that are used are the same ones that would be utilized on a sodic soil. Sodic soils are generally very poor in infiltration, so amendments are slow to enter soil. For this reason, both compacted saline-sodic soils and sodic soils should undergo deep cultivation such as deep ripping to break up hardpans that prevent infiltration.

### 7.2.3 Correcting Sodium Problems with Amendments

The presence of lime (free calcium carbonate) in soil allows for the widest choice of amendments. To test for this, a spoonful or clod of soil is treated with a few drops of sulfuric acid or hydrochloric acid. If bubbling or fizzing occurs where the acid drops fall, then lime is present. The greater the fizzing, the more lime is present. If the soil contains lime, any of the amendments listed in Table 7.3 can be used. If no lime is present, then only amendments containing soluble calcium are recommended.

**TABLE 7.3 Commonly Used Amendment Materials and Their Equivalent Amendment Values (Ref. 1)**

| | | Tons of Amendment Material Equivalent to: | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (100% Basis) | Chemical Formula | 1 Ton of Pure Gypsum | 1 Ton of Soil Sulfur |
| Gypsum | $CaSO_4.2H_2O$ | 1.0 | 5.38 |
| Soil Sulfur | $S$ | 0.19 | 1.00 |
| Sulfuric Acid | $H_2SO_4$ | 0.61 | 3.2 |
| Ferric Sulfate | $Fe_2(SO_4)_3.9H_2O$ | 1.09 | 5.85 |
| Lime Sulfur | 9% Ca + 24%S | 0.78 | 4.17 |
| Calcium Chloride | $CaCl_2.2H_2O$ | 0.86 | --- |
| Calcium Nitrate | $Ca(NO_3)_2.2H_2O$ | 1.065 | --- |
| Aluminum Sulfate | $Al_2(SO_4)_3$ | --- | 6.34 |

The percent purity is generally given on the bag.

## Types of Amendments

Calcium containing amendments such as gypsum react in the soil as follows:

GYPSUM + SODIUM-SOIL        CALCIUM SOIL + SODIUM SULFATE

Leaching is then undertaken to wash out the sodium sulfate. Repeated applications are necessary in many cases. The amount of gypsum used is substantial, often 1.5 or more tons of material per hectare, because gypsum is not highly water soluble, and, in many cases, the reaction described above takes a long period of time. A more precise measurement of the "gypsum requirement" is available from most soil labs, assuming a material of 100% purity.

Acids such as sulfuric acid undergo a two step process:

1. SULFURIC ACID + SOIL LIME      GYPSUM + $CO_2$ + WATER
2. GYPSUM + SODIUM-SOIL      CALCIUM SOIL + SODIUM SULFATE

Acids are dangerous and corrosive, so handling them can be a problem. The volume applied has to be controlled because of excessive frothing. Occasionally, cheap industrial sources are available but must be used with caution because of the potential for heavy metal contamination. An analysis of spent acids is recommended. Acids are much faster than other reclamation procedures because the reaction is instantaneous.

Acid forming materials such as sulfur are much slower because they undergo a three step process, the first step requiring microbial intervention in the oxidation reaction:

1. SULFUR + OXYGEN + WATER      SULFURIC ACID
2. SULFURIC ACID + SOIL LIME      GYPSUM + $CO_2$ + WATER
3. GYPSUM + SODIUM-SOIL      CALCIUM SOIL + SODIUM SULFATE

These steps can take years.

## Effectiveness and Amount of Amendments

In the absence of a soil analysis for gypsum requirement, a rule of thumb is that something is better than nothing. Gypsum is usually used in large quantities, so 0.5 to 2 metric ton applications per hectare are not unusual. To convert the gypsum requirement to an amount of some other amendment, Table 7.3 offers a simple guideline. Simply multiply the gypsum ton equivalent by the gypsum requirement.

If the material being considered is not 100% pure, a simple calculation will indicate the amount needed to be equivalent to 1 metric ton of pure material:

$$\frac{100\ \%}{\%\ \text{purity}} = \text{m Tons per 1 m ton of pure material.}$$

For example: If gypsum is 60 percent pure, the calculation would be 100/60 = 1.67 m tons. In other words, 1.67 tons of 60 percent pure gypsum is equivalent to 1 m ton of 100% material.

Sulfur presents an additional challenge since not only purity but the fineness of the granules must be accounted for. The finer the material, the faster microbial oxidation will occur. Coarse grade materials are highly insoluble and may take years to be active.

### 7.2.4 Management of Saline and Sodic Soils

Often, it is too expensive or impractical to reclaim saline or sodic soils or even maintain them at low salinity levels. It may be impossible to adequately drain an area, amendments may not be available or may be too expensive, or the water used for irrigation may be of poor quality.

In these situations, there are various management practices that will aid in controlling or reducing the impact of salts or sodium:

1. Selection of crops or crop varieties that have higher tolerances for salt or sodium (see Table 7.2).
2. Use of special planting procedures that will minimize salt accumulation around the seed (see Figure 7.2).
3. Use of the appropriate irrigation method for the root characteristics of the crop (see Figure 7.3).
4. Use of sloping beds and other special land preparation procedures and tillage methods to provide a low salt environment (see Figure 7.4).
5. Use of irrigation water to maintain a high water content to dilute the salts or leach them for germination or from the root zone.
6. Use of physical amendments such as manure and compost for improving soil structure and tilth. Conservation tillage to incorporate crop residues will help create drainage.

7. Deep ripping of soil to break up sodic and other hardpans or other impervious layers to provide internal drainage.

8. Use of chemical amendments as described.

9. Good, sound farming practices and careful fertilizer management.

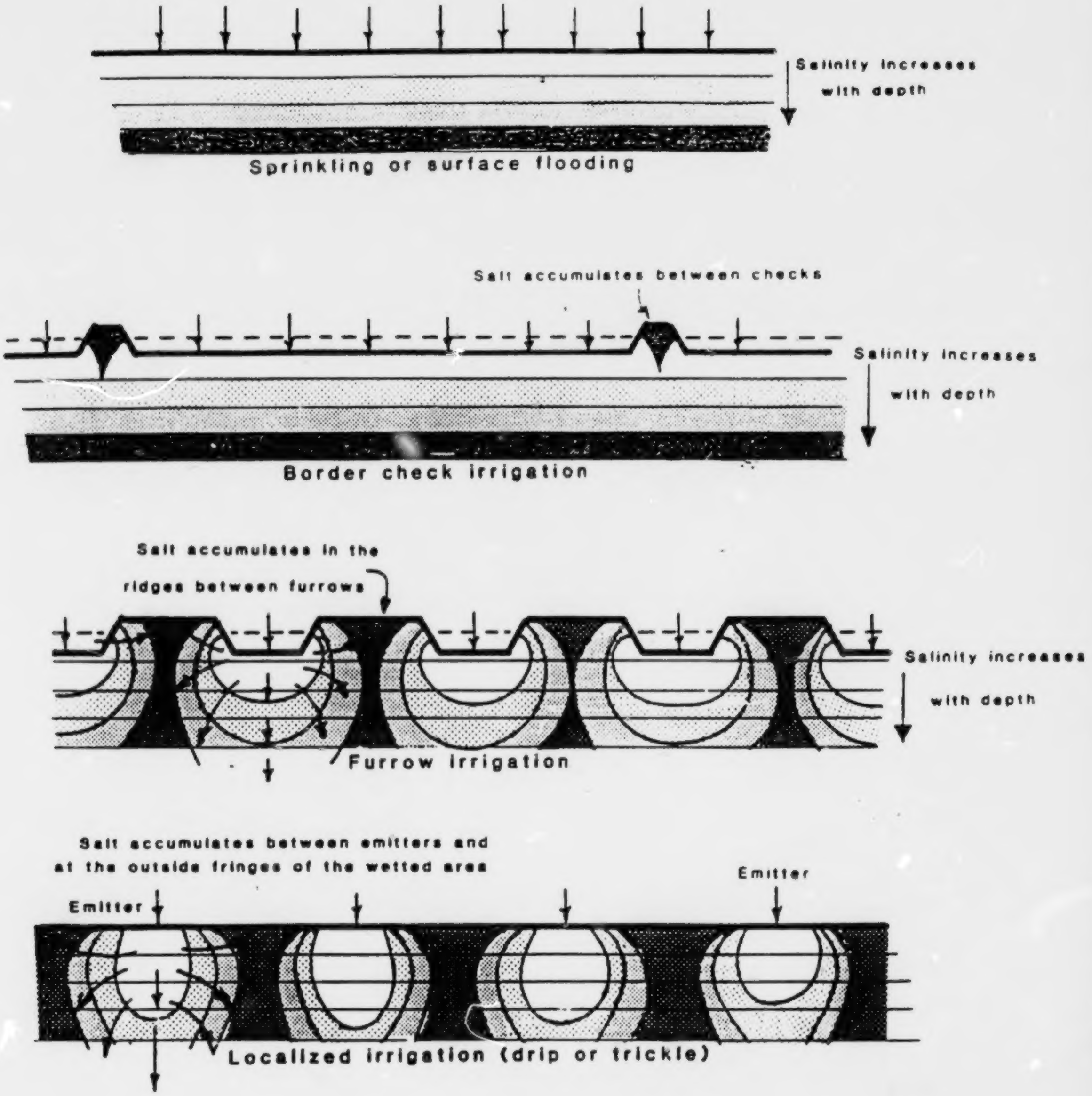
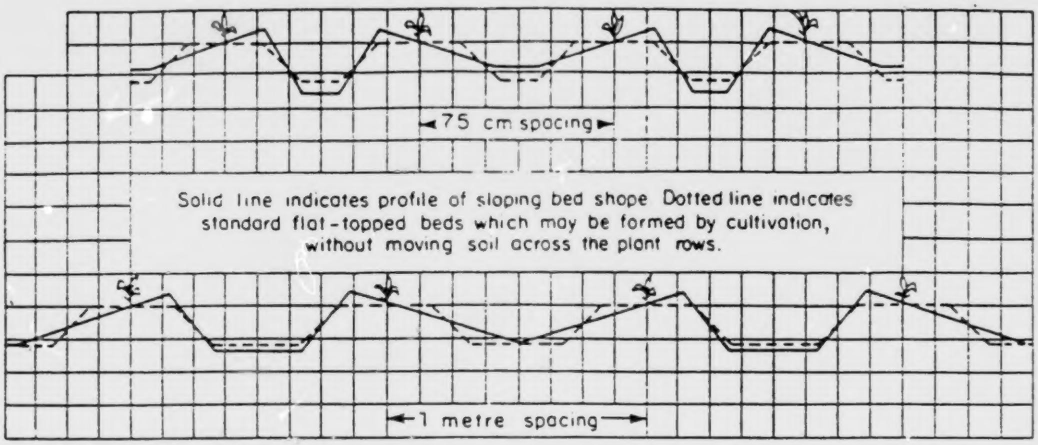
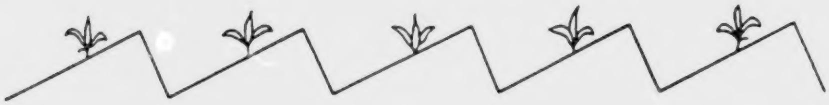

Salinity increases with depth
Sprinkling or surface flooding
Salt accumulates between checks
Salinity increases with depth
Border check irrigation
Salt accumulates in the ridges between furrows
Salinity increases with depth
Furrow irrigation
Salt accumulates between emitters and at the outside fringes of the wetted area
Emitter
Emitter
Localized irrigation (drip or trickle)

Figure 7.2 Salt Accumulation Patterns (Ref. 1)

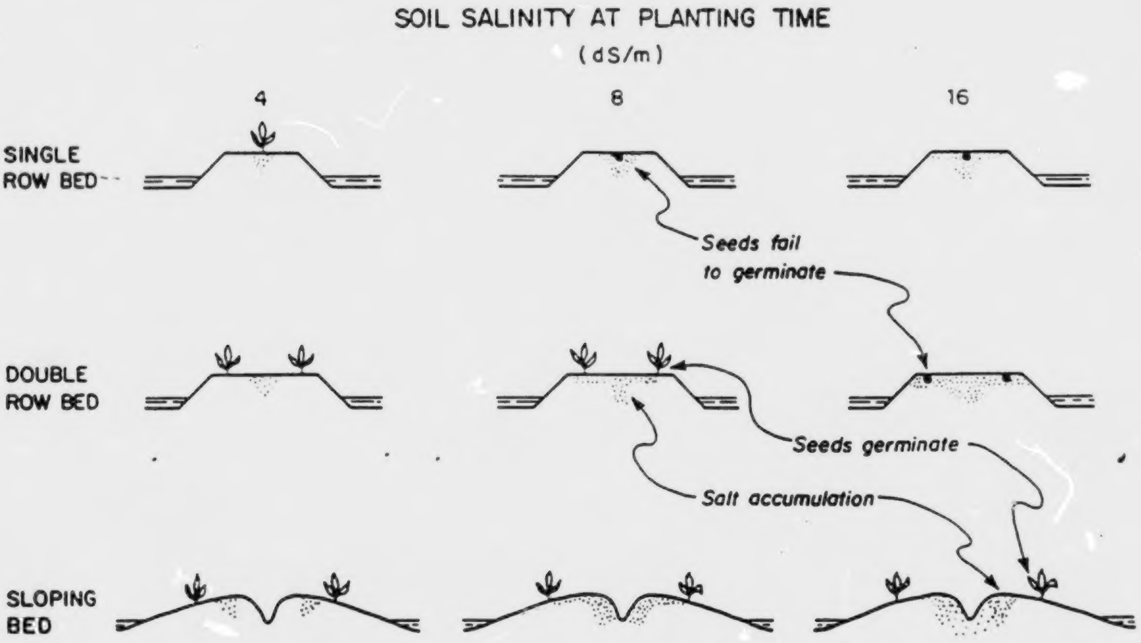

75 cm spacing
1 metre spacing

Solid line indicates profile of sloping bed shape. Dotted line indicates standard flat-topped beds which may be formed by cultivation, without moving soil across the plant rows.

Sloping seedbeds

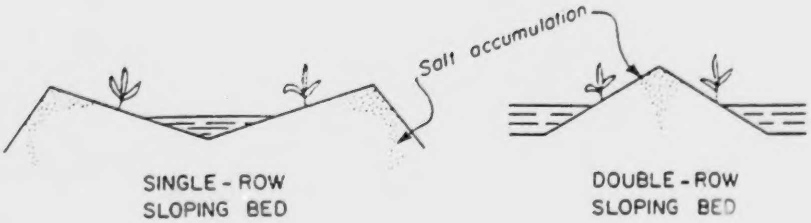


Sloping seedbeds used for salinity and temperature control

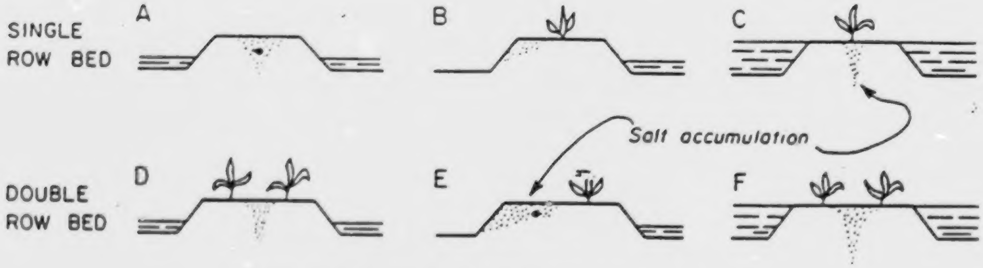

SOIL SALINITY AT PLANTING TIME
(dS/m)
4
8
16
SINGLE ROW BED
DOUBLE ROW BED
SLOPING BED
Seeds fail to germinate
Seeds germinate
Salt accumulation

The pattern of salt build-up depends on bed shape and irrigation method. Seeds sprout only when they are placed so as to avoid excessive salt build-up around them.

**Figure 7.3 Bed Shapes and Salinity Effects (Ref. 1)**


Salt accumulation
SINGLE - ROW SLOPING BED
DOUBLE - ROW SLOPING BED

Salinity control with sloping beds


SINGLE ROW BED
A
B
C
Salt accumulation
DOUBLE ROW BED
D
E
F

Flat top beds and irrigation practice

Figure 7.4 Bed Shapes and Salinity Effects (Ref. 1)

## 7.3 IRRIGATION WATER QUALITY

An understanding of the quality of irrigation water is essential in any salinity or sodium control program. Often, poor quality water is the source of the salinity or sodium problem. Table 7.4 presents some quality guidelines for evaluating the riskinss of the water. If water is of poor quality, tactics such as dilution with other water sources or applications of larger leaching amounts can be implemented.

**TABLE 7.4 Effect of Irrigation Water Quality on Soil Salinity, and Permeability, Toxicity (Ref. 12)**

| | Impact of Irrigation on Water Quality | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | None | Moderate | Severe |
| Salinity | <0.75 | 0.75- 3.0 | >3.0 |
| $EC_w$ (mmhos/cm) | | | |
| Permeability | | | |
| $EC_w$ (mmhos/cm) | >0.50 | 0.50- 0.2 | <0.2 |
| adj. SAR: | | | |
| Montmorillonite[1] | <6.00 | 6.00- 9.0 | >9.0 |
| Illite[2] | <8.00 | 8.00-16.0 | >16.0 |
| Kaolinite[3] | <16.00 | 16.00-24.0 | <24.0 |
| Toxicity (most tree crops) | | | |
| Sodium (adj. SAR)[4] | <3.00 | 3.00- 9.0 | >9.0 |
| Chloride (meq/l)[5] | <4.00 | 4.00-10.0 | >10.0 |
| Boron (mg/l) | <0.75 | 0.75- 2.0 | >2.0 |
| Miscellaneous | | | |
| Nitrogen (mg/l)[6] | <5.00 | 5.00-30.0 | >30.0 |
| Bicarbonate ($HCO_3$) | <1.50 | 1.50- 8.5 | >8.5 |
| pH | Normal Range 6.5 - 8.4 | | |

---

[1] Temperate clay soils, highly expandable, not suited for ceramics or clay tiles.

[2] Temperate clay soils or tropical soils in low rainfall or wet/dry climates. Not highly expandable. Can be used for ceramics.

[3] Tropical clay soils in high rainfall areas. Usually have a distinct red or yellow color.

[4] For most field crops (Ref. 1).

[5] Sprinkler irrigation may cause leaf burn when >3 meq/l.

[6] Excess nitrogen causes excessive vegetative growth, lodging, and delayed crop maturity.

Salinity problems can occur due to saline water being used in irrigation. Decreased soil infiltration rates can be the result of irrigation water that is low in salts but high in sodium or water that has a high sodium to calcium ratio. If infiltration problems are due to high sodium water, the effect will be noticed in the surface few centimeters of the soil.

Other water quality problems to watch for include:

1. Water high in iron, bicarbonate, or gypsum, which can result in unsightly deposits on cash crops.

2. Highly acid (low pH) or corrosive water that can result in severe corrosion of irrigation hardware such as pipelines and wells.

3. Other pH abnormalities (high or low) that can result in encrustation or other effects on crops.

4. Risks from diseases such as Bilharzia (schistosomiasis), malaria, and lymphatic filariasis, or other diseases borne by vectors such as mosquitoes. Vector breeding can often originate in situations where there is low water infiltration rates, use of wastewater for irrigation, or poor drainage.

5. Sediments that can clog irrigation structures, build films on leafy cash crops, making them unacceptable for marketing, and seal soils by depositing structureless silt on soil surfaces.

# APPENDIX A

## MATH SKILLS AND TOOL USE

A.1 Conversion Factors
A.2 Common Formulas
A.3 Trigonometric Table
A.4 List of Common Tools

## A.1 CONVERSION FACTORS

### Abbreviations

ac = acre
cal = calories
cm = centimeter
F = Fahrenheit
gal = gallon
ha = hectare
hp = horsepower
in = inch
km = kilometer
L = liter
m = meter
mm = millimeters
sec = second

C = Celsius
cfs = cubic feet per second
cusec = 1 ft$^3$/sec
ft = foot
gpm = gallons per minute
Hg = Mercury
hr = hour
kg = kilograms
kw = kilowatt
lb = pound
mi = mile
psi = pounds per square inch

### Length

1 inch = 2.54 cm
1 foot = 30.48 cm = 0.3048 m
1 meter = 39.37 in = 3.281 ft
1 mile = 5280 ft = 1609.3 m = 1.61 km
1 kilometer = 1000 m = 0.62137 mi

### Area

1 inch$^2$ = 6.452 cm$^2$
1 foot$^2$ = 0.093 m$^2$
1 acre = 4047 m$^2$ = 0.4047 ha = 43560 ft$^2$
1 hectare = 10000 m$^2$ = 2.471 ac
1 meter$^2$ = 10.76 ft$^2$

### Volume

1 US gallon = 231 in$^3$ = 0.1337 ft$^3$ = 3.785 L
1 foot$^3$ = 7.48 gal = 28.32 L = 0.0283 m$^3$
1 acre-foot = 43560 ft$^3$ = 1233.5 m$^3$
1 meter$^3$ = 1000 L = 264.2 gal = 35.31 ft$^3$
1 liter = 1000 cm$^3$

### Weight

1 kilogram = 2.2 lbs = 35.27 ounces
1 pound = 0.453 kg = 453.59 g
1 ounce = 28.35 g
1 ton = 907.18 kg = 2000 lbs
1 metric ton = 1000 kg = 2204.6 lbs

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

## Flow Rate

1 cfs = 1 ft$^3$/sec = 1 cusec
1 gpm = 0.00223 cfs = 0.0631 L/sec = 0.227 m$^3$/hr
1 cfs = 448.8 gpm = 28.32 L/sec = 101.9 m$^3$/hr
1 m$^3$/hr = 0.2778 L/sec = 0.00981 cfs = 4.403 gpm
1 L/sec = 15.85 gpm = 0.0353 cfs

## Pressure (density of water at 39.2° F, approximately 4° C

1 psi = 2.31 ft water = 2.04 in Hg = 0.0703 kg/cm$^2$
1 ft water = 0.433 psi = 0.883 in Hg = 0.0304 kg/cm$^2$
1 kg/cm$^2$ = 10 m water = 28.97 in Hg = 736 mm Hg
= 14.22 psi = 32.8 ft water
1 m water = 3.28 ft water = 0.1 kg/cm$^2$

## Temperature

Degrees F = (Degrees C x 1.8) + 32

$$\text{Degrees C} = \frac{\text{Degrees F} - 32}{1.8}$$

## Properties of Water

| Temperature | | Vapor Pressure | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| °C | °F | mm Hg | psi | ft water | Specific Gravity |
| 4 | 39 | 6.101 | 0.118 | 0.272 | 1.000 |
| 10 | 50 | 9.209 | 0.178 | 0.411 | 0.999 |
| 15 | 59 | 12.788 | 0.2468 | 0.570 | 0.999 |
| 20 | 68 | 17.535 | 0.338 | 0.782 | 0.998 |

## Absolute Pressure at Various Altitudes

| Altitude | | Atmospheric Pressure | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Feet | Meters | psi | Feet of Water | Meters of Water |
| 0 | 0.0 | 14.7 | 33.9 | 10.33 |
| 500 | 152.4 | 14.4 | 33.3 | 10.14 |
| 1000 | 304.8 | 14.2 | 32.8 | 9.99 |
| 1500 | 457.2 | 13.9 | 32.1 | 9.78 |
| 2000 | 609.6 | 13.7 | 31.5 | 9.60 |
| 2500 | 762.0 | 13.4 | 31.0 | 9.44 |
| 3000 | 914.4 | 13.2 | 30.4 | 9.26 |
| 3500 | 1066.8 | 12.9 | 29.8 | 9.08 |
| 4000 | 1219.2 | 12.7 | 29.2 | 8.90 |
| 4500 | 1371.6 | 12.4 | 28.8 | 8.77 |
| 5000 | 1524.0 | 12.2 | 28.2 | 8.59 |
| 5500 | 1676.4 | 12.0 | 27.6 | 8.41 |
| 6000 | 1828.8 | 11.8 | 27.2 | 8.29 |
| 6500 | 1981.2 | 11.5 | 26.7 | 8.13 |
| 7000 | 2133.6 | 11.3 | 26.2 | 7.98 |
| 7500 | 2286.0 | 11.1 | 25.7 | 7.83 |
| 8000 | 2438.4 | 10.9 | 25.2 | 7.68 |
| 8500 | 2590.8 | 10.7 | 24.7 | 7.52 |
| 9000 | 2743.2 | 10.5 | 24.3 | 7.40 |
| 9500 | 2895.6 | 10.3 | 23.8 | 7.25 |
| 10000 | 3048.0 | 10.1 | 23.4 | 7.13 |

Appendix A.1

Work - Power

1 hp = 0.746 kw
1 kw = 1.34 hp
1 hphr = 0.746 kwhr = 2546.1 BTU
1 kwhr = 1.341 hphr = 3410.1 BTU

1 cm water evaporated requires 590 cal/$cm^2$ of energy or 590 langleys in a day.

## A.2 COMMON FORMULAS

Area of a rectangle = length x width
Area of a triangle = base x height x 1/2
Area of a circle = 3.142 x radius$^2$
Circumference of a circle = 2 x 3.142 x radius
Volume of a cube = base x width x height
Velocity = $\frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}$

## A.3 TRIGONOMETRIC TABLE

(All angles are given in degrees.)

| ANGLE | SINE | TANGENT | ANGLE | SINE | TANGENT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0.0 | 0 | 0 | 23 | .3907 | .4245 |
| 0.5 | .0087 | .0087 | 23.5 | .3987 | .4348 |
| 1.0 | .0175 | .0175 | 24.0 | .4067 | .4452 |
| 1.5 | .0262 | .0262 | 24.5 | .4147 | .4557 |
| 2.0 | .0349 | .0349 | 25.0 | .4226 | .4663 |
| 2.5 | .0436 | .0437 | 25.5 | .4305 | .4770 |
| 3.0 | .0523 | .0524 | 26.0 | .4384 | .4877 |
| 3.5 | .0610 | .0612 | 26.5 | .4462 | .4986 |
| 4.0 | .0698 | .0699 | 27.0 | .4540 | .5095 |
| 4.5 | .0785 | .0787 | 27.5 | .4617 | .5206 |
| 5.0 | .0872 | .0875 | 28.0 | .4695 | .5317 |
| 5.5 | .0958 | .0963 | 28.5 | .4772 | .5430 |
| 6.0 | .1045 | .1051 | 29.0 | .4848 | .5543 |
| 6.5 | .1132 | .1139 | 29.5 | .4924 | .5658 |
| 7.0 | .1219 | .1228 | 30.0 | .5000 | .5774 |
| 7.5 | .1305 | .1317 | 30.5 | .5075 | .5890 |
| 8.0 | .1392 | .1405 | 31.0 | .5150 | .6009 |
| 8.5 | .1478 | .1495 | 31.5 | .5225 | .6128 |
| 9.0 | .1564 | .1584 | 32.0 | .5299 | .6249 |
| 9.5 | .1650 | .1673 | 32.5 | .5373 | .6371 |
| 10.0 | .1736 | .1763 | 33.0 | .5446 | .6494 |
| 10.5 | .1822 | .1853 | 33.5 | .5519 | .6619 |
| 11.0 | .1908 | .1944 | 34.0 | .5592 | .6745 |
| 11.5 | .1994 | .2035 | 34.5 | .5664 | .6873 |
| 12.0 | .2079 | .2126 | 35.0 | .5736 | .7002 |
| 12.5 | .2164 | .2217 | 35.5 | .5807 | .7133 |
| 13.0 | .2250 | .2309 | 36.0 | .5878 | .7265 |
| 13.5 | .2334 | .2401 | 36.5 | .5948 | .7400 |
| 14.0 | .2419 | .2493 | 37.0 | .6018 | .7536 |
| 14.5 | .2504 | .2586 | 37.5 | .6088 | .7673 |
| 15.0 | .2588 | .2679 | 38.0 | .6157 | .7813 |
| 15.5 | .2672 | .2773 | 38.5 | .6225 | .7954 |
| 16.0 | .2756 | .2867 | 39.0 | .6293 | .8098 |
| 16.5 | .2840 | .2962 | 39.5 | .6361 | .8243 |
| 17.0 | .2924 | .3057 | 40.0 | .6428 | .8391 |
| 17.5 | .3007 | .3153 | 40.5 | .6494 | .8541 |
| 18.0 | .3090 | .3249 | 41.0 | .6561 | .8693 |
| 18.5 | .3171 | .3346 | 41.5 | .6626 | .8847 |
| 19.0 | .3256 | .3443 | 42.0 | .6691 | .9004 |
| 19.5 | .3338 | .3541 | 42.5 | .6756 | .9163 |
| 20.0 | .3420 | .3640 | 43.0 | .6820 | .9325 |
| 20.5 | .3502 | .3739 | 43.5 | .6884 | .9490 |
| 21.0 | .3584 | .3839 | 44.0 | .6947 | .9657 |
| 21.5 | .3665 | .3939 | 44.5 | .7009 | .9827 |
| 22.0 | .3746 | .4040 | 45.0 | .7071 | 1.000 |
| 22.5 | .3827 | .4142 | | | |

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

## A.4 LIST OF COMMON TOOLS

- 3-5 HP CENTRIFUGAL PUMP
- ABNEY LEVEL (HAND LEVEL)
- AX
- BUCKETS (5-GALLON)
- CALCULATOR, SCIENTIFIC
- CARPENTER'S LEVEL
- DIGGING BAR
- GRAPH PAPER
- HACK SAW
- HAMMER
- HOES
- HOSE LEVEL (30 m TRANSPARENT 1/2"ø (phi=diameter) TUBE)
- LUMBER
- MACHETE
- METAL SHEERS
- NAILS
- PICKS
- PIPE THREADER
- PIPE WRENCH
- PLASTIC ZIPLOCK BAGS
- PLIERS
- PRESSURE GAUGE
- PVC PIPE (1", 2", 3"ø (phi=diameter), 1 1/2 m LENGTH)
- RAIN BIRD SLIDE RULER CALCULATOR
- ROPE
- RUBBER INNER TUBE
- SAW (RIP, CROSS-CUT)
- SCREW DRIVERS
- SHEET METAL
- SHEETS OF PLASTIC (15-20 $m^2$)
- SHOVELS
- SOIL AUGER
- STOP WATCH
- STRING
- SURVEY ROD
- TAPE MEASURE - LARGE (50 m); SMALL (3 m)
- TEFLON TAPE
- VICE GRIPS
- WOOD AND METAL FILES
- WRENCH

# APPENDIX B

## COMMUNITY ORGANIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT

B.1 Community Situation Analysis/Needs Assessment
B.2 Rapid Rural Appraisal
B.3 Water Users Associations
B.4 Formal and Non-Formal Communication Techniques
B.5 Problem Solving
B.6 Project Planning and Proposal Writing
B.7 Economic Analysis
B.8 Financial Analysis

References - Primary: (6), (8), (17), (23), (29), (46)
Other: (4), (31-33), (36), (37), (49)

## B.1 COMMUNITY SITUATION ANALYSIS/NEEDS ASSESSMENT

When involved in rural development, problems in poor areas can appear staggering and overwhelming. A development worker or a development committee may want to solve all problems, but villagers may be able or willing to work on only one or a few. With so many problems to solve but limited time and resources, a complete and accurate assessment of needs is essential. A needs assessment identifies and prioritizes a community's problems so they can be solved efficiently. It focuses general needs into specific obtainable goals.

Identifying a community's needs is only half the equation in development program planning. The community's resources, physical and social, must also be identified to determine the best methods and technologies required to solve a problem. A good appraisal can focus development work on important and solvable problems using technology that is locally available, understandable and transferable. Too often development projects designed by outside experts have scratched an itch that wasn't there and have used an exotic and expensive technology.

A project that addresses a pressing community need will generate genuine enthusiasm. Using appropriate technology to address a problem will ensure that villagers can afford the technology, repair it when it breaks down, and adapt it to new problems and situations. Such a project can live on beyond the funding life. Community situational analysis and needs assessment is the first step in matching a technology to local conditions.

Most irrigation projects involve a number of people in a community. Irrigation projects involve the farmers who will use the water for irrigation, local and state officials who administer water rights, irrigation equipment suppliers, and a number of other individuals and organizations. Most irrigation projects can be developed and operated successfully only with community participation during all phases. From the beginning of the planning for an irrigation project, the community must be involved. The community must feel that irrigation is a priority need if it is to devote the time, energy, and other resources to the project. Thus a community needs assessment should be part of any project in its early phases. If the project's priority is shown to be improving agricultural production or stabilizing food supplies, the idea will be well received.

Along with the needs assessment should come evaluation of the resource base -- physical, social, legal, and possibly even religious. If the right conditions are not present the project may have very limited success. For example, a project cannot be built if resources are not available or if other needs require the investment of scarce resources. Physical availability of water or limits on its availability due to water rights considerations may be serious limitations. Rapid appraisal techniques are useful in developing the need and feasibility of irrigation. This section presents some basic concepts on community analysis and needs assessment as well as some rapid appraisal techniques. It also highlights the most important human and physical resources that must be evaluated when determining whether or not irrigation will be developed and what the benefits and limitations of irrigation might be.

# B.2 RAPID RURAL APPRAISAL

## B.2.1 General Concepts

Rapid rural appraisal(RRA) was developed to enable rapid decision making in rural development projects. Techniques have evolved from the need to get good quality data fast while avoiding the expensive and time consuming traditional survey methods used by researchers or total immersion methods used by ethnographic studies. There are various methods that can be used in RRA. The purpose of the appraisal will determine which method can be used.

As an example to illustrate the general approach to RRA, consider a village where family income is too low to meet all expenses. Families must seek temporary employment elsewhere. The Volunteer involved in rural development in this village identifies this very general need. He or she then conducts an appraisal with community leaders and indigenous agricultural experts using direct observation and guided interviews. This appraisal generates a list of more specific problems related to low income levels. A meeting with community members results in the analysis, prioritization, and development of a specific program goal.

To accomplish this goal, a situational analysis is conducted to identify community and outside resources that can be applied to solving problems and constraints. The situational analysis will also identify potential problems that need to be considered in the project design. More meetings and data collection follow to adapt and verify the program using other appraisal methods. This example illustrates that community needs assessment\situational analysis is an iterative process continually evolving as programs grow.

Quick-and-simple investigations require some general principles to avoid incomplete data collection or inappropriate and misconstrued information. These are:

1. **Take sufficient time.** Rushing can result in incomplete or inaccurate results.

2. **Use a participatory approach.** Local people's knowledge of soils, seasons, plants, domestic and wild animals, farming practices, diet, cooking practices, child care, as well as social customs, relations, and organizations is very important to consider. Ask rural people to identify the problems and resources.

3. **Select community representatives carefully** to avoid incomplete data or personal biases and hidden agendas. In many traditional cultures, there are hidden leaders who

aren't obvious to an outsider but are instrumental in decision making in a community. A useful method for identifying community power actors and creating a committee of local participants identifies the following four power roles (Ref. 49):

- **Positional Power:** easily identifiable leaders, such as government officials and teachers.

- **Reputational Power:** leaders typically known by their reputation but their identity may be less obvious. Examples include practitioners of indigenous traditions, successful farmers, and religious leaders.

- **Decision Making:** instrumental leaders in the resolution of community issues who may not be represented above. Examples are elders and ex-official leaders.

- **Social Participation:** active leaders in community voluntary associations. Examples include religious leaders and club leaders.

4. **Use key indicators** that integrate several variables. Investigating, calibrating and measuring these parameters can save time.

   Some examples include:

   - soil color and characteristics,
   - plant species present and appearance of growth,
   - farm size and condition,
   - nutritional condition of household members, and
   - soil cover and erosion.

5. **Use an iterative and continuing approach** to identify trends instead of making a snapshot assessment. With experience, participants in rapid rural appraisals will improve their accuracy and completeness in identifying community needs and resources.

### B.2.2 Methods of Rapid Rural Appraisal

There are many methods for rapid rural appraisal. Any one method should not be relied on alone, and a combination of methods is recommended. Local conditions and the abilities of local participants should determine the direction of the appraisal. Local participation is essential in a rural appraisal.

1. **Guided interview**. There is no formal questionnaire but a simple checklist of questions that the interviewer uses as a flexible guide. Not all questions are asked of all

interviewees, but a composite is developed. Casual conversations result in more valuable information and encounter less distrust and resistance than formal questionnaires. Women, children, and other development projects personnel should be interviewed along with village men.

The question guide should be reviewed before direct conversation is undertaken. Notes and answers are jotted down after the interview to avoid discomfort and suspicion. The questions asked will vary with the purpose of the appraisal. They can be as varied as, for example, what disease problems occur in a certain crop; how are family economic decisions made and who makes them; what are your fertilizer sources, costs of production; and what is a typical diet.

2. **Direct observation.** This method will enable one to avoid being misled by myth. The importance of walking, seeing, and asking is stressed. Biases are left behind. Even the less experienced eye can identify important facts, such as the kinds of crops and livestock raised, water resources, topography, availability of transportation, and marketing possibilities. Those with more experience will collect more information.

   An example of this method is walking with village leaders through the village and observing how many villagers are planting a certain crop or pruning their fruit trees. A very effective, though time consuming method, is learning by doing. For example, by hiring oneself out as a laborer to farmers, one learns local farming practices.

3. **Informal transects.** This method involves walking away from the road at right angles periodically and observing soil, crop, or other conditions, depending on the purpose of the appraisal. This method is best conducted after some experience has been gained as an observer or in the company of a village expert or leader. It is a useful method for gathering baseline data. Example topics for baseline information include the incidence of a crop disease or weed species, soil conditions, and watershed conditions.

4. **Local researchers.** Making use of ad hoc research by local students or by national university students can be a quick source of excellent and practical information. Many agricultural schools require field study, but these students are not commonly available at the local level. A variant to this method is making use of local secondary students to conduct local studies or applied research. Their knowledge of local conditions and enthusiasm can result in excellent data. Collaboration with local instructors may even add this study to their curriculum.

5. **Local experts** can be used to inventory local needs and resources as long as cross-checking guards against biases and hidden agendas are made. A local development committee would be able to identify these experts or might even serve in this capacity. Again, it is important to include groups that might be excluded, such as women, the poorer families, and indigenous or traditional experts.

6. **Reading and collecting** of local information provides baseline data. Maps, histories, census data, anthropological ethnographies, and records of local cooperatives, health posts, marketing organizations, stores, distributors, feed mills, and governmental organizations are all valid sources. Aerial inspection for general appraisals and less accessible locations is useful for a big view of the topography, soils, and vegetation, if possible.

7. **Meetings** with good representation involve many people, allow people to bounce ideas off one another, and discuss disagreements, and limit the potential for biases. In some cultures, people may not be accustomed to participating freely in a meeting. Information may be limited because these individuals may not express opinions that are not in agreement with other villagers, village power actors, or leaders. A good moderator is required to bring all opinions into the open.

8. **Brainstorming techniques** involve a panel of community leaders or group participants who meet to develop a list of community needs and resources and prioritize them from the point of view of the group members. The advantage of this method is that it not only gathers good information but is a learning and empowering process.

   The first step is a brainstorming period where ideas are presented without evaluation. Then the group eliminates items that do not belong in the list, such as needs that are not true needs. The next step is to arrange the problems or resources (depending on the purpose of the brainstorming session) into similar groups and eliminate repetitions. Finally, priorities are developed by the group from the list.

9. **The Sondeo or a multidisciplinary team rapid survey method** is both systematic and open. It can draw information that is not obvious but very important. The process is also participatory by design. It allows the problem to determine the direction of the process as opposed to the process determining the problem. The survey team can consist of engineers, agronomists, socioeconomists, and local representatives. In its traditional form, it is a six-day procedure but variations

should never take longer than 2 weeks. The following method is adapted from Ref. 23:

Day 1 - General reconnaissance of the area by the whole team as a unit. Interviews are general. After each interview the team meets to interpret results. In these discussions each discipline's interpretation of facts and view is critical.

Day 2 - Team members break up into pairs for reconnaissance interviews and discussions for a half day. Then the group meets to discuss findings and plan the direction of questions for the next day.

Day 3 - Repeat of Day 2, only pair members are switched. There should be a convergence of opinions and topics forming now. Interview/discussion cycles are important at this stage as opposed to just interviews. Interview topics and questions are more specific and are determined during the discussion periods. The interview guide is not a questionnaire but a checklist of topics (guided interviews). This checklist covers and divides topics into bite-size chunks that can easily be covered with a single individual or family. The results of the previous days will set the direction of the process.

Day 4 - Repeat of interview/discussion cycles, but before 5th day, team members are given a portion of the report to write. Members need to be close for these last days to share information. Many three-cornered discussions should be included between interviewee, social scientist, and agricultural scientist to identify problems and resources and propose ideas for appropriate technologies.

Day 5 - Report writing and return to the field to clarify points if necessary.

Day 6 - Report sections are read, conclusions and recommendations are drawn. A single report is compiled by the team.

### B.2.3 Information to Gather on an Area or Group

Human Resources

**Economic**: Sources of income, distribution of income in the community or group, alternative sources of income, who are the poorest people, how do their income sources compare to richer members, how do people save, sources of possible loans and credit, interest rates, collateral and repayment of loans, who makes decisions and how are family economic decisions made, divisions of labor in families and among community members, problems with economic exploitation, opinions about economic future. How important is irrigation to the economic well being of the community or how important could it be? If possible, compare the economic condition of farmers who have irrigation available to those who don't.

**Social:** How are families structured, inter-familiar relationships, do the people work well in groups, what are the rights and responsibilities of group labor, forms of group labor, what are the barriers to cooperation, examples of successes, what is respected in the village, how are innovators looked upon, who are the community leaders and why, are there seasonal migrations, is there faith in development, what development organizations exist, problems with paternalism, literacy. Are there existing water users organizations? Are they effective in distributing water equitably and efficiently? Are they capable of maintaining the irrigation systems and collecting fees for the purpose? What can be done to improve existing organizations? If there are no existing water users organizations, could one be formed with an existing organization as a basis?

**Political:** What government programs affect the village, government's policy towards private development, local government officials, political history, strength of local government and responsiveness to local needs, official regulations regarding water rights and land tillage. Is irrigation a political priority? If irrigation is a priority, then it is generally much easier to obtain support for new projects in terms of resources.

**Legal - Water Rights:** What are the water laws of the country or state? How is a water right established, transferred, or taken away? What is the water rights situation? Can new water rights be established, or is the water supply too limited to accommodate new rights? If a water right is established, how secure is it? Can other, more powerful individuals deprive the user of this water in the future?

**Health:** Diet, nutritional state of villagers both poor and rich, seasonal food problems, sources of food, common diseases, health care available on the local level. Could nutrition and health be improved through the use of irrigation to grow vegetables or other crops needed to improve the food supply?

## Physical Resources

**Area:** Topography, water resources, local soils, climate, rainfall, ecological dangers, homogeneity of area, forestry resources, existing irrigation infrastructure and condition.

**Agriculture:** Crops grown, cropping practices, alternative crops tried in the past, fertilizer used, pest and disease problems, irrigation present and potential, size of farms in the area and distribution, tenancy relationships, price of land and market, possible land expansion, source of seed and reliability of seed sources, crop rotations, storage methods, costs of production, cash crops and subsistence crops, potential new crops, local seed selection practices, poisonous plants in the area, draft animals used, livestock present and distribution in the community, feed and fodder for livestock, vaccinations, small animals raised, local breeding practices, limiting resources of crop and livestock production.

**Markets:** Where are they and how do they operate, are they free, government regulation and promotion, black or informal market present, taxation, co-ops present and effect on markets, transportation used and reliability, local processing done, availability of price and marketing information, marketing bottlenecks, purchasing contracts available, monopolies present, seasonal problems in transportation, seasonal price trends.

It is often useful to view and analyze needs in terms of one of the four need dimension categories listed below.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Felt needs:** | a wish list, unrestrained by cost reality and priorities. |
| **Expressed needs:** | needs of a community expressed by their activities. |
| **Normative needs:** | needs from the perspective of experts in the field or public policy. |
| **Comparative needs:** | needs resulting from inequalities and services. |

This will improve the focus of a needs assessment.

## B.3 WATER USERS ASSOCIATIONS

(Adapted from Refs. 29 and 37)

Irrigated agriculture, by its very nature, is a joint enterprise. It requires cooperation between all users involved in the operation, maintenance, and improvement of the irrigation system. Experience has shown that without active participation of farmers, irrigation systems are rarely very efficient or cost effective (Ref. 37). A water users association is the connection between the physical irrigation system and the surrounding social systems. This section will attempt to address the role, formation, and structure of a water users association.

A water users association is a collaborative effort between individuals served by a common source of water to allocate, distribute, and manage water in an efficient manner for the benefit of all users. Associations vary in structure and can have important roles from early in the design of an irrigation system to daily management of an established system. Some important aspects and benefits from the formation of these organizations include:

1) A water users association can be essential to the securement and protection of water rights.

2) A water users association can get farmers involved in local decision making and give them a sense of ownership. Local ownership will tend to keep an irrigation system responsive to local needs. It will encourage users to be more involved in the management and maintenance of the system.

3) Farmer cooperation can result in less time required for system operation. In the case of a government-run system, there is less administrative time spent coordinating between a government agency and farmers on system management and maintenance. The farmers themselves are running these activities. In the case of an undefined management structure for a system, there is less disorganization and time spent trying to make management decisions, as well as less time spent repairing systems that didn't receive proper management and maintenance.

4) In the design or improvement of a system, local wisdom and experience of farmers should be applied to improve system designs. This will assure a system is adapted to local social systems, land tenure patterns,topography, and soil conditions.

5) A water users association can be an important liaison between the local system and outside government and non-government agencies, including:

- extension agencies with alternative or new sources of seed, cultural practices, fertilizers, and agro-chemicals;
- government water authorities;
- engineers and other professionals; and
- funding agencies or entities.

6) The association provides local administration of the irrigation system through operation, maintenance, and management of physical facilities. This can involve hiring personnel to maintain a system or organizing group labor for the management of a system. It is more responsive to local needs than a distant government agency if users are properly trained.

7) The association, if properly organized, will provide equitable distribution of water to all users. This can involve hiring a ditch walker to supervise water distribution or organizing irrigation schedules among members. Proper training is required to assure a water users association can effectively and efficiently manage the distribution of project water, so tail end users don't get shorted.

8) A water users association may act as a third party, legal entity, or court to resolve water disputes among members.

9) The association can also collect water fees from members to pay for the upkeep and improvement of facilities. Pricing of water to its real value encourages farmers to use it wisely and provides funds for system operation. These funds can then be applied to pay for:

- salary of a ditch walker or other personnel to manage and maintain a system,
- replacing structures,
- purchase of equipment and tools,
- routine maintenance, and
- system improvement.

A water users association can have many formats to perform some or all of the functions listed above. No blueprint exists for gaining effective farmer involvement. In forming a water users association, some guidelines include:

1) Initiate an association where a predictable water supply is assured. This is especially important in regards to collection of fees and participation in group activities.

2) Start with local organizations. Build upon and strengthen these. Local informal leadership works within the local cultural context. An outside change agent should

use much caution before introducing new organizational forms.

3) Do not bypass group leaders and leaders of factions. For example, equal representation is needed by head and tail water users.

4) The institutional and physical environments are important determinants in the structure of a water users association. Governmental agencies may require various levels of control of a project. The first step in building an effective water users association may be getting the water authority to release some control to the local level.

Water user associations vary in structure according to factors presented above but important and common structural components to be considered include the following:

**1) Establishment**

a) Voluntary - small water projects developed without extensive government assistance often form water users organizations to insure that the system is operated fairly and efficiently. These voluntary organizations may have only two water users or they may have several. Their rules and regulations are generally written within a legal framework to assure a common understanding for present and future users. The rules and regulations may be as simple as indicating when meetings will be held, how water deliveries will be scheduled, and how maintenance activities will be organized and paid for.

b) Compulsory - either by government or by a majority of the water users electing to do so. Government sponsored projects that serve a number of water users generally require that a water users organization be formed. The government may provide assistance in setting up the organization.

**2) Basis for Organization**

a) Water Laws and Water Rights - Water laws are developed to protect the water rights of an individual or group and provide the legal framework for establishing, transferring, and otherwise administering water rights. In some countries all water users along a stream or canal may have equal rights to water, but when water is in short supply the state may impose certain rules and regulations. These rules or laws may establish that a farmer's water right is based on landholding or antiquity of usage. The farmer's water rights are often expressed in terms of flow rate, volume of water, or time of availability. Once a water right is established the laws provide mechanisms for safeguarding these rights. Generally, to establish a water right the user must insure that he/she will not injure other users through exercise of this right (i.e. he/she will not hinder their ability to obtain water). Water rights and water laws must be clearly understood before the planning for an irrigation system begins.

b) Customary Basis for Organization - A water users organization may, in some cases, be a very informal arrangement based on culture, economics, or traditions. The organization may have few written laws but may be quite functional. If such organizations do exist and operate successfully, they will probably continue to do so for a long time.

c) Association's Title - The organization may be called a canal company, a council, a water users group, a district, a cooperative, or a number of other things.

d) Bylaws, Rules, and Regulations - The majority of organizations with more than just a few members develop bylaws, rules , and regulations within the context of local, state, and national laws. A water users organization will generally function effectively if a good set of bylaws, rules, and regulations are adopted. Some of the components that should be addressed are:

- Organizational set-up - elections and responsibilities of elected or hired personnel.
- How water will be distributed - How often will a user get water and how much? How will the water be measured? What structures will convey and distribute the water? Who will distribute the water (e.g. water commissioner, ditch rider)?
- Maintenance - What maintenance is expected of water users themselves and what maintenance will be conducted by the organization? A good maintenance plan is an essential element of any association.
- Water charges - How will water taxes or contributions be determined (.eg. on the basis of size, equally)? What will the water charges or taxes be used for (e.g. maintenance, operations, administration)? How will the water charges be collected? What will the penalties be for non-payment?
- Enforcement of bylaws, rules, and regulations - How will these be enforced in terms of procedures and penalties?
- Settlement of disputes - How will disputes be settled with a minimum of conflict? What are the procedures, and how are settlement agreements enforced?

### 3) **Organizational Powers**

The association has a mandate to distribute water according to bylaws set up by the users. To enforce these rules, an organization may have the following internal sectors:

a) A general assembly made up of all the users and having the highest authority. The general assembly decides major activities of association, approves budget and fees, decides on construction activities, and ratifies rules, regulations, and sanctions of violators. It elects representatives with duties to represent the water users.

b) A board of directors or an executive branch of the association chosen by the general assembly. The size of the board and whether members are paid depends on the local situation. Term of service of board members and re-election procedures must be set up in the association bylaws. The board of directors manages the organization, keeps records, collects fees, maintains the system, organizes rehabilitation, manages equitable distribution of water, and represents the association with outside agencies. It will hire or select water commissioners, ditch riders, and administrative, technical, or other personnel who will carry out the daily tasks associated with water distribution or maintenance.

c) A judicial sector. Water problems and conflicts among farmers are often deeply rooted and need to be routinely addressed. This can be done by:

- a judicial tribunal selected by the general assembly,
- the board of directors,
- a group of outside individuals and/or members respected by the users, or
- traditional local courts or leaders.

d) Specific people may be selected or employed by the association to carry out specific functions under the direction of the board of directors and the general assembly:

- ditch walker to supervise daily delivery of water, and
- maintenance supervisor.

Flexibility must be programmed into the bylaws and association for adaptability to membership changes, physical and governmental changes, and local social and economic changes. Flexibility will also help a water users association adapt as members gain more experience.

# B.4 FORMAL AND NON-FORMAL COMMUNICATION TECHNIQUES

An outside development agent needs to be able to communicate well to be an effective agent of change. Communication comes in many guises, from lectures to informal chats on the street. A Volunteer who comes from a culture a high literacy rate and with a background of formal schooling needs to adapt communication techniques to the local site. Oral tradition is often very strong and literacy rates very low. Formal communication techniques that the Volunteer may be accustomed to will not be effective in this environment. Traditional communication methods can be adapted, however, and used to transmit modern messages. An example of very successful adaptations includes the use of folk theater in Asia to spread new ideas. Asia has a centuries-old tradition in folk theater. A Volunteer can use this tool to motivate villagers or introduce them to new concepts.

The old stand-by method for selecting a means of communication still works. Observe and listen to how ideas and opinions are exchanged before attempting to speak. Once the methods are understood, use them to exchange ideas. Often, the weakest link in communication is listening.

## B.4.1 Review of Communication Techniques

The following section reviews the strengths, limitations, and materials needed for a wide range of communication techniques.

| Material/Media | Strengths | Limitations |
|---|---|---|
| Local circulars, pamphlets | Low cost, ease of proliferation, self-proliferating | Easy to ignore, little feedback |
| Filmstrips | Portable, low-cost, adaptable, compatible | Requires darkness, electricity |
| Folk theater, | Entertains, local interaction encourages interaction | Requires talented, motivated, facilitators |
| Epic narratives | Reliance on local culture, entertains | Only available in some areas, limited |
| Slide/tape presentations | Entertains, motivates, complementary with other materials | Cost and time in production, requires electricity |

Appendix B.4

| Material/Media | Strengths | Limitations |
|---|---|---|
| Radio | Low cost to reach wide audience | Problems in encouraging feedback |
| Radio forum | Encourages feedback, wide audience | Problems in feedback, interaction |
| Television | Wide audience, very persuasive media | Cost, little feedback, local availability problems |
| Audio tape | Permits review, self-directedness | Cost, requires some training |
| Video tape | Adaptable for many uses, can involve local interactive production, permits review | Cost and time in production,requires training in use, availability problems |
| Computer software | Interactive, learning, permits self-pacing | Cost, computer phobia, requires skilled producer |
| Dramatic skits | Entertains, can use with large groups | Problems in reproduction |
| Role play | Interactive, encourages feedback, relevancy of ideas, encourages empathy | Requires good facilitator, willing trainees |
| Brainstorming | Interactive, spawns many ideas, self and group introspection | Requires respect among group members |
| Games | Interactive, action oriented, encourage feedback | Difficult to produce and adapt to local conditions |
| Simulations | Adaptable, action oriented, encourage feedback | Requires good facilitator, willing trainees |
| Group discussion | Encourages feedback, self-proliferating, active | Requires good facilitator |
| Lectures | Can present many ideas, complementary | Formality, requires good instructor |

| Material/Media | Strengths | Limitations |
|---|---|---|
| Debates | Different views, motivates analysis | Requires good moderator |
| Demonstrations | Action oriented, seeing is believing | Requires good timing and planning to be relevant |
| Posters, photos, flip charts | Graphic impact, wide appeal, low cost, portable | Static presentation |
| Field trips, exhibits | First hand experience, seeing is believing | Requires good planning and and timing |
| Circular response | Equal presentation of views, interactive | Requires willing participants and facilitator |
| Case studies | Permits later review, self-explanatory | Problems in relevancy |
| Photo storybooks | Entertaining, self-proliferating | Little feedback, requires skilled producer |

The method selected will depend on the situation in which it will be used. Some questions to ask before selecting a method or medium include:

- Is action orientation or static orientation required in respect to topic (to solve problems, improve skills)?
- Is it cost effective to procure, reproduce, distribute, and store?
- Will it result in indirect versus direct interaction?
- Is it easy to reproduce and can it be used widely? Is it easy to reproduce by Volunteers or trainees in their home setting?
- Does it encourage feedback?
- Does it motivate? Does material or medium inspire people to change?
- Is it durable/repairable?
- Is it immediately relevant to the field or local culture?
- Is it adaptable material and media to a development message and to local conditions and constraints?
- Is the material self-proliferating?
- Is it complementary with other medias in mixed presentation?
- Is it self-explanatory, or does it always require a trainer?
- Is it portable?

- Is it produced from locally-produced materials?
- Is there a linkage of materials/medias with learning styles?
- Does it permit later review?
- Does it allow learning to set its own pace?
- Does it have entertainment value while still fulfilling its objective?
- Does material or media adapt to time requirements or restrictions?
- What amount of training/skill is needed for trainees to utilize?

# B.5 PROBLEM SOLVING

## B.5.1 A Problem Solving Method

This exercise is designed to help the Volunteer analyze problems when people work or live together. The exercise is programmed. That is, it is presented in a series of separate steps or "frames," each of which contains a complete and separate idea, question, or instruction.

Be sure to fully understand and have completed each frame before going on to the next.

1. The first step in this process of analysis is to identify the problem to be worked on. Describe the problem as you now see it.

2. Most problem statements can be rephrased so that they describe two things:

    a. the situation as it is now.
    b. the situation as you would like it to be (the ideal).

    Restate your problem situation in these terms.

3. Most problem situations can be understood in terms of the forces that push toward improvement and the forces that resist improvement, in other words, **driving forces** and **restraining forces**.

4. It is useful to analyze a problem by making lists of the driving and restraining forces affecting a situation. Think about these now and list them below. Be sure to list as many as you can, not worrying at this point about how important each one is.

5. Now review the two lists, and underline those forces that seem to be the most important right now, and which you think you might be able to affect constructively.

    Depending on the problem, there may be one specific force which stands out, or there may be two or three driving forces and two or three restraining forces that are particularly important.

6. Now, for each restraining force you have underlined, list some possible action steps that you might be able to plan and carry out to reduce the effect of the force or eliminate it completely.

Brainstorm. List as many action steps as possible, without worrying about how effective or practical they would be. You will later have a chance to decide which are the most appropriate.

For example:

RESTRAINING FORCE A
Possible action steps to reduce this force:

RESTRAINING FORCE B
Possible action steps to reduce this force:

7. Now do the same with each driving force you underlined. List all the action steps that come to mind which would increase the effect of each driving force.

   For Example:

   DRIVING FORCE A
   Possible action steps to increase this force;

   DRIVING FORCE B
   Possible action steps to increase this force:

8. You have now listed possible action steps to change the key forces affecting your problem situation. Review these possible action steps and underline those that seem promising.

9. List the steps you have underlined. Then for each action step, list the materials, people, and other resources that are available to you for carrying out the action.

   For example:

   | Action Steps | Resources Available |
   |---|---|

10. Now review the list of action steps and resources in the previous frame and think about how they might fit into a comprehensive action plan. Eliminate those items that do not seem to fit into the over-all plan, add any new steps and resources that will round out the plan, and think about a possible sequence of action.

11. The final step in this problem-solving process is to plan a way of evaluating the effectiveness of your action program as it is implemented. Think about this now and list the evaluation procedures to be used.

12. Now you have a plan of action to deal with the problem situation. The next step is to implement it.

# B.6 PROJECT PLANNING AND PROPOSAL WRITING

## Community or Group "Ownership" of a Project

It is very important for a group to feel ownership of a project. No matter how well a project is designed or built, if the people of a community do not feel they have a claim in the project, it may fail. A sense of project ownership will ensure that maintenance plans and project repairs are carried out in the future. A project that people have sacrificed for is not so much a "handout" but more of a community goal.

## Community Need and Interest

While it is essential to determine community need and interest, actual measurement maybe difficult. Some projects will be easy to start, and a local committee will take the initiative. With others, only a few progressive people may recognize the potential for a project. In some cases there may be community interest in an idea, for example, an undeveloped water source, but the community may be unfamiliar with the technology to improve it.

Means to encourage community interest include:

A) Project initiators are recognized leaders in the community. A community power representative with important positional, reputational, decision-making and/or social standing can make things happen and motivate people to organize and work together. The best situation would be a local committee comprised of several important community leaders.

1) It is important to learn from possible sources if the project initiators can provide the necessary assistance and organization to complete the project tasks.

2) A progressive project is usually driven by progressive people. Project initiators should exhibit a history of "progressive characteristics." For example, initiators might have planted non-traditional crops or been the first to try fertilizers or agro-chemicals. These progressive leaders should also be well accepted and respected by the larger community. They should not be isolated innovators ready to try anything new an outsider suggests.

3) It is important to assess the personal interest of the leaders or drivers of a project. They may have a hidden agenda and use a unsuspecting outside development agent to fulfill personal needs. Projects that appear to be motivated largely for personal gains

by specific individuals will incur many organizational and administrative problems.

4) The overriding support of community leaders is essential, even if they aren't personally involved. In many cultures, it is very important that these leaders share some of the credit for the project's success.

B) Holding a community meeting is a very good way to identify and inspire community interest in a project. The number of people attending the meeting and their position in the community is a good indicator of a project's potential success or of organizational changes that may be needed in order to achieve success.

1) Attendance at meetings is highly important, as people who are not interested enough to go to meetings will often not participate in the project's implementation.

2) It is important to motivate participation by people that will be doing the work of implementing and managing a project.

C) Divisions in the community or group (political, ethnic, religious, or social) are difficult to overcome. Sometimes these divisions are hidden to an outsider. Attending social functions is often a good way to identify potential or existing divisions. If opposing factions exist, plans must be made early to deal with this problem.

D) Willingness to spend their own money for any part of the project can be an essential indicator of community or group support for a project. This sacrifice will help increase their ownership and perceived value of a project.

### Community Participation and Organization

If there isn't an existing committee in the community that can organize a project, forming one early in a project's planning is important. Election of leaders to head meetings, organize work schedules, collect money for project expenses, help set the project direction, and set meeting agendas is important. This committee must be representative of the community. It is often useful to legalize the committee so they can solicit help from agencies and local government. A written record of meetings serves two purposes: 1) it provides a record of activities, and 2) it helps build a consensus. Remember to let the committee be the main movers behind the project. As a Volunteer, you can guide this committee and contribute to solving technical problems, but ultimately the project belongs to the community.

## Outline Specific Objectives for Achieving the Goal

A clearly stated project goal is important to rally support, as long as the goal meets the community's need. Several specific objectives will clarify the steps to reaching the goal. Specify:

- Who will benefit from the project and what those benefits will be.
- Who will be working on or contributing to the project.
- Time frames for steps in the project.
- What the project will consist of and the steps needed to accomplish it.

Clear and measurable objectives are essential to proactive planning. It is also important to anticipate possible problems and their solution. A committee may, for example, have a general goal of increasing individual member income. A specific objective is to construct a ditch to irrigate specified lands with nearby river water so each member can have dry season crop production. From this take-off point, the group would make plans on how to design and construct the ditch. They might anticipate potential problems with water rights early and start working on avoiding or resolving the problem with the appropriate government agency.

## Initial Technical Assessment

The next step is to complete a brief technical assessment to determine if the project is technically feasible and get an idea of the resources needed to complete the project. If the project is not feasible, the organizational steps completed up to this point can be used to develop other projects.

## Identify Resources

To successfully complete the project, the development committee and the Volunteer will need to identify resources both locally and externally. These include:

- local supplies (Local contributions can ensure community participation in the proposal and are important to fully quantify in any funding request proposal.);
- local knowledge, skills, and labor availability;
- availability and cost of purchased materials;
- transport of materials;
- location, and if land is involved, proper titles;
- water rights (It is sometimes advisable to keep a low profile while establishing water rights and land titles to avoid conflict with non-members);
- outside agency technical support and possible assistance; and

- financial possibilities and community organizational support.

## Project Design

Determine technologies to be used, develop specific technical designs and plans, and form a materials list. Design a project to meet anticipated problems identified in earlier planning stages. In water or irrigation projects, it is important to plan for future fluctuating water supplies. Sabotage, group divisions, children, and farm animals are of major importance in project design, along with the technical factors. For example, the effects of future fishing in a surface irrigation project's canals may change their design.

## Funding of the Project

Research is required to fund a project. The community or group members may fully or partially fund a project. A loan or grant for part of a project may be necessary. The local committee must be integrally involved in financial arrangements.

- Care must be taken to assure there is equity in contributions and payments.
- In case of a loan, the funding agency should fully explain its accounting. The local committee should be instrumental in developing financing and repayment schedules.
- Accurately price the materials and alternatives.
- Calculate the costs per member.
- Decide how the community or group will pay for operational and maintenance costs.
- Decide on how and when fees and contributions will be collected.
- Determine wages for paid construction workers.
- Conduct economic and financial analysis of the project and alternatives.

## Proposal Writing

The most important thing to remember in proposal writing is you are writing the proposal for the funding agency and you must address *their* needs. Find out what the funding agency wants and tailor the proposal for them. Lending agencies need to be assured the loan will be paid back. Some agencies want to see community participation. Other agencies want to fund projects that will address a great need. Finally, some fund only certain types of projects.

Often, the success of a project is integrally tied to the ability of the Volunteer or the committee to procure funding. Irrigation projects are often expensive, but their benefits are long-term. The willingness of funding agencies to donate or lend money for projects is often tied to the presentation of a clear and acceptable proposal. Many agencies have standard formats for proposals or application forms. The individual agency requirements must be thoroughly investigated prior to application. The following is a general outline of recommended material that should be included in a proposal.

## INTRODUCTION

1. Summary: Briefly describe the subject of the proposal, the applicant, and the community.
2. Statement of the Problem: This section should attract the reader's attention and make them interested in the problem. Make sure that you define the problem in reasonable terms; that there is a clear relationship between the problem and the proposed project (in other words, the problem can be made better or resolved by the project); and that you support your statements with evidence, including statistics.
3. Community Background: Concisely describe the community in relation to the type of work you plan to do. Include topographical information, social institutions, socioeconomic data, and population information. Describe past development work in the area. This background should give the community and project credibility.
4. Personal Background: Describe yourself and your background, including your experience and intentions in the community.
5. Goals of the Project: The goals should state what the community wants to accomplish with the project. They should be somewhat general, long-term, and attainable by completion of the project.
6. Objectives of the Project: Objectives are the individual activities involved in accomplishing the goals of the project. They should be clear, specific, and measurable. They should state what and how much will be done, who will do it, and when it will be done.

## PROJECT OUTLINE

1. Description of the Project: This section contains the nuts and bolts of the plan. It should clearly state specific activities, construction methods, administrative procedures, and community mobilization strategies. Also, it should include schedules, time lines, a simple design layout, and staffing needs. It is important to be realistic about the scope of your activities, the resources available, and time needed to complete the project.

2. Total Cost of the Project: This should be a lump sum figure, including cash needs and in-kind contributions. Keep it feasible.

3. Budget Breakdown: This section should be a reasonably detailed listing of expense items. Break it into categories:

   - materials and tools,
   - labor and personnel costs (this may be converted into dollar amounts if it is in-kind contributions), and
   - incidentals such as transportation or administrative costs.

   Add 10-15 percent to the *total* for inflation and contingency. Also, make sure that your prices are correct, the funding source may check them. Review your project and make sure that it contains all the budget information that the funding source requires. If the budget is extremely long, you may want to write a short budget summary after the detailed budget listing.

4. Funding Request: This is the amount of money that you want from the funding source. At this point in the proposal, the funding agency knows exactly what you plan to do, how much the project will cost, their expected contribution, and donations from other sources. Make sure you include all the community contributions including value of items like rocks and boards used in construction, donated land, labor, and organizational and managerial time.

## PROJECT ASSESSMENT

1. Evaluation and Documentation (Accountability): This section explains who will evaluate and document the project, and how and when it will be done. You should focus on both the outcome (results) of the project and the process used for implementation. Define the criteria that will be used in the evaluation, list information gathering techniques, explain how the evaluation will be used to improve the project, and describe the reporting procedures.

2. Future of the Project: Describe the project after implementation, focusing on your program for operations and maintenance. If funds will be required, make sure that you explain how the community plans to meet their operating costs.

3. Environmental Effects of Project: Describe the projects impact on the local environment such as changes in cropping patterns, effect on watershed, effects on soil and effects

on water erosion. Include environmental assessments made (EA) as described in Chapter 2.

4. Benefits of the Project: This section relates directly to the goals of the project. It is an important section that acts as a conclusion to the proposal. The long and short term benefits to the community should be stated, such as any health improvements, transfer of skills, benefits to the environment, and community mobilization.

## PROPOSAL REVIEW

Make sure that your proposal is reviewed and edited by a knowledgeable person before you submit it to any funding source. Here are some suggested review guidelines:

1. Are project activities well planned and the approach to implementation clearly defined?
2. Are the costs reasonable and related to the work to be done?
3. Is there strong local support and participation by the community?
4. Will community members learn valuable new skills through their involvement with the project?
5. Are the goals and objectives clearly stated, reasonable, and attainable?
6. Is the time allowed for implementation adequate?
7. Is there an evaluation process built into the project and is it ongoing?
8. Is the proposal clearly written and free of grammatical mistakes?
9. Does the proposal give the impression that the project is well organized and will be successful?

### Evaluation

An evaluation after proposal presentation is very important, but evaluations should occur during all stages of project development. Evaluations should be an ongoing participatory action. Evaluations are not only designed to test a project's success but also to determine a project's future. Using a formative, instead of just a curative evaluation, can provide useful feedback to keep a project on track, meeting the objectives set by the group. All parties involved in the project, especially the recipients, will have to be included in the evaluation process.

## Project Construction

Some ideas that may help during this phase of the project to save time and headaches:

- Procure outside materials and collection of local materials:
  - shop around for the best price;
  - get cement and other perishable materials last;
  - set up controls so materials can't be stolen; and
  - determine if the local government can get any supplies at a reduced or tax-free price.
- Choose or elect a construction supervisor and equipment manager.
- Form work crews and setup work schedules.
- Plan for safe storage of materials and tools.

## Formation of Maintenance and Operational Plans

These plans should be discussed and finalized earlier in planning, then put into writing before the project is inaugurated. This is a very important part of the project. Factors to include in the operational plans include:

- project rules and responsibilities,
- water users organization,
- fees for maintenance and improvement,
- who executes and when are routine maintenance procedures done,
- project maintenance materials and tools -- who controls them and their location,
- salaries of maintenance personnel,
- penalties for non-compliance with project rules and responsibilities,
- procedures for changing members, and
- settlement of conflicts.

# B.7 ECONOMIC ANALYSIS

Financial and economic analyses of a project are decision-making and planning tools that are often a requirement for presenting information to a governmental agency, funding agency, or the potential water users themselves. These analyses can often determine the fate of a project. The information is important to determine the annual costs, total ownership costs, and operating and maintenance costs of a project. These analyses also will determine if a project is viable and profitable and are important for keeping costs in line. It is important to evaluate the with and without effects of the proposed project rather than conducting a before and after comparison (a common error).

An economic analysis evaluates the costs and benefits of a project in more than money terms. It attempts to quantify benefits such as health, education, and cultural preservation. It predicts whether an investment is wise and worth undertaking. It is a useful tool for project *evaluation*.

A financial analysis, on the other hand, concentrates on the money aspects of a project and determines if it is an affordable and creditworthy option. Can the project's cash flow allow the project to continue? Financial analysis tends to play a more important role in the *implementation* of a project.

## Economic Analysis

An economic analysis can be conducted in many ways. It is most commonly used to prove the economic feasibility of a project to a funding agency or governmental agency. Many funding agencies require this type of analysis to be presented as part of the project proposal. The method used to analyze a project is often determined by the agency involved. This summary only describes some of the more common methods of analysis. The agency in question can often help with the analysis.

Economic analysis weighs up the costs against the benefits of a project. It can also analyze a project's risk to its members. A lending institution will be interested in both, a grant funding agency may be interested only in the balance of costs and benefits. Subsistence farmers will be motivated by minimizing risk since almost any cost they incur will take food from their mouth or affect the well-being of their household.

The starting point for any analysis involves gathering the following information:

- construction costs;
- annual maintenance costs;
- fixed costs - costs of operating the irrigation system that don't vary whatever the intensity of use of the system, i.e. land costs, irrigation membership, water and maintenance costs, equipment costs of system;
- variable costs - costs that vary with crop grown and expected yield or production, i.e., fertilizer, seed, power costs, agro-chemicals, transport, labor, equipment and maintenance costs related to crop;
- cost of any borrowed money (interest) - for long-term (construction and equipment) or short-term (crop production or operating) loans;
- expected yields;
- average prices for produce at times when production is from irrigated fields; and
- a listing of other non-monetary benefits such as clean water sources, and reduced labor requirements, and an approximation of what these benefits are worth. Money values can be given to these benefits by keeping in mind the concept of **opportunity cost**. The opportunity cost is the value of the alternative or other opportunity that has been given up to achieve the present alternative. For example, the opportunity cost of a water user spending two hours repairing a canal might be quantified by allocating the value of the pay he might have received working for a local landowner.

Some of this data is developed from projections and can result in optimistic or pessimistic estimates. Care must be taken to stay as far away as possible from these extremes and present unbiased estimates. It may be a good idea to test both the optimistic and the pessimistic options (sometimes called "sensitivity analysis") as this will be a good measure of the riskiness of a project.

Remember an important fact: the timing of benefits and costs is critical to everyone involved in a project. The sooner benefits are seen, the better for everyone. Why? Because these benefits can be used productively sooner; most individuals prefer to spend now rather than tighten their belts for later; and at inflation rates existent worldwide, monetary benefits are more valuable now than later.

### Risk Analysis

Some quick indicators of the riskiness of a project that can be tested early in planning are:

1) Cost/ha: Construction costs/number of hectares in the project. This can also read cost/unit of land.

This relationship is useful for quantifying the amount of money per unit of land that will be needed above and beyond what is already being spent. It can be used to determine how much money must be borrowed as compared to how much money water users can put forward based on the average farm size.

2) $$\frac{\text{Cost}}{\text{Member}} = \frac{\text{Construction costs}}{\text{Number of members in project}}$$

Useful to estimate the financial risk each member will assume if land acreage were uniform.

3) $$\text{Break even point} = \frac{\text{Expected income}}{\text{Fixed + variable expenses}}$$

Project is profitable if break even point is one or greater.

4) $$\text{Pay back period} = \frac{\text{Construction investment}}{\text{Annual earnings-annual expenses}}$$

Calculates the time required for the project to recover the initial system investment (cost).

Return Analysis

These analyses are a little more detailed. They are used to evaluate overall project economics. Some methods are:

1). Partial budgeting can be used to estimate net benefits of two alternatives, for example, a with or without irrigation project choice. The method is easier than complete budgeting because not all the costs and benefits need to be calculated or estimated, only those that vary or are different between the two options. Generally, budgets do not look at total costs and benefits but rather at per unit area (per hectare or acre) or per unit of production costs and benefits. These budgets are quick decision-making methods for rapid appraisals but often are not acceptable for funding and government agencies who look for greater detail.

Net Benefit = Total change field benefit - total variable costs.

**Example**:

| | Present Practice | With Irrigation |
|---|---|---|
| Benefits: | | |
| Net yield | 20 kg/ha | 60 kg/ha |
| Price to farmer* | $1.80/kg | $1.80/kg |
| Total gross field benefit | $36 | $108 |
| Variable Costs | | |
| Cost of water | $0 | $5.00 |
| Loan repayment | 0 | 50.00 |
| Canal Maintenance labor 2 days x $2.00/day (opportunity cost) | 0 | 4.00 |
| Total variable costs | 0 | 59.00 |
| Net Benefit | $36.00 | $49.00 |

* $ = undefined monetary units.

In this example, irrigation increased the net per hectare benefit by $13.00. Often quality rather than yield may improve because of irrigation, and the price of the product may increase.

Partial budgeting often compares the "do" option against the "do nothing" option but can also be used to compare different practices, different levels of inputs (such as fertilizer), and so forth.

2) Rate of return

$$\text{Rate of return} = \frac{\text{Estimated net income}}{\text{Investment}}$$

Net income = earnings - expenses

This is a useful relationship to demonstrate profit and is used by World Bank and other lending institutions. Often, farmers on a subsistence level require a rate of return of over 50% because of their inability to carry risk. For a subsistence farmer to invest in an alternative technology, he or she has to take resources from a very limited pool. If choices are not fail-safe, the family or household doesn't have a reserve to draw upon and must cut down consumption of food, or expenses like clothing and schooling for its children. Also, returns from innovative technologies that are not monitored closely are not visually and financially obvious unless increases of over 30% are achieved.

3) Net present value (worth) = present value of a string of benefits - present value of a string of costs. The net present value analysis includes the cash flow of an investment (benefits - costs) and the time value of money and risk. The time value of money refers to the fact that money in your hand now is worth more than the same money promised at some time in the future.

The same principle applies to risk. The higher the potential risk, the more the future money must be discounted to be equal to present money's value. Money now is more secure than future money. When someone lends you money, the interest rate charged is basically the same as discounting the future money you will pay. With risk, this interest rate is higher because of a potential disaster.

The basic technique used in net present value analysis is to discount costs and benefits that have been projected into the future to the present time (one point in time). Agencies use this method to compare and rank options or projects.

$$\text{NPV} = -P + F_1(1+i)^{-1} + F_2(1+i)^{-2} + F_3(1+i)^{-3} + \dots + F_N(1+i)^{-N}$$

NPV = Net present value.
P = Initial investment or starting point.
$F_N$ = Cash flow (benefits - costs), subscript is year of cash flow.
i = Interest rate for discounting future values or what the investment amount would earn each year if put somewhere else.
$(1+i)^{-N}$ = The discount factor, taking into account that each year the amount discounted is compounded by 1+i.
N = Years of the project.

An example of a four year project can illustrate this point.

| Year | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Earnings | \$0 | \$600 | \$700 | \$800 | \$900 |
| Operating costs | \$1000 | \$100 | \$200 | \$300 | \$400 |
| Cash flow | \$-1000* | \$500 | \$500 | \$500 | \$500 |

* Original investment or expense. The discount rate is i=10% since that is what savings accounts are paying.

$$NPV = -P + F_1(1+i)^{-1} + F_2(1+i)^{-2} + F_3(1+i)^{-3} + F_4(1+i)^{-4}$$

$$= -1000 + 500(1.10)^{-1} + 500(1.10)^{-2} + 500(1.10)^{-3} + 500(1.10)^{-4}$$

$$= -1000 + 500(0.909) + 500(0.826) + 500(0.751) + 500(0.683) = \$585$$

A decision can be made of the worthiness of a project as follows: If NPV > 0, the project looks good. The investment will earn more than just putting it in the bank. If NPV = 0, a choice is difficult and needs further evaluation of intangible benefits. If NPV < 0, the project is rejected because the "do nothing" option is preferable; the investment will earn more by being place elsewhere (for example, in the bank). If there are multiple projects, a funding agency may choose projects with the highest net present value.

While operating costs and cash benefits may be easy to determine, other costs and benefits may be hard to quantify or may not be evident in some projects. Better nutrition of farm families eating some of the added production and labor saving projects that free children from farm labor to go to school are examples of intangible benefits that are more difficult to value.

4) Benefit - Cost Ratio is used by the United States government for evaluating projects. To use this method the benefits and costs must be distinguished rather than just using cash flows as in the preceding example.

$$B/C = \text{Benefit-cost ratio} = \frac{\text{Net Present Value of Benefits (earnings + salvage value)}}{\text{Net Present Value of Costs (investment + operating costs)}}.$$

S = Salvage value
 = Value of project at the end of project life.

$B_n$ = Value of benefits in nth year.

$C_n$ = Value of operating costs in nth year.

P = Investment.

i = Discount rate.

n = Year of project.

Using the same numbers as in the previous example and assuming the salvage value after the 4th year is 100, the benefit- cost ratio will be:

$$B/C = \frac{B_1(1+i)^{-1} + B_2(1+i)^{-2} + B_3(1+i)^{-3} + (B_4+S)(1+i)^{-4}}{P+C_1(1+i)^{-1} + C_2(1+i)^{-2} + C_3(1+i)^{-3} + C_4(1+i)^{-4}}$$

$$= \frac{600(1.10)^{-1} + 700(1.10)^{-2} + 800(1.10)^{-3} + (900+100)(1.10)^{-4}}{1000 + 100(1.10)^{-1} + 200(1.10)^{-2} + 300(1.10)^{-3} + 400(1.10)^{-4}}$$

$$= \frac{\$2408}{\$1755^{*}} = 1.37$$

* Costs in the denominator are expressed as positive values.

To analyze the project using benefit-cost analysis, if B/C > 1 the project is acceptable and if B/C < 1, the project is rejected. Again, multiple projects can be evaluated by selecting the project with the highest B/C ratio or best return. As in NPV, care must be taken to choose a valid discount rate (i) and to value all the benefits correctly.

## Sensitivity Analysis:

In many cases there is uncertainty about the future benefits and costs such as yields, price of future projects, and future interest rates of money. For good project analysis, if one of these is expected to vary, it is best to run multiple analysis using different values of this one variable. An analysis of how this affects the outcome of the project can then be made. Using sensitivity analysis one can evaluate, for example, the net benefits over time of a project should interest rates go up. It can also be used to evaluate gloomy versus optimistic projections.

## B.8 FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

Just because an irrigation system is economically viable doesn't mean an irrigation group can afford to finance it. The preceding examples indicate how a government or financing agency would review a project. The following defines how a group of farmers would analyze a similar project. An irrigation system may last for 15 to 20 years, but a financing agency may require the investment to be paid off in 6 to 10 years. Even if the irrigation system increases returns, the extra profits from irrigation must cover the loan repayments plus the water users minimum profit during the first repayment years.

**Example**: $25,000 borrowed at 10% for 10 years

$25,000 x .16275* = $4070/year

* Amortization factor (See Table B.2)

If the extra profits from irrigation are only $3500/year, the loan cannot be paid off unless production is subsidized the first years.

Using long term economic analysis, this example may have been an acceptable option, but from a farmer's more immediate point of view it may be difficult to obtain the cash to pay bills during the loan repayment years. Because of this, an irrigation group must accurately determine total costs and returns. To do this they must accurately estimate the annual cost of ownership and annual operating costs and compare these to the expected increase in production from using the system. Accurate annual costs determination is important since the initial cost is often only 1/3 of the total cost of irrigation.

### Determining the Annual Ownership Cost

This is determined from (1) initial cost minus trade-in value, (2) interest, (3) taxes and insurance, (4) any fixed charges, (5) loss of land taken out of production for water development and (6) life expectancy of system. Table B.1 will assist in determining the annual ownership cost.

Procedure

1) Determine the initial cost of the irrigation system. This could come from the proposal materials list. Put these values in column 2.

2) To determine the annual ownership costs, multiply the initial cost by the appropriate amortization factor found

in Table B.2. The amortization factor combines depreciation and interest in one number. To determine the appropriate factor, you need to know the interest rate of financing the system. Next, find the intersection of the expected years of life and the interest rate to get the amortization factor value. Enter the value in column 4 of Table B.1 and multiply it with the value in column 1 to get annual ownership costs. **Example**: A $4000 pump has a 12 year expected life. Money was borrowed at 12%. The annual ownership cost is: $4000 x 0.1614 = 645.6. The cost of the pump is $645.60 per year.

3) Add up all annual ownership costs of system components.

4) Estimate annual cost of taxes and insurance and enter. In some countries, this may be nothing.

5) Enter fixed charges of the irrigation system such as system water charges.

6) If any land was taken out of production to build the system, multiply the area by the value of production of this land in the past without the irrigation.

7) Total amounts in lines 6-9 for total annual ownership cost.

Annual Operation and Maintenance Cost

Annual operation and maintenance expenses need to be determined. They include (1) power costs, (2) repair and maintenance of equipment, (3) reservoir and field maintenance, (4) additional seed, fertilizer, pesticides and harvesting costs for the expected increase in yield with irrigation, and (5) labor.

Procedure:

1) Power costs = the fuel and oil consumption to run a power unit, if there is one. Use the following formulas:

Fuel or oil costs = horse power required x no. of annual hours of operation x cost/unit fuel / BHP hours/unit fuel.

Calculations are done for fuel and oil. Use the following Tables for brake horse power - hours per unit of fuel or gallon of oil.

**TABLE B.1 Cost and Return Form ***

| Item (1) | Initial Cost (2) | Expected years of life(3) | Amortization factor (4) | Annual Ownership cost (5) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Well | | 25 | | |
| Reservoir | | 50 | | |
| Pump | | | | |
| Turbine | | 15 | | |
| Centrifugal | | 12 | | |
| Power Unit | | | | |
| Electric | | 25 | | |
| Gasoline | | 10 | | |
| Diesel | | 15 | | |
| LP gas | | 12 | | |
| Water Pipe | | | | |
| Plastic(PVC) | | 40 | | |
| Polyethylene | | 5-8 | | |
| Steel, coated | | 20 | | |
| Aluminum- sprinkler use | | 15 | | |
| Water works class | | 40 | | |
| Concrete structures | | 20 | | |
| Concrete pipelines | | 20 | | |
| Land grading | | 20 | | |
| Ditches | | 20 | | |
| Land drainage | | 20 | | |
| Sprinkler heads | | 8 | | |
| Sprinkler systems | | | | |
| Hand moved | | 15 | | |
| Solid set | | 20 | | |
| Center pivot | | 10 | | |

(6) Subtotal average annual ownership cost: (total column 5).
(7) Taxes and insurance.
(8) Fixed costs.
(9) Loss of income from land out of production: price/ha x #ha.
(10) Total Annual ownership cost: (6 + 7 + 8 + 9).

* Projects may have other materials not on this list. Estimate expected life.

## Table B.2 Amortization (Capital Recovery) Factors

| Life | Interest Rate | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Years | 8.0 | 9.0 | 10.0 | 11.0 | 12.0 | 13.0 | 14.0 | 15.0 | 16.0 | 17.0 | 18.0 | 19.0 | 20.0 |
| 1 | 1.0800 | 1.0900 | 1.1000 | 1.1100 | 1.1200 | 1.1300 | 1.1400 | 1.1500 | 1.1600 | 1.1700 | 1.1800 | 1.1900 | 1.2000 |
| 2 | .5608 | .5685 | .5762 | .5839 | .5917 | .5995 | .6073 | .6151 | .6230 | .6308 | .6387 | .6466 | .6545 |
| 3 | .3880 | .3951 | .4021 | .4092 | .4163 | .4235 | .4307 | .4380 | .4453 | .4526 | .4599 | .4673 | .4747 |
| 4 | .3019 | .3687 | .3155 | .3223 | .3292 | .3362 | .3432 | .3503 | .3574 | .3645 | .3717 | .3790 | .3868 |
| 5 | .2565 | .2571 | .2638 | .2706 | .2774 | .2843 | .2913 | .2983 | .3054 | .3126 | .3198 | .3271 | .3344 |
| 6 | .2163 | .2229 | .2296 | .2364 | .2432 | .2502 | .2572 | .2642 | .2714 | .2786 | .2859 | .2933 | .3007 |
| 7 | .1921 | .1987 | .2054 | .2122 | .2191 | .2261 | .2332 | .2404 | .2476 | .2549 | .2624 | .2699 | .2774 |
| 8 | .1740 | .1807 | .1874 | .1943 | .2013 | .2034 | .2156 | .2229 | .2302 | .2377 | .2452 | .2529 | .2606 |
| 9 | .1601 | .1668 | .1756 | .1806 | .1877 | .1949 | .2022 | .2096 | .2171 | .2247 | .2324 | .2402 | .2481 |
| 10 | .1490 | .1558 | .1627 | .1698 | .1770 | .1843 | .1917 | .1993 | .2069 | .2147 | .2225 | .2305 | .2385 |
| 11 | .1401 | .1469 | .1540 | .1611 | .1684 | .1758 | .1834 | .1911 | .1989 | .2068 | .2148 | .2229 | .2311 |
| 12 | .1327 | .1397 | .1468 | .1540 | .1614 | .1690 | .1767 | .1845 | .1924 | .2005 | .2086 | .2169 | .2253 |
| 13 | .1265 | .1336 | .1408 | .1482 | .1557 | .1634 | .1712 | .1791 | .1872 | .1954 | .2037 | .2121 | .2206 |
| 14 | .1213 | .1284 | .1357 | .1432 | .1509 | .1587 | .1666 | .1747 | .1829 | .1912 | .1997 | .2082 | .2169 |
| 15 | .1168 | .1241 | .1315 | .1391 | .1468 | .1547 | .1628 | .1710 | .1794 | .1878 | .1964 | .2051 | .2189 |
| 16 | .1130 | .1203 | .1270 | .1355 | .1434 | .1514 | .1596 | .1679 | .1764 | .1850 | .1937 | .2025 | .2114 |
| 17 | .1096 | .1170 | .1247 | .1325 | .1405 | .1486 | .1569 | .1654 | .1740 | .1827 | .1915 | .2004 | .2094 |
| 18 | .1067 | .1142 | .1219 | .1298 | .1379 | .1462 | .1546 | .1632 | .1719 | .1807 | .1896 | .1987 | .2078 |
| 19 | .1041 | .1117 | .1195 | .1276 | .1358 | .1441 | .1527 | .1613 | .1701 | .1791 | .1881 | .1972 | .2065 |
| 20 | .1019 | .1095 | .1175 | .1256 | .1339 | .1424 | .1510 | .1598 | .1687 | .1777 | .1868 | .1960 | .2054 |
| 25 | .0937 | .1018 | .1102 | .1187 | .1275 | .1364 | .1455 | .1547 | .1640 | .1734 | .1829 | .1925 | .2021 |
| 30 | .0888 | .0973 | .1061 | .1150 | .1241 | .1334 | .1428 | .1523 | .1619 | .1715 | .1813 | .1910 | .2008 |
| 35 | .0858 | .0940 | .1037 | .1129 | .1223 | .1313 | .1414 | .1511 | .1609 | .1707 | .0800 | .1904 | .2003 |
| 40 | .0839 | .0930 | .1028 | .1117 | .1213 | .1310 | .1407 | .1506 | .1604 | .1703 | .1802 | .1092 | .2001 |

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

**TABLE B.3 Annual Fuel Consumption (Ref. 51)**

| Fuel or Power | BHP-Hours per Unit of Fuel | |
|---|---|---|
| | Metric | English |
| Electric | 0.9 per KWH | 0.9 per KWH |
| Gasoline | 2.3 per L | 8.7 per gallon |
| Diesel | 2.9 per L | 11.0 per gallon |
| Propane | 1.8 per L | 6.8 per gallon |
| Natural Gas | 2.4 per $m^3$ | 6.7 per 100 cubic feet |

**TABLE B.4 Annual Oil Consumption (Ref. 51)**

| Type of Engine and Drive | BHP-Hours per Volume of Oil Used | |
|---|---|---|
| | Metric (per L) | English (per gallon) |
| Electric | 2400 | 9000 |
| Gasoline | 800 | 3000 |
| Diesel | 800 | 3000 |
| Propane | 1100 | 4000 |
| Natural Gas | 1100 | 4000 |
| Right Angle Gear Drive | 1300 | 5000 |

**Example** of fuel costs:

Diesel:
80 hp required x 900 hrs operation x $.30/liter diesel / 2.9 BHP hours/liter diesel = $7448/year.

Oil:
80 hp x 900 hrs x $50/gallon oil / 3000 BHP hours/gallon oil = $1200/year.

2) Annual repair and maintenance cost of power unit uses a similar formula as fuel and oil costs.

Repair costs = hp required x annual hrs of operation x cost per BHP/hour.

Horse power required and annual hours of operation are in the syste Table B.5.

**TABLE B.5 Annual Cost of Repair and Maintenance (Ref. 51)**

| Type of Power Unit | Cost Per BHP / Hour |
|---|---|
| Electric motor and controls | $0 |
| Gasoline | $.0030 |
| Diesel | $.0027 |
| Propane | $.0020 |
| Natural Gas | $.0020 |

**Example**:

Repair costs of power unit:
80 hp x 900 hrs operation x $.0027/BHP = $194.40/year

3) Repair and maintenance costs of irrigation equipment. An estimate of this is initial cost x 0.5%.

4) Cost of field, reservoir, and canal maintenance. This can be determined by number of days labor x number laborers x value of a day of labor.

5) If you expect to spend more on agricultural inputs, estimate these additional costs and enter them.

6) Labor: estimated labor hours/ha/irrigation x number irrigations x area of irrigated land in ha x cost of labor per hour.

7) Add up all these operational and maintenance costs as follows:

Annual Operation and Maintenance Costs

| Item | Cost |
|---|---|
| 1) Fuel: | |
| Oil: | |
| 2) Repair and maintenance of power unit: | |
| 3) Repair and maintenance of irrigation system: | |
| 4) Reservoir, field and canal maintenance: | |
| 5) Additional agricultural inputs with irrigation: | |
| 6) Labor Costs | |

Total operational and maintenance costs:

Return on Investment

To determine return on investment, one compares the costs of operation and maintenance and ownership costs to expected increase in production with irrigation. First the increase in production under irrigation must be estimated and multiplied by the expected price. In dry season cropping under irrigation this would be the whole production (if nothing was grown previously) x the usually higher price for dry season produce. In supplemental irrigation the return would be the increase in production under irrigation x the usual price. Then calculate the total annual costs of irrigation (ownership cost + operational and maintenance costs). Use the following:

1) Expected increase in earnings with irrigation:
(Increase in production x price/unit)
2) Total annual cost of irrigation:
(ownership cost + operational + maintenance costs)
3) Expected additional profit from irrigation:
(line 1 - line 2)

Since all the total irrigation costs are included, if the profit is positive, the project is acceptable. Again, a risk management factor should be included in this analysis if water users have very little cash asset reserves. The additional profit will have to be large to offer a safeguard against problems during loan repayment years.

In subsistence agriculture conditions, the additional profit must be over 15% of the value of the total annual irrigation costs.

# APPENDIX C

## SUMMARY OF INTERNATIONAL IRRIGATION CENTER (IIC) TRAINING MODULES

The International Irrigation Center[1] (IIC) training sessions are short video tapes designed to introduce subjects. Many have excellent computer graphics to explain concepts visually. Many are adapted to conditions that will be encountered by Volunteers in developing countries.

Specific modules are referenced in training sessions. An annotated list of these modules follows. If a VCR, television, and the tapes are available, it is recommended that the trainer make use of this resource. The videos are available through the IIC and through ICE.

Module #1: "Introduction to Hydro-Agriculture." 5 min.

Contains a very basic introduction to the role and purpose of irrigation in tropical agriculture. This module would be appropriate module to use in the first training session.

Module #2: "Soil Water Storage and Availability." 6 min.

Provides description of soil texture, structure, and water-holding capacity of soils. Uses good graphics.

Module #3: "Quantitative Determination of Soil Moisture." 5 min.

Technically describes how soil water content is measured. Contains useful graphics that show water content in soils.

Module #4: "The Use of Water by Plants." 6 min.

Describes the physical and biological factors involved in evapotranspiration and water use by crops during their growth cycle. Provides guidance in the scheduling of water applications in irrigated fields.

Module #5: "General Procedures and Estimation of Reference Crop Evapotranspiration." 7 min.

Reviews procedures for estimating evapotranspiration; too technical for Trainees with limited background in irrigation sciences.

---

[1] International Irrigation Center, Department of Agriculture and Irrigation Engineering, Utah State University, Logan, Utah, USA.

Module #6: "Evapotranspiration: Selection of the Crop Coefficient". 12 min.

Contains an overly complicated explanation of developing crop coefficients for Trainees with a limited background in irrigation sciences.

Module #7: "Crop Water Requirements for Ecuador." 9 min.

Covers hot/dry climates, dry/wet climates, and hot/wet climates, with an emphasis on conditions in Ecuador. It would be easy to discuss this material in reference to other Latin American countries, and it may be possible to adapt the material to other similar tropical climatic regimes.

Module #8. "Critical Water Requirement Period for Crops." 6 min.

Describes the critical moisture periods for corn, small grains, alfalfa, peas, bananas, vegetables, fruit crops, cotton, and sugar cane.

Module #9. "Determining When and How Much to Irrigate." 14 min.

Introduces irrigation water scheduling for multiple crops. Contains some math and practical guides, and the information should be understandable for most Trainees.

Module #10. "Methods for Measuring Soil Moisture." 9 min.

Provides a somewhat technical, but very useful, guide to the use of the tensiometer and the neutron probe, along with the use of the hand feel method for measuring soil moisture.

Module #11. "Feeling the Soil to Determine When to Irrigate." 9 min.

Visually introduces the feel method for determining available soil moisture from soil texture, feel, and observation. Explains when to irrigate using available water and rooting depth.

Module #12: "Corn Production at Various Levels of Irrigation and Fertilizer Application." 10 min.

Introduces the concept that increasing levels of nitrogen and irrigations will increase yield to only a certain point. Uses many graphs and is beyond the needs of most Volunteers.

Module #13: "Crop Selection and Time of Planting as a Function of Rainfall and Irrigation Water Availability." 13 min.

Reviews the steps in crop planning by using rainfall data, a useful process in irrigation planning.

Module #14: "Subsoil Conditions That Affect Root Development, Water Penetration, and Aeration." 6 min.

Presents waterlogging problems and the consequences of overwatering.

Module #15: "The Effects of High Water Tables on Crop Production and the Need for Drainage." 7 min.

Details specific crop tolerances to excess water saturation in the root zone. Explains capillary action of water, how salts are drawn up by this action, and what to do about it.

Module #16: "Soil Salinity's Causes, Effects on Crop Production, and Problem Solution." 9 min.

Presents the causes of salinity. Contains examples of actions that can be taken to remedy the problem.

Module #17: "Leaching Requirements for Adequate Salt Balance in the Soil." 14 min.

Introduces leaching and water balance for salinity control. Contains some complicated math. Explains use of salinity tolerance tables.

Module #18: "Irrigation Uniformity". 9 min.

Reviews causes of, and solutions to, uniformity problems.

Module #19: "Soil Erosion and Its Control." 7 min.

Introduces the causes and processes that result in soil erosion. Includes examples of on-farm practices that can be constructed or applied to avoid or control soil loss.

Module #20: "Water Infiltration into Soils." 9 min.

Explains infiltration processes and the factors that influence infiltration rates.

Module #21: "Controlling and Conveying Water from the Source to the Field." 11 min.

Presents good information on open and closed systems, pipeline placement, control structures, and siphon use.

Module #22: "Irrigation Methods: An Overview." 7 min.

Describes the major methods of irrigation (surface, sprinkler, trickle, and sub-surface) and principal factors in their selection.

Module #23: "Furrow and Corrugation Irrigation." 8 min.

Explains the different types of furrow irrigation, their applicability, advantages/disadvantages, and proper design and limitations.

Module #24: "Basin and Border Irrigation." 10 min.

Discusses the applicability of basin and border irrigation, the proper design and limitations, suitable crops, and management.

Module #25: "Sprinkler Irrigation." 10 min.

Overviews the different types of sprinkler irrigation, their suitability, limitations, and use. Probably not applicable to Peace Corps Trainees because the size of systems discussed is larger than most Volunteers will encounter.

Module #26: "Trickle Irrigation". 10 min.

Contains a good description of trickle irrigation, including system components, applications, usage, operation, and maintenance. Provides a good introduction to what trickle irrigation is and an overview of good, efficient irrigation. Micro-irrigation methods are also introduced.

Module #27: "Other Irrigation Methods." 9 min.

Describes less efficient methods of irrigation (wild flooding, contour ditch flooding, water spreading, subsurface irrigation) and their applications. Provides a good explanation of subsurface irrigation. This material will be very appropriate to the field conditions many Volunteers will encounter.

Module #28: "Surge Flow Irrigation." 8 min.

Explains water surge flow as applied to furrow irrigation and its increased application efficiency and advantages of use.

Module #29: "Basic Concepts for Irrigation System Evaluation." 10 min.

Clearly describes the basic concepts and useful terms for system modifications to improve efficiency (furrow, basin, border, sprinkler, and trickle), performance parameters to evaluate efficiency (a lot of equations), and uniformity of system. Trainees may have to disregard the complicated mathematics.

Module #30: "Types, Purpose, and Terminology for System Evaluation." 7 min.

Contains performance evaluations (observed, measured, and simulated), good questions to address while evaluating a system, and a clear introduction into the terminology used in evaluations. Includes many well-prepared graphs.

Module #31: "Water Conveyance Losses." 7 min.

Discusses controlling water losses well. The section on measurement of water losses is a bit technical, but the graphics used are good.

Module #32: "Water Measurement." 14 min.

Details different methods of water measurement - mostly surface but some pipeline. Methodologies are not explained, however, and the module simply inventories methods.

Module #33: "Furrow Irrigation Evaluation and Improvement." 10 min.

Contains a good session on techniques for improving the design and management of furrows, and estimating possible furrow problems. Some points are poorly explained and may require trainer's support to avoid confusion.

Module #34: "Border and Basin Irrigation Evaluation and Improvement." 11 min.

Clearly explains techniques for evaluating and improving the construction and management of borders and furrows.

Module #35: "Sprinkler Irrigation Evaluation and Improvement." 12 min.

Clearly explains techniques used to evaluate sprinkler irrigation and improvement.

Module #36: "Drip Irrigation Evaluation and Improvement." 6 min.

Explains techniques used to evaluate drip irrigation and improvement on a somewhat technical level. May not be applicable to Trainees.

Module #37: "Improving Efficiencies Through Use of Reservoirs, Refuse Systems, and Automation." 7 min.

Contains some good suggestions of ways to improve the efficiencies of surface systems. Most parts are too technical for the needs of Peace Corps Volunteers, and the material is impractical for developing countries.

Module #38: "Determining Water Delivery Requirements." 9 min.

Requires good math skills to follow this presentation, some of which is easily understandable and applicable. Useful for large projects.

Module #39: "Field Water Delivery Schedules." 9 min.

Aids in identifying potential problems concerning improper farm water management and water delivery in large systems.

Module #40: "Irrigation Management Program and Managing Systems with Water Shortages or Excesses." 12 min.

Contains some long lists, but all include good points regarding procedures that should be considered in the management of water in water short locations.

# APPENDIX D

## CASE STUDIES

## CASE STUDY

### Pipe Size and Accessories

A farmer in Honduras grows cabbage during the dry season using a gravity flow sprinkler system. He uses two rolls of 3/4" polyethylene (100 m/roll) in his main line piping. He wants to increase the flow capacity to his field, so he buys two rolls of 1" polyethylene tubing. The water source is about 200 m from a small tank. The farmer uses the main line to fill the tank and from there the water is distributed to the field.

In the installation of the new system, the farmer decides to have two mainlines because he did not buy unions and because the 3/4" tube fit snugly into the 1" tube. Each main line consists of one roll of 3/4" and one roll of 1", and the two lines are used to fill the tank.

Is this efficient use of tubing? Could a main line of two rolls of 1" tubing with a union have a higher flow rate into the tank than the present system? Is the tank necessary?

## CASE STUDY

### Pump Sizing and Installation

A farmer in Bolivia buys a small centrifugal pump with the assistance of a special credit program offered by an international agency. The farmer installs the pump without any technical assistance, plants a hectare of potatoes, and begins irrigating the crop by surface irrigation in furrows.

Midway through the growing season, the farmer finds that he is spending too much money on fuel for the pump, so he lengthens the irrigation frequency from every 10 days to 3 weeks. After going through only one cycle of this schedule, it is obvious to the farmer that the potato plants are in need of more water and will soon die if nothing is done. He goes into town to look for technical assistance at the local agricultural extension office.

The extensionist accompanies the farmer to his field. They first go to the location of the pump, and the extensionist finds that the pump has been installed 5 m above the stream. She checks the pump and observes that it has a 3" inlet and outlet and also finds that both the suction line and main line are 2" pipe.

What recommendations would you give the farmer to save his crop this year? What recommendations would you give the farmer for future plantings?

## CASE STUDY

### Inlet Flows into Furrows

An international agency donates an 18 hp centrifugal pump with aluminum coupled piping to an orphanage in southern Bolivia. The orphanage is irrigating vegetables by furrows for its own consumption on small 20 m x 20 m plots that total less than 1/2 hectare.

The water is pumped into a head ditch at a very high flow and is channeled past each plot so that it can supply water to them. There is no control structure, so the entire flow is diverted towards a plot when irrigation begins and then into a single furrow. The water rushes down the furrow and, because there is no tail ditch, overflows the furrow and floods the end of the plot. It is repeated for each furrow.

At the midpoint of the growing season, it is apparent that something is wrong with the crop. Plants at the beginning of the furrows are small and unhealthy, while the plants at the end look healthy and are of normal size.

What has occurred in this irrigated field? What can be changed to improve the water distribution? Is this the appropriate method of irrigation under these circumstances?

## CASE STUDY

### Community Organization

This project started when the Committee for Community Development approached the Volunteer with an interest in constructing an irrigation project.

The water source was measured and, although small, was adequate for the project. The village was tucked into a valley, and the water source was well above the fields, resulting in a good gravity-fed, pressurized system. The soils were well-drained sandy loams and loams. Some of the village members were starting to experiment with growing alternate crops with surface irrigation during the dry season by utilizing small springs below the village. Because of the topography of the area, water from the larger spring above was to be piped in.

The next village had a successful pressurized pipe hose drag irrigation system, which motivated the Committee to approach the Volunteer. The spring was on the community common land, so there was no problem with water rights.

The topographical study was done, and the system was designed. Community meetings were held regularly during this period. These meetings were tumultuous. There were disagreements but, as long as it was clear that everyone could participate, the project planning process continued. A funding source was obtained, and everything looked good.

One afternoon the Committee president approached the Volunteer to tell him the community had decided not to go through with the project. Another village meeting was held, but no agreement could be reached. The project was never completed.

Late in the Volunteer's service, he attended a big social event in the community. None of the Committee members were to be found at the celebration - they were at their own private celebration. The Volunteer then learned there were two religious sects in the village, and the Committee for Community Development was made up of only one of these religions. Ignoring one sect had doomed the project from the beginning. A blended committee of both sects may have been able to complete the system, but it was too late for that Volunteer.

## CASE STUDY

### Estimating Community Need

The Community Development Committee approached a Volunteer about a potable water project. The community had some limited small, private water systems, but no communitywide system. The village was spread out, and most village members had to go a long way to collect water.

The Committee members showed the Volunteer the potential water source, which was 15 liters/sec. This is much more than a village of 45 families requires from a potable water system.

A meeting was called to discuss the water system and possible irrigation with overflow. The Committee, some women, and children attended the meeting. This discouraged the Volunteer, but she described the project, and the Committee said they'd drum up support. The next week the Committee presented the Volunteer with a list of families committed to the project. This list included 42 names. Since there was now a large amount of support, plans were drawn up for a community water system with potable water and a surface system with overflow, to be directed to the plots belonging to the 42 interested people.

Community meetings were sparsely attended, with most families being represented by old women and children. The men were too busy to attend.

The municipal government was funding similar projects and agreed to fund this one if the community paid 25% of the costs and supplied local labor and supplies. In this wet/dry climate, dry season vegetables and potatoes got a good price and paying off this 25% could be done within the first year. The Committee took this news back to the community and, after a week, they responded that they would do the project only if all the costs were paid by the municipality. They also wanted food as payment for their labor, as this was how similar projects had been done in their area. The project failed, and there was no interest in pursuing other sources.

## CASE STUDY

### Community Participation

Using small springs and surface irrigation, a mountain village in a wet/dry climate had been working with a Volunteer on alternate crop projects during the dry season. A large water source was located 6 km from the village. The Volunteer and village members did a topographical study and waterflow test and found the water source to be high enough and large enough for a good pressurized pipe irrigation system. The water source was close to another village and on its common land. There were numerous water sources in this area, but some were too low to be useful in this irrigation project.

When the paperwork for the water rights was being done, other village members came to the government offices and testified that they would be left without water if this project were completed. The water rights petition was denied. Not knowing what to do, the Volunteer met with the community and told them they would have to solve this problem. The community then decided to pay the water authority's fact-finding committee to visit the spring site. Both communities met, with almost every member of both communities in attendance. An agreement was reached regarding where some of the springs would go for the system. The topography, along with a 600 m drop along the system, made the design of the project difficult.

A government loan was secured, and the project began. The work crews were organized by the community, and the Volunteer visited the site weekly. The Irrigation System Committee and the Volunteer drew up the following rules and regulations:

1. Funds for repairs and maintenance would be taken from annual donations.
2. A list of the system's supplies and who would be responsible for them was composed, along with a statement of group ownership.

3. Volunteers to serve on the committee, along with a tools/repair supervisor, would be elected annually.
4. A process for changing members was created.
5. Fines would be imposed on those who wasted water or did not maintain their individual branches.
6. If no water was used by a member within a 2-year period, it could be sold to a new member by the group.

When the project was almost finished, the community took some of the extra cement and PVC tubes to a spring at the neighboring community. They captured one of the smaller springs with a simple spring box, and laid out a stand pipe potable water system as a gift to their neighbors in this community. The reason for this was that there had been tension between the communities, and the committee wanted to prevent possible future sabotage.

Five years later, the system is still functioning well. During the dry season slash and burn, one fire got away but, because the plastic tubes were buried 60-80 cm below the surface, the tubes were not damaged. Two members have moved away, and one member was removed forcibly by the irrigation group. This caused some tension, but this member had not used his water, refused to pay his dues, and had not replaced broken lines.

## CASE STUDY

### Project Description

A pressurized pipe hose drag system irrigating 25 equal parcels, totaling 2 ha.

### Project Costs

| | |
|---|---|
| Materials: | |
| PVC tubes | $4,031.15 |
| PVC accessories | 629.00 |
| Cement | 831.00 |
| Reinforcing bar | 1,250.00 |
| Sprinkler heads | 350.00 |
| Total for materials | $7,091.15 |
| Labor - mason: | |
| 26 days @ $8.00/day | $ 208.00 |
| Transport: | |
| 2 trips X $90.00/trip | $ 180.00 |
| Total Project Investment | $7,479.15 |

The government Agricultural Development Bank will finance the project with a 5-year loan at 10% interest. Loan repayment = $7,479.15 x 0.2638 (amortization factor) = $1,973/year.

**Scenario #1**
Project is being used to irrigate dry-season crops.

5-Year Projection

| VARIABLE COSTS | Year 1 | Year 2 | Year 3 | Year 4 | Year 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Loan payments | $1,973 | $1,973 | $1,973 | $1,973 | $1,973 |
| Maintenance fund pmts. | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 |
| Extra seed, fertilizer, agro chemicals | 100 | 140 | 160 | 200 | 240 |

| BENEFITS | Year 1 | Year 2 | Year 3 | Year 4 | Year 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Production on dry-season plots (kg/ha) | 200.00 | 250.00 | 300.00 | 310.00 | 320.00 |
| Dry-season price (kg) | 9.20 | 9.30 | 9.40 | 9.50 | 9.60 |
| Return ($) | 1840.00 | 2325.00 | 2820.00 | 2945.00 | 3072.00 |

**Scenario #2**
Project is being used to supplement insufficient rainfall.

5-Year Projection

| VARIABLE COSTS | Year 1 | Year 2 | Year 3 | Year 4 | Year 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Loan payments | $1,973 | $1,973 | $1,973 | $1,973 | $1,973 |
| Maintenance fund pmts. | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 | 125 |
| Extra fertilizer with irrigation | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 |

| BENEFITS | Year 1 | Year 2 | Year 3 | Year 4 | Year 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Yields under irrigation (kg/ha) | 200.00 | 250.00 | 300.00 | 310.00 | 320.00 |
| Price (kg) | 3.00 | 3.10 | 3.20 | 3.30 | 3.40 |
| Irrigated return | 600.00 | 775.00 | 960.00 | 1023.00 | 1088.00 |
| Yields without irrigation (kg/ha) | 50.00 | 55.00 | 60.00 | 65.00 | 70.00 |
| Price (kg) | 3.00 | 3.10 | 3.20 | 3.30 | 3.40 |
| Return w/o irrig. ($) | 150.00 | 170.50 | 192.00 | 214.50 | 238.00 |

## CASE STUDY

### Users Associations

In the Azua Region of the Dominican Republic, water is scarce. Irrigation projects built in the mid-1900s had resulted in dismal failures. Areas near to the supply canals received excess water whereas areas farther away received no water. Excess irrigation in some places had resulted in waterlogging and salinity problems. Less than half of the land that could be irrigated actually was. Canals and drains were choked with weeds, and maintenance was a shambles. Large farms received water while small farms received none. The lack of discipline in the system did not permit irrigation schedules to be observed, maintenance to be undertaken, or water charges to be collected.

The diagnostic analysis of the system in the early 1980s showed a number of problems, which were then addressed with success. Water users associations were formed so that farmers could cooperatively address water issues. Through the water users associations, and with the assistance of the on-farm water management program, a number of positive changes resulted. For example:

1. Discipline was greatly improved so that water supplies could be more equitably distributed.

2. Small parcels of land were consolidated so that they could be irrigated efficiently.

3. On-farm irrigation works were developed that allowed farmers to irrigate efficiently, and farmers were trained to manage these systems.

4. Waterlogging and salinity problems were addressed through better water management and construction of a few drains.

5. Technical assistance allowed farmers to address other problems, such as pest management and soil fertility.

6. Maintenance was taken over by the water users, and it greatly improved. The water users organization was able to collect water charges much more effectively than had been done previously.

## CASE STUDY

### Inappropriate Technology

In the mid-1900s, the government of Peru attempted to help small-scale farmers in the mountain regions to improve their agriculture through irrigation. In a project near the mountain village of Chicche, a hastily implemented irrigation program brought water down to the area that was to be irrigated in open canals. Some canals were lined, and some were not. The area to be irrigated had slopes up to, and sometimes in excess of, 20%. No means for getting water to the farms from the main system were implemented.

Tremendous erosion problems developed quickly, and the expensive water system was not used. Finally, in the late 1970s, another program to improve irrigation in the mountains was developed. This included social formation and technical assistance. The costs of putting in delivery works and on-farm improvements on steep hillsides, however, were excessive, and the financial support to small-scale farmers that would allow them to improve their farms was non-existent. Thus, progress in developing the area for irrigation was very slow. This and many other similar projects failed because the farmers were not provided the means of financing improvements at the farm level. Projects often fail because planners and implementers do not account for some of the physical, financial, social, institutional, and other constraints faced by the farmer him or herself.

# APPENDIX E

# ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

## ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

(1) Ayers, R.S., and Westcot, D.W. 1985. *Water Quality for Agriculture.* FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper No. 29. Rev. 1. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome. 161 p.

A good guide for evaluation of irrigation water. Excellent tables for evaluation.

(2) Ayres, Q.C. 1936. *Soil Erosion and Its Control.* McGraw-Hill, New York.

Rare old text with many valuable practices applicable to Volunteer situations.

(3) Barghouti, and Le Moigne, G. 1991. Irrigation and the Environmental Challenge. *Finance and Development,* June:32-33.

This concise article explains well the need and value of including environmental assessments in irrigation projects.

(4) Bradshaw, J. 1974. The Concept of Social Need. *Ekistics*:37(No. 200).

This reference is hard to find. It contains good ideas on community needs.

(5) Brush, R.E. 1982. *Wells Construction: Hand Dug and Hand Drilled.* Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange Manual M-9. Washington, D.C. 282 p.

This is an excellent description of the theoretical principles and field practices required to design, construct, operate, and maintain simple wells. It is extremely practical and thorough. Every Volunteer working with irrigation or water resources should have a copy.

(6) Bunch, R. 1982. *Two Ears of Corn: A Guide to People-Centered Agricultural Improvement.* World Neighbors, Oklahoma City, Oklahoma. 247 p.

This text combines basic principles of community organization and mobilization with case examples of actual projects. Any Volunteer working with agricultural projects in rural communities will benefit from this information.

(7) Chakroff, M. 1978. *Freshwater Fish Pond Culture and Management*. Action/Peace Corps. Program and Training Journal. Manual Series No. 1B.

A good reference on the construction of small ponds that can also be used for irrigation.

(8) Chambers, R. 1983. *Rural Development - Putting the Last First*. Longman, Scientific, and Technical, New York. 225 p.

Excellent book on community-driven developments. Good ideas for an outside change agent to incorporate into designing projects.

(9) Crozier, C. 1986. *Soil Conservation Techniques for Hillside Farms*. Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange. Reprint Series No. R-62. 96 p.

Excellent graphics and supportive text demonstrating more than a dozen practical soil and water conservation techniques that can be constructed by Volunteers are included in this manual. A very useful manual for Volunteers working with agriculture projects in hilly areas.

(10) Doneen, L.D., and Wescot, D.W. 1984. *Irrigation Practice and Water Management*. FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome.

A good general description of irrigation methods and water management practices. A good introduction to irrigation for beginners. Does not contain much technical information, however.

(11) Doorenbos, J., and Kassam, A.H. 1979. *Yield Response to Water*. FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper 33. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. 193 p.

This manual is a must for Volunteers working in irrigation. It presents the water management strategies and irrigation needs for a number of worldwide crops.

(12) Doorenbos, J., and Pruitt, W.O. 1977. *Guidelines for Predicting Crop Water Requirements*. FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper No. 24. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. 144 p.

An excellent guide with plenty of good tables and information on crop water requirements.

(13) Driscoll, F.G. 1986. *Ground water and Wells.* Johnson Division, St. Paul, Minnesota. 1,089 p.

An excellent reference for those who might work extensively with deep wells, and who have a good math background. Except for its good explanations on ground water and its origins, and discussion on drilling techniques, however, it is inappropriate for the Volunteer.

(14) Dunne, T., and Leopold, L.B. 1978. *Water in Environmental Planning.* W.H. Freeman and Company, San Francisco. 818 p.

This is a standard textbook in hydrology, watershed management, and soil conservation. The text describes basic concepts and principles of hydrology and watershed management and relates numerous case examples of problems and solutions. While some of the material will be too technical for the non-specialist, the writing style is basic enough to serve as a useful occasional reference for some Volunteers.

(15) Eberle, M. and Persons, J.L. *Appropriate Well Drilling Technologies: A Manual for Developing Countries.* National Water Well Association, Worthington, Ohio.

An excellent description on lower cost drilling technologies. The Peace Corps manual, "Wells Construction," is available through ICE and is more complete.

(16) FAO Staff. 1985. *Guidelines: Land Evaluation for Irrigated Agriculture.* FAO Soils Bulletin No. 55. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome. 219 p.

Somewhat technical for some Volunteers but good soils evaluation guide.

(17) Freire, P. 1973. *Education for Critical Consciousness.* Seabury Press, New York.

Good ideas and methodologies for making training and education responsive to local needs and an empowering process.

(18) Gil, N. 1985. *Watershed Development with Special Reference to Soil and Water Conservation.* FAO Soils Bulletin 44. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome. 243 p.

A good manual describing how integrated watershed development projects are organized and implemented. Only a few of the sections on data collection and soil conservation techniques will be relevant for most irrigation Volunteers working with small systems.

(19) Gittinger, J.P. 1984. *Economic Analysis of Agricultural Projects.* 2nd ed. John Hopkins University Press, Baltimore. 505 p.

This is a comprehensive but technical description of procedures and techniques used to conduct financial and economic analyses of agricultural projects. Volunteers may want to reference some information occasionally, but they would not need this text at their site.

(20) Griffen, R.E., Hargreaves, G., et. al. 1983. *Pumps and Water Lifters for Irrigation. Handbook No. 3.* Water Management Synthesis Project. Engineering Research Center, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado. 75 p.

This manual is an excellent reference on pumping plants and water lifters. Basic concepts of pump selection, installation, and maintenance are well explained. Some of the technology will not be appropriate for small pumping plants.

(21) Hanson, B.D. 1985. *Water and Sanitation Technologies: A Trainers Manual.* Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange. Training Manual T-32. Washington, D.C. 369 p.

This manual presents, in readily understandable format, the basic concepts of pipelines and topographic surveys that are useful in designing and constructing irrigation pipelines. Thus, short sections from the manual were extracted for use in this manual.

(22) Hargreaves, G.H., and Samani, Z. 1986. *World Water for Agriculture Precipitation Management.* International Irrigation Center, Department of Agriculture and Irrigation Engineering, Utah State University, Logan, Utah. 617 p.

Access to this manual is a *must* for trainers and Volunteers. It contains worldwide data on precipitation, temperature, and reference crop water use. This local data is sometimes hard to get, and here is an excellent summary. Trainers should still try to obtain local data, but this manual has some data for every country.

(23) Hildebrand, P. 1981. Combining Disciplines in Rapid Rural Appraisal: The Sondeo Approach. *Agricultural Administration*, Vol. 8.

Excellent method for community assessment. Used by ICTA in Guatemala.

(24) Hudson, N. 1981. *Soil Conservation*. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, New York. 325 p.

A standard textbook with fair graphics and good explanations of principles, concepts, and practices in soil conservation. Much of the material relates to the author's extensive experience working in rural Africa.

(25) Ingalls, J.D. 1984. *A Trainers Guide to Andragogy*. Data Education, Incorporated. Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange, Washington, D.C. 242 p.

A theoretical but very practical explanation of adult learning concepts and techniques. Trainers and extension workers will benefit from the skill development exercises.

(26) Jackson, G.R. 1973. *Lockwood-Ames Irrigation Handbook for Irrigation Engineers*. W. R. Ames Company, Gering, Nebraska.

This handbook contains basic information needed to design a sprinkler irrigation system. The information is presented in many tables and graphs and is a very useful reference.

(27) Jordan, T.D. 1984. *A Handbook of Gravity-Flow Water Systems*. Intermediate Technology Publications, London, U.K. 224 p.

This is an excellent handbook in the basic principles and field practices required to design and construct gravity-flow drinking water systems. It is presented in a non-technical manner and with good graphics. It contains good information on pressurized pipeline design, construction, and installation.

(28) Kennedy, W.K., and Rogers, T.A. 1985. *Human and Animal-Powered Water Lifting Devices*. Intermediate Technology Publications.

An excellent description of hand and animal-powered pumps in use worldwide. Includes expected outputs. Few details on design are included in this manual.

(29) Layton, J., Radosevich, G., Skogerboe, G. et. al. 1980. *Improving On-Farm Water Management Through Irrigation Associations*. Water Management Research Project, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado. 31 p.

Illustrated guide on water users associations - structure and functions. Contact U.S.AID or International Irrigation Center, Utah State University, Logan, Utah, for copies.

(30) Leonard, D. 1969. *Soils, Crops, and Fertilizer Use: A Guide for Peace Corps Volunteers*. Program and Training Journal, No. 8. 88 p.

This guide gives a clear, concise overview of everything a Volunteer will need to know about soils and fertilizer. There is good material on acid soils, but very little on salinity problems.

(31) Leonard, D., et. al. 1985. *Agricultural Development Workers Training Manual. Volume III: Crops*. Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange, Washington, D.C.

This manual can supplement the Irrigation Training Manual for trainers wanting to include sessions on crop production. The manual includes session plans and some technical reference materials.

(32) Lynton, R., and Pareek, V. 1978. *Training for Development*. Kumarian Press, Connecticut. 401 p.

Basic training theory and methodology for development in developing countries.

(33) Menard, P., et. al. 1985. *Agricultural Development Workers Training Manual. Volume II: Extension Skills*. Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange, Washington, D.C.

This manual can supplement the Irrigation Training Manual for trainers wanting to include sessions on extension practices. The manual includes session plans and some technical reference materials.

(34) Merriam, J.L., and Keller, J. 1978. *Farm Irrigation System Evaluation: A Guide for Management.* Department of Agriculture and Irrigation Engineering, Utah State University, Logan, Utah.

A detailed guide on how to evaluate farm irrigation systems. It is too detailed for the type of work that most Volunteers will undertake, unless they are assigned to large irrigation projects.

(35) Michalak, D.F. and Yager, E.G. 1979. *Making the Training Process Work.* Harper and Row, New York. 152 p.

The text describes principles and procedures which can be applied to plan training needs assessments, develop training sessions and curriculum, and carry out experiential training activities for adults. This is an important book for trainers to review and for potential extension or education Volunteers to reference.

(36) Nadler, L. 1982. *Designing Training Programs: The Critical Events Model.* Riddison-Wesley.

Good ideas and methodology to identify and design a training program that addresses local needs.

(37) Nobe, K.C. and Sampath, R.K. 1984. *Irrigation Management in Developing Countries: Current Issues and Approaches.* Studies in Water Policy and Management, No. 8. Westview Press.

Some ideas regarding the role of water users associations.

(38) Peace Corps. 1987. *A Trainer's Resource Guide.* Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange Training Manual No. T-12. Washington, D.C. 199 p.

A collection of materials that describe adult learning principles emphasized in typical Peace Corps training situations.

(39) Peace Corps. 1984. *Rural Water/Sanitation Projects. Selected Technical Fact Sheets from U.S. AID Water for the World.* Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange. 284 p.

The descriptions and diagrams for spring boxes, surface and ground water development, pump selection and maintenance, and storage tank construction will be valuable for irrigation Volunteers.

(40) Perrin, R., Winkelman, D., et. al. 1979. *From Agronomic Data to Farmer Recommendations: An Economics Training Manual.* Centro Internacional de Mejoramiento de Maiz y Trigo (CIMMYT), Mexico. 45 p.

Good, concise guide to analysis of agricultural experiments and projects.

(41) Robinson, A.R. 1983. *Farm Irrigation Structures. Handbook No. 2.* Water Management Synthesis Project, University Services Center, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado. 97 p.

An excellent reference for Volunteers working with many on-farm irrigation structures. Some of the structures are more complicated, however, and are oversized for the type of small projects that Volunteers will use.

(42) Salazar, L. 1983. *Water Management in Small Farms. A Training Manual for Farmers in Hill Areas.* Water Management Synthesis Project, University Services Center, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado. 88 p.

This is a practical guide that has been used in many countries to teach farmers and technicians to manage water properly on the farm. It is extensively illustrated and is a must for the Volunteer. It is available through ICE. Pertinent sections have been included in Appendix G.

(43) Salazar, L. 1983. *Water Management on Small Farms. Instructor's Guide.* Water Management Synthesis Project, University Services Center, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado. 31 p.

This is a companion to the training manual and contains useful experiences and demonstrations that the instructor can use as he or she trains farmers and technicians in the basic concepts of water management.

(44) Salazar, L., Hargreaves, G., and Stutler, K. 1987. *Irrigation Scheduling Manual.* The International Irrigation Center, Utah State University, Logan, Utah.

A manual that describes soil-plant-water relationships and irrigation scheduling practices. It has been used internationally for training irrigationists. It should be considered for all irrigation Volunteers and is used extensively as a reference in this manual.

(45) Schwab, G.O., Frevert, R.K., et. al. 1981. *Soil and Water Conservation Engineering*. John Wiley and Son, Inc., New York, New York. 525 p.

This is a standard textbook in erosion control structures and practices, water conveyance systems, drainage, and irrigation. While some of the material may not be applicable to irrigation, it can serve as a good reference to water conservation. The text contains information on a wide range of materials, although it does not go into great theoretical detail.

(46) Shaner, W.W. 1979. *Project Planning for Developing Economies*. Praeger Scientific, New York. 235 p.

Clear guide to steps of project planning and economic and financial analysis in developing countries (includes examples). Useful when writing project proposals for large agencies.

(47) Stern, P.H. 1985. *Small scale Irrigation*. Intermediate Technology Publications Ltd., London, U.K., and International Irrigation Information Center, Bet Dagan, Israel. 152 p.

This handbook is a good source of information on irrigation practices in developing countries. Contains good tables and graphs that give general values for specific subjects. A good handbook for irrigation Volunteers to have.

(48) Stern, P.H., et. al. 1985. *Field Engineering*. Intermediate Technology Publications Ltd. London, U.K. 251 p.

This is a good introductory reference for construction activities in rural areas. It covers many subjects and gives brief descriptions and general design criteria. A good reference for irrigation Volunteers to have.

(49) Tait, J. *Identifying Community Power Actors: A Guide for Change Agents*. North Central Regional Extension Publication No. 59. North Dakota Extension Service, North Dakota.

Hard-to-find reference. Important ideas in Appendix B regarding community leaders.

(50) Turner, J.H., and Anderson, C.L. 1980. *Planning for an Irrigation System.* American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, Athens, Georgia. 120 p.

This manual describes the selection and planning of different irrigation systems. It describes the different components in each type of system with graphics. The manual is easy to read and gives a good overview of irrigation practices.

(51) U.S. Department of Agriculture. *Colorado Irrigation Guide.* USDA Soil Conservation Service, Denver, Colorado.

A good reference for large farms but applicability to small farms is limited. One table from the guide was incorporated into this manual.

(52) U.S. Department of Agriculture. 1971. *Ponds for Water Supply and Recreation.* Agricultural Handbook No. 387, Soil Conservation Service. 55 p.

A good reference on the design of ponds and small reservoirs. Description of materials and methods used in pond construction, and conditions to consider, are excellent. Design procedures are largely applicable to bigger ponds, however, than the Volunteer will work with.

(53) U.S. Salinity Laboratory Staff. 1954. *Diagnosis and Improvement of Saline and Alkali Soils.* USDA Handbook No. 60. 160 p.

The bible on soil salinity and alkalinity. There is no new material on this difficult subject that is as good.

(54) Utah Power and Light Company. *Energy Efficient Pumping Standards.* 12 p.

This pamphlet is not easy to come by and was used for its sketches, which are included in this manual.

(55) Watts, S.B. *A Manual of Information on the Automatic Ram for Pumping Water.* Intermediate Technology Development, Intermediate Technology Publications Ltd., London, U.K.

A good manual that explains in simple terminology the specifications, construction, and installation of an automatic ram. Gives details of all the components so that this water lifting device could be constructed at a local mechanic's shop. A good manual for irrigation Volunteers to have.

(56) Weidelt, H.J. (ed.) 1984. *Manual of Reforestation and Erosion Control for the Philippines*. German Agency for Technical Cooperation. Reprinted by Peace Corps Information Collection and Exchange, Washington, D.C. pp. 393-491.

The section on Erosion Control Techniques includes good descriptions and graphics of practical soil conservation and watershed restoration measures that can be constructed using very simple tools and skills.

(57) Westfall, D.G. 1980. *Training Manual for Agricultural Water Management Specialists*. Water Management Research Project, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado. 671 p.

This is a training manual developed in Pakistan to train farmers in surface irrigation practices. It contains lesson plans and outlines the course of study in the training. This is a good reference manual that has a lot of good information on a wide range of subjects, including irrigation and drainage, rural sociology, farm management, agricultural extension, and soil sciences.

(58) Wood, A.D. 1976. *Water Lifters and Pumps for the Developing World*. Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado. 303 p.

(59) Wood, A.D., Ruff, J.F., and Richardson, E.V. 1977. *Pumps and Water Lifters for Rural Development*. Colorado State University. 189 p.

Both of the above publications provide good descriptions of the types of pumps and water lifters used worldwide, along with some appropriate modifications. These references may be hard to come by except through the authors or university library.

# APPENDIX F

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

**ALKALINE:** pH greater than 7.

**ALLOWABLE SOIL DEPLETION, p x AW:** for given soil and climate, depth of soil water in the root zone readily available to the crop allowing unrestricted evapotranspiration; the fraction p of available soil water (see below); mm/m or inches/ft of soil depth.

**AMENDMENT:** chemicals added to soil or water in order to improve certain soil water properties such as infiltration rate or soil chemistry.

**AMORTIZATION:** gradual repayment of an amount or debt through regular payments over time. Depreciation is a form of amortization used to estimate the value of an asset over time at a given interest rate. Debt payments are often amortized over time. The capital recovery factor (see below) consists of an interest and an amortization component.

**ANAEROBIC:** the absence of oxygen.

**ANNUAL EQUIVALENT**: a series of equal annual amounts for a determined number of years that, when discounted at an appropriate interest rate, will sum to a specific present worth. The annual amount is calculated by multiplying the present value by the capital recovery factor (see below) for the appropriate interest rate and length of time.

**AQUIFER:** a water-bearing layer (stratum) of permeable rock, sand or gravel.

**ARTESIAN WELL:** a well that reaches water that, from internal pressure, flows up like a fountain.

**ASSET**: a business accounting term. Everything an individual or a company owns and that has a monetary value, such as cash, machinery, buildings, and land.

**AVAILABLE HEAD:** difference between the elevation of an upper water surface and a lower surface, such as a field or water surface.

**AVAILABLE SOIL WATER, AW:** depth of water stored in the root zone between field capacity and crop wilting point; mm/m or inches/ft of soil depth.

**BASIC INTAKE RATE:** rate at which water will enter soil when, after the initial wetting of the soil, the rate becomes essentially constant; mm/hr or in/hr.

**BENEFIT/COST RATIO (B/C Ratio):** selection criterion used in evaluating projects. The present worth of project's benefits is weighed against the present worth of its costs.

**BENEFIT:** in project analysis, any good or service produced by a project that benefits those for whom the project is being undertaken.

**BHP:** see Horsepower, Brake Horsepower.

**BIT:** a piece that operates at the bottom end of the tool string to loosen rock or soil in order to deepen a well being drilled.

**BOTTOM SECTION:** the part of a well that extends below the water table.

**CAPACITY OR DISCHARGE:** the rate of flow of liquid per unit time, as gpm or L/sec.

**CAPITAL RECOVERY FACTOR:** a factor used to calculate the annual value of an amount, machinery, or other asset over its expected life. It is used to calculate the equal installments necessary to repay (amortize) a loan over a period of time. The factor includes compound interest.

**CASING:** metal or plastic pipe used to keep open the drilled or excavated hole in a well.

**CATION EXCHANGE:** the interchange between one cation (positive charged ion) in solution and another on any negatively charged surface, such as clay or organic colloids.

**CAVITATION:** the vaporization of a pumped fluid as it goes through the pump impeller. The formation and collapse of vapor pockets as the liquid goes through the pump.

**CEC (CATION EXCHANGE CAPACITY):** the sum of all exchangeable cations that a soil can absorb; meq/100 gm.

**CENTRIFUGAL PUMP:** a pump in which water enters the center of the impeller and proceeds radially outward through the impeller.

**CHECK DROP:** check structure combined with a drop (see below) for dual-purpose function.

**CHECK, CHECK STRUCTURE:** structure built or placed across a channel at suitable points to control water levels and regulate water supply. Stop logs and check panels are the moveable sections placed in slots to control depths.

**CHLOROSIS:** general yellowing of plant tissue (to various degrees) caused by absence of chlorophyll. Can be due to absence of essential nutrient or other damage to plants.

**CHUTE:** an inclined drop or fall in which the lowering of the water surface is achieved over a relatively short length of channel.

**COLLOID:** matter having very small particle size and large specific surface (surface area per unit mass of material). In soils, these can be clays or organic matter.

**COMPOUNDING:** calculating the future value of a present amount that is growing at a given interest rate.

**CONSUMPTIVE USE:** the total amount of water taken up by vegetation for transpiration or building of plant tissue, plus the unavoidable evaporation of soil moisture, snow and intercepted precipitation associated with vegetation (also see evapotranspiration).

**CONVEYANCE EFFICIENCY, Ec:** ratio between irrigation water received at the inlet to a block of fields and that released at the project's headworks; a fraction.

**CRITICAL PERIOD:** periods during crop growth when soil water stress will have a lasting effect on crop growth and yields.

**CROP COEFFICIENT, kc:** ratio between crop evapotranspiration (ETcrop) and the reference crop evapotranspiration (ETo) when crop is grown in large fields under optimum growing conditions; ETcrop = kc x ETo; fraction.

**CROP EVAPOTRANSPIRATION, ETcrop:** rate of evapotranspiration of a disease-free crop growing in a large field (one or more ha) under optimal soil conditions, including sufficient water and fertilizer, and achieving full production potential of that crop under the given growing environment; includes water loss through transpiration of the vegetation and evaporation from the soil surface and wet leaves; mm/day or in/day.

**CROP WATER REQUIREMENTS:** depth of water required by a crop or a group of crops for evapotranspiration (ETcrop) during a given period.

**CROPPING INTENSITY:** total cultivated area on a farm divided by total cropland. With multiple cropping, this value can be greater than 1.

**DEEP PERCOLATION:** the drainage of soil water by gravity below the maximum effective depth of the root zone.

**DEFLOCCULATE:** to disperse particles, such as clay particles in soil, by chemical or physical means.

**DEPRECIATION:** the reduction in value of an asset through wear and tear over time. Because actual depreciation cannot be measured until the end of the life of an asset, estimates are made using various accepted methods, including the "straight line method" and the "reducing-balance method."

**DEPTH OF IRRIGATION, d**: depth of irrigation, including application losses, applied to the soil in one irrigation application and that is needed to bring the soil water content of the root zone to field capacity; mm or inches.

**DESILTING BOXES, SAND TRAPS:** structures that reduce flow velocities so that sand and silt can settle and be removed.

**DEVELOPMENT STAGE**: for a given crop, the period between end of initial (emergence) stage and full ground cover, or when the ground cover is between 10% and 80%; days.

**DISCOUNTING:** the process of finding the present worth of a future amount.

**DISTRIBUTION EFFICIENCY, Ed:** ratio of water made directly available to the crop and that released at the inlet of a block of fields; Ed = Eb x Ea; fraction.

**DRAINAGE STRUCTURES:** structures used for removing excess water away from irrigated areas into a drainage system.

**DRAWDOWN:** the elevation difference between the static water level and the pumping level of a liquid.

**DROP PIPE:** that section of pipe in a deep well pump assembly that extends between the pump cylinder and the pump body.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

**DROP STRUCTURE:** a structure designed to lower the water surface in a channel in a short distance with safe dissipation of energy.

**DROP:** a farm structure built to mitigate excess grade when the slope of a ditch is greater than the grade that should be used for the ditch. Erosive velocities are reduced upstream.

**EFFECTIVE FULL GROUND COVER:** percentage of ground cover (specific to crop) when ETcrop is approaching maximum - generally 70 to 80% of surface area; percentage.

**EFFECTIVE RAINFALL, or EFFECTIVE PRECIPITATION, Pe:** rainfall useful for meeting crop water requirements; it excludes deep percolation, surface runoff, and interception; mm/period or in/period.

**EFFECTIVE ROOTING DEPTH, D:** soil depth from which the full grown crop extracts most of the water needed for evapotranspiration; m or ft.

**EFFICIENCY, PUMP EFFICIENCY:** the ratio in a pumping plant between power output (Water Horsepower -- WHP) and power input (Brake Horsepower -- BHP); percent.

**EFFICIENCY, MOTOR OR ENGINE** = $\frac{\text{BHP produced by the motor}}{\text{Input horsepower to the motor (fuel or electricity)}}$

**EFFICIENCY, OVERALL PUMPING PLANT** = output Water Horsepower (WHP)/Input Horsepower to motor.

**EFFICIENCY, TRANSMISSION:** efficiency of the gearhead, belt drivers, and other components of the pump.

**ELECTRICAL CONDUCTIVITY, EC:** the property of a substance to transfer an electric charge (reciprocal of resistance); used as a measure of the level of salinity.

**ELECTRICAL CONDUCTIVITY, IRRIGATION WATER, ECw:** is used as a measure of the salt content of irrigation water; mmhos/cm or dS/m.

**ELECTRICAL CONDUCTIVITY, SATURATION EXTRACT, ECe:** is used as a measure of the salt content of an extract from soil that has been saturated with water; mmhos/cm or dS/m.

**EVAPORATION, E:** rate of water loss from liquid to vapor phase from open water or wet soil surface by physical processes; mm/day or in/day.

**EVAPOTRANSPIRATION, ET:** rate of water loss through transpiration from vegetation plus evaporation from the soil; mm/day or in/day.

**EXCHANGEABLE SODIUM PERCENTAGE, ESP:** the percent of the total Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC) of a soil occupied by sodium, i.e. the percent of the soil exchange sites occupied by exchangeable sodium.

**EXTRA-TERRESTRIAL RADIATION, Ra:** amount of solar radiation received on a horizontal at the top of the atmosphere; equivalent evaporation mm/day.

**FARM GATE:** the boundary of a farm; used in economics to delineate a boundary such as farm-gate price.

**FIELD APPLICATION EFFICIENCY, Ea:** ratio of water made directly available to the crop and that received at the field inlet.

**FIELD CAPACITY, S:** depth of water held in the soil after ample irrigation or heavy rain when the rate of downward movement has substantially decreased, usually 1 to 3 days after irrigation or rain.

**FIELD SUPPLY SCHEDULE:** stream size, duration, and interval of water supply to the individual field or farm.

**FLOW RATE:** the amount of water per unit time flowing past a point; L/sec or ft/sec.

**FULL GROUND COVER:** soil covered by crops approaching 100% when looking downwards from above.

**GLEY:** soil developed under conditions of poor drainage resulting in the reduction of metal elements and in a grey color with mottles at interfaces with better aerated soils.

**GROUND COVER:** percentage of soil surface shaded by the crop if the sun were directly overhead; percentage.

**GROUND WATER TABLE:** upper boundary of ground water where water pressure is equal to atmosphere, i.e. depth of water level in borehole when ground water can freely enter the borehole.

**GROWING SEASON:** for a given crop the time between planting or sowing and harvest; days

**HARDPAN:** hardened soil layer caused by the cementing of soil particles due to physical processes such as compaction or chemical processes, for example, by sodium. The hardness does not change appreciably with changes in moisture content.

**HEAD:** the height of a liquid column above a specific point or the equivalent height for a given pressure.

**HEAD, AVAILABLE HEAD:** difference between the elevation of an upper water surface and a lower surface, such as a field or water surface.

**HEAD, DISCHARGE HEAD:** the head at the discharge of the pump. The pressure reading of a pressure gauge is converted to elevation of the liquid and velocity head (see below) at the point of gauge attachment.

**HEAD, ELEVATION HEAD:** the difference in elevation between two points in the system.

**HEAD, FRICTION HEAD:** the energy losses due to friction (resistance to water flow) between two points in the distribution system.

**HEAD, HYDRAULIC HEAD:** depth of water as referenced to a lower elevation. Height that water will stand in a tube. Energy available.

**HEAD, LOSS:** energy lost as a result of friction, impact or turbulence. Simply, the difference in head of two water surfaces connected by pipes or channels.

**HEAD, NET POSITIVE SUCTION HEAD REQUIRED:** the net positive suction head required to prevent cavitation.

**HEAD, NET POSITIVE SUCTION HEAD:** the total head at the suction flange of the pump less the vapor pressure of the liquid in the same units.

**HEAD, PRESSURE:** the pressure at a point expressed as an equivalent head of water, e.g. 10 psi = 23.1 ft of water or 1 $kg/cm^2$ = 10 meters of water.

**HEAD, STATIC:** the elevation difference between a reference point on the system and the highest point on the system. The total static head is the difference between the pumping level (free water surface) and the highest point in the system.

**HEAD, TOTAL DYNAMIC HEAD (TDH):** the total head (energy) supplied by the pump to the liquid. It is the total discharge head at the discharge flange (including velocity head).

**HEAD, VELOCITY:** the kinetic energy of the flowing liquid in a pipeline.

**HEADGATE:** structure at the head of a watercourse, farm lateral, or field lateral that connects with the distributing channel. The turnout may be placed through the banks of the tertiary and quaternary canals for water delivery to fields.

**HORSEPOWER, BRAKE HORSEPOWER:** power required to drive a specific mechanical component.

**HORSEPOWER, INPUT HORSEPOWER:** the horsepower supplied to the prime mover (the power unit) of the pumping plant (may be electrical or other type of fuel).

**HORSEPOWER, WATER HORSEPOWER**: the horsepower that the pump imparts to the liquid.

**HORSEPOWER**: energy per unit time; 1 HP = 550 ft lb/sec or 1 HP = 0.746 kw.

**HYDRAULIC GRADE LINE:** in an open channel, the water surface is the hydraulic grade line; in a closed pipe, the line joining the elevations to which water would stand in open gage tubes.

**HYDRAULIC GRADIENT:** slope of the hydraulic grade line.

**HYDRAULIC HEAD:** depth of water referenced to a lower elevation. Height that water will stand in a tube. Energy available.

**HYDRAULIC RADIUS:** area of the flowing water divided by the wetted perimeter. For pipes flowing full, this is equal to the diameter divided by four.

**IMPELLER:** the rotating components of the pump that impart energy to the liquid. Water enters the eye of the impeller and gains energy as it moves radially outward.

**INITIAL DEVELOPMENT STAGE:** for a given crop, the time between germination and early growth, when ground cover is less than 10%; days.

**IRRIGATION EFFICIENCY:** the ratio of the volume of water required for a specific beneficial use as compared to the volume of water delivered or actually used for this purpose. Commonly interpreted as the volume of water stored in the soil for evapotranspiration compared to the volume of water delivered for this purpose, but may be defined and used in different ways.

**IRRIGATION INTERVAL, i:** time between the start of successive field irrigation applications on the same field; days.

**IRRIGATION REQUIREMENTS, LR:** depth of water required for meeting evapotranspiration minus contribution by effective rainfall, ground water, and stored soil water; depth of water required for normal crop production plus leaching requirement, water losses, and operational wastes; sometimes called gross irrigation requirements. (See Net Irrigation Requirement.)

**IRRIGATION SCHEDULING:** the process of determining the amount and timing of water application or delivery to a farm or group of farms.

**LATE SEASON STAGE:** time between the end of the mid-season stage and harvest or maturity; days.

**LEACHING REQUIREMENT:** the fraction of water entering the soil that must pass through the root zone in order to prevent soil salinity from exceeding a specific value.

**LEVEL**: (adjective) perfectly horizontal; (noun) a device used to establish a perfectly horizontal line.

**MARGINAL ANALYSIS**: analysis of the effect of changing one variable upon another variable, other variables held constant. For example, varying the rate of fertilizer has an effect on yield; the additional cost of the fertilizer can be evaluated holding other costs constant. Marginal analysis is an important concept in economic analysis.

**MEASURING STRUCTURES**: weirs and other structures used to determine depth-discharge relationship.

**NET BENEFIT**: in project analysis, the amount remaining after all outputs are subtracted from all inputs, for example, the net cash flow.

**NET IRRIGATION REQUIREMENT, In**: depth of water required for meeting evapotranspiration minus contribution from precipitation, ground water, and stored soil water; does not include operational losses and leaching requirements.

**NET PRESENT WORTH**: in project analysis, a discounted measure of project worth, or the present worth of a stream of benefits minus the present worth of the stream of costs. Can be used as a selection criterion.

**OPPORTUNITY COST**: the benefit foregone by using a scarce resource for one purpose instead of for its next best alternative use.

**OSMOTIC EFFECT**: the force a plant must exert to extract water from the soil. The presence of salt in the soil water increases the force a plant must exert to withdraw water from soil.

**PERCUSSION**: a method of drilling a well by repeatedly dropping a bit.

**PERMEABILITY**: a measure of the speed at which water can move through a certain type of rock or soil. For example, sand is more permeable than clay because water moves faster through sand.

**pH:** a measure of acidity or alkalinity ranging from 1-14. It is the negative logarithm of the hydrogen ion activity.

**PRECIPITATION:** total amount of precipitation (rain, drizzle, snow, hail, fog, condensation, hoarfrost, frost, and rime), expressed in depth of water, that would cover a horizontal plane if there were no runoff, infiltration, or evapotranspiration.

**PRESENT WORTH:** the present value of an amount to be paid or received at some future date.

**PRIMING**: prefilling a structure, such as a suction tube or a centrifugal pump, with water before operation.

**PROJECT CYCLE**: the series of analytical phases through which a project passes, such as identification, planning, implementation, evaluation, and appraisal.

**PROJECT**: an investment activity upon which resources (costs) are expended in order to create assets that will produce benefits over an extended period of time.

**PUMP:** a device used to lift water or to provide pressure to water.

**PUMPING LEVEL**: the vertical distance from the centerline of the pump discharge to the free water surface from which the water is being drawn.

**QUATERNARY CANALS** (field laterals): canals branching from the minors and supplying water to outlets or turnouts. (head ditch, (USA); marwa (Egypt); watercourse (India and Pakistan)).

**RATE OF RETURN**: payment on an investment as a proportion or percentage of that investment.

**REFERENCE CROP EVAPOTRANSPIRATION, ETo**: rate of evapotranspiration from an extended surface of an 8 to 15 cm tall, green grass cover of uniform height, actively growing, completely shading the ground, and not short of water; mm/day or in/day.

**RISK ANALYSIS**: an analytical technique in which the probabilities of possible scenarios for all critical elements of a project are computed or evaluated.

**ROTARY:** a method of drilling a well by rotating a bit in a hole as the well is drilled.

**SALINE SOIL**: a non-alkali soil containing soluble salts in such quantities that they interfere with the growth of most plants.

**SECONDARY CANALS, DISTRIBUTARY CANALS**: canals that branch from main canals or branches and supply water to minors, outlets, and turnouts.

**SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS**: a technique by which a systematic analysis of the impact of different circumstances on the earning capacity of a project is undertaken. For example, uncertainty about future interest rates on loans would involve an analysis of a project using different interest rates.

**SIPHON TUBES**: pipes shaped in such a manner that they can be lain across a ditch bank and used to siphon water from that ditch into a field or furrow.

**SODIC SOIL**: an alkali soil containing exchangeable sodium in such quantities that it interferes appreciably with soil infiltration and structure and affects the growth of most plants.

**SODIUM ABSORPTION RATIO, SAR**: a ratio for soil extracts and irrigation water used to express the relative activity of sodium ions in exchange reaction with the soil; me/l.

**SOIL AMENDMENTS**: a substance or material that improves soil by modifying its physical properties rather than by adding appreciable quantities of plant nutrients.

**SOIL INTAKE (INFILTRATION) RATE**: instantaneous rate at which water will enter the soil.

**SOIL STRUCTURE**: arrangement of soil particles into aggregates that occur in a variety of recognized shapes, sizes, and strengths.

**SOIL TEXTURE:** characterization of soil in respect to its particle size and distribution.

**SOIL WATER CONTENT**: depth of water held in the soil; mm/m soil depth or in/ft soil depth.

**STATIC LEVEL**: the vertical distance from the centerline of the pump discharge flange to the free water surface while no water is being pumped.

**STORED SOIL WATER, Wb**: depth of water stored in the root zone from earlier rains, snow, or irrigation applications that partly or fully meets crop water requirements in the following periods; mm or in.

**SUPPLY SCHEDULE:** stream size, supply duration, and supply interval of irrigation water supply to field or irrigation block during the growing season.

**TERTIARY CANALS OR FARM LATERALS:** canals branching from secondary distributaries and supplying water to sub-minors, outlets or turnouts (laterals, (USA); meska (Egypt); minors (India and Pakistan)).

**TRANSPIRATION**: rate of water loss through the plant that is regulated by physical and physiological processes.

**TURBINE PUMPS:** a centrifugal pump designed for installation in a well. The bowls are usually set down in the water. Multistage assemblies may be set down at successive depths.

**TURNOUT**: structure that releases the water from a head ditch. Can be used to allow the water to pass through the banks of the head ditch onto a field, thus acting as a check gate and a headgate at the same time.

**UNIFORMITY:** the evenness with which a crop grows, water is applied, or water penetrates into the soil after an irrigation.

**VOLUTE CASE**: the case of a centrifugal pump in which the high velocity water coming through the impellers is converted to pressure head.

**WATER CONTROL STRUCTURES**: canals, flow measuring devices, check dams, diversion structures, and any structural methods employed in controlling the amount, direction, depth, or volume of water.

**WATER SOURCE**: any place where water can be obtained; for example a well, spring, river, lake, reservoir, tap, and faucet.

**WATER TABLE**: the upper limit of that portion of the ground that is wholly saturated with water.

**WATER USER ORGANIZATION**: an association of irrigators formed for the purpose of administering and operating an irrigation system.

**WATERLOGGING**: maintenance of saturated or near-saturated soil conditions in the root zone for an extended period of time.

**WELL DEVELOPMENT**: the process of re-arranging the soil particles around the intake section of a well to permit easier and better water flow into the well.

**WELL**: a hole in the ground that reaches below the water table and that is used as a source of water.

**WHP**: see Horsepower, Water Horsepower.

# INDEX

A-frame level 59, 62-63
Abney level 17, 47, 55, 394
air relief 229, 231
ALKALINE 473
ALLOWABLE SOIL DEPLETION 473
amendment 377, 378, 473
amortization 432, 433, 434, 454, 473
anaerobic 367, 473
ANNUAL EQUIVALENT 473
aquifers 15, 473
ARTESIAN WELL 473
assessment 5, 17, 85, 395, 397-400, 405, 419, 422, 463
asset 438, 473, 475
available head 218, 221, 473, 477
available soil water 72, 473
basic intake rate 79, 80, 473
benefit 6, 406, 419, 427, 428, 430-431, 459, 463, 473, 479
bit 153-154, 163-164, 445, 473, 479-480
BOTTOM SECTION 474
brake horsepower 133-134, 137, 478
CAPACITY OR DISCHARGE 474
capital recovery factor 473-474
casing 124, 153, 162-163, 474
cation exchange 81, 474, 476
cavitation 137-138, 143, 146, 474, 477
CEC 81-82, 474, 476
centrifugal pump 124, 131-132, 143, 146, 394, 449, 450, 474, 480-481
CHECK DROP 474
check structure 474
CHLOROSIS 474
CHUTE 474
COLLOID 474
COMPOUNDING 474
concrete 5, 93, 95, 97, 100, 105-106, 195-196, 200, 206, 375, 434
consumptive use 256, 257, 474
contour ditch 237, 246, 247, 444
contour levee 247
conveyance efficiency 187, 474
corrugation 237, 249, 444
CRITICAL PERIOD 474
crop 169
crop evapotranspiration 171, 173, 176-177, 441, 475, 480
crop coefficient 177, 179, 442, 475
crop water requirements 130, 146, 187, 274, 276, 290, 442, 460, 475-476, 481
CROPPING INTENSITY 475
dams 21-22, 85, 481
deep percolation 183, 187, 273, 276, 279, 281, 285, 289, 299, 475-476
DEFLOCCULATE 475
depreciation 149, 433, 473, 475
depth of irrigation 300, 475
DESILTING BOXES 475
development stage 177, 475, 478
discharge head 133, 146, 477-478
discounting 429, 473, 475
DISTRIBUTARY CANALS 480
DISTRIBUTION EFFICIENCY 475
diversions 13, 93, 95-96
DRAINAGE STRUCTURES 475
DRAWDOWN 475
drilling 20, 111, 153-154, 162-164, 461, 479-480
drip irrigation 193, 265, 269, 289-290, 446
drop 22, 64, 185, 202, 206, 252, 301, 452, 474-476
effective precipitation 169, 171, 183, 189, 280, 282, 476
EFFECTIVE ROOTING DEPTH 476
effective full groundcover 177, 476

effective rainfall 183, 283, 284, 476, 479
electrical 368
electrical conductivity 368, 370, 476
elevation head 132, 477
evaporation 13-14, 71, 171, 177, 183, 187, 247, 274, 290, 292, 293, 474-476
evapotranspiration 13-14, 69, 169, 171, 177, 183, 279, 282, 284, 294, 303, 441-442, 473-476, 478-480
EXCHANGEABLE SODIUM PERCENTAGE 476
EXTRA-TERRESTRIAL RADIATION 476
FARM GATE 476
FARM LATERALS 481
FIELD SUPPLY SCHEDULE 477
FIELD APPLICATION EFFICIENCY 477
field capacity 69, 71, 256-257, 282-284, 367, 473, 475, 477
flow rate 43, 303
friction head 132-133, 477
friction losses 125, 131, 138, 144, 214, 218, 227-228
full ground cover 475, 477
furrows 42, 199, 206, 237-238, 244, 247-250, 274, 286, 289, 293, 296, 300, 303, 375, 445, 449-450
GLEY 477
ground 368
ground cover 18-19, 21-22, 171, 475, 477-478
ground water 13, 15, 83, 99, 169, 282-284, 286, 293, 300, 367-368, 372, 376, 461, 465, 477, 479
growing season 126, 130, 177, 179, 279-280, 291, 449, 450, 477, 481
hand auger rig 162-164
HARDPAN 477
head 20, 22, 35, 36, 38, 42-43, 45, 111, 124-125, 129, 131-134, 137-138, 149-150, 187, 213-218, 221, 225-226, 244, 246-248, 250, 260, 286, 291, 408, 418, 450, 477-478, 480-481
headgate 202, 478
HGL 217, 218, 221
horsepower 112, 126, 128-129, 138-134, 476, 478
hose level 59, 65, 394
HYDRAULIC GRADE LINE 478
hydraulic gradient 217, 227, 478
hydraulic radius 195, 478
hydraulic ram 112, 150
impeller 124, 134, 137-138, 144, 474, 478
infiltration rate 79-80, 238, 249, 257, 274
intake structures 144
irrigation scheduling 6, 77, 187-188, 271, 279-282, 289, 291, 293, 297, 466-467, 479
irrigation efficiency 130, 146, 289, 478
irrigation interval 257, 283-285, 289, 302, 479
irrigation requirements 169, 171, 187, 248, 274, 279, 285, 289, 290, 479
land leveling 47, 191, 233, 241, 247, 274, 293, 300
late season stage 179, 479
leaching requirement 479
level 7, 15, 18, 20, 22, 38, 43, 45, 47-50, 55-56, 59, 62-66, 69, 80, 99, 100, 106, 131-132, 137-138, 145-146, 193, 202, 206, 214-217, 233, 237-238, 242-243, 245, 247-248, 274-276, 279, 291-292, 294-297, 304, 368, 372, 376, 394, 401, 404, 408, 428, 446, 456, 475-481
localized irrigation 191, 242, 265
Manning equation 193, 195, 199
MARGINAL ANALYSIS 479
MEASURING STRUCTURES 479
NET PRESENT WORTH 479
net benefit 428
net irrigation requirement 171, 187, 282, 479
nozzles 253, 260, 262, 263
NPSH 137, 138
opportunity cost 426, 428, 479
orifices 35-36, 43, 269

OSMOTIC EFFECT 479
percussion 153-154, 163-164, 479
permeability 13, 15, 73, 376, 385, 479
pH 82, 371, 372, 385-386, 473, 480
pipelines 13, 52, 193, 206, 213, 228-229, 231-232, 386, 434, 462
pipes 21, 36, 100, 106, 131, 206, 221-222, 225, 241, 258-259, 477-478, 480
pipeworking 221
ponds 11, 13-14, 20, 84, 87, 93, 107, 108, 110-111, 146, 245, 460, 468
precipitation 3, 11, 13-14, 19, 169, 173, 181, 183, 188-189, 256, 274, 281-282, 292, 462-463, 474, 479-480
present worth 473, 475, 479-480
pressure relief 229, 231
priming 43, 480
profiling 47-49
PROJECT CYCLE 480
pump 124-126, 128-139, 143-150, 154, 231, 251-252, 259-260, 433-434, 449, 462, 465, 474-481
pumping lift 111, 131
quaternary canals 478, 480
rapid rural appraisal 395, 399-400, 463
rate of return 428, 480
rebar 105
risk analysis 426, 480
rooting depth 77, 256, 287, 289, 368, 442
rotary 153, 480
saline soil 274, 371, 376, 480
salinity 6, 13, 171, 237, 242, 273-274, 280, 299-300, 304, 365, 367-370, 372-373, 375, 379, 385-386, 443, 455, 464-468, 476, 479
SAND TRAPS 475
scheduling 71, 83, 280-281, 286--297, 303, 305, 441-442
secondary canals 294, 480
seeps 13, 15, 93, 99, 211
sensitivity analysis 426, 431, 480
siphon tubes 42-43, 202, 206, 480
sodic soil 371, 377, 481
sodium absorption ratio 371, 481
soil intake rate 79
soil structure 14, 73, 367, 370-371, 379, 481
soil texture 14, 72-74, 79, 185, 237, 257, 274, 302, 441-442, 481
soil water content 441, 475, 481
spring box 99-100, 105-106, 453
springs 13, 15, 93, 95, 99, 107, 375, 450, 452-453
sprinklers 131-132, 134, 145, 206, 253, 256, 259, 261-263, 284, 296, 301, 303
stored soil water 171, 282, 479, 481
SUPPLY SCHEDULE 481
surface irrigation 43, 189, 191, 237-238, 243-244, 247, 250, 285, 289, 296-297, 301-302, 375, 420, 449-450, 452, 469
surveying 47-48, 50-51, 55-56, 59, 64, 67
terraces 22, 63, 85, 245
TERTIARY CANALS 481
topographic maps 11, 17
topography 18, 107-108, 233, 237-238, 243-244, 265, 273, 274, 297, 300, 401-402, 404, 406, 450, 452
transpiration 13, 14, 171, 177, 474-476, 481
trickle irrigation 265, 273, 281, 301-303, 444
turnout 243, 478, 481
uniformity 37, 129, 233, 243-244, 259-262, 267, 274, 297, 301-304, 443, 445, 481
vacuum relief 229, 231
VOLUTE CASE 481
water control structures 202, 211, 481
water hammer 132, 213, 222, 228-229, 231, 260

water management 6, 71, 82, 271, 273-277, 297, 307, 446, 455, 460, 462, 464, 466, 469
water quality 6, 13, 18-20, 83, 300, 365, 385-386, 459
water source 11, 43, 56, 124, 221, 252, 259, 260, 417, 449, 450-452, 482
water table 15, 20, 146, 154, 162, 166, 185, 237, 274, 367-368, 372, 375, 474, 482
water users associations 395, 406, 455, 464, 465, 482
waterlogging 3, 6, 73, 83, 85, 89, 237, 273, 295, 365, 367-368, 372, 375, 443, 455, 482
watersheds 9, 11, 17-18, 87, 96, 108
weirs 35-38, 479
wells 13, 15, 93, 107, 111-112, 124, 132, 146, 153-154, 162, 164, 166, 293, 372, 386, 459, 461